



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Numbers

Version 56

[en]

Copyrights and Licensing

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Date: 2021-12-21

Version: 56

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Literal Text

Date: 2021-12-06

Version: 32

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Hebrew Bible

Date: 2021-09-07

Version: 2.1.23

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Greek New Testament

Date: 2021-09-14

Version: 0.22

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Date: 2021-12-09

Version: 24

Published by: unfoldingWord®

unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Date: 2021-11-25

Version: 27

Published by: unfoldingWord

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Copyright © 2021 by unfoldingWord

This work is made available under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 4.0 International License. To view a copy of this license, visit <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0/> or send a letter to Creative Commons, PO Box 1866, Mountain View, CA 94042, USA.

unfoldingWord® is a registered trademark of unfoldingWord. Use of the unfoldingWord name or logo requires the written permission of unfoldingWord. Under the terms of the CC BY-SA license, you may copy and redistribute this unmodified work as long as you keep the unfoldingWord® trademark intact. If you modify a copy or translate this work, thereby creating a derivative work, you must remove the unfoldingWord® trademark.

On the derivative work, you must indicate what changes you have made and attribute the work as follows: "The original work by unfoldingWord is available from unfoldingword.org/utn". You must also make your derivative work available under the same license (CC BY-SA).

If you would like to notify unfoldingWord regarding your translation of this work, please contact us at unfoldingword.org/contact/.

Table of Contents

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes	10
Numbers	10
Introduction to Numbers	11
Numbers 1	13
Numbers 2	68
Numbers 3	103
Numbers 4	155
Numbers 5	205
Numbers 6	237
Numbers 7	265
Numbers 8	355
Numbers 9	382
Numbers 10	406
Numbers 11	443
Numbers 12	479
Numbers 13	496
Numbers 14	530
Numbers 15	576
Numbers 16	618
Numbers 17	669
Numbers 18	683
Numbers 19	716
Numbers 20	739
Numbers 21	769
Numbers 22	805
Numbers 23	847
Numbers 24	878
Numbers 25	904
Numbers 26	923
Numbers 27	989
Numbers 28	1013
Numbers 29	1045
Numbers 30	1086
Numbers 31	1103
Numbers 32	1158
Numbers 33	1201
Numbers 34	1258
Numbers 35	1288
Numbers 36	1323
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy	1337
Abstract Nouns	1338
Active or Passive	1340
Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information	1343
Background Information	1346
Biblical Distance	1349
Biblical Money	1352
Biblical Volume	1354
Biblical Weight	1358

Copy or Borrow Words	1360
Direct and Indirect Quotations	1362
Double Negatives	1364
Doublet	1366
Ellipsis	1368
Euphemism	1371
Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'	1373
First, Second or Third Person	1375
Forms of You	1377
Fractions	1378
Go and Come	1381
Hebrew Months	1383
How to Translate Names	1386
Hyperbole	1390
Hypothetical Situations	1394
Idiom	1397
Litotes	1399
Merism	1401
Metaphor	1403
Metonymy	1409
Numbers	1411
Ordinal Numbers	1414
Parallelism	1417
Personification	1420
Possession	1422
Predictive Past	1426
Pronouns	1428
Quotes within Quotes	1430
Rhetorical Question	1433
Simile	1436
Symbolic Action	1439
Symbolic Language	1441
Synecdoche	1443
Translate Unknowns	1445

unfoldingWord® Translation Words **1448**

Aaron	1449
Adam	1450
adversary, enemy	1451
advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels	1452
afflict, affliction, distress	1453
alarm, alarmed	1454
Almighty	1455
altar	1456
amen, truly	1457
Amorite	1458
ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather	1459
anoint, anointed, anointing	1461
appoint, appointed	1462
ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh	1463
Asher	1464
assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community	1465
Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire	1467

atonement lid	1468
atonement, atone, atoned	1469
avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance	1470
Baal	1471
Balaam	1472
barley	1473
Bashan	1474
beast	1475
Benjamin, Benjaminite	1476
bind, bond, bound	1477
bless, blessed, blessing	1478
blood	1480
bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee	1482
bread	1483
bronze	1484
brother	1485
burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances	1486
burnt offering, offering by fire	1487
bury, buried, burial	1488
Cain	1489
call, call out	1490
Canaan, Canaanite	1492
captive, captivate, captivity, catch	1493
cedar, cedarwood	1494
census	1495
cherub	1496
chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect	1497
clan	1498
clean, wash	1499
column, pillar	1501
command, commandment	1502
confess, confession	1503
confirm, confirmation, legal	1504
consecrate, consecrated, consecration	1505
consume, devour	1506
court, courtyard	1507
covenant	1508
covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love	1510
cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox	1511
curse, cursed, cursing	1512
curtain	1514
cut off, cut down	1515
declare, proclaim, announce	1516
dedicate, dedication, established, devoted	1517
delight	1518
deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue	1519
descend, descendant	1520
desert, wilderness	1521
destroy, destruction, annihilate	1522
devour	1523
die, dead, deadly, death	1524
dominion	1526

donkey, mule	1527
drink offering	1528
earth, land	1529
Egypt, Egyptian	1530
elder, older, old	1531
Eleazar	1532
Enoch	1533
Ephraim, Ephraimite	1534
evil, wicked, unpleasant	1535
ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins	1537
exalt, exalted, exaltation	1538
face, facial	1539
faith	1541
faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy	1542
family, household	1544
favor, favorable, favoritism	1545
fear, afraid, frighten	1546
feast, feasting	1547
fig	1548
fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot	1549
firstborn	1550
firstfruits	1551
flesh	1552
flock, herd	1553
forsake, forsaken, leave	1554
fruit, fruitful, unfruitful	1555
Gad	1557
gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway	1558
generation	1559
Gilead, Gileadite	1560
gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt	1561
glean, gleanings	1562
glory, glorious, glorify	1563
God	1565
god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry	1567
gold, golden	1569
good, right, pleasant, better, best	1570
grace, gracious	1572
grain offering	1573
grain, grainfields	1574
grape, grapevine	1575
hand	1576
head	1578
heart	1579
Hittite	1580
holy, holiness, unholy, sacred	1581
honey, honeycomb	1583
Hoshea	1584
house, household	1585
humble, humbled, humility	1586
inherit, inheritance, heir	1587
iniquity	1589

innocent	1590
Israel, Israelites	1591
Issachar	1593
Jacob, Israel	1594
jealous, jealousy	1595
Jebus, Jebusite	1596
Jericho	1597
Jordan River, Jordan	1598
Joseph (OT)	1599
Joshua	1600
joy, joyful, rejoice, glad	1601
Judah	1603
Judea, Judah	1604
judge, judgment	1605
just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification	1607
king, kingship	1609
kingdom	1610
know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish	1612
Korah, Korahite	1614
lamb, Lamb of God	1615
law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God	1617
Levi, Levite	1619
life, live, living, alive	1620
livestock, animals	1622
lord, Lord, master, sir	1623
lots, casting lots	1625
manna	1626
messenger	1627
Michael	1628
might, mighty, mighty works	1629
miracle, wonder, sign	1630
Miriam	1632
Moab, Moabite	1633
Moses	1634
mourn, mourner, weeping	1636
Naaman	1637
name	1638
Naphtali	1639
nation	1640
Negev	1642
new moon	1643
oath, swear, swearing, swear by	1644
oil	1645
olive	1646
ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs	1647
palm	1648
Passover	1649
peace, peaceful, peacemakers	1651
people of God	1652
people, people group	1653
perish	1655
Phinehas	1656

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess	1657
pray, prayer	1658
preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation	1659
priest, priesthood	1661
prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials,	1663
profane, profaned	1664
promise, promised	1665
Promised Land	1666
prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess	1667
prosper, prosperity, prosperous	1669
prostitute, harlot, whored	1670
prostrate, bow down, worship	1671
proud, pride, prideful	1672
pure, purify, purification	1674
purple	1675
rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness	1676
rebuke, reprove	1677
redeem, redeemer, redemption	1678
rest, rested, restless	1679
restore, restoration	1680
return, turn back	1681
Reuben	1682
Sabbath	1683
sacrifice, sacrifices, offering	1685
Samuel	1687
sanctuary	1688
Saul (OT)	1689
seed, semen	1690
seek, search, look for	1691
servant, serve, slave, young man, young women	1692
set apart	1695
shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach	1696
sign, proof, reminder	1698
silver	1700
sin, sinful, sinner, sinning	1701
slaughter, slaughtered	1703
son	1704
spear, spearmen	1706
spirit, wind, breath	1707
statute	1709
strength, strengthen, strong	1710
sword, swordsmen	1712
tabernacle	1713
temple, house, house of God	1714
Terah	1716
test, tested, testing, testing in the fire	1717
testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence	1718
thresh	1720
Tirzah	1721
to minister, ministry	1722
tongue, language	1723
transgress, transgression	1724

tribe, tribal, tribesmen	1725
trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity	1726
trumpet, trumpeters	1727
trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness	1728
unleavened bread	1729
vine	1730
vineyard	1731
voice	1732
vow	1733
walk, walked	1734
watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware	1735
wine, wineskin, new wine	1736
winnow, sift	1737
wrath, fury	1738
Yahweh	1739
zeal, zealous	1741
Contributors	1742
unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors	1742
unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors	1748
unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors	1749
unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors	1750



unfoldingWord® Translation Notes

Numbers

Introduction to Numbers

Part 1: General Introduction

Outline of Numbers

Preparing to leave Sinai (1:1–10:10)
 Counting and assembling the tribes (1:1–4:49)
 Regulations (5:1–6:27)
 Dedicating the altar (7:1–89)
 Setting up the lampstand (8:1–4)
 Setting apart the Levites (8:5–29)
 Second Passover; the cloud to lead them; trumpets (9:1–10:10)
 Sinai to Moab, through the wilderness (10:11–17:13)
 Complaining and murmuring (10:11–11:15)
 The quails (11:16–35)
 Miriam's leprosy (12:1–16)
 The spies selected and sent (13:1–14:45)
 Commands (15:1–41)
 Korah's rebellion (16:1–17:13)
 The Priests and purifying (18:1–19:22)
 Priests and Levites (18:1–32)
 The law about purifying (19:1–22)
 Conflicts (20:1–21:35)
 Miriam's death (20:1–13)
 Edom's refusal and Aaron's death (20:14–29)
 Journey to Moab (21:1–35)
 The Plains of Moab (22:1–36:13)
 Balaam (22:1–24:25)
 Baal Peor (25:1–18)
 The second counting (26:1–65)
 Inheritance rights for daughters (27:1–11)
 Joshua succeeds Moses (27:12–23)
 Offerings and women's vows (28:1–30:16)
 Midianite war (31:1–54)
 Across the Jordan (32:1–42)
 The people set up camp (33:1–56)
 Land west of the Jordan; cities for Levites and cities of refuge (34:1–35:34)
 Female heirs marry (36:1–13)

What is the Book of Numbers about?

The Book of Numbers tells about the people of Israel as they traveled from Mount Sinai in the wilderness to the Jordan River. While traveling, the Israelites became discouraged. So they rebelled against the leaders whom God had given them. At the Jordan River, the people of Israel refused to enter the Promised Land. Because the Israelites were afraid and did not trust God, he delayed their entry into the Promised Land for forty years (13:1–14:45). (See: [Promised Land](#))

How should the title of this book be translated?

The title of this book, “Numbers,” refers to when the number of the Israelites was counted. The people of the project language may already be familiar with the name “Numbers” from other Bible versions. If not, the translator could consider a clearer name for the book, such as “The Counting of the People of Israel.” (See: [census](#))

Who wrote the Book of Numbers?

The writers of both the Old and New Testament present Moses as being very involved with writing the Book of Numbers. However, at a later time, scribes and priests probably put the book into its present form. They may have included text from other sources. One such source was “the scroll of the Wars of Yahweh” (21:14).

Part 2: Important Religious and Cultural Concepts

How does Numbers present the idea of the whole community being responsible when only a few people sinned?

The people understood and assumed that God would punish the whole community of Israel if some of the people rebelled against him. God did often punish the entire nation when some of them sinned. All of the people in the ancient Near East would have understood and expected this. However, Moses and Aaron prayed for God to punish only those who were guilty.

Part 3: Important Translation Issues

Why does Moses speak using third person pronouns about himself?

When an author wrote about something he was involved in, it was common for him to use the pronoun “he” instead of “I,” or “they” instead of “we.” The translator may decide to use the project’s normal pronouns instead.

Numbers 1

Numbers 1 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The ULT sets the lines in 1:5-15 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are long lists.

Census

They counted how many men of military age were in each tribe of Israel. These men would also become the heads of families. It is possible the numbers in this chapter are rounded to the nearest 100.

Numbers 1:1

Yahweh

This is the name of God that he revealed to his people in the Old Testament. See the translationWord page about Yahweh concerning how to translate this.

the first day of the second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the second year

“year 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [in the wilderness of](#)
- [Egypt](#)

ULT

¹ Then [Yahweh](#) spoke to [Moses](#) in the tent of [meeting in the wilderness of Sinai](#) on 1 of the second month in the second year of their going out from the land of [Egypt](#), saying,

Numbers 1:2

Count them by name

This means to count the men by recording their names. Alternate translation: "Count them, recording each man's name" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- the sons of
- Israel
- according to their clans
- according to the house of
- their fathers
- names

ULT

2 "Lift up the heads of all the congregation of the sons of Israel, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of names, every male according to their skulls,

Numbers 1:3

twenty years old

“20 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

record the number of men in their armed groups

This refers to assigning the men to their military divisions.

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [one who goes out](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [must count](#)

ULT

³ [from a son of](#) 20 years and upward,
every [one who goes out](#) to war [in Israel](#).
You [and Aaron must count](#) them
according to their armies.

Numbers 1:4

a clan head

“a leader of a clan”

serve with you

“help you”

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe
- head
- of the house of
- his fathers

ULT

⁴ And with you will be a man, a man of the tribe. He will be the head man of the house of his fathers.

Numbers 1:5

Elizur ... Shedeur

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are the names of
- will stand
- the son of

ULT

⁵ And these are the names of the men who will stand with you: Of Reuben, Elizur the son of Shedeur,

Numbers 1:6

Shelumiel ... Zurishaddai

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁶ of Simeon, Shelumiel [the son of](#) Zurishaddai;

Numbers 1:7

General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of Judah
- the son of

ULT

⁷ of Judah, Nahshon the son of Amminadab;

Numbers 1:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Issachar
- the son of

ULT

⁸ of Issachar, Nethanel the son of Zuar;

Numbers 1:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of

ULT

⁹ of Zebulun, Eliab [the son of Helon](#);

Numbers 1:10

General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the sons of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- Joseph

ULT

10 of the sons of Joseph: of Ephraim, Elishama the son of Ammihud; of Manasseh, Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur;

Numbers 1:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Benjamin
- the son of

ULT

¹¹ of Benjamin, Abidan the son of Gideoni;

Numbers 1:12

General Information:

Yahweh continues to list the leaders of the tribes to Moses. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)

ULT

¹² of Dan, Ahiezer [the son of](#) Ammishaddai;

Numbers 1:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Asher
- the son of

ULT

¹³ of Asher, Pagiel the son of Okran;

Numbers 1:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of

ULT

¹⁴ of Gad, Eliasaph [the son of](#) Deuel;

Numbers 1:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of Naphtali
- the son of

ULT

¹⁵ of Naphtali, Ahira the son of Enan.”

Numbers 1:16

the men appointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the men whom Yahweh appointed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their fathers](#)
- [were the heads of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

16 These were the called ones of the congregation, the leaders of the tribes of [their fathers](#). They [were the heads of](#) the thousands of [Israel](#).

Numbers 1:17

took these men

“gathered these men together”

who were recorded by name

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whose names they had recorded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁷ And [Moses and Aaron](#) took these men, who were designated [by names](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [by names](#)

Numbers 1:18

the first day of the second month

This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of April on Western calendars. See how you translated this in [Numbers 1:1](#). (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Then each man ... identified his ancestry. He had to name the clans and families descended from his ancestors

The second sentence means basically the same thing as the first and is added for clarification. (See: [Parallelism](#))

He had to name

Here “name” means to “say.” Alternate translation: “Each man had to say” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they assembled](#)
- [their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [from a son of](#)

ULT

18 And [they assembled](#) all the congregation on 1 of the second month. And they declared their ancestry in accordance with [their clans, according to the house of their fathers](#), by the number of [the names, from a son of 20](#) years and upward, according to their skulls.

Numbers 1:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And he counted them
- in the wilderness of
- Yahweh
- had commanded
- Moses

ULT

¹⁹ And he counted them in the wilderness of Sinai, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

Numbers 1:20

were counted all the names

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they counted all the names” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

able to go to war

“who was able to go to war”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- from a son of
- Reuben
- one who goes out
- the firstborn of
- Israel
- their generations
- according to their clans
- according to the house of
- their fathers
- the names

ULT

20 And the sons of Reuben, the firstborn of Israel, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, according to their skulls, every male from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,

Numbers 1:21

46,500 men

“forty-six thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Reuben](#)

ULT

²¹ [their counted ones of the tribe of Reuben](#) were 46,500.

Numbers 1:22

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [his counted ones](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

²² [Of the sons of Simeon, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, his counted ones](#) by the number of [the names](#), according to their skulls, every male [from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out](#) to war,

Numbers 1:23

59,300 men

“fifty-nine thousand three hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)

ULT

²³ [their counted ones of the tribe of](#)
Simeon were 59,300.

Numbers 1:24

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

²⁴ [Of the sons of Gad, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:25

45,650 men

“forty-five thousand six hundred and fifty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Gad](#)

ULT

²⁵ [their counted ones of the tribe of Gad](#) were 45,650.

Numbers 1:26

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

²⁶ [Of the sons of Judah, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:27

74,600 men

“seventy-four thousand six hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

²⁷ [their counted ones of the tribe of Judah](#) were 74,600.

Numbers 1:28

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

²⁸ [Of the sons of Issachar, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:29

54,400 men

“fifty-four thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Issachar](#)

ULT

²⁹ [their counted ones of the tribe of Issachar](#) were 54,400.

Numbers 1:30

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

³⁰ [Of the sons of Zebulun, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:31

57,400 men

“fifty-seven thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)

ULT

³¹ [their counted ones of the tribe of Zebulun](#) were 57,400.

Numbers 1:32

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [one who goes out](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)

ULT

³² [Of the sons of Joseph: of the sons of Ephraim, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:33

40,500 men

“forty thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

ULT

³³ [their counted ones of the tribe of Ephraim](#) were 40,500.

Numbers 1:34

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

³⁴ [Of the sons of Manasseh, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:35

32,200 men

“thirty-two thousand two hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)

ULT

³⁵ [their counted ones of the tribe of](#)
Manasseh were 32,200.

Numbers 1:36

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

³⁶ [Of the sons of Benjamin, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:37

35,400 men

“thirty-five thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

ULT

³⁷ [their counted ones of the tribe of Benjamin](#) were 35,400.

Numbers 1:38

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

³⁸ [Of the sons of Dan, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:39

They counted 62,700

“They counted sixty-two thousand seven hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)

ULT

³⁹ [their counted ones of the tribe of Dan](#) were 62,700.

Numbers 1:40

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ [Of the sons of Asher, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:41

They counted 41,500

“They counted forty-one thousand five hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Asher](#)

ULT

⁴¹ [their counted ones of the tribe of Asher](#) were 41,500.

Numbers 1:42

were counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “they counted all the names of each and every man ... clans and families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Of the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [their generations](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [the names](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

⁴² [Of the sons of Naphtali, their generations according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers, by the number of the names, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war,](#)

Numbers 1:43

They counted 53,400

“They counted fifty-three thousand four hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

ULT

⁴³ [their counted ones of the tribe of Naphtali](#) were 53,400.

Numbers 1:44

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- and Aaron
- had counted
- Israel
- for the house of
- his fathers

ULT

⁴⁴ These were the counted ones, whom Moses and Aaron had counted, and the leaders of Israel, 12 men, they were one man for the house of his fathers.

Numbers 1:45

So all the men of Israel ... were counted in each of their families

The phrase “were counted” can be stated in active form. This long phrase is repeated multiple times in the census. See how you translated it in [Numbers 1:20](#). Alternate translation: “So they counted all the men of Israel ... in each of their families” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the counted ones of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [one who goes out](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ And they were all [the counted ones of the sons of Israel according to the house of their fathers, from a son of 20 years and upward, every one who goes out to war in Israel.](#)

Numbers 1:46

603,550 men

“six hundred and three thousand five hundred and fifty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁴⁶ And all the counted ones were 603,550.

Numbers 1:47

the men who were descended from Levi were not counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses and Aaron did not count the men who were descended from Levi” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁴⁷ And the Levites according to the tribe of their father were not counted in the midst of them.

who were descended from Levi

In some languages this is a passive verb. If needed, this can be written differently. Alternate translation: “who were from the tribe of Levi” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the Levites
- according to the tribe of
- their father
- were...counted

Numbers 1:48

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁴⁸ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 1:49

must not count the tribe of Levi

Here the “tribe of Levi” refers to all of the men in the tribe of Levi.
Alternate translation: “must not count the men of the tribe of Levi”
(See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#)
- [you must...count](#)
- [their heads](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

49 “Only the tribe of [Levi](#) [you must](#) not [count](#). And you must not lift up [their heads](#) in the midst of [the sons of Israel](#).”

Numbers 1:50

the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it.

everything in it

Here “it” refers to the tabernacle.

The Levites must carry the tabernacle

It was their job to carry the tabernacle when they traveled. Alternate translation: “When you travel, the Levites must carry the tabernacle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

make their camp around it

This means that they were to set up their tents around the tabernacle. Alternate translation: “set up their tents around it” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [appoint](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [the dwelling of](#)
- [the dwelling](#)
- [the dwelling](#)
- [they...must serve it](#)

ULT

50 And you, [appoint the Levites](#) over [the dwelling of](#) the testimony and over all its vessels and over all that belongs to it. They themselves must carry [the dwelling](#) and all its vessels, and [they](#) themselves [must serve it](#). And they must camp around [the dwelling](#).

Numbers 1:51

When the tabernacle is to be set up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When it is time to set up the tabernacle” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Any stranger ... must be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Any stranger ... must die” or “You must kill any stranger who comes near the tabernacle” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

51 And when [the dwelling](#) sets out, [the Levites](#) must take it down. And when [the dwelling](#) camps, [the Levites](#) must raise it up. And the stranger who comes near must be put to death.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the dwelling](#)
- [the dwelling](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [the Levites](#)

Numbers 1:52

the banner

a large flag

his armed group

“his military division”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

⁵² And the sons of Israel will camp, a man at his camp, and a man at his banner, according to their armies.

Numbers 1:53

the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it. See how you translated this in [Numbers 1:50](#).

so that my anger does not come upon the people of Israel

Here Yahweh speaks of not punishing the Israelites as his anger not coming upon them. The phrase “come upon” refers to his anger being applied to them. Alternate translation: “so that in my anger I do not punish the people of Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the Levites](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [the dwelling of](#)
- [the dwelling of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

53 [And the Levites](#) must camp around [the dwelling of](#) the testimony and wrath will not be upon the congregation of [the sons of Israel](#). And [the Levites](#) must keep the keeping of [the dwelling of](#) the testimony.”

Numbers 1:54

Yahweh commanded through Moses

Yahweh had commanded Moses everything that the Israelites were to do, and then Moses had commanded the Israelites. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [commanded](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ And [the sons of Israel](#) did according to all that [Yahweh commanded Moses](#), so they did.

Numbers 2

Numbers 2 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Camping

Moses told each tribe where to camp. They were each given a specific area in which to stay.

Numbers 2:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,

Numbers 2:2

around his standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards was represented by a banner.

with the banners of their fathers’ houses

Each extended family also had a banner under with the camp, which was within the area designated for their standard.

banners

A banner is a large flag.

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- Israel
- of the house of
- their fathers
- meeting

ULT

2 “The sons of Israel will camp, a man at his banner, with the sign of the house of their fathers. They will camp away from the front, around the tent of meeting.

Numbers 2:3

under their standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together, and was represented by a banner. See how you translated “standards” in [Numbers 2:2](#).

Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Judah
- Judah
- of the sons of...is
- the son of

ULT

³ And the ones camping to the east, to the sunrise, will be the banner of the camp of [Judah](#) according to their armies. And the leader [of the sons of Judah is](#) Nahshon [the son of](#) Amminadab.

Numbers 2:4

74600

“seventy-four thousand six hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

ULT

⁴ And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 74,600.

Numbers 2:5

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the...Issachar](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁵ And the ones camping beside him are the tribe of [Issachar](#). And the leader of [the sons of Issachar](#) is Nethanel [the son of Zuar](#).

Numbers 2:6

division

This is a military term for a large group of soldiers. Each tribe was its own "division."

54,400 men

"fifty-four thousand four hundred men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his counted ones](#)

ULT

⁶ And his army [and his counted ones](#) are 54,400.

Numbers 2:7

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of...is](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁷ The tribe of Zebulun: and the leader of [the sons of Zebulun is Eliab the son of Helon](#).

Numbers 2:8

57400

“fifty-seven thousand four hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “57,400 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

⁸ And his army [and his counted ones](#) are 57,400.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his counted ones](#)

Numbers 2:9

All the number ... is 186,400

“All the number ... is one hundred and eighty-six thousand four hundred.” This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Judah. Alternate translation: “The number of the men camped under the standard of Judah is 186,400” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁹ All the counted ones of the camp of [Judah](#) are 186,400 according to their armies. They will set out first.

the camp of Judah

This refers to the three tribes that camp east of the tent of meeting: the tribes of Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

They will set out first

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Judah will start walking out before the other tribes do. Alternate translation: “When travelling, the camp of Judah will start walking first” or “When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave first” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Judah](#)

Numbers 2:10

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

under their standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards were represented by a banner. See how you translated “standards” in [Numbers 2:2](#).

Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Reuben](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [son of](#)

ULT

10 The banner of the camp of [Reuben](#) will be to the south of their armies. And the leader [of the sons of Reuben](#) is Elizur the [son of](#) Shedeur.

Numbers 2:11

46500

“forty-six thousand five hundred.” This refers to the number of men.
Alternate translation: “46,500 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and his counted ones](#)

ULT

11 And his army [and his counted ones](#) are 46,500.

Numbers 2:12

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

12 And the ones camping beside him will be the tribe of Simeon. And the leader [of the sons of](#) Simeon is Shelumiel [the son of](#) Zurishaddai.

Numbers 2:13

59300

“Fifty-nine thousand three hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “59,300 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

¹³ And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 59,300.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

Numbers 2:14

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Gad](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

14 And the tribe of [Gad](#): and the leader of the sons of [Gad](#) is Eliasaph [the son of](#) Reuel.

Numbers 2:15

45650

“forty-five thousand six hundred and fifty.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “45,650 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

ULT

15 And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 45,650.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

Numbers 2:16

The number of all the men ... is 151,450

“The number of all the men ... is one hundred and fifty-one thousand four hundred and fifty.” This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Reuben. Alternate translation: “The number of all the men camped under the standard of Reuben, according to their divisions, is 151,450” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

16 All the counted ones of the camp of [Reuben](#) are 151,450 according to their armies. And they will set out second.

They will set out second

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Reuben will start walking out after the camp of Judah goes out. Alternate translation: “When travelling, the camp of Reuben will start walking second” or “When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave next” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Reuben](#)

Numbers 2:17

the tent of meeting must go out ... in the middle of all the camps

This means that the tent of meeting must be carried by the Levites in the middle of the tribes as they travel.

They must go out

“They” refers to the twelve tribes.

by his banner

Each man does not have his own personal banner; rather, this refers to the banner belonging to his tribe. Alternate translation: “by his tribe’s banner” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [meeting](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [his hand](#)

ULT

¹⁷ And the tent of [meeting](#) will set out from the camp of [the Levites](#) in the midst of the camps. As they came so will they set out, a man on [his hand](#), according to their banners.

Numbers 2:18

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

under their standard

The “standards” were four larger groups that the tribes were divided into. Each standard was commanded to camp together. The standards were represented by a banner. See how you translated “standards” in [Numbers 2:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Ephraim
- Ephraim
- of the sons of
- the son of

ULT

18 The banner of the camp of [Ephraim](#) according to their armies will be to the west. And the leader [of the sons of Ephraim](#) is Elishama [the son of Ammihud](#).

Numbers 2:19

40500

“Forty thousand five hundred.” This refers to the number of men.
Alternate translation: “40,500 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

ULT

19 And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 40,500.

Numbers 2:20

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Next to them

This means that the tribe of Manasseh will set out next, after the tribe of Ephraim.

Translation Words - ULT

- of the sons of
- the son of

ULT

20 And beside him is the tribe of Manasseh. And the leader of the sons of Manasseh is Gamaliel the son of Pedahzur.

Numbers 2:21

32200

“Thirty-two thousand two hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “32,200 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

ULT

²¹ And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 32,200.

Numbers 2:22

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:11](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Benjamin](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

²² And the tribe of [Benjamin](#): and the leader [of the sons of Benjamin](#) is Abidan [the son of](#) Gideoni.

Numbers 2:23

35400

“Thirty-five thousand four hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “35,400 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

ULT

²³ And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 35,400.

Numbers 2:24

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

²⁴ All the counted ones of the camp of [Ephraim](#) are 108,100 according to their armies. And they will set out third.

All those numbered...108,100

“All those numbered ... one hundred and eight thousand one hundred.” This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Ephraim. Alternate translation: “The number of the men camped under the standard of Ephraim is 108,100” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

They will set out third

This means that when the Israelite camp moves, the camp of Ephraim will start walking out after the camp of Judah and the camp of Reuben go out. Alternate translation: “When travelling, the camp of Ephraim will start walking third” or “When the Israelites leave, those tribes will leave next” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Ephraim](#)

Numbers 2:25

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

the divisions of the camp of Dan

The this refers to the divisions of Dan, Asher, and Naphthali that are under the standard of Dan. Alternate translation: "the divisions that camp under the standard of Dan" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:12](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- of the sons of
- the son of

ULT

²⁵ The banner of the camp of Dan will be to the north according to their armies. And the leader of the sons of Dan is Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.

Numbers 2:26

62700

“Sixty-two thousand seven hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “62,700 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

ULT

²⁶ And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 62,700.

Numbers 2:27

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [Numbers](#))

Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asher](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

27 And the ones camping beside him will be the tribe of [Asher](#). And the leader of the sons of [Asher](#) is Pagiel the son of Okran.

Numbers 2:28

41500

“forty-one thousand five hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “41,500 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

ULT

²⁸ And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 41,500.

Numbers 2:29

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names and Numbers](#))

Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Naphtali](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

²⁹ And the tribe of [Naphtali](#): and the leader [of the sons of Naphtali](#) is Ahira [the son of](#) Enan.

Numbers 2:30

53400

“fifty-three thousand four hundred.” This refers to the number of men. Alternate translation: “53,400 men” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and their counted ones](#)

ULT

³⁰ And his army [and their counted ones](#) are 53,400.

Numbers 2:31

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where each tribe and its army will camp around the tent of meeting. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

All those numbered...157,600

“All those numbered ... one hundred and fifty-seven thousand six hundred.” This number includes all of the men in the tribes that camped under the standard of Dan. Alternate translation: “The number of the men camped under the standard of Dan is 157,600” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³¹ All the counted ones of the camp of Dan are 157,600. They will set out last, according to their banners.”

Numbers 2:32

All those counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses and Aaron counted them all” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by their divisions

Here “their” refers to the people of Israel.

are 603,550

“are six hundred and three thousand five hundred and fifty” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [are the counted ones of](#)
- [the counted ones of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [according to the houses of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

ULT

³² These [are the counted ones of the sons of Israel according to the houses of their fathers](#). All [the counted ones of the camps according to their armies](#) are 603,550.

Numbers 2:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- they did...count
- had commanded
- And...the Levites
- the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

³³ And they did not count the Levites in the midst of the sons of Israel, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

Numbers 2:34

They went out from the camp

This refers to when they would travel to another place. Alternate translation: "When they traveled, they went out from the camp" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- commanded
- Moses
- according to his clans
- the house of
- his fathers

ULT

³⁴ And [the sons of Israel](#) did according to all that [Yahweh commanded Moses](#). So they camped according to their banners and so they set out, a man [according to his clans](#), in accordance with [the house of his fathers](#).

Numbers 3

Numbers 3 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The tribe of Levi

The Levites were given a special function in Israel. They belonged to or were specially dedicated to serve Yahweh. They were to be priests and because of this were held to a higher standard than the rest of Israel. Only one of Aaron's sons survived because the others offered improper sacrifices. This tribe had a lot of responsibility during this time. (See: [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Numbers 3:1

Now

Here the author uses the word “now” to shift to telling a new historical account.

Translation Words - ULT

- are the generations of
- Aaron
- and Moses
- Moses
- Yahweh

ULT

¹ And these are the generations of Aaron and Moses in the day Yahweh spoke with Moses on the mountain of Sinai.

Numbers 3:2

Nadab the firstborn

“Nadab, who was the firstborn”

Nadab ... Abihu ... Ithamar

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [are the names of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Eleazar](#)

ULT

² And these [are the names of the sons of Aaron](#): Nadab the firstborn and Abihu, [Eleazar](#) and Ithamar.

Numbers 3:3

the priests who were anointed and who were ordained

This can be stated in active form Alternate translation: “the priests whom Moses anointed and ordained” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are the names of
- the sons of
- Aaron
- the priests
- to serve as priest
- hand

ULT

³ These are the names of the sons of Aaron, the priests, the ones who were anointed, whose hand he filled to serve as priest.

Numbers 3:4

Nadab ... Abihu ... Ithamar

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 3:2](#).

fell dead before Yahweh

The phrase "fell dead" means to suddenly die. Alternate translation: "suddenly died before Yahweh" (See: [Idiom](#))

before Yahweh

This refers to Yahweh's presence, meaning that Yahweh saw everything that happened. Alternate translation: "in Yahweh's presence" (See: [Metonymy](#))

they offered to him unacceptable fire

Here the word "fire" is used to refer to "burning incense." Alternate translation: "they burned an incense offering in a way that Yahweh did not approve of" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their father](#)
- [fire](#)
- [in the wilderness of](#)
- [And sons](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [And...served as priest](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

⁴ And Nadab [died](#) and Abihu before the face of [Yahweh](#) when they offered unfamiliar [fire](#) before the face of [Yahweh in the wilderness of Sinai](#). [And sons](#) were not belonging to them. And [Eleazar served as priest](#) and Ithamar with [the face of Aaron their father](#).

Numbers 3:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁵ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 3:6

Bring the tribe of Levi

Here the word “tribe” refers to the men in the tribe. Alternate translation: “Bring the men of the tribe of Levi” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the priest](#)

ULT

⁶ “Bring near the tribe of [Levi](#) and stand it before the face of [Aaron the priest](#).
And they shall serve him.

Numbers 3:7

on behalf of

“for.” This means to do something for someone else, as a representative for them.

Translation Words - ULT

- meeting
- the dwelling

ULT

⁷ And they shall keep his keeping and the keeping of all the congregation before the face of the tent of meeting, to serve the service of the dwelling.

Numbers 3:8

help the tribes of Israel

Here the “tribes of Israel” refer to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “help the people of Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

they must help the tribes of Israel to carry out the tabernacle service

The phrase “carry out” means to “serve.” Alternate translation: “they must help the tribes of Israel by serving in the tabernacle” (See: [Idiom](#))

tabernacle service

“work of the tabernacle”

Translation Words - ULT

- [meeting](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the dwelling](#)

ULT

⁸ And they shall keep all the vessels of the tent of [meeting](#) and the keeping of [the sons of Israel](#), to serve the service of [the dwelling](#).

Numbers 3:9

You must give

“You” refers to Moses.

They are wholly given

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I have given them entirely” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [to Aaron](#)
- [and to his sons](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁹ And you shall give [the Levites to Aaron and to his sons](#). They are given, given to him from with [the sons of Israel](#).

Numbers 3:10

any foreigner who comes near must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must kill any foreigner who comes near” or “any foreigner who comes near must die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

but any foreigner who comes near

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “but any foreigner who comes near the tabernacle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you shall appoint](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [his sons](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [you shall appoint Aaron](#) and [his sons](#), and they shall keep their priesthood. And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death.”

Numbers 3:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 3:12

Look

“Listen” or “Pay attention to what I am about to tell you”

I have taken the Levites

“I have chosen the Levites”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- the Levites
- the sons of
- from...sons of
- Israel
- the...Israel
- firstborn

ULT

¹² “And I, behold, I have taken the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel instead of every firstborn, the opener of the womb from the sons of Israel. And the Levites are for me.

Numbers 3:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- firstborn
- firstborn
- firstborn
- Egypt
- I set apart
- in Israel
- from human
- livestock
- am Yahweh

ULT

¹³ For every firstborn belongs to me. In the day of my striking down every firstborn in the land of Egypt I set apart for me every firstborn in Israel, from human up to livestock. They are for me. I am Yahweh."

Numbers 3:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- in the wilderness of

ULT

¹⁴ And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, saying,

Numbers 3:15

Count the descendants

Yahweh was commanding Moses to only count the male descendants. Alternate translation: "Count the male descendants" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Count
- You shall count them
- the sons of
- from a son of
- Levi
- according to the house of
- their fathers
- according to their clans

ULT

15 "Count the sons of Levi according to the house of their fathers, according to their clans. You shall count them, every male from a son of a month and upward."

Numbers 3:16

following the word of Yahweh, just as he was commanded to do

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize that he obeyed Yahweh. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [And...counted](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [he was commanded](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And [Moses counted](#) them in accordance with the mouth of [Yahweh](#), just as [he was commanded](#).

Numbers 3:17

General Information:

This is a list of the descendants of Levi. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [by their names](#)

ULT

17 And these were [the sons of Levi by their names](#): Gershon, and Kohath, and Merari.

Numbers 3:18

The clans coming from

Here the author speaks of “descending” as if it were “coming.”

Alternate translation: “The clans descending from” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are the names of
- the sons of
- according to their clans

ULT

18 And these are the names of the sons of Gershon according to their clans: Libni and Shimei.

Numbers 3:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of...were
- according to their clans

ULT

¹⁹ And the sons of Kohath according to their clans were Amram and Izhar, Hebron and Uzziel.

Numbers 3:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And the sons of...were
- according to their clans
- the clans of
- the Levites
- according to the house of
- their fathers

ULT

²⁰ And the sons of Merari according to their clans were Mahli and Mushi. These are they, the clans of the Levites according to the house of their fathers.

Numbers 3:21

come from Gershon

Here the author speaks of “descending” as if it were “coming.”
Alternate translation: “descend from Gershon” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Libnites ... Shimeites ... Gershonites

“Libnites” and “Shimeites” are the name of clans, named after the head of their family. The “Gershonites” is the name of people who descended from Gershon. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clan of](#)
- [and the clan](#)
- [the clans of](#)

ULT

²¹ Of Gershon [were the clan of](#) the Libnite [and the clan](#) of the Shimeite. These are they, [the clans of](#) the Gershonite.

Numbers 3:22

All the males from a month old and older were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses counted all the males from a month old and older" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

7500

"seventy-five hundred" or "seven thousand five hundred" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Their counted ones](#)
- [their counted ones](#)
- [from a son of](#)

ULT

²² [Their counted ones](#) by the number of every male [from a son of](#) a month and upward, [their counted ones](#) were 7,500.

Numbers 3:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The clans of
- the dwelling

ULT

²³ The clans of the Gershonites were to camp behind the dwelling, to the west.

Numbers 3:24

Eliasaph ... Lael

These are the names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the house of](#)
- [the father](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

²⁴ And the leader of [the house of the father](#) of the Gershonite was Eliasaph [the son of](#) Lael.

Numbers 3:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- meeting
- meeting
- the dwelling
- and the curtain of

ULT

²⁵ And the keeping of the sons of Gershon in the tent of meeting was the dwelling and the tent, its covering, and the curtain of the opening of the tent of meeting,

Numbers 3:26

the courtyard hangings

“the curtains in the courtyard”

the courtyard that surrounds the sanctuary and the altar

“that is, the courtyard that surrounds the sanctuary and the altar”

Translation Words - ULT

- and the hangings of
- the curtains of
- the courtyard
- the courtyard
- the dwelling
- the altar

ULT

²⁶ and the hangings of the courtyard, and the curtains of the opening of the courtyard that is upon the dwelling and upon the altar all around, and its ropes for all its service.

Numbers 3:27

General Information:

This is a list of clans that descended from Kohath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- and the clan of
- and the clan of
- and the clan of
- the clans of

ULT

²⁷ And of Kohath were [the clan of](#) the Amramite, [and the clan of](#) the Izharite, [and the clan of](#) the Hebronite, [and the clan of](#) the Uzzielite. These are they, [the clans of](#) the Kohathite.

Numbers 3:28

8,600 males have been counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses counted 8,600 males” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

8,600 males

“eight thousand six hundred males” (See: [Numbers](#))

aged one month old and older

“from a month old and older”

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [were the keepers of](#)
- [the holy place](#)

ULT

²⁸ By the number of every male [from a son of](#) a month and upward, 8,600 [were the keepers of](#) the keeping of [the holy place](#).

Numbers 3:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The clans of
- the sons of
- the dwelling

ULT

²⁹ The clans of the sons of Kohath were to camp on the side of the dwelling, to the south.

Numbers 3:30

General Information:

These verses give us information about the clans that descended from Kohath. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- the father of
- the clans of
- the son of

ULT

³⁰ And the leader of [the house of the father of the clans of](#) the Kohathite was Elizaphan [the son of](#) Uzziel.

Numbers 3:31

the holy things that are used in their service

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the holy things which the priests use for service” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the box
- and the altar
- the holy place
- they serve
- and the covering

ULT

³¹ And their duty was the box, and the table, and the lampstand, and the altar, and the vessels of the holy place with which they serve, and the covering, and all its service.

Numbers 3:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- was Eleazar
- the son of
- Aaron
- the priest
- of the keepers of
- the holy place

ULT

³² And the leader of the leaders of the Levites was Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, the oversight of the keepers of the keeping of the holy place.

Numbers 3:33

General Information:

This is a list of clans that descended from Merari. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- and the clan of
- the clans of

ULT

³³ Of Merari were the clan of the Mahlite and the clan of the Mushite. These are they, the clans of Merari.

Numbers 3:34

6,200 males have been counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses counted 6,200 males” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

6,200 males

“six thousand two hundred males” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their counted ones](#)
- [from a son of](#)

ULT

³⁴ [And their counted ones](#) by the number of every male [from a son of](#) a month and upward were 6,200.

Numbers 3:35

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the house of
- the father of
- the clans of
- the son of
- the dwelling

ULT

³⁵ And the leader of **the house of the father of the clans of** Merari was Zuriel **the son of** Abihail. They were to camp on the side of **the dwelling**, to the north.

Numbers 3:36

the framing

This to the panels that they made by joining together smaller pieces of wood.

crossbars

These are support beams that give stability to the structure.

posts

A post is a strong piece of wood set upright and used as a support.

bases

The bases held the posts in place.

hardware

This means everything used to join the crossbars, posts, and bases together.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the dwelling
- and its pillars

ULT

³⁶ And the oversight of the duty of the sons of Merari was the boards of the dwelling, and its bars, and its pillars, and its bases, and all its vessels, and all its service,

Numbers 3:37

with their sockets

Here “their” refers to the “pillars and posts.”

sockets, pegs, and ropes

These are all items used secure the pillars and posts into place.

Translation Words - ULT

- and the pillars of
- the courtyard

ULT

³⁷ and the pillars of the courtyard all around, and their bases, and their pegs, and their ropes.

Numbers 3:38

his sons

Here “his” refers to Aaron

toward the sunrise

This is the east side of the tabernacle. Alternate translation: “on the east side, where the sun rises” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for the fulfillment of the duties

The word “fulfilment” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “to perform the duties” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must kill any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary” or “Any foreigner who approaches the sanctuary must die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the dwelling](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the keepers of](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

38 And the ones camping before the face of [the dwelling](#) to the east, before the face of the tent of [meeting](#) toward the sunrise were to be [Moses and Aaron and his sons, the keepers of the keeping of the holy place](#), according to the keeping of [the sons of Israel](#). And the stranger who comes near shall be put to death.

Numbers 3:39

twenty-two thousand men

“22,000 men” or “22,000 males” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the counted ones](#)
- [counted](#)
- [of the Levites](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [from a son of](#)

ULT

³⁹ All [the counted ones of the Levites](#) whom [Moses and Aaron counted](#) in accordance with the mouth of [Yahweh](#), [according to their clans](#), every male [from a son of](#) a month and upward, were 22,000.

Numbers 3:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Count
- firstborn
- of the sons of
- from a son of
- Israel
- their names

ULT

⁴⁰ And Yahweh said to Moses, “Count every firstborn male of the sons of Israel from a son of a month and upward. And lift up the number of their names.”

Numbers 3:41

the livestock of the Levites

This refers to all the Levites' livestock. Alternate translation: "you must take all the Levites' livestock" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- the Levites
- am Yahweh
- the firstborn of
- the firstborn
- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Israel
- the livestock of

ULT

41 And you shall take [the Levites](#) for me —I [am Yahweh](#)—instead of all [the firstborn of the sons of Israel](#), and [the livestock of the Levites](#) instead of all [the firstborn](#) among the livestock of [the sons of Israel](#)."

Numbers 3:42

all the firstborn people

“all the firstborn sons”

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- And...counted
- the firstborn of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- had commanded

ULT

⁴² And Moses counted all the firstborn of the sons of Israel, just as Yahweh had commanded him.

Numbers 3:43

22,273 men

“twenty-two thousand two hundred and seventy-three men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [firstborn](#)
- [the names](#)
- [from a son of](#)

ULT

⁴³ And it happened that every [firstborn](#) male by the number of [the names from a son of](#) a month and upward, according to their counted ones, was 22,273.

Numbers 3:44

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁴⁴ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 3:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- the Levites
- the Levites (2)
- the firstborn
- among the sons of
- Israel
- the livestock of
- their livestock
- am Yahweh

ULT

⁴⁵ "Take the Levites instead of all the firstborn among the sons of Israel, and the livestock of the Levites instead of their livestock (and the Levites shall belong to me—I am Yahweh),

Numbers 3:46

for the redemption of

The noun “redemption” can be translated with the verb “redeem.”
Alternate translation: “to redeem” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

273 firstborn

“two hundred and seventy-three firstborn” (See: [Numbers](#))

firstborn people of Israel

“firstborn sons of Israel”

five shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight equal to about 11 grams. Alternate translation: “about 55 grams of silver” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

who exceed the number of the Levites

This means that there are 273 more firstborn males among the other tribes of the Israelites than there are total number of Levite males.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ and the ransoms of the 273, the ones in excess over [the Levites](#) from the firstborn of [the sons of Israel](#).

Numbers 3:47

You must use the shekel of the sanctuary as your standard weight

This means that the shekel must weight the same as those in the sanctuary. Alternate translation: “You must use the weight of the shekels in the sanctuary as your stand weight” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

twenty gerahs

“20 gerahs.” A gerah is a unit of weight equal to about .57 kilograms. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the holy place](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ And you shall take five, five shekels for the skull. You shall take by the shekel of [the holy place](#), 20 gerahs is the shekel.

Numbers 3:48

the price of redemption that you paid

Here the word “price” refers to the shekels that Moses collected.
Alternate translation: “the money that you collected for their redemption” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the silver](#)
- [to Aaron](#)
- [and to his sons](#)

ULT

48 And you shall give [the silver to Aaron and to his sons](#), the ransom of the ones in excess among them.

Numbers 3:49

of redemption from

The noun "redemption" can be translated with the verb "redeem."
Alternate translation: "to redeem" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the silver of](#)
- [the Levites](#)

ULT

49 And [Moses](#) took [the silver of](#) the ransom from with the ones in excess over the ransomed ones of [the Levites](#).

Numbers 3:50

1,365 shekels

“one thousand three hundred and sixty-five shekels.” A shekel is 11 grams. Alternate translation: “about 15 kilograms of silver” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the firstborn of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)

ULT

⁵⁰ From with [the firstborn of the sons of Israel](#) he took [the silver](#): 1,365 by the shekel of [the holy place](#).

Numbers 3:51

the redemption money

This refers to the money that Moses collected.

to his sons

Here “his” refers to Aaron

he was told to do by Yahweh’s word, as Yahweh had commanded him

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

he was told to do by Yahweh’s word

Here “Yahweh’s word” refers to Yahweh who spoke to Moses. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that Yahweh had told him to do” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the silver of](#)
- [to Aaron](#)
- [and to his sons](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [had commanded](#)

ULT

⁵¹ And [Moses](#) gave [the silver of](#) the ransom [to Aaron and to his sons](#) in accordance with the mouth of [Yahweh](#), just as [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#).

Numbers 4

Numbers 4 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Counting the Levites by clans

Moses gave special instructions for each of the families of the tribes of Levi. Each family was given a special role in the ministry of the tabernacle. (See: [tabernacle](#))

Numbers 4:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,

Numbers 4:2

Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- the sons of
- the sons of (2)
- Levi
- according to their clans
- according to the house of
- their fathers

ULT

² "Lift up the head of the sons of Kohath from the midst of the sons of Levi, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers,

Numbers 4:3

thirty to fifty years old

“30 to 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

join the company

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting.

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

³ [from a son of](#) 30 years and upward, and up to [a son of](#) 50 years, all who come to the company to do work in the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 4:4

reserved for me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that I have specially selected for myself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- meeting
- the holy thing of
- the holy things

ULT

⁴ This is the service of the sons of Kohath in the tent of meeting, the holy thing of the holy things.

Numbers 4:5

When the camp prepares

Here “camp” refers to all of the people in the camp. Alternate translation: “When the people prepare” (See: [Metonymy](#))

to move forward

This refers to the people moving to another location. Alternate translation: “to move to another location” (See: [Idiom](#))

cover the ark of the testimony with it

The word “it” refers to the curtain that separated the most holy place from the holy place.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [the curtain of](#)
- [the covering](#)
- [the box of](#)

ULT

⁵ And [Aaron and his sons](#) shall come when the camp sets out. And they shall take down [the curtain of the covering](#) and with it they shall cover [the box of the testimony](#).

Numbers 4:6

insert the poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the ark so that the poles could be used to carry the ark. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "insert the poles into the rings on the ark's sides" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they shall place](#)

ULT

⁶ And they shall put upon it a cover of the skin of the porpoise. And they shall spread a cloth entirely of blue above. [And they shall place](#) its poles.

Numbers 4:7

the bread of the presence

This bread represents the presence of Yahweh. Alternate translation: “the bread of Yahweh’s presence” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

On it they must put

Here “it” refers to the blue cloth.

bowls, and jars for pouring

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “bowls and jars used to pour out drink offerings” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Bread must always continue to be

There must always be bread”

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the bread of](#)

ULT

⁷ And over the table of the face they shall spread a cloth of blue. And they shall put on it the dishes and the pans and the sacrificial bowls and the jars of the drink offering. [And the bread of continuity](#) shall be on it.

Numbers 4:8

They are to spread over them

Here the word “them” refers to “the dishes, spoons, bowls, and jars” (verse 7).

scarlet cloth

“red cloth”

insert poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the corners of the table so that the poles could be used to carry the table. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “insert poles into the rings at the corners of the table” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they shall place](#)

ULT

8 And they shall spread on them a cloth of the worms of scarlet. And they shall cover it with a covering of the skin of the porpoise. [And they shall place](#) its poles.

Numbers 4:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- its oil
- they serve

ULT

⁹ And they shall take a cloth of blue and cover the lampstand of the light source, and its lamps, and its snuffers, and its trays, and all the vessels of its oil with which they serve it.

Numbers 4:10

They must put ... into a covering of fine leather

“They must cover ... with fine leather”

they must put it on a carrying frame

“they must place all of these things on a frame for carrying them”

ULT

¹⁰ And they shall put it and all its vessels into the covering of the skin of the porpoise. And they shall put it on the carrying bar.

Numbers 4:11

insert the carrying poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the altar so they could be used to carry it. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "insert the carrying poles into the rings on the sides of the altar" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar of
- gold
- And they shall place

ULT

11 And upon [the altar of gold](#) they shall spread a cloth of blue. And they shall cover it with a covering of the skin of the porpoise. [And they shall place](#) its poles.

Numbers 4:12

the carrying frame

a wooden rectangle made with poles used to carry things

for the work in the holy place

The word “work” is an abstract noun that can be expressed with the verb “serving.” Alternate translation: “used when serving Yahweh in the holy place” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they serve](#)

ULT

12 And they shall take all the implements of the service with which [they serve](#) in the holy place and they shall put them into a cloth of blue. And they shall cover them with a covering of the skin of the porpoise. And they shall put it on the carrying bar.

Numbers 4:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the altar
- purple

ULT

¹³ And they shall remove the fatty ashes from **the altar** and they shall spread on it a cloth of **purple**.

Numbers 4:14

in the work of the altar

The word “work” is an abstract noun that can be expressed with the verb “serving.” Alternate translation: “when serving at the altar” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

insert the carrying poles

The poles were inserted into rings on the sides of the altar so they could be used to carry it. This can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “insert the carrying poles into the rings on the sides of the altar” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [they serve](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [And they shall place](#)

ULT

14 And they shall put on it all its implements with which [they serve](#) on it: the trays, the meat forks, and the shovels, and the bowls—all the implements of [the altar](#). And they shall spread on it a covering of the skin of the porpoise. [And they shall place](#) its poles.

Numbers 4:15

to carry the holy place

Here the holy place refers to all the items that make up the holy place that Aaron and his sons covered in cloth and skins. Alternate translation: “to carry all of the items of the holy place” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

when the camp moves forward

Here the word “camp” refers to all of the people in the camp. Alternate translation: “when the people move forward” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Kohath

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

the holy instruments

“the holy equipment”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [and his sons](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [the holy thing](#)
- [and die](#)
- [are the load of](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

15 And [Aaron and his sons](#) shall finish to cover [the holy place](#) and all the implements of [the holy place](#) when the camp sets out. And afterward [the sons of Kohath](#) shall come to carry them, and they shall not touch [the holy thing and die](#). These [are the load of the sons of Kohath](#) in the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 4:16

the oil for the light

Here the word “light” is used to refer to the “lamps.” Alternate translation: “the oil for the lamps” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the care of

Here the abstract noun “care” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “those who care for” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Eleazar](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [is the oil of](#)
- [and the grain offering of](#)
- [and the oil of](#)
- [the dwelling](#)

ULT

16 And the oversight of [Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest](#) is the oil of the light source, and the incense of the spices, [and the grain offering of](#) the continuity, [and the oil of](#) the anointment, the oversight of all [the dwelling](#) and all that is in it, with the holy place and with its implements.”

Numbers 4:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron

ULT

¹⁷ And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,

Numbers 4:18

to be removed from among the Levites

This phrase refers to the death of the Kohathites. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to do anything that will cause me to completely remove them from among the Levites” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

18 “Do not let [the tribe of the clans of the Kohathite](#) [be cut off](#) from the midst of [the Levites](#).”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the tribe of](#)
- [the clans of](#)
- [Do...let...be cut off](#)
- [the Levites](#)

Numbers 4:19

by doing this

This phrase refers to what Yahweh says next. Moses will protect the Kohathites by not allowing them to go in and see the holy place.

Translation Words - ULT

- and they will live
- the...holy thing
- holiest
- Aaron
- and his sons
- and place
- his load

ULT

19 And do this for them **and they will live** and not die when they approach the **holiest holy thing**. **Aaron and his sons** shall come **and place** them man by man in accordance with his service and according to **his load**.

Numbers 4:20

Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in [Numbers 3:27](#).

to his work, to his special tasks

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the holy place](#)
- [and die](#)

ULT

²⁰ And they shall not enter to look at [the holy place](#) like a gulp [and die](#).”

Numbers 4:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

²¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 4:22

of the descendants of Gershon

This refers only to men. Alternate translation: “of the male descendants of Gershon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Gershon

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- the sons of
- according to the house of
- their fathers
- according to their clans

ULT

²² “Lift up the head of the sons of Gershon, even them, according to the house of their fathers, according to their clans.”

Numbers 4:23

thirty years old to fifty years old

“30 years old to 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [You shall count](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

²³ [You shall count](#) them [from a son of](#) 30 years and upward, up to [a son of](#) 50 years, every one who comes to serve service, to work work in the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 4:24

This is the work of the clans ... when they serve and what they carry

This sentence is a description that tells us what the following verses are about.

ULT

²⁴ This is the work of [the clans of](#) the Gershonite, for working and for a load.

Gershonites

This refers to the descendants of Gershon. See how you translated this in [Numbers 3:21](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the clans of](#)

Numbers 4:25

the covering of fine leather hides that is on it

This is an outer covering that is placed on top of the tent of meeting's covering. Alternate translation: "the covering of fine leather hides that is placed on top of that" or "the outer covering made of fine leather hides" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the curtains of
- the covering of
- the dwelling
- meeting
- meeting

ULT

²⁵ And they shall carry [the curtains of the dwelling](#) and the tent of [meeting](#), its covering, the covering of porpoise which is on it above, and [the covering of the opening of the tent of meeting](#),

Numbers 4:26

Whatever should be done with these things

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Whatever work that these things require” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the hangings of
- the covering of
- the courtyard
- the courtyard
- the gate of
- the dwelling
- the altar

ULT

²⁶ and the hangings of the courtyard, and the covering of the opening of the gate of the courtyard that is beside the dwelling and beside the altar all around, and their ropes, and all the implements of their work, and all that is to be done for them. And they shall work.

Numbers 4:27

must direct all the service of the descendants of the Gershonites

“must tell the descendants of the Gershonites how they are to serve Yahweh in the tent of meeting”

Translation Words - ULT

- Aaron
- and his sons
- the sons of
- their load
- their load
- And you shall appoint

ULT

²⁷ In accordance with the mouth of Aaron and his sons will be all the work of the sons of the Gershonite, according to all their load, and according to all their work. And you shall appoint for them by duty all their load.

Numbers 4:28

This is the service of the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites for the tent of meeting

Here the word “service” is an abstract noun that can be expressed by a verb. Here the word “This” refers to what Yahweh just said.

Alternate translation: “This is how the clans of the descendants of the Gershonites will serve in the tent of meeting” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

²⁸ This is the work of [the clans of the sons of](#) the Gershonite in the tent of [meeting](#) and their duty [in the hand of](#) Ithamar [the son of Aaron the priest](#).

Ithamar

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the clans of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [in the hand of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the priest](#)

Numbers 4:29

the descendants of Merari

This refers only to men. Alternate translation: “the male descendants of Merari” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Merari

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

order them

“list them”

Translation Words - ULT

- You shall count
- the sons of
- according to their clans
- according to the house of
- their fathers

ULT

29 You shall count them, the sons of Merari according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers.

Numbers 4:30

thirty years old ... fifty years old

“30 years old...50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

join the company and serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [You shall count them](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

³⁰ [You shall count them from a son of 30](#) years and upward, and up to [a son of 50](#) years, every one who comes to the company, to serve the service of the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 4:31

This is their responsibility

“This” refers to what Yahweh says next.

crossbars, posts, and sockets

These are all parts of the framing of the tabernacle. See how you translated all of these parts in [Numbers 3:36-37](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [their load](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [the dwelling](#)
- [and its pillars](#)

ULT

³¹ And this is the duty of [their load](#) according to all their service in the tent of [meeting](#): the boards of [the dwelling](#), and its bars, [and its pillars](#), and its bases,

Numbers 4:32

their sockets, pegs, and their ropes, with all their hardware

Here “their” refers to the posts of the court.

sockets, pegs, and their ropes

These are all parts of the framing of the tabernacle. See how you translated all of these parts in [Numbers 3:36-37](#).

List by name the articles they must carry

“List by each man’s name the articles he must carry”

Translation Words - ULT

- [and the pillars of](#)
- [the courtyard](#)
- [you shall appoint](#)
- [their load](#)

ULT

³² [and the pillars of the courtyard](#) all around, and their bases, and their pegs, and their ropes, for all their implements and for all their work. And by names [you shall appoint](#) the implements of the duty of [their load](#).

Numbers 4:33

under the direction of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest

The word “direction” is an abstract noun that is expressed by a verb. Alternate translation: “as Ithamar son of Aaron the priest directs them” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Ithamar

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the clans of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the priest](#)

ULT

³³ This is the service of [the clans of the sons of Merari](#) for all their service in the tent of [meeting, by the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest](#).

Numbers 4:34

the descendants of the Kohathites

The refers to men. Alternate translation: “the male descendants of the Kohathites” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in [Numbers 3:27](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [And...counted](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [their fathers](#)

ULT

³⁴ And [Moses and Aaron](#) and the leaders of the congregation [counted the sons of](#) the Kohathite [according to their clans](#) and according to the house of [their fathers](#),

Numbers 4:35

thirty years old ... fifty years old

“30 years old...50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

everyone who would join the company

Here the word “would” does not mean that the men “chose” to join the company but rather that they were “assigned” to the company. Alternate translation: “everyone who was assigned to join the company” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [for service](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

³⁵ [from a son of](#) 30 years and upward, and up to [a son of](#) 50 years, every one who comes to the company [for service](#) in the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 4:36

2,750 men

“two thousand seven hundred and fifty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [according to their clans](#)

ULT

³⁶ And [their counted ones according to their clans](#) were 2,750.

Numbers 4:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- were the counted ones of
- had counted
- the clans of
- meeting
- Moses
- Moses
- and Aaron
- Yahweh
- by the hand of

ULT

³⁷ These were the counted ones of the clans of the Kohathite, every one who serves in the tent of meeting, whom Moses and Aaron had counted in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh by the hand of Moses.

Numbers 4:38

The descendants of Gershon

This refers to the men. Alternate translation: “The male descendants of Gershon” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The descendants of Gershon were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses and Aaron counted the descendants of Gershon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

38 And the counted ones of the sons of Gershon, according to their clans and according to the house of their fathers,

Translation Words - ULT

- And the counted ones of
- the sons of
- according to their clans
- their fathers

Numbers 4:39

from thirty to fifty years old

“from 30 to 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

everyone who would join the company

Here the word “would” does not mean that the men “chose” to join the company but rather that they were “assigned” to the company. Alternate translation: “everyone who was assigned to join the company” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [for service](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

³⁹ [from a son of](#) 30 years and upward, and up to [a son of](#) 50 years, every one who comes to the company [for service](#) in the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 4:40

counted by their clans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses and Aaron counted by their clans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

2630

“two thousand six hundred and thirty.” This refers to 2,630 men. (See: [Numbers](#) and [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ And [their counted ones according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers](#) were 2,630.

Numbers 4:41

they obeyed

The word “they” refers to Moses and Aaron.

Translation Words - ULT

- were the counted ones of
- had counted
- the clans of
- the sons of
- meeting
- Moses
- and Aaron
- Yahweh

ULT

⁴¹ These were the counted ones of the clans of the sons of Gershon, every one who serves in the tent of meeting, whom Moses and Aaron had counted in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh.

Numbers 4:42

The descendants of Merari were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses and Aaron counted the descendants of Merari” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And the counted ones of
- the clans of
- the sons of
- according to their clans
- according to the house of
- their fathers

ULT

⁴² And the counted ones of the clans of the sons of Merari, according to their clans, according to the house of their fathers,

Numbers 4:43

from thirty to fifty years old

“from 30 to 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

everyone who would join the company

Here the word “would” does not mean that the men “chose” to join the company but rather that they were “assigned” to the company. Alternate translation: “everyone who was assigned to join the company” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [for service](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

⁴³ [from a son of](#) 30 years and upward, and up to [a son of](#) 50 years, every one who comes to the company [for service](#) in the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 4:44

counted by their clans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses and Aaron counted by their clans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

numbered 3,200

“numbered three thousand two hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [according to their clans](#)

ULT

⁴⁴ And [their counted ones according to their clans](#) were 3,200.

Numbers 4:45

they obeyed

The word “they” refers to Moses and Aaron.

Translation Words - ULT

- the counted ones of
- had counted
- the clans of
- the sons of
- Moses
- Moses
- and Aaron
- Yahweh
- by the hand of

ULT

⁴⁵ These are the counted ones of the clans of the sons of Merari, whom Moses and Aaron had counted in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh by the hand of Moses,

Numbers 4:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- and Aaron
- Israel
- had counted
- the Levites
- according to their clans
- their fathers

ULT

⁴⁶ all the counted ones whom Moses and Aaron and the leaders of Israel had counted, the Levites according to their clans and according to the house of their fathers,

Numbers 4:47

from thirty to fifty

This refers to men. Alternate translation: “men from thirty to fifty”
(See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

from thirty to fifty

“from 30 to 50” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [a son of](#)
- [load](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

47 [from a son of](#) 30 years and upward, and up to [a son of](#) 50 years, every one who comes to serve the service of service and the service of [load](#) in the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 4:48

8,580 men

“eight thousand five hundred and eighty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ And [their counted ones](#) were 8,580.

Numbers 4:49

At Yahweh's command

"As Yahweh commanded"

keeping count of each by the type ... He counted each man by the kind of responsibility he would bear

These two phrase have similar meaning and are used together to emphasize how Moses counted all the men.

by the type of work he was assigned to do

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "by his type of work assignment" or "by the type of work he had assigned each man to do" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he would bear

"he would have"

they obeyed what Yahweh had commanded them

Here "they" and "them" refer to Moses and Aaron.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- he counted
- had commanded
- by the hand of
- Moses
- Moses
- his load
- and his numbered ones

ULT

⁴⁹ In accordance with the mouth of Yahweh he counted them by the hand of Moses, man by man in accordance with his work and in accordance with his load, and his numbered ones that Yahweh had commanded Moses.

Numbers 5

Numbers 5 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Israel's camp

Israel's entire camp was to be a "clean" place. This meant that people who could not be made acceptable to God were not allowed inside the camp. (See: [clean](#), [wash](#))

Vengeance

There are several laws in this chapter regarding restitution. These laws were meant to limit the ways in which people who had been wronged could seek to be compensated. These laws were intended to make it difficult for such people to avenge a wrong when they were angry. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#) and [jealous](#), [jealousy](#))

Numbers 5:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 5:2

infectious skin disease

This refers to leprosy, which is a sickness that affects the skin and easily spreads to other people.

oozing sore

This refers to an open cut that is leaking fluids.

whoever is unclean through touching a dead body

If a person touched a dead body they were considered unclean. A person who is not acceptable for God's purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Command](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

2 “[Command the sons of Israel](#) and they shall send away from the camp every one with an infectious skin disease, and every one who flows, and every one unclean by a dead person.

Numbers 5:3

you must send

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

ULT

³ From male up to female you shall send, to the outside of the camp you shall send them. And they shall not defile their camp, because I am dwelling in the midst of them.”

Numbers 5:4

The people of Israel did so

This means that they sent the unclean people away. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “The people of Israel sent those who were unclean out of the camp” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Israel
- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁴ And [the sons of Israel](#) did so. And they sent them to the outside of the camp. Thus [the sons of Israel](#) did just as [Yahweh](#) had spoken to [Moses](#).

Numbers 5:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁵ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 5:6

any sin such as people do to one another

“any sin that people usually commit against one another”

is unfaithful to me

If someone sins against another person, it means that they have also sinned against Yahweh and Yahweh considers that person as unfaithful to him. Alternate translation: “they have also wronged me” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁶ “Speak to [the sons of Israel](#): ‘When a man or woman does from any of [the sins of the human](#) to act unfaithfully [in unfaithfulness against Yahweh](#), then that person has done wrong.’

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the sins of](#)
- [the human](#)
- [in unfaithfulness](#)
- [against Yahweh](#)

Numbers 5:7

the price of his guilt

Here the person's "sin" is referred to as his "guilt." Alternate translation: "what is considered a suitable amount of money for the wrong that he has done" (See: [Metonymy](#))

add to the price one-fifth more

This means the person must pay an extra one-fifth of the price that he owes.

one-fifth

This is one part out of five equal parts. (See: [Fractions](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they shall confess](#)
- [their sin](#)
- [And he shall return](#)
- [by its head](#)

ULT

⁷ [And they shall confess their sin](#) that they did. [And he shall return](#) his price of wrongdoing [by its head](#) and he shall add its fifth in addition to it. And he shall give to whom he has done wrong to.

Numbers 5:8

But if the wronged person has no close relative to receive the payment

Usually the wronged person would receive the payment but if that person has died the payment goes to the closest relative. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "But if the wronged person has died and has no close relative to receive the payment" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

if the wronged person

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "if the person whom the guilty person has wronged" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

he must pay the price for his guilt to me through a priest

If a person made a payment to a priest to pay for his guilt it was the same as if the person had made the payment to Yahweh.

to atone for himself

The atonement is made for the man's sin. Here Yahweh refers to the man's sin as the man who committed it. Alternate translation: "to atone for his sin" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a redeemer](#)
- [to return](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to the priest](#)
- [the ram of](#)

ULT

⁸ And if there is not [a redeemer](#) for the man [to return](#) the price of wrongdoing to him, the price of wrongdoing will be returned to [Yahweh, to the priest](#), apart from [the ram of](#) the atonement with which he shall make atonement for him.

Numbers 5:9

the things that are set aside and brought to the priest by the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the things that the people of Israel set aside and bring to the priest” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [contribution](#)
- [the holy things of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to the priest](#)

ULT

⁹ And every [contribution](#) of all [the holy things of the sons of Israel](#) that they offer [to the priest](#), it shall belong to him.

Numbers 5:10

The offerings of every person will be for the priest; if anyone gives anything to the priest, it will belong to him

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and may be combined to state that the offerings that someone gives belong to the priest to whom they have been given. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his holy things](#)
- [to the priest](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And a man, [his holy things](#) shall belong to him; what a man gives [to the priest](#) shall belong to him.”

Numbers 5:11

The words “Suppose that a man’s wife turns away” begin a long description of a hypothetical situation, something that has not happened but might happen. Yahweh tells Moses what to do if it does happen. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

¹¹ And [Yahweh](#) spoke to [Moses](#), saying,

Numbers 5:12

a man's wife turns away

This means that she goes away from him and is unfaithful to him.
Alternate translation: "a man's wife is unfaithful" (See: [Idiom](#))

sins against her husband

This means that she is unfaithful to her husband and sins against him by sleeping with another man. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "sins against her husband by sleeping with another man" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹² "Speak to [the sons of Israel](#) and say to them, 'Man by man, if his wife turns aside and acts unfaithfully against him [in unfaithfulness](#),

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in unfaithfulness](#)

Numbers 5:13

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#).

If a man lies with her

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: "If a man has sexual relations with her" (See: [Euphemism](#))

her

the woman who turns away and sins against her husband ([Numbers 5:12](#))

in the act

This refers to the act of adultery. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "in the act of adultery" or "sleeping with him" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [seed](#)

ULT

13 and a man lies the lying of [seed](#) with her and it is concealed from the eyes of her husband, and it is hidden, and she herself is defiled, and there is no witness against her, and she herself has not been caught,

Numbers 5:14

his wife is defiled ... his wife is not defiled

These phrases can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "his wife has defiled herself ... his wife has not defiled herself" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a spirit of jealousy might still inform the husband

Here the word "spirit" refers to a person's attitude and emotions. His "jealously" is spoken of as if it were a person who spoke to him. Alternate translation: "the husband might feel jealous and become suspicious" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))

a spirit of jealousy might falsely come on a man

Here the word "spirit" refers to a person's attitude and emotions. The idea of the spirit "coming on him" means that he began to have these jealous feelings. Alternate translation: "a man might feel jealous for no reason" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a spirit of
- a spirit of (2)
- and...passes over
- and he is jealous of
- and he is jealous of

ULT

14 and a spirit of jealousy passes over upon him and he is jealous of his wife and she herself is defiled, or a spirit of jealousy comes over upon him and he is jealous of his wife but she herself is not defiled;

Numbers 5:15

Connecting Statement:

Moses begins to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

a tenth

This is one part out of ten equal parts. (See: [Fractions](#))

a tenth of an ephah

This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” or “2 liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

a grain offering of jealousy

“a grain offering for jealousy”

a reminder of the iniquity

A “reminder” is something that shows evidence that something had occurred that required justice. In this case, he made the offering to determine whether his wife had committed adultery or not.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [barley](#)
- [oil](#)
- [a grain offering of](#)
- [a grain offering of](#)
- [iniquity](#)

ULT

15 then the man shall bring his wife to [the priest](#). And he shall bring her offering for her, the tenth of the ephah of the flour of [barley](#). He shall not pour [oil](#) upon it and he shall not put frankincense upon it, for it is [a grain offering of jealousy](#), [a grain offering of remembrance](#), one that causes [iniquity](#) to be remembered.

Numbers 5:16

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

near and place her before Yahweh

“in the presence of Yahweh.” The priest would bring her near the altar. Alternate translation: “near the altar and place her in the presence of Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 And [the priest](#) shall bring her near.
And he shall stand her before the face
of [Yahweh](#).

Numbers 5:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- the priest
- holy
- the dwelling

ULT

¹⁷ And the priest shall take the holy water in the vessel of clay. And the priest shall take some of the dust that is on the floor of the dwelling. And he shall put it into the water.

Numbers 5:18

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

before Yahweh

“in the presence of Yahweh”

grain offering of suspicion

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 5:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the head of](#)
- [her palm](#)
- [And in the hand of](#)
- [the grain offering of](#)
- [the grain offering of](#)

ULT

18 And [the priest](#) shall stand the woman before the face of [Yahweh](#). And he shall unbind [the head of](#) the woman. And he shall put upon [her palm the grain offering of](#) remembrance. It is [the grain offering of](#) jealousy. And in the hand of [the priest](#) shall be the water of bitterness that brings a curse.

Numbers 5:19

no other man has lain with you

This is a euphemism. Alternate translation: “no other man has had sexual relations with you” (See: [Euphemism](#))

if you have not gone astray

The words “gone astray” is an idiom that means “to be unfaithful.” Alternate translation: “if you have not been unfaithful to your husband” (See: [Idiom](#))

and committed impurity

“by committing impurity.” This phrase refers to committing adultery.

you will be free from this bitter water

The phrase to “be free” from something means to not be harmed by it. Alternate translation: “this bitter water will not harm you, though it is able to” (See: [Idiom](#))

this bitter water that can bring a curse

Here the bitter water is described as being able to bring a curse. This means that when the woman drinks the water it cause her to be unable to bear children, if she is guilty. Alternate translation: “this bitter water can be a curse to you” (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [And...shall make...swear](#)

ULT

19 And [the priest shall make](#) her [swear](#) and he shall say to the woman, “If a man has not lain with you, and if you have not turned aside to uncleanness under your husband, you will be free from this water of bitterness that brings a curse.”

Numbers 5:20

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

have gone astray

The words “gone astray” is an idiom that means “to be unfaithful.” Alternate translation: “have been unfaithful to your husband” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

²⁰ But if you have turned aside under your husband, and if you are defiled and a man apart from your husband has given his lying with you,”

Numbers 5:21

that can bring down a curse on her

The phrase “bring down a curse” is an idiom meaning for a curse to come upon her. Alternate translation: “that can cause a curse to come upon her” (See: [Idiom](#))

Yahweh will make you into a curse ... your people to be such

Here the author speaks about the woman bearing the curse that Yahweh gives her, which causes other people to curse her. This is spoken of as if the woman herself becomes a curse. Alternate translation: “Because Yahweh curses you, other people will curse you as well, and Yahweh will show people that you are truly cursed” (See: [Metaphor](#))

that will be shown to your people to be such

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that he will show to your people as a curse” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

your thigh to waste away and your abdomen to swell

This could mean: (1) that the woman will become unable to have children or (2) that the woman’s pregnancy will end too early and the baby will die.

your thigh to waste away

Here the word “thigh” is a polite way of referring to the woman’s womb or her private parts. Alternate translation: “your womb to be useless” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [and...shall make...swear](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your people](#)

ULT

21 (and [the priest shall make](#) the woman [swear](#) with an oath of the curse). And [the priest](#) shall say to the woman, “[Yahweh](#) will make you into a curse and into an oath in the midst of [your people](#) when [Yahweh](#) makes your thigh fall away and your abdomen swell.

Numbers 5:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Truly
- truly

ULT

²² And this water that brings a curse will enter in your inward parts to cause swelling of the abdomen and to cause falling away of your thigh." And the woman shall say, "Truly, truly."

Numbers 5:23

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

he must wash away the written curses

This means that he is to wash the ink off of the scroll.

the written curses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the curses he has written” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)

ULT

²³ And [the priest](#) shall write these curses in the book and he shall wipe it off into the water of bitterness.

Numbers 5:24

General Information:

Verse 24 explains in a general way what the priest must do and what is expected to happen when the woman drinks the water. Verse 25 and 26 explains in detail how the priest is to do this work. The priest gives the water to the woman and she drinks it only once.

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

ULT

24 And he shall cause the woman to drink the water of bitterness that brings a curse. And the water that brings a curse of bitterness will enter in her.

Numbers 5:25

grain offering of jealousy

“a grain offering for jealousy.” See how you translated this in [Numbers 5:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- the grain offering of
- the grain offering
- from the hand of
- Yahweh
- the altar

ULT

²⁵ And the priest shall take the grain offering of jealousy from the hand of the woman. And he shall wave the grain offering before the face of Yahweh and he shall bring it near to the altar.

Numbers 5:26

a representative offering

The handful of the grain offering represents the whole grain offering. This means the whole offering belongs to Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- the grain offering
- at the altar

ULT

²⁶ And the priest shall grasp from the grain offering its memorial portion and he shall burn it up at the altar. And after he shall make the woman drink the water.

Numbers 5:27

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

if she is defiled because she has committed

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: “if she has defiled herself by committing” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

committed a sin

Here the “sin” refers specifically to committing adultery. The meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “committed adultery” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Her abdomen will swell and her thigh will waste away

This could mean: (1) that the woman will become unable to have children or (2) that the woman’s pregnancy will end too early and the baby will die. Here the word “thigh” is a polite way of referring to the woman’s womb or her private parts. (See: [Euphemism](#)) See how you translated these concepts in [Numbers 5:21](#).

The woman will be cursed among her people

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Her people will curse her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in unfaithfulness](#)
- [and...will fall away](#)
- [her people](#)

ULT

²⁷ And he shall make her drink the water. And it will be that if she is defiled and has acted unfaithfully [in unfaithfulness](#) with her husband, then the water that brings a curse of bitterness will enter in her and her abdomen will swell and her thigh [will fall away](#). And the woman will become a curse in the midst of [her people](#).

Numbers 5:28

is not defiled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “has not defiled herself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

if she is clean

Here “being innocent” is spoken of as “being clean.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

then she must be free

This could mean: (1) “then she will not be cursed” or (2) “then she is free from guilt.” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

conceive children

“become pregnant”

Translation Words - ULT

- [seed](#)

ULT

28 And if the woman is not defiled then she herself is clean. And she will be free and she will be sown with [seed](#).

Numbers 5:29

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

the law of jealousy

“the law for dealing with jealousy”

who strays away from her husband

The words “strays away” is an idiom that means “to be unfaithful.” Alternate translation: “who is unfaithful to her husband” (See: [Idiom](#))

is defiled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “defiles herself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is the law of](#)

ULT

²⁹ This [is the law of](#) jealousy, when a woman turns aside under her husband and is defiled.

Numbers 5:30

a spirit of jealousy

This phrase refers to the man's attitude and emotions of jealousy. See how you translated this in [Numbers 5:14](#). Alternate translation: "who is jealous" (See: [Metonymy](#))

when he is jealous of his wife

This is an idiom that means that he suspects that his wife has been unfaithful to him by sleeping with another man. Alternate translation: "and suspects that his wife has been unfaithful to him" or "and suspects that his wife has slept with another man" (See: [Idiom](#))

before Yahweh

"in the presence of Yahweh"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a spirit of](#)
- [and he is jealous of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [law](#)

ULT

³⁰ or a man, when [a spirit of jealousy](#) passes over upon him [and he is jealous of](#) his wife. And he shall stand the woman before the face of [Yahweh](#). And [the priest](#) shall do all this [law](#) to her.

Numbers 5:31

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues to describe what the people are to do if the hypothetical situation he began describing in [Numbers 5:12](#) ever happens.

will be free from guilt for bringing his wife to the priest

“will not be guilty of doing something wrong by bringing his wife to the priest”

must bear

“must endure”

Translation Words - ULT

- [from iniquity](#)
- [her iniquity](#)

ULT

³¹ And the man will be free [from iniquity](#). And this woman will carry [her iniquity](#).”

Numbers 6

Numbers 6 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Nazirite vow

The Nazirite vow was a special type of vow between a person and Yahweh. This chapter gives the rules for people to be consecrated to God as Nazirites. (See: [vow](#) and [consecrate, consecrated, consecration](#))

Numbers 6:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 6:2

separates himself

“To separate yourself to someone” means to “dedicate yourself” to that person. Alternate translation: “dedicates himself” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [does something extraordinary](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

² “Speak to [the sons of Israel](#) and say to them, ‘When a man or a woman [does something extraordinary](#) by vowing the vow of a separate one to separate [to Yahweh](#),

Numbers 6:3

he must keep himself from

This idiom means that he must not eat or drink them. Alternate translation: "he must not consume" (See: [Idiom](#))

vinegar made from wine

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "vinegar that people make from wine" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

vinegar

a drink produced when wine and other strong drinks ferment too long and become sour

or from strong drink

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "or vinegar that people make from strong drink" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

raisins

dried grapes

Translation Words - ULT

- [wine](#)
- [grapes](#)
- [he shall...eat](#)

ULT

³ he shall separate from wine and intoxicating drink. He shall not drink the vinegar of [wine](#) and the vinegar of intoxicating drink. And he shall not drink any of the juice of [grapes](#). And [he shall](#) not [eat](#) moist and dried grapes.

Numbers 6:4

he is separate

“To separate yourself to someone” means to “dedicate yourself” to that person. Alternate translation: “he dedicates himself” (See: [Idiom](#))

he is separate to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he separates himself to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

nothing that is made from grapes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “nothing that people make from grapes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from the seeds to their skins

These two extremes are given to emphasize the entire grape may not be eaten. Alternate translation: “from any part of a grape” (See: [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he shall...eat](#)
- [the wine](#)

ULT

⁴ All the days of his separation [he shall](#) not [eat](#) from all that is made from the vine of [the wine](#), from seeds and up to skin.

Numbers 6:5

vow of separation

This is an idiom. Here “separation” means “dedication” Alternate translation: “vow of dedication” (See: [Idiom](#))

no razor is to be used on his head

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one is to use a razor on his head” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the days of his separation to Yahweh

The word “separation” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Here “separation” is an idiom that means “dedication.” Alternate translation: “the days that he has separated himself to Yahweh” or “the days that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#) and [Idiom](#))

to Yahweh are fulfilled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to Yahweh are complete” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

He must be set apart to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “He must set himself apart to Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his head](#)
- [his head](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [holy](#)
- [shall grow long](#)

ULT

⁵ All the days of the vow of his separation a razor shall not pass over [his head](#). Until the fulfilling of the days that he has separated [to Yahweh](#) he shall be [holy](#), the locks of the hair of [his head shall grow long](#).

Numbers 6:6

separates

This is an idiom for dedication. Alternate translation: “dedicates”
(See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [a person](#)

ULT

⁶ All the days of his separation [to Yahweh](#) he shall not go near [a person](#) who is dead.

Numbers 6:7

separated

This is an idiom for dedication. Alternate translation: “dedicated”
(See: [Idiom](#))

unclean

A person who is not acceptable for God’s purposes is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

he is separated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he has separated himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [For his father](#)
- [for his brother](#)
- [his God](#)
- [his head](#)

ULT

⁷ [For his father](#) and for his mother, [for his brother](#) and for his sister, he shall not defile himself for them with their death, because the separation of [his God](#) is on [his head](#).

Numbers 6:8

separation

This is an idiom for dedication. Alternate translation: “dedication”
(See: [Idiom](#))

of his separation

The abstract noun “separation” can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “that he has separated himself”

reserved for Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he has reserved himself for Yahweh” or “set apart for Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holy](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁸ All the days of his separation he shall be [holy to Yahweh](#).

Numbers 6:9

defiles his consecrated head

Here “head” represents the Nazirite man’s hair, which symbolizes his vow. Alternate translation: “defiles his long hair which shows everyone he is separated to God” or “he becomes defiled” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the seventh day

“day 7” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the head of](#)
- [his head](#)

ULT

⁹ And if one who is dead dies near him in suddenness suddenly and he defiles [the head of](#) his separation, then he shall shave [his head](#) on the day of his cleansing, on the seventh day he shall shave it

Numbers 6:10

the eighth day

“day 8” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

10 And on the eighth day he shall bring two of the turtedoves or two of [the sons of](#) the dove to [the priest](#), to the opening of the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 6:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- he sinned
- And he shall make...holy
- his head

ULT

11 And the priest shall make one for a sin offering and one for a burnt up offering. And he shall make atonement for him because he sinned on account of the person. And he shall make his head holy on that day.

Numbers 6:12

for the days of his consecration

“during the time he is being set apart again”

He must bring a male lamb ... as a guilt offering

The man is to bring the lamb to the priest so that it can be sacrificed.

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “He must bring a male lamb one year old to the priest as a guilt offering” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The days before he defiled himself must not be counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “He must not count the days before he defiled himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

his consecration was defiled

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he defiled himself” or “he made himself unacceptable” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- a male lamb
- a son of

ULT

¹² And he shall separate to Yahweh the days of his separation. And he shall bring a male lamb, a son of his year, for a guilt offering. And the first days shall fall because his separation was defiled.

Numbers 6:13

of his separation

Here “separation” means “dedication.” Also, this abstract noun can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “of his dedication” or “that he has dedicated himself” (See: [Idiom](#) or [Abstract Nouns](#))

He must be brought

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Someone must bring him” or “He must go” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is the law of](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

13 And this [is the law of](#) the separate one. On a day fulfilling the days of his separation he shall bring him to the opening of the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 6:14

He must present his offering to Yahweh

He must bring his offering to the priest to be sacrificed to Yahweh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "He must present his offering to Yahweh by bringing it to the priest to be sacrificed" or "He must present his offering to Yahweh by bringing it to the priest who will sacrifice it" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- male lamb
- a son of

ULT

14 And he shall offer his offering to Yahweh, one male lamb without defect, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering, and one female lamb without defect, a daughter of her year, for a sin offering, and one ram without defect for peace offerings,

Numbers 6:15

bread made without yeast

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “bread he made without yeast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

wafers without yeast rubbed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “wafers without yeast which he rubbed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

wafers without yeast

small pieces of flat bread

together with their grain offering and drink offerings

The word “their” refers to the other offerings that the Nazirite man was told to bring. Often grain offerings and drink offerings were required to accompany other types of sacrifices. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “together with the grain offering and drink offering that Yahweh required to accompany the other offerings” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [unleavened bread](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [and their grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)

ULT

15 and a basket of [unleavened bread](#), cakes of fine flour mixed with the oil, and wafers of [unleavened bread](#) smeared with the oil [and their grain offering and their drink offerings](#).

Numbers 6:16

He must offer his sin offering

“He” refers to the priest and “his” refers to the man who took a vow.

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- Yahweh
- his sin offering
- his burnt up offering

ULT

16 And the priest shall offer before the face of Yahweh and he shall make his sin offering and his burnt up offering.

Numbers 6:17

the fellowship offering

“as the fellowship offering”

The priest must present also ... drink offering

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “The priest must present also ... the drink offering to Yahweh” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a sacrifice of
- to Yahweh
- the priest
- his grain offering

ULT

17 And he shall make the ram a sacrifice of peace offerings to Yahweh with the basket of the unleavened bread. And the priest shall make his grain offering and his drink offering.

Numbers 6:18

indicating his separation

Here “separation” means “dedication.” Also, this abstract noun may be written as a verb. Alternate translation: “indicating his dedication” or “indicating how he has separated himself” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the head of](#)
- [the head of \(2\)](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [the fire](#)
- [the sacrifice of](#)

ULT

18 And the separate one shall shave [the head of](#) his separation at the opening of the tent of [meeting](#). And he shall take the hair of [the head of](#) his separation. And he shall put it on [the fire](#) that is under [the sacrifice of](#) the peace offerings.

Numbers 6:19

the boiled shoulder of the ram

This means that he had boiled the ram's shoulder. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the shoulder of the ram that he boiled" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

indicating separation

Here "separation" means "dedication." Also, this abstract noun can be expressed with the verb "separated." Alternate translation:

"indicating dedication" or "indicating that he has dedicated himself to Yahweh" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

ULT

19 And [the priest](#) shall take the boiled shoulder from the ram and one cake of [unleavened bread](#) from the basket and one wafer of [unleavened bread](#). And he shall put them on [the palms of](#) the separate one after his shaving his separation.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)
- [the palms of](#)

Numbers 6:20

The priest must wave them

After handing the items to the Nazirite, the priest takes them back to offer them to Yahweh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Then the priest must take them back and wave them" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

together with

"as well as"

that was waved

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that the priest waved" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

that was presented

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that he presented" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [to the priest](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [is a holy thing](#)
- [wine](#)

ULT

20 And [the priest](#) shall wave them as a wave offering before the face of [Yahweh](#). It is a [holy thing to the priest](#) with the breast of the wave offering and with the thigh of the contribution. And after the separate one may drink [wine](#).

Numbers 6:21

his separation

- Here “separation” means “dedication.” Also, this abstract noun may be written as a verb. Alternate translation: “his dedication” or “for having dedicated himself to Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Abstract Nouns](#))

Whatever else he may give

This refers to the Nazirite deciding to give other offering beyond what he has been commanded to give. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “If he decides to give any additional offerings” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he must keep the obligations of the vow he has taken

“he must still obey the requirements of the vow he has taken”

he must keep the obligations ... to keep the promise indicated by the law for the Nazirite

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize that he must obey the obligations of his vow. (See: [Parallelism](#))

the promise indicated by the law for the Nazirite

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the promise that the law for the Nazirite indicates” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is the law of](#)
- [the law of](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [his hand](#)

ULT

21 This [is the law of](#) the separate one who vows his offering [to Yahweh](#) for his separation, apart from what [his hand](#) reaches. According to the mouth of his vow that he vowed, so he shall do in accordance with [the law of](#) his separation.”

Numbers 6:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

²² And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 6:23

You must bless the people of Israel

“You” is plural. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [you shall bless](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

²³ “Speak to [Aaron](#) and to [his sons](#), saying, ‘Thus [you shall bless the sons of Israel](#), saying to them,

Numbers 6:24

May Yahweh bless you and keep you

Here “you” is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

keep you

This is an idiom. Here “keep” means to “protect.” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [May...bless you](#)

ULT

²⁴ “May [Yahweh bless you](#) and keep you.”

Numbers 6:25

make his face shine on you

This is an idiom which means to have kind intentions towards someone. It can also be expressed by smiling. Alternate translation: "smile at you" or "look at you with kindness" (See: [Idiom](#))

on you ... to you

Here "you" is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [his face](#)

ULT

²⁵ May [Yahweh](#) cause [his face](#) to shine to you and may he be gracious to you.

Numbers 6:26

look on you with favor

Here the phrase “look on” means to show a certain attitude towards that person. Alternate translation: “show you favor” (See: [Idiom](#))

on you ... give you

Here “you” is singular. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [his face](#)
- [and may he set](#)
- [peace](#)

ULT

²⁶ May [Yahweh](#) lift up [his face](#) to you
and may he set [peace](#) for you.”

Numbers 6:27

they must give my name

Here Yahweh speaks about claiming the Israelites as his own by saying that he is giving them “his name.” Alternate translation: “they must let the people of Israel know that they are mine” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

27 [And they shall set my name upon the sons of Israel and I shall bless them.](#)”

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they shall set](#)
- [my name](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [shall bless them](#)

Numbers 7

Numbers 7 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Consecrating the altar

When the tabernacle was completed, they consecrated the altar. Each tribe brought an offering to consecrate the altar. (See: [tabernacle](#) and [consecrate](#), [consecrated](#), [consecration](#))

Numbers 7:1

Moses completed the tabernacle

“Moses finished setting up the tabernacle”

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- finished
- erecting
- the dwelling
- and made...holy
- and made...holy
- the altar

ULT

¹ And it happened on the day Moses finished erecting the dwelling that he anointed it and made it holy, and all its vessels and the altar and all its vessels. And he anointed them and made them holy.

Numbers 7:2

the leaders of Israel ... the heads of their ancestor's families

These two phrases describe the same group of people two different ways. Alternate translation: "the leaders of Israel who are also the heads of their ancestors families" (See: [Parallelism](#))

the heads of their ancestor's families

Here the leaders of the families are referred to as "heads." Alternate translation: "the leaders of their ancestor's families" (See: [Metonymy](#))

had overseen the counting of the men

The abstract noun "counting" can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: "had helped Aaron and Moses to count the men" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the heads of](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [were the ones standing](#)

ULT

² And the leaders of [Israel](#), [the heads of the house of their fathers](#), made an offering. They were the leaders of the tribes. They [were the ones standing](#) over the counted ones.

Numbers 7:3

They brought their offerings before Yahweh ... They presented these things in front of the tabernacle

This means that they gave their offerings to Yahweh and brought them to the tabernacle. These phrases may be combined to add clarity. Alternate translation: "They brought their offerings to Yahweh and presented them to him in front of the tabernacle" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

six covered carts and twelve oxen

"6 covered carts and 12 oxen" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [cattle](#)
- [the leaders](#)
- [the dwelling](#)

ULT

³ And they brought their offering before the face of [Yahweh](#), six covered carts and 12 [cattle](#), a cart for two of [the leaders](#) and an ox for one. And they offered them before the face of [the dwelling](#).

Numbers 7:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁴ And Yahweh said to Moses, saying,

Numbers 7:5

to each one as his work needs them

“to each man as he needs them for his work”

Translation Words - ULT

- meeting
- the Levites

ULT

⁵ “Take from with them and they shall be for serving the service of the tent of meeting. And you shall give them to the Levites, a man according to the mouth of his service.”

Numbers 7:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the Levites](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Moses](#) took the carts and the cattle. And he gave them to [the Levites](#).

Numbers 7:7

Gershon

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

because of what their work needed

"because it was what they needed to do their work"

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the sons of](#)

ULT

⁷ He gave two of the carts and four of the cattle [to the sons of](#) Gershon, according to the mouth of their service.

Numbers 7:8

Merari

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

in the care of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest

"under the supervision of Ithamar son of Aaron the priest" or
"Ithamar son of Aaron the priest oversaw their work"

Ithamar

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:2](#).

He did this because

The word "he" refers to Moses.

because of what their work required

"because it was what they needed to do their work"

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the sons of](#)
- [son of](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [the...Aaron](#)
- [the priest](#)

ULT

⁸ And he gave four of the carts and eight of the cattle [to the sons of Merari](#), according to the mouth of their service, [by the hand of Ithamar the son of Aaron the priest](#).

Numbers 7:9

none of those things

This refers to the carts and oxen.

Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

theirs would be the work

"their work would be"

the things that belong to Yahweh

You can make explicit the implicit meaning of what belongs to Yahweh. Alternate translation: "the things that Yahweh reserved for the tabernacle" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But...to the sons of](#)
- [the holy place](#)

ULT

⁹ [But](#) he did not give [to the sons of](#) Kohath, for the service of [the holy place](#) was on them, they carried on the shoulder.

Numbers 7:10

offered their goods

“offered gifts”

Translation Words - ULT

- the leaders
- the leaders
- the dedication of
- the altar
- the altar

ULT

¹⁰ And the leaders offered the dedication of the altar on the day it was anointed. And the leaders offered their offering before the face of the altar.

Numbers 7:11

Each leader must offer on his own day his sacrifice

“Each day, one leader must offer his sacrifice”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- the altar

ULT

¹¹ And Yahweh said to Moses, “One leader for the day, one leader for the day, shall they offer their offering for the dedication of the altar.”

Numbers 7:12

the first day

“day 1” or “day number 1” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Nahshon son of Amminadab

These are the names of men. See how you translated these names in [Numbers 1:7](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- of the tribe of
- Judah

ULT

12 And it happened that the one who offered his offering on the first day was Nahshon [the son of Amminadab of the tribe of Judah](#).

Numbers 7:13

weighing 130 shekels

“weighing one hundred and thirty shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Weight](#))

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. If you are converting the weights to modern measures, here is another way to translate this phrase. Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

ULT

13 And his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

Numbers 7:14

one gold dish that weighed ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: "one gold dish that weighed one tenth of a kilogram" or "one gold dish that weighed 110 grams" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

¹⁴ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

¹⁵ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁶ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:17

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Nahshon son of Amminadab

“This was what Nahshon son of Amminadab presented”

Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

17 and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Nahshon [the son of](#) Amminadab.

Numbers 7:18

the second day

“day 2” or “day number 2” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [Issachar](#)

ULT

18 On the second day, Nethanel [the son of Zuar](#), the leader of [Issachar](#) made an offering.

Numbers 7:19

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

ULT

19 He offered his offering: one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

Numbers 7:20

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: "one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram" or "one gold dish weighting 110 grams" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

²⁰ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

²¹ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²² one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:23

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Nethanel son of Zuar

“This was what Nethanel son of Zuar presented”

Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

²³ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Nethanel [the son of](#) Zuar.

Numbers 7:24

the third day

“day 3” or “day number 3” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

²⁴ On the third day, the leader [of the sons of](#) Zebulun, Eliab [the son of](#) Helon,

Numbers 7:25

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

²⁵ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:26

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: "one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram" or "one gold dish weighting 110 grams" (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

²⁶ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

²⁷ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁸ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:29

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Eliab son of Helon

“This was what Eliab son of Helon gave as a sacrifice”

Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

²⁹ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Eliab [the son of](#) Helon.

Numbers 7:30

the fourth day

“day 4” or “day number 4” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Reuben](#)

ULT

³⁰ On the fourth day, the leader [of the sons of Reuben](#), Elizur [the son of Shedeur](#),

Numbers 7:31

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

³¹ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:32

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

³² one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

³³ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁴ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:35

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Elizur son of Shedeur

“This was what Elizur son of Shedeur gave as a sacrifice”

Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

³⁵ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Elizur [the son of](#) Shedeur.

Numbers 7:36

the fifth day

“day 5” or “day number 5” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

³⁶ On the fifth day, the leader [of the sons of](#) Simeon, Shelumiel [the son of](#) Zurishaddai,

Numbers 7:37

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

³⁷ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighting 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:38

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

³⁸ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

³⁹ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴⁰ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:41

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

“This was what Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai gave as a sacrifice.”

“Shelumiel” and “Zurishaddai” are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁴¹ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Shelumiel [the son of](#) Zurishaddai.

Numbers 7:42

the sixth day

“day 6” or “day number 6” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Gad](#)

ULT

⁴² On the sixth day, the leader [of the sons of Gad](#), Eliasaph [the son of Deuel](#),

Numbers 7:43

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁴³ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:44

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

⁴⁴ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

⁴⁵ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴⁶ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:47

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Eliasaph son of Deuel

“This was what Eliasaph son of Deuel gave as a sacrifice”

Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Eliasaph [the son of](#) Deuel.

Numbers 7:48

the seventh day

“day 7” or “day number 7” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

ULT

⁴⁸ On the seventh day, the leader [of the sons of Ephraim](#), Elishama [the son of Ammihud](#),

Numbers 7:49

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁴⁹ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:50

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

⁵⁰ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:51

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

⁵¹ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:52

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁵² one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:53

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Elishama son of Ammihud

“This was what Elishama son of Ammihud presented”

Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁵³ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Elishama [the son of](#) Ammihud.

Numbers 7:54

the eighth day

“day 8” or “day number 8” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ On the eighth day, the leader [of the sons of](#) Manasseh, Gamaliel [the son of](#) Pedahzur,

Numbers 7:55

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁵⁵ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:56

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

⁵⁶ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:57

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

⁵⁷ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:58

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁵⁸ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:59

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

“This was what Gamaliel son of Pedahzur gave as a sacrifice”

Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁵⁹ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Gamaliel [the son of](#) Pedahzur.

Numbers 7:60

the ninth day

“day 9” or “day number 9” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:11](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

ULT

⁶⁰ On the ninth day, the leader [of the sons of Benjamin](#), Abidan [the son of Gideoni](#),

Numbers 7:61

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁶¹ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:62

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

⁶² one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:63

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

⁶³ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:64

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁶⁴ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:65

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Abidan son of Gideoni

“This was what Abidan son of Gideoni gave as a sacrifice”

Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:11](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁶⁵ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Abidan [the son of](#) Gideoni.

Numbers 7:66

the tenth day

“day 10” or “day number 10” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:12](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁶⁶ On the tenth day, the leader [of the sons of Dan](#), Ahiezer [the son of Ammishaddai](#),

Numbers 7:67

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

67 his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighting 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:68

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

⁶⁸ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:69

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

⁶⁹ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:70

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁷⁰ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:71

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

“This was what Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai gave as a sacrifice”

Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:12](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁷¹ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Ahiezer [the son of](#) Ammishaddai.

Numbers 7:72

the eleventh day

“day 11” or “day number 11” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Asher](#)

ULT

⁷² On the day of the eleventh day, the leader of [the sons of Asher](#), Pagiel [the son of Okran](#),

Numbers 7:73

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁷³ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:74

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

⁷⁴ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:75

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

⁷⁵ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:76

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁷⁶ one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:77

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Pagiel son of Okran

“This was what Pagiel son of Okran gave as a sacrifice.” “Pagiel” and “Okran” were names of men. See how you translated their names in [Numbers 1:13](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

77 and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Pagiel [the son of](#) Okran.

Numbers 7:78

the twelfth day

“day 12” or “day number 12” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

ULT

⁷⁸ On the day of the twelfth day, the leader [of the sons of Naphtali](#), Ahira [the son of Enan](#),

Numbers 7:79

one silver platter weighing 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver platter weighing nearly one and a half kilograms” or “one silver platter weighing one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁷⁹ his offering was one [silver](#) dish, its weight was 130, one [silver](#) bowl of 70 shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), the two of them were full of fine flour mixed with the oil [for a grain offering](#),

one silver bowl weighing seventy shekels

“one silver bowl weighing 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “one silver bowl weighing nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “one silver bowl weighing 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour that he had mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [for a grain offering](#)

Numbers 7:80

one gold dish weighing ten shekels

If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “one gold dish weighing one tenth of a kilogram” or “one gold dish weighting 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

ULT

⁸⁰ one [pan of](#) ten [gold](#) full of incense,

Translation Words - ULT

- [pan of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:81

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of (2)
- ram
- male lamb

ULT

⁸¹ one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, one male lamb, a son of his year, for a burnt up offering,

Numbers 7:82

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁸² one buck of the goats for a sin offering,

Numbers 7:83

that were a year old

“that were each one year old”

This was the sacrifice of Ahira son of Enan

“This was what Ahira son of Enan gave as a sacrifice”

Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 1:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁸³ and for the sacrifice of the peace offerings: two [cattle](#), five [rams](#), five male goats, five [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This was the offering of Ahira [the son of](#) Enan.

Numbers 7:84

set all these apart

The phrase “set apart” means to be dedicated to a specific purpose. In this case, the offerings were dedicated to Yahweh. (See: [Idiom](#))

on the day that Moses anointed the altar

Here the word “day” refers to a general period of time. The leaders of Israel dedicated these things over the course of 12 days. Alternate translation: “when Moses anointed the altar”

ULT

84 This [is the dedication of the altar](#) on the day it was anointed from with the leaders of [Israel](#): 12 dishes of [silver](#), 12 bowls of [silver](#), 12 [pans of gold](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [is the dedication of](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [silver](#)
- [silver](#)
- [pans of](#)
- [gold](#)

Numbers 7:85

Each silver platter weighed 130 shekels

If necessary, these weights can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated this same weight in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “each silver platter weighed nearly one and a half kilograms” or “each silver platter weighed one kilogram and 430 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁸⁵ One [silver](#) bowl was 130 and one bowl was 70. All [the silver of](#) the vessels was 2,400 by the shekel of [the holy place](#).

each bowl weighed seventy shekels

“each bowl weighted 70 shekels.” If necessary, these weight can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated this same weight in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “each bowl weighed nearly eight tenths of a kilogram” or “each bowl weighed 770 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

2,400 shekels

“two thousand four hundred shekels” or “twenty-four hundred shekels” (See: [Numbers](#))

by the standard weight of the sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 7:13](#). Alternate translation: “measured by the standard weights used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

All the silver vessels weighed

“All the silver vessels together weighed”

the silver vessels

This refers to all of the offerings that were made of silver, both the platters and the bowls.

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)
- [the silver of](#)
- [the holy place](#)

Numbers 7:86

All the gold dishes weighed

“All the gold dishes together weighed”

Each of the twelve gold dishes ... weighed ten shekels

“Each of the 12 gold dishes ... weighed 10 shekels.” If necessary, this can be written in modern measurements. See how you translated these same weights in [Numbers 7:14](#). Alternate translation: “Each of the 12 gold dishes ... weighed one tenth of a kilogram” or “Each of the 12 gold dishes ... weighed 110 grams” (See: [Biblical Weight](#) and [Numbers](#))

120 shekels

“one hundred and twenty shekels” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The pans of](#)
- [gold](#)
- [the gold of](#)
- [the holy place](#)

ULT

⁸⁶ [The pans of gold](#) were 12, full of incense. The pan was ten by ten by the shekel of [the holy place](#). All [the gold of](#) the pans was 120.

Numbers 7:87

twelve

“12.” This number may be written with a numeral instead of with a word. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [and their grain offering](#)

ULT

87 All the cattle for the burnt up offering were 12 [bulls](#), 12 [rams](#), 12 [male lambs](#), [sons of a year](#), and [their grain offering](#). And 12 bucks of the goats were for a sin offering.

Numbers 7:88

twenty-four ... sixty

“24...60.” These numbers may be written with numerals instead of with words. (See: [Numbers](#))

a year old

“that were one year old”

after it was anointed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “after Moses had anointed it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the cattle of](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [the sacrifice of](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [is the dedication of](#)
- [the altar](#)

ULT

88 And all [the cattle of the sacrifice of](#) the peace offerings were 24 [bulls](#), 60 [rams](#), 60 male goats, 60 [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year. This [is the dedication of](#) [the altar](#) after it was anointed.

Numbers 7:89

he heard his voice speaking to him

Here “his voice” refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “he heard Yahweh speaking to him” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

from above the atonement lid ... from between the two cherubim

These two phrases describe the same location. (See: [Parallelism](#))

ark of the testimony

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:5](#).

He spoke to him

“Yahweh spoke to Moses”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [the atonement lid](#)
- [the box of](#)
- [cherubim](#)

ULT

⁸⁹ And when [Moses](#) entered into the tent of [meeting](#) to speak with him, then he heard the voice speaking to him from above [the atonement lid](#) that is on [the box of](#) the testimony, from between the two [cherubim](#). And he spoke to him.

Numbers 8

Numbers 8 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The consecration of the tabernacle continues in this chapter. The people obeyed Yahweh's exact instructions. (See: [consecrate](#), [consecrated](#), [consecration](#) and [tabernacle](#))

Numbers 8:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 8:2

must give light in front

“must shine towards the front”

Translation Words - ULT

- Aaron
- the face of

ULT

² “Speak to Aaron and say to him, ‘When you lift up the lamps to the front of the face of the lampstand, the seven lamps shall give light.’”

Numbers 8:3

to give light

“to shine”

Translation Words - ULT

- Aaron
- the face of
- Yahweh
- had commanded
- Moses

ULT

³ And Aaron did so. To the front of the face of the lampstand he lifted up its lamps, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

Numbers 8:4

The lampstand was made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They had made the lampstand" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

with hammered cups like blossoms

They were commanded to form the hammered cups so that they resembled flower blossoms. Alternate translation: "with hammered cups that resemble flower blossoms" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [gold](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

⁴ And this is the work of the lampstand, a hammered [gold](#) work. It was a hammered work up to its base, up to its blossom. According to the appearance that [Yahweh](#) showed [Moses](#), so he made the lampstand.

Numbers 8:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁵ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 8:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- the sons of
- Israel
- and make...clean

ULT

⁶ "Take the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel and make them clean.

Numbers 8:7

to purify them

Here “them” refers to the Levites.

Sprinkle the water of atonement on them

Moses sprinkling water on them was symbolic of their atonement. Alternate translation: “Sprinkle on their the water that symbolizes atonement” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

wash their clothes

The Levites are supposed to wash their own clothes. You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: “then make them wash their clothes” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sin offering](#)
- [And they shall pass](#)
- [their body](#)
- [and they shall make themselves clean](#)

ULT

⁷ And thus you shall do to them to make them clean: Sprinkle on them the water of [the sin offering](#). [And they shall pass](#) a razor over all [their body](#), and they shall wash their garments, [and they shall make themselves clean](#).

Numbers 8:8

a young bull and its grain offering

When offering a young bull, a grain offering was usually required to accompany it.

of fine flour mingled with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “of fine flour that they have mingled with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a bull
- cattle
- cattle
- a son of
- a son of
- and its grain offering of

ULT

⁸ And they shall take a bull, a son of cattle, and its grain offering of fine flour mixed with the oil. And you shall take a second bull, a son of cattle, for a sin offering.

Numbers 8:9

assemble the whole community

“gather the whole community”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- meeting
- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

⁹ And you shall bring the Levites near before the face of the tent of meeting. And you shall assemble all the congregation of the sons of Israel.

Numbers 8:10

before Yahweh

Here Yahweh refers to himself by his own name.

the people of Israel must lay their hands on the Levites

The action “laying on hands” on someone was often done to dedicate them to Yahweh’s work or service. Alternate translation: “The people Israel must lay their hands on the Levites, dedicating them to me” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

ULT

¹⁰ And you shall bring [the Levites](#) near before the face of [Yahweh](#). And [the sons of Israel](#) shall lay [their hands](#) on [the Levites](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [their hands](#)

Numbers 8:11

as a wave offering

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh with the same amount of dedication as if they were a sacrifice given to him. Alternate translation: "if they were a wave offering" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

11 And [Aaron](#) shall wave [the Levites](#) as a wave offering before the face of [Yahweh](#) from with [the sons of Israel](#). And they shall be for serving the service of [Yahweh](#).

Numbers 8:12

The Levites must place their hands on the heads of the bulls

This is a symbolic action that identifies the Levites with the animals being offered. In this way the person is offering himself through the animal to Yahweh. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the Levites](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [their hands](#)
- [the head of](#)
- [as a sin offering](#)
- [as a burnt offering](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [to make atonement](#)

ULT

¹² [And the Levites](#) shall lay [their hands](#) on [the head of](#) the bulls. And make the one [as a sin offering](#) and the one [as a burnt offering to Yahweh, to make atonement](#) for the Levites.

Numbers 8:13

lift them up as a wave offering to me

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh as if he were lifting up an offering to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “dedicate them to me, as if you were lifting them up a wave offering to me” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

13 And you shall stand [the Levites](#) before the face of [Aaron](#) and before the face of [his sons](#). And you shall wave them as a wave offering [to Yahweh](#).

Numbers 8:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And you shall separate
- the Levites
- the Levites
- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

¹⁴ And you shall separate the Levites from the midst of the sons of Israel. And the Levites shall be for me.

Numbers 8:15

You must purify them. You must offer them as a wave offering

Yahweh repeats these things to emphasize their importance. This must happen before the Levites go to serve at the tent of meeting. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "But first, you must purify them. You must offer them as a wave offering" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

You must offer them as a wave offering

Aaron was to present the Levites to Yahweh as if they were a wave offering to him. Alternate translation: "You must dedicate them to me, as if you were presenting a wave offering to me" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [And you shall make...clean](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And afterwards [the Levites](#) shall enter to serve the tent of [meeting](#). [And you shall make](#) them [clean](#) and you shall wave them as a wave offering.

Numbers 8:16

each male child who opens the womb, the firstborn

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasize the firstborn sons. (See: [Parallelism](#))

male child who opens the womb

This is an idiom. "To open the womb" means to give birth for the first time. Here this refers to the first male child to which a mother gives birth. Alternate translation: "child who is the firstborn son of his mother" (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

¹⁶ For they are given, given to me from the midst of [the sons of Israel](#). Instead of the opener of every womb, [the firstborn of all from the sons of Israel](#), I have taken them for myself.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [from the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the firstborn of](#)

Numbers 8:17

I took the lives

This is a polite way of referring to when a person kills someone.
Alternate translation: "I killed" (See: [Euphemism](#))

I set them apart

Here "them" refers to "the firstborn from among the people of Israel."

Translation Words - ULT

- [firstborn](#)
- [firstborn \(2\)](#)
- [among the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [among the human](#)
- [and among the livestock](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [I set...apart](#)

ULT

17 For every [firstborn among the sons of Israel, among the human and among the livestock](#), belongs to me. On the day of my striking every [firstborn](#) in the land of [Egypt I set them apart](#) for me.

Numbers 8:18

I have taken the Levites ... instead of all the firstborn

The idea of “taking” is understood from the first part of the sentence and can be repeated in the second. Alternate translation: “I have taken the Levites ... instead taking all of the firstborn” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [firstborn](#)
- [among the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And I have taken [the Levites](#) instead of every [firstborn among the sons of Israel](#).

Numbers 8:19

I have given the Levites as a gift to Aaron and his sons

Yahweh appointing the Levites to help Aaron and his sons is spoken of as if they were a gift that Yahweh were giving to Aaron and his sons. (See: [Metaphor](#))

I have taken them ... I have given them

Here “them” refers to the Levites.

when they come near

Here “they” refers to the people of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [to Aaron](#)
- [the holy place](#)
- [and to his sons](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of \(2\)](#)
- [among the sons of](#)
- [the sons of \(2\)](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel \(2\)](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And I have given [the Levites](#) as given ones [to Aaron and to his sons](#), from the midst of [the sons of Israel](#), to serve the service of [the sons of Israel](#) in the tent of [meeting](#), and to make atonement for [the sons of Israel](#). And there shall be no plague [among the sons of Israel](#) at the coming of [the sons of Israel](#) to [the holy place](#).”

Numbers 8:20

Moses, Aaron, and the whole community of the people of Israel ... The people of Israel did this with them

Here there are three parallel sentences that give the same information. It is repeated to emphasize that the people did to the Levites as Yahweh had commanded. Alternate translation: "Moses, Aaron, and the whole community of the people of Israel did with the Levites everything that Yahweh had commanded Moses concerning the Levites" (See: [Parallelism](#))

ULT

²⁰ And [Moses and Aaron](#) and all the assembly of [the sons of Israel](#) did to the [Levites](#), according to all that [Yahweh](#) had commanded [Moses for the Levites](#), so [the sons of Israel](#) did to them.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to the Levites](#)
- [for the Levites](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [had commanded](#)

Numbers 8:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Levites
- And...purified themselves of sin
- Aaron
- Aaron
- Yahweh

ULT

²¹ And the Levites purified themselves of sin and they washed their garments and Aaron waved them as a wave offering before the face of Yahweh. And Aaron made atonement for them to make them clean.

Numbers 8:22

to do their service

The word “service,” an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb.
Alternate translation: “to serve” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

before Aaron and before Aaron’s sons

“in the presence of Aaron and his sons”

This was

“What they did was”

They treated all the Levites in this way

“They did to the Levites what Yahweh commanded.” The word “They” refers to the people of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [the...meeting](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [had commanded](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

22 And afterward [the Levites](#) entered to serve their service in the tent of [meeting](#) before the face of [Aaron](#) and before the face of [his sons](#), just as [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#) concerning [the Levites](#), so he did to them.

Numbers 8:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

²³ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 8:24

All of this is for the Levites

“All of these commandments are for the Levites”

twenty-five years old

“25 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

must join the company to serve in the tent of meeting

The word “company” refers to the rest of the people working in the tent of meeting. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 4:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [is for the Levites](#)
- [From a son of](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

²⁴ “This is what [is for the Levites](#). [From a son of](#) 25 years and above he shall enter to serve service in the work of the tent of [meeting](#).”

Numbers 8:25

at the age of fifty years

“at 50 years old” or “when they become 50 years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And from a son of](#)
- [he shall return](#)
- [he shall...work](#)

ULT

²⁵ [And from a son of](#) 50 years [he shall return](#) from the service of the work and [he shall not work](#) more.

Numbers 8:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his brothers
- meeting
- he shall...work
- for the Levites

ULT

²⁶ And he shall serve his brothers in the tent of meeting to keep duty but work he shall not work. Thus you shall do for the Levites in their duties.”

Numbers 9

Numbers 9 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

==Passover ==

This chapter records the celebration of the Passover for the first time since it began. The people kept the Passover as directed by the Lord. (See: [Passover](#))

Numbers 9:1

in the first month of the second year after they came out from the land of Egypt

This means that they had come out of Egypt a year earlier. They were beginning their second year in the wilderness. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the wilderness of Sinai, in the second year of their going out from the land of Egypt, in the first month, saying,

in the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

after they came out from the land of Egypt

Here “they” refers to the people of Israel. The phrase “came out” means to leave. Alternate translation: “after they left the land of Egypt” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- in the wilderness of
- Egypt

Numbers 9:2

Let the people ... at its fixed time of year

The word “fixed” means “previously set.” This means that this is when the observe it every year. Alternate translation: “Let the people ... at the time of year they currently observe it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

² “And let [the sons of Israel](#) do [the Passover](#) at its appointed time.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the Passover](#)

Numbers 9:3

On the fourteenth day ... at its fixed time of year

This is the set time of year that they celebrate the Passover. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "On the fourteenth day ... and observe it, for this is the time you do celebrate it every year" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³ On day 14 in this month, between the evenings, you shall do it at its appointed time. According to all its statutes and according to all [its ordinances](#) you shall do it."

the fourteenth day

"day 14" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

follow all the regulations, and obey all the decrees

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined to emphasize that they needed to obey the commands. (See: [Parallelism](#))

You must keep it

Here the phrase "keep it" is an idiom which means to observe it. Alternate translation: "You must observe it" or "You must celebrate it" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [its ordinances](#)

Numbers 9:4

keep the Festival of the Passover

Here the word “keep” means to observe. Alternate translation: “observe the Festival of the Passover” or “celebrate the Festival of the Passover” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the Passover](#)

ULT

⁴ And [Moses](#) spoke to [the sons of Israel](#) to do [the Passover](#).

Numbers 9:5

in the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month

“on day 14 of the first month.” This refers to time in the Jewish calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Passover](#)
- [in the wilderness of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [had commanded](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁵ And they did [the Passover](#) in the first, on day 14 of the month, between the evenings, [in the wilderness of Sinai](#). According to all that [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#), so did [the sons of Israel](#).

Numbers 9:6

became unclean by the body of a dead man

This implies that they touched the dead man, which made them unclean. You can make clear the full meaning of this statement. Alternate translation: “became unclean because they touched the body of a dead man” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

keep the Passover

Here the word “keep” means to observe. Alternate translation: “observe the Passover” or “celebrate the Passover” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a man](#)
- [the Passover](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

⁶ And there were men who were unclean by the body of [a man](#) and they were not able to do [the Passover](#) on that day. And they came near before the face of [Moses](#) and before the face of [Aaron](#) on that day.

Numbers 9:7

because of the dead body of a man

This means that they had touched a dead man's body. You can make the full meaning of this statement clear. Alternate translation: "because we have touched the body of a dead man" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Why do you keep us from offering the sacrifice ... among the people of Israel?

The men ask this question in order to complain that they are not allowed to participate in celebrating the Passover. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It is not fair that you keep us away from offering the sacrifice ... among the people of Israel." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

fixed

set or predetermined

Translation Words - ULT

- [a man](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁷ And those men said to him, "We are unclean by the body of [a man](#). Why are we restrained to not offer an offering of [Yahweh](#) at its appointed time in the midst of [the sons of Israel](#)?"

Numbers 9:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Stand
- Yahweh
- commands

ULT

⁸ And Moses said to them, “Stand and I shall hear what Yahweh commands for you.”

Numbers 9:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 9:10

unclean

A person who God considers spiritually unacceptable or defiled is spoken of as if the person were physically unclean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

because of a dead body

This refers to someone touching a dead body. Alternate translation: "because you have touched a dead body" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

keep the Passover

Here the word "keep" means to observe. Alternate translation: "observe the Passover" or "celebrate the Passover" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [for your generations](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

10 "Speak to [the sons of Israel](#), saying, 'If a man, a man is unclean by a body or is on a distant road, for you or [for your generations](#), then he may do the Passover [to Yahweh](#),

Numbers 9:11

eat the Passover

Here the word “eat” means to observe. Alternate translation: “observe the Passover” or “celebrate the Passover” (See: [Idiom](#))

the second month on the fourteenth day

“day 14 of month 2.” This refers to time in the Jewish calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

at evening

“at sunset”

with bread that is made without yeast

“with bread that contains no yeast”

bitter herbs

These are small plants that have a strong and usually bad taste.

Translation Words - ULT

- [unleavened bread](#)
- [they shall eat it](#)

ULT

11 in the second month on day 14 between the evenings, they shall do it. With [unleavened bread](#) and bitter herbs [they shall eat it](#).

Numbers 9:12

or break any of its bones

“and they must not break any of its bones”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Passover](#)

ULT

¹² They shall not leave some of it until morning. And a bone, they shall not break it. According to every statute of [the Passover](#) they shall do it.

Numbers 9:13

any person who is clean

A person who God considers spiritually acceptable is spoken of as if the person were physically clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

keep the Passover

Here the word “keep” means to observe. Alternate translation: “observe the Passover” or “celebrate the Passover” (See: [Idiom](#))

that person must be cut off

Here the phrase “cut off” means to be disowned and sent away. Alternate translation: “that person must be sent away” or “you must send that person away” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

fixed

set or predetermined

That man must carry his sin

Here the concept of the man having to bear the consequences of his sin is spoken of as if his sin were a heavy object that he had to carry. Alternate translation: “That man must bear the punishment for his sin” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is clean](#)
- [the Passover](#)
- [and...shall be cut off](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

13 And the man, he who [is clean](#) and is not on a road but ceases to do [the Passover](#), and that person [shall be cut off](#) from his people because he did not offer the offering of [Yahweh](#) at its appointed time. That man shall carry his sin.

Numbers 9:14

lives among you

Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

he must keep it according to the statute of the Passover and according to its rule

“that stranger must keep it and do all that Yahweh has commanded concerning the Passover.” The words “statute” and “rule” mean basically the same thing and are used together to emphasize that the stranger must obey all of the rules about the Passover. (See: [Parallelism](#))

in the land

“in the land of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [the Passover](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

14 And if a sojourner sojourns with you and does the Passover [to Yahweh](#), according to the statute of [the Passover](#) and according to its ordinance, so he shall do. One statute shall be for you and for the sojourner and for the native of [the land](#).”

Numbers 9:15

the tabernacle was set up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Levites set up the tabernacle” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the tent of the covenant decrees

This is another name for the tabernacle. See how you translated the phrase “the tabernacle of the covenant decrees” in [Numbers 1:50](#).

It appeared like fire until morning

This refers to the cloud’s appearance during the night. Here the cloud is compared to looking like a fire. Alternate translation: “During the night the cloud looked like a huge fire until morning” (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the dwelling](#)
- [the dwelling](#)
- [fire](#)

ULT

15 And on the day of raising up [the dwelling](#) the cloud covered the dwelling of the tent of the testimony and in the evening it was above [the dwelling](#) like the appearance of [fire](#) until morning.

Numbers 9:16

It continued that way

It may be helpful to explain that this refers to the cloud being over the tabernacle. Alternate translation: "The cloud remained this way over the tabernacle" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

16 So it was continually. The cloud covered it and the appearance of **fire** at night.

appeared like fire at night

The cloud's appearance is compared to a huge fire. Alternate translation: "it looked like a huge fire at night" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)

Numbers 9:17

the cloud was taken up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “moved” or “Yahweh took up the cloud” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the cloud stopped

“the cloud stopped moving”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Israel

ULT

17 And according to the mouth the cloud was lifted from above the tent, then afterward [the sons of Israel](#) set out. And in the place there where the cloud dwelled, there [the sons of Israel](#) camped.

Numbers 9:18

At Yahweh's command

The word "command" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "When Yahweh commanded" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the sons of
- Israel
- the dwelling

ULT

18 In accordance with the mouth of Yahweh the sons of Israel set out, and in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh they camped. They camped all the days that the cloud dwelled above the dwelling.

Numbers 9:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the dwelling
- the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁹ And when the cloud prolonged above the dwelling many days, then the sons of Israel kept the keeping of Yahweh and did not set out.

Numbers 9:20

on the tabernacle

“over the tabernacle”

make camp

Here the word “make” means to “set up.” Alternate translation: “set up their camp” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the dwelling](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁰ And it was when the cloud was days of number above [the dwelling](#), they camped in accordance with the mouth of [Yahweh](#) and they set out in accordance with the mouth of [Yahweh](#).

Numbers 9:21

from evening until morning

This means that the cloud only stayed over the tabernacle for one night. You make clear the full meaning of this statement. Alternate translation: “only from evening until morning” or “over the tabernacle for only one night” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

If it continued

The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. “If the cloud stayed over the tabernacle” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

only when the cloud lifted would they journey on

“then after the cloud moved they would travel”

ULT

21 And it was when the cloud was from evening until morning and the cloud was taken up in the morning then they set out, or in the daytime and night, and the cloud was taken up then they set out.

Numbers 9:22

the cloud was taken up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the cloud rose up” or “Yahweh took up the cloud” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the dwelling](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

22 Whether two days or a month or days, when the cloud prolonged above [the dwelling](#) to dwell above it, [the sons of Israel](#) camped and did not set out. And when it was taken up they set out.

Numbers 9:23

at Yahweh's command

The word "command" can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "what Yahweh commanded" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Yahweh's command given through Moses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "the command that Yahweh had given through Moses" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- Yahweh (2)
- They kept
- by the hand of
- Moses

ULT

²³ They camped in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh and they set out in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh. They kept the keeping of Yahweh in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh by the hand of Moses.

Numbers 10

Numbers 10 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Trumpets

In the ancient Near East, trumpets were used for many purposes. They were used to call people together. They were also used to lead people into battle.

Israel starts to move

Each tribe had its place in line as did the tabernacle. Their movements through the desert were very deliberate and ordered. (See: [tabernacle](#))

Numbers 10:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 10:2

Make two silver trumpets

This means that Yahweh commanded Moses to have someone make the trumpet. He did not make them himself. Alternate translation: "Tell someone to make two silver trumpets" (See: [Metonymy](#))

You must use the trumpets

Moses will not blow the trumpets himself, but he will command the priests to blow them. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [silver](#)

ULT

2 "Make for you two trumpets of [silver](#). You shall make them hammered work. And they shall be for you for the calling of the congregation and for pulling up the camps.

Numbers 10:3

in front of you

“while you are present.” This means that Moses was to be there with the priest when he blew the trumpets.

Translation Words - ULT

- [meeting](#)

ULT

³ And they shall blow them and they shall congregate themselves to you, all the congregation, to the opening of the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 10:4

the leaders, the heads of the clans of Israel

These two phrases refer to the same group of people. Here the second phrase is used to describe the first phrase. Alternate translation: "the leaders, who are the heads of the clans of Israel" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the leaders](#)
- [the heads of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁴ And if they blow one, then [the leaders](#), [the heads of](#) the thousands of [Israel](#), shall congregate themselves to you.

Numbers 10:5

When you blow a loud signal

Here the word “you” is plural. Yahweh is speaking to Moses, but he is referring to the priests. The priests will blow the trumpets, Moses will not. Alternate translation: “When they blow a loud signal” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁵ And you shall blow a blast and the camps camping to the east shall set out.

Numbers 10:6

When you blow a loud signal

Here the word “you” is plural. Yahweh is speaking to Moses, but he is referring to the priests. The priests will blow the trumpets, Moses will not. Alternate translation: “When they blow a loud signal” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Metonymy](#))

the second time

“time number 2” or “again” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

They must blow a loud signal for their journeys

“They” refers to the priests and the word “their” refers to the people of Israel.

ULT

⁶ And you shall blow a second blast and the camps camping to the south shall set out. They shall blow a blast for their setting out.

Numbers 10:7

When the community gathers together

“To gather the community together”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the assembly](#)

ULT

⁷ And when assembling [the assembly](#)
you shall blow but you shall not blast.

Numbers 10:8

be a regulation for you

“be a rule for you.” Here “you” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the priests](#)
- [the trumpets](#)
- [for your generations](#)

ULT

8 [And the sons of Aaron, the priests,](#) shall blow [the trumpets](#) And it shall be for you for a statute forever, [for your generations.](#)

Numbers 10:9

When you go to war ... oppresses you

Yahweh is speaking to Moses and uses the word “you,” but he is actually referring the people of Israel going to war. Alternate translation: “When the people of Israel to war ... oppresses Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

then you must sound an alarm with the trumpets

Here Yahweh again speaks to Moses using the word “you” but actually wants Moses to have the priests blow the trumpets. Alternate translation: “then you must command the priests to sound an alarm with the trumpets” (See: [Metonymy](#))

call you to mind

This phrase “call to mind” means to remember. Alternate translation: “remember you” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the opponents](#)
- [from your enemies](#)
- [then you shall blast](#)
- [the trumpets](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your God](#)
- [and you shall be saved](#)

ULT

⁹ And when you enter battle in your land against [the opponents](#) who oppose you, [then you shall blast the trumpets](#). And you shall be remembered before the face of [Yahweh your God](#), and [you shall be saved from your enemies](#).

Numbers 10:10

of celebration

The noun “celebration” can be expressed with the verb “celebrate.”
Alternate translation: “when you celebrate” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

you must blow the trumpets

Here Yahweh again speaks to Moses using the word “you,” but actually wants him to have the priests blow the trumpets. Alternate translation: “you must command the priests to blow the trumpets” (See: [Metonymy](#)),

at the beginnings of the months

There are 12 months on the Hebrew calendar. The beginning phase of the moon with its sliver of light marked the beginning of each month in the lunar calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#))

your burnt offerings ... your fellowship offerings ... you to me

In these phrases the words “your” and “you” are plural and refer to the people of Israel. (See: [Forms of You](#))

over the sacrifices

“in honor of the sacrifices”

will act as a reminder of you to me

“will act as a memorial for you of me.” The word “reminder” can be expressed with the verb “remind.” Alternate translation: “will always remind you of me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

These will act

The word “these” refers to the trumpets and the sacrifices.

Translation Words - ULT

- [your joy](#)
- [the trumpets](#)
- [your burnt up offerings](#)
- [the sacrifices of](#)
- [your God](#)
- [your God](#)
- [am Yahweh](#)

ULT

10 And on a day of [your joy](#) and at your appointed times and at the heads of your months, then you shall blow [the trumpets](#) with [your burnt up offerings](#) and with [the sacrifices of](#) your peace offerings. And it will be for you for a memorial before the face of [your God](#). I [am Yahweh your God](#).

Numbers 10:11

In the second year

“In year 2.” This refers to the second year after Yahweh brought the Israelites out of Egypt. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the second month, on the twentieth day of the month

“on day 20 of month 2.” This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the cloud was lifted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the cloud rose up” or “Yahweh lifted the cloud” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the tabernacle of the covenant decrees

The tabernacle was also called by this longer name because the ark with the law of God was placed inside it. See how you translated this in [Numbers 1:50](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the dwelling of](#)

ULT

11 And it happened that in the second year, in the second month, on 20 in the month, the cloud was taken up from above [the dwelling of](#) the testimony.

Numbers 10:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- in the wilderness of

ULT

¹² And [the sons of Israel](#) set out from the wilderness of Sinai according to their tribes. And the cloud dwelled [in the wilderness of Paran](#).

Numbers 10:13

Yahweh's command given through Moses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the commands that Yahweh had given through Moses” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

13 And they set out at the first in accordance with the mouth of [Yahweh](#) by the hand of [Moses](#).

Numbers 10:14

The camp under the banner of Judah's descendants

This camp includes the three tribes under the division of Judah: Judah, Issachar, and Zebulun.

went out first

They packed up their camp and they left that place before all the others left. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

Nahshon son of Amminadab

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:7](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And the banner of the camp of [the sons of Judah](#) set out at the first according to their armies. And over his army was Nahson [the son of](#) Amminadab.

Numbers 10:15

Nethanel son of Zuar

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Issachar](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And over the army of the tribe of [the sons of Issachar](#) was Nethanel [the son of Zuar](#).

Numbers 10:16

Eliab son of Helon

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:9](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of

ULT

16 And over the army of the tribe of the sons of Zebulun was Eliab the son of Helon.

Numbers 10:17

Gershon ... Merari

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 3:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the dwelling
- the dwelling
- the sons of
- and the sons of

ULT

17 And [the dwelling](#) was taken down.
And [the sons of](#) Gershon [and the sons of](#) Merari, the lifters of [the dwelling](#), set out.

Numbers 10:18

the armies under the banner of Reuben's camp

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Reuben: Reuben, Simeon, and Gad.

Elizur son of Shedeur

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Reuben](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And the banner of the tribe of [Reuben](#) set out according to their armies. And over his company was Elizur [the son of](#) Shedeur.

Numbers 10:19

Shelumiel son of Zurishaddai

See how you translated this man's name [Numbers 1:6](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And over the army of the tribe of [the sons of](#) Simeon was Shelumiel [the son of](#) Zurishaddai.

Numbers 10:20

Eliasaph son of Deuel

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:14](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- Gad

ULT

²⁰ And over the army of the tribe of [the sons of Gad](#) was Eliasaph [the son of Deuel](#).

Numbers 10:21

Kohathites

This refers to the descendants of Kohath. See how you translated this in [Numbers 3:27](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the holy place](#)
- [the dwelling](#)

ULT

21 And the Kohathites, lifters of [the holy place](#), set out. And they raised up [the dwelling](#) until their coming.

Numbers 10:22

The armies under the banner of Ephraim's descendants

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Ephraim: Ephraim, Manasseh, and Benjamin.

Elishama son of Ammihud

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)

ULT

²² And the banner of the camp of [the sons of Ephraim](#) set out according to their armies. And over his army was Elishama [the son of](#) Ammihud.

Numbers 10:23

Gamaliel son of Pedahzur

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:10](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

²³ And over the army of the tribe of [the sons of](#) Manasseh was Gamaliel [the son of](#) Pedahzur.

Numbers 10:24

Abidan son of Gideoni

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:11](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Benjamin](#)

ULT

²⁴ And over the army of the tribe of [the sons of Benjamin](#) was Abidan [the son of Gideoni](#).

Numbers 10:25

The armies that camped under the banner of Dan's descendants

This refers to the armies of the tribes under the division of Dan: Dan, Asher, and Naphtali.

Ahiezer son of Ammishaddai

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:12](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- gatherer

ULT

²⁵ And the banner of the camp of the sons of Dan, gatherer for all the camps according to their armies, set out. And over his army was Ahiezer the son of Ammishaddai.

Numbers 10:26

Pagiel son of Okran

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Asher](#)

ULT

²⁶ And over the army of the tribe of [the sons of Asher](#) was Pagiel [the son of](#) Okran.

Numbers 10:27

Ahira son of Enan

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 1:15](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Naphtali](#)

ULT

²⁷ And over the army of the tribe of [the sons of Naphtali](#) was Ahira [the son of](#) Enan.

Numbers 10:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

²⁸ These were the tribes of [the sons of Israel](#) according to their armies. And they set out.

Numbers 10:29

Hobab son of Reuel

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that Yahweh described

“that Yahweh described to us”

we will do you good

“we will treat you well”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Go](#)
- [good](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

²⁹ And [Moses](#) said to Hobab [the son of Reuel](#) the Midianite, the father-in-law of [Moses](#), “We are about to set out to the place that [Yahweh](#) said, ‘I shall give it to you.’ [Go](#) with us and we will do good to you. For [Yahweh](#) has spoken [good](#) for [Israel](#).”

Numbers 10:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- I will...go
- I will go
- my land

ULT

³⁰ And he said to him, "I will not go, but I will go to my land and to my family."

Numbers 10:31

You must watch out for us

The phrase “watch out” means to guide and to take care of.
Alternate translation: “You can guide us and show us how to live in the desert” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [do...leave](#)
- [you know](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

ULT

31 And he said, “Please do not [leave](#) us!
Because [you know](#) our camping [in the wilderness](#) and you could be for eyes for us.”

Numbers 10:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- you go
- Yahweh
- shall do good

ULT

³² And it will happen that if you go with us, then it will happen that that good which Yahweh shall do good with us even we will do good to you.”

Numbers 10:33

They journeyed

“They” refers to the people of Israel.

the mountain of Yahweh

This refers to Mount Sinai. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: “Mount Sinai, the mountain of Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³³ And they set out from the mountain of Yahweh a road of three days. And the box of the covenant of Yahweh was setting out before the face of them a road of three days, to seek out for them a resting place.

The ark of the covenant of Yahweh went before them

The group of Levites carrying the ark of the covenant went before the people of Israel as they traveled. Alternate translation: “Men carried the ark of the covenant of Yahweh before them as they traveled” (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- And the box of
- the covenant of
- a resting place

Numbers 10:34

by daylight

“every day” or “during the day”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh

ULT

³⁴ And the cloud of Yahweh was over them by day when they set out from the camp.

Numbers 10:35

Whenever the ark set out

Here the ark is spoken of as if were a person traveling. The ark was really being carried by men. Alternate translation: "Whenever the people carrying the ark set out" (See: [Personification](#))

Rise up, Yahweh

Here the phrase "rise up" is a request for Yahweh to act, in this case Moses is asking him to scatter their enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Make those who hate you run from you

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh causing their enemies to flee from the people of Israel as if they were fleeing from Yahweh himself. Alternate translation: "Make those who hate you run away from your ark and your people" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the box](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your enemies](#)

ULT

³⁵ And it happened when [the box](#) set out that [Moses](#) said, "Rise up, [Yahweh](#), and [your enemies](#) will be scattered, and those who hate you will flee from your face."

Numbers 10:36

Whenever the ark stopped

Here the ark is spoken of as if were a person traveling. The ark was really being carried by men. Alternate translation: "Whenever the people carrying the ark stopped" (See: [Personification](#))

many tens of thousands

This refers to people. The full meaning of this statement can be made explicit. Alternate translation: "many tens of thousands of people" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Return](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

³⁶ And when it rested, he said, "Return, Yahweh, to the multitudes of the thousands of Israel."

Numbers 11

Numbers 11 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Complaining

Moses complained about having too much responsibility. Therefore, God gave seventy men the spirit of prophecy to help Moses. The people complained about food, even though Yahweh was miraculously providing them with their food. The people complained because they did not have meat or fish to eat. God sent them quail. He punished some of the people, but it does not say why God did this. (See: [spirit](#), [wind](#), [breath](#) and [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#))

Numbers 11:1

Fire from Yahweh burned

“Yahweh sent fire that burned”

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- evil
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- the fire of
- and it ate

ULT

¹ And when the people were complaining it was evil in the ears of Yahweh. And Yahweh heard and his nose burned. And the fire of Yahweh burned among them and it ate at the end of the camp.

Numbers 11:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- Moses
- Moses
- And...prayed
- Yahweh
- the fire

ULT

² And the people cried out to Moses.
And Moses prayed to Yahweh and the
fire sank.

Numbers 11:3

That place was named

This can be stated in the active form. Alternate translation: "They named that place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the name of
- And...was called
- the fire of
- Yahweh

ULT

³ And [the name of](#) that place [was called](#) Taberah, for [the fire of Yahweh](#) burned among them.

Numbers 11:4

Who will give us meat to eat?

The Israelites ask this question in order to complain and to express their desire for something other than manna to eat. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "We wish that we had meat to eat." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they turned back](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [will let us eat](#)
- [meat](#)

ULT

⁴ And the gathered rabble that was in its inner part desired a desire. [And they turned back](#) and they wept, also [the sons of Israel](#). And they said, "Who [will let us eat meat](#)?"

Numbers 11:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- we ate
- in Egypt

ULT

⁵ We remember the fish that we ate in Egypt for nothing, the cucumbers, and the melons, and the leeks, and the onions, and the garlic.

Numbers 11:6

our appetite is gone

“we do not want to eat” or “we cannot eat”

Translation Words - ULT

- our life
- the manna

ULT

⁶ And now our life is dried up, there is not anything except for the manna in our eyes.”

Numbers 11:7

coriander seed

Coriander is also known as cilantro. This seed serves as a spice when dried.

resin

This is a sticky substance with a pale yellow color.

ULT

⁷ And the manna, it was like the seed of coriander. And its eye was like the eye of bdellium.

Numbers 11:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The people
- and picked up

ULT

⁸ The people went around and picked up and ground with the handmill or crushed with the mortar and boiled in the pot and made it cakes. And its taste was like the taste of the delicacy of the oil.

Numbers 11:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the manna

ULT

⁹ And when the dew came down on the camp at night, the manna came down on it.

Numbers 11:10

in Moses' eyes

he eyes represent seeing, and seeing represents thoughts or judgment. Alternate translation: "in Moses' opinion" or "in Moses' judgement" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the...Moses](#)
- [the people](#)
- [according to its clans](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [it was evil](#)

ULT

10 And [Moses](#) heard [the people](#) weeping [according to its clans](#), a man to the opening of his tent. And the nose of [Yahweh](#) burned exceedingly and [it was evil](#) in the eyes of [Moses](#).

Numbers 11:11

General Information:

Moses complains to Yahweh using several rhetorical questions. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

**Why have you treated your servant so badly?
Why are you not pleased with me?**

Moses used these questions to complain about the way God was treating him. They can be expressed as statements. Moses speaks of himself in the third person. Alternate translation: "You should not treat me, your servant, so badly. You should not be angry with me!" or "I, your servant, have done nothing wrong for you to treat me so badly!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [First, Second or Third Person](#))

You make me carry the load of all these people

Moses complains and speaks of leading the people and providing for them as if he were carrying a heavy load. Alternate translation: "You make me responsible for all these people, but it's too hard for me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [do you do evil](#)
- [to your servant](#)
- [favor](#)
- [the burden of](#)
- [people](#)

ULT

11 And [Moses](#) said to [Yahweh](#), "Why [do you do evil to your servant](#)? And why have I not found [favor](#) in your eyes, by putting [the burden of](#) all this [people](#) on me?"

Numbers 11:12

Did I conceive all these people?

Moses used this question to remind God that Moses was not their father. Alternate translation: "I am not the father of all these people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Have I given them birth so that you should say to me, 'Carry ... baby?'

Moses wants God to remember that God told him to take care of the Israelites even though Moses was not their father. Alternate translation: "I have not given them birth, so you have no right to say to me, 'Carry ... baby!'" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Carry them closely to your chest

To take care of the Israelites is spoken of as if it were to carry a helpless newborn baby. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Should I carry them ... to give them?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not expect me to carry them ... to give them!" or "I am not able to carry them ... to give them!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- I
- people
- you have sworn
- to his fathers

ULT

¹² Did I conceive all of this [people](#)? Did I give birth to him so that you could say to me, 'Carry him in your bosom just as the one who nourishes carries the one who sucks over the ground that [you have sworn to his fathers](#)'?

Numbers 11:13

Where can I find meat to give to all this people?

Moses used this question to complain that it was impossible for him to give meat to all the people. Alternate translation: "I cannot possibly find enough meat to give to all these people." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹³ From where is **meat** for me to give to all of this **people**? For they weep beside me, saying, 'Give to us **meat and let us eat**.'

Translation Words - ULT

- **meat**
- **meat**
- **people**
- **and let us eat**

Numbers 11:14

I cannot bear all these people alone

Moses speaks of leading and providing for the people as if he were carrying them. Alternate translation: "I cannot provide for all these people alone" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

14 I am not able by myself to carry all of this [people](#), for they are heavier than me.

They are too much for me

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: "This responsibility is too difficult for me" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I](#)
- [people](#)

Numbers 11:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- slay me
- quickly
- favor
- on my evil

ULT

¹⁵ And if you are going to do thus to me, please **slay me quickly**, if I have found **favor** in your eyes. And do not let me look **on my evil**.”

Numbers 11:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Gather
- for me
- Israel
- you know
- will be elders of
- the people
- meeting

ULT

¹⁶ And Yahweh said to Moses, “Gather for me 70 men from the elders of Israel whom you know, so that they will be elders of the people and its officers. And take them to the tent of meeting and they shall station themselves there with you.”

Numbers 11:17

some of the Spirit that is on you

The “Spirit” here represents the power that God’s Spirit had given to Moses so that Moses could do what God told him to do. Alternate translation: “some of the power that the Spirit has given you” (See: [Metonymy](#))

They will bear the burden of the people with you

God speaks of the responsibility of leading and providing for the people as if it were a burden that Moses and the leaders would carry. Alternate translation: “They will help you care for the people” (See: [Metaphor](#))

You will not have to bear it alone

God speaks of the responsibility of leading and providing for the people as if it were a burden that Moses and the leaders would carry. Alternate translation: “You will not care for them alone” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and put](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

17 And I will come down and speak with you there. And I will withdraw some of the spirit that is on you [and put](#) it on them. And they will carry with you the burden of [the people](#). And you will not carry by yourself.

Numbers 11:18

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Who will give us meat to eat?

The Israelites had asked this question in order to complain and to express their desire for something other than manna to eat. It can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "We wish that we had meat to eat." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

18 And to [the people](#) you shall say, '[Make yourselves holy](#) for tomorrow, [and you shall eat meat](#). For you have wept in the ears of [Yahweh](#), saying, "Who [will let us eat meat](#)? For it was good for us [in Egypt](#)." And [Yahweh](#) will give to you [meat, and you will eat](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [Make yourselves holy](#)
- [and you shall eat](#)
- [will let us eat](#)
- [and you will eat](#)
- [meat](#)
- [meat](#)
- [meat](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [in Egypt](#)

Numbers 11:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- You will eat

ULT

¹⁹ You will eat not one day, and not two days, and not five days, and not ten days, and not twenty days,

Numbers 11:20

until it comes out of your nostrils

This could mean: (1) God speaks of vomiting as if the food would come out through their nostrils. Alternate translation: “until you are sick and vomit” or (2) they would eat so much meat that it would be as if it would come out of their nostrils. Alternate translation: “until it feels like it would have to come out of your nostrils” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Why did we leave Egypt?

The people had used this question to express regret and to complain. Alternate translation: “We never should have left Egypt.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [it goes out](#)
- [we went out](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [from Egypt](#)

ULT

²⁰ until a month of days, until when [it goes out](#) from your nose. And it shall be for disgust for you, because that you rejected [Yahweh](#) who is in the midst of you. And you wept before his face, saying, “Why this—[we went out from Egypt](#)?””

Numbers 11:21

600,000 people

“six hundred thousand people” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [The people](#)
- [I](#)
- [meat](#)
- [and they shall eat](#)

ULT

²¹ And [Moses](#) said, “[The people](#) are 600,000 on foot who I am in the midst of, and you have said, ‘I shall give to them [meat and they shall eat](#) a month of days.’”

Numbers 11:22

Should we kill flocks and herds to satisfy them? Should we catch all the fish in the sea to satisfy them?

Moses uses these questions to express his doubt that there could be enough meat to feed all of the people. Alternate translation: "We would have to kill entire flocks and herds and catch all the fish in the sea to satisfy them!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²² Shall flock and herd be slaughtered for them then one find for them? If all the fish of the sea were gathered for them then one will find for them."

flocks and herds

These two words mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize a great number of animals. (See: [Doublet](#))

all the fish in the sea

The word "all" is an exaggeration to show how impossible it was to provide food for all the people of Israel. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

to satisfy them

"to satisfy their hunger"

Translation Words - ULT

- were gathered

Numbers 11:23

Is my hand short?

Here the word “hand” represents God’s power. God uses this question to rebuke Moses for thinking that God did not have the power to provide enough meat for the people. Alternate translation: “Do you think that I am not powerful enough to do this?” or “You should know I am more than strong enough to do this.” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

²³ And [Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), “Is the hand of [Yahweh](#) short? Now you will see whether my word will happen to you or not.”

Numbers 11:24

Yahweh's words

"what Yahweh had said"

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- And...went out
- the people
- the people (2)
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁴ And Moses went out and he spoke to the people the words of Yahweh. And he gathered 70 men from the elders of the people. And he had them stand round about the tent.

Numbers 11:25

some of the Spirit that was on Moses

The “Spirit” here represents the power that God’s Spirit had given to Moses. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 11:17](#). Alternate translation: “some of the power that the Spirit had given to Moses” (See: [Metonymy](#))

put it on the seventy elders

Giving power to the elders is spoken of as putting the Spirit on them. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 11:17](#). Alternate translation: “gave it to the seventy elders” (See: [Metaphor](#))

When the Spirit rested on them

Having power from the Spirit is spoken of as if the Spirit rested on them. Alternate translation: “When they had power from the Spirit” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the elders](#)
- [that they prophesied](#)

ULT

²⁵ And [Yahweh](#) came down in the cloud and he spoke to him. And he withdrew some of the spirit that was on him and he put it on 70 men, [the elders](#). And it happened when the spirit rested on them [that they prophesied](#) but did not again.

Numbers 11:26

The Spirit also rested on them

The Spirit giving them power is spoken of as if the Spirit rested on them. Alternate translation: "The Spirit also gave them power" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Their names were written on the list

This can be written in active form. Alternate translation: "Moses had written their names on the list" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the name of](#)
- [And...rested](#)
- [they had...gone out](#)
- [And they prophesied](#)

ULT

26 And two of the men were left in the camp, [the name of](#) the one was Eldad and the name of the second was Medad. And the spirit [rested](#) on them and they were among the written down ones but [they had not gone out](#) to the tent. [And they prophesied](#) in the camp.

Numbers 11:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the young man
- to Moses

ULT

²⁷ And the young man ran and reported to Moses, and he said, Eldad and Medad are prophesying in the camp.”

Numbers 11:28

stop them

“tell them to stop prophesying”

Translation Words - ULT

- Joshua
- the son of
- the server of
- Moses
- Moses
- My master

ULT

²⁸ And Joshua the son of Nun, the server of Moses from his youth, responded and said, “My master Moses, restrain them.”

Numbers 11:29

Are you jealous for my sake?

Moses uses this question to rebuke Joshua. It can be translated as a statement, if necessary. Alternate translation: "You should not be jealous for my sake." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Are you jealous for my sake?

What Joshua might have been jealous about can be stated clearly if needed. Alternate translation: "Are you concerned that they might be taking away something that belongs to me?" or "Are you concerned that people will not respect my authority?" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

that he would put his Spirit on them all

Moses speaks of God's Spirit giving people power as if God were to put his Spirit on them. Alternate translation: "that God's Spirit would give them all power" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [prophets](#)
- [his Spirit](#)

ULT

²⁹ And [Moses](#) said to him, "Are you being jealous for me? And if only he would make all [the people of Yahweh prophets](#), that [Yahweh](#) would put [his Spirit](#) on them!"

Numbers 11:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Israel

ULT

³⁰ And Moses withdrew to the camp, he and the elders of Israel.

Numbers 11:31

quail

a small bird (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

about a day's journey on one side and a day's journey on the other side

"in each direction for as far as a person could walk in one day"

about two cubits

A cubit is a unit of measurement equal to about 46 centimeters. Alternate translation: "about 92 centimeters" or "about 1 meter" (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And a wind](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

³¹ [And a wind](#) set out from with [Yahweh](#) and it brought over quail from the sea and it left on the camp like a road of a day here and like a road of a day here, round about the camp, and like two cubits upon [the face of the land](#).

Numbers 11:32

No one gathered less than ten homers of quail

This is a double negative which can be expressed as a positive statement. Alternate translation: "Everyone gathered at least ten homers of quail" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

ten homers

A homer is a unit of volume equal to about 220 liters. Alternate translation: "2,200 liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [gathered](#)

ULT

³² And [the people](#) rose all that day and all the night and all the day of the next day, and they gathered the quail. The one who did little [gathered](#) ten homers. And they spread out for them, spreading out round about the camp.

Numbers 11:33

While the meat was still between their teeth, while they were chewing it

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Together they emphasize that God punished them immediately, even while they were eating the meat. Alternate translation: "While they were still eating the meat" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [it was chewed](#)
- [and the nose of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh \(2\)](#)
- [against the people](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

³³ The meat was still between their teeth before [it was chewed](#), and the [nose of Yahweh](#) burned [against the people](#). And [Yahweh](#) struck [the people](#) an exceedingly great blow.

Numbers 11:34

That place was named Kibroth Hattaavah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “They named that place Kibroth Hattaavah” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he called](#)
- [the name of](#)
- [they buried](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

³⁴ [And he called the name of](#) that place Kibroth Hattaavah, because there [they buried the people](#) who had desired.

Numbers 11:35

Hazeroth

This is the name of a place in the desert. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)

ULT

³⁵ From Kibroth Hattaavah [the people](#) set out to Hazeroth. Then they were in Hazeroth.

Numbers 12

Numbers 12 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 12:6-8.

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Idiom

God used the idiom “mouth to mouth” meaning “speaking directly with both people present.” This indicated that Moses was more than just a prophet and greater than other prophets. (See: [Idiom](#) and [prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess](#))

Numbers 12:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Miriam
- and Aaron
- against Moses

ULT

¹ And Miriam and Aaron spoke against Moses on account of the Cushite wife that he had taken because he had taken a Cushite wife.

Numbers 12:2

Has Yahweh spoken only with Moses? Has he not spoken also with us?

Miriam and Aaron use these questions to complain that Moses had so much authority and they did not. This can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh has not spoken only with Moses. He has also spoken with us." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

² And they said, "Has [Yahweh](#) really only spoken [with Moses](#)? Has he not spoken also with us?" And [Yahweh](#) heard.

Now Yahweh heard

The word "Now" here draws attention to the important point that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [with Moses](#)

Numbers 12:3

Now the man Moses

“Now” is used to mark a break in the main story line. The narrator tells background information about Moses’ character. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [human](#)
- [the face of](#)

ULT

³ (And the man [Moses](#) was exceedingly humble, more than every [human](#) who was on [the face of](#) the ground.)

Numbers 12:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- Miriam
- go out
- meeting
- And...went out

ULT

⁴ And Yahweh said immediately to Moses and to Aaron and to Miriam, "The three of you go out to the tent of meeting." And the three of them went out.

Numbers 12:5

a pillar of cloud

The shape of the cloud is spoken of as if it were a pillar. Alternate translation: "a cloud shaped like a pillar" or "a tall cloud" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- in a column of
- And he called
- Aaron
- and Miriam
- and...went out

ULT

⁵ And Yahweh came down in a column of cloud. And he stood at the opening of the tent. And he called Aaron and Miriam and the two of them went out.

Numbers 12:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- your prophet
- Yahweh
- I...will make myself known

ULT

⁶ And he said, "Hear now my words! If one is your prophet, I, Yahweh will make myself known to him in the vision. I will speak with him in the dream.

Numbers 12:7

My servant Moses is not like that

“I do not speak to Moses like that”

He is faithful in all my house

Here “my house” represents the nation of Israel. Being faithful in God’s house represents being faithful in leading Israel. Alternate translation: “Moses leads my people faithfully” or “Moses is the one whom I trust to lead my people Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

⁷ Not so [my servant Moses](#). He [is trustworthy](#) in all [my house](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [my servant](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [is trustworthy](#)
- [my house](#)

Numbers 12:8

So why are you unafraid to speak against my servant, against Moses?

Yahweh asks this question to rebuke Miriam and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You should be afraid to speak against my servant, against Moses.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁸ I speak with him mouth to mouth and with appearance and not with riddles. And he looks at the form of Yahweh. And why **are you** not **afraid** to speak against my servant, **against Moses?**”

against my servant, against Moses

The phrase “against Moses” clarifies that he is the “servant” of whom Yahweh speaks. Alternate translation: “against my servant, Moses” (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [are you...afraid](#)
- [against Moses](#)

Numbers 12:9

Yahweh's anger burned against them

Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it were a fire. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry with them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁹ And the nose of [Yahweh](#) burned against them and he went.

Numbers 12:10

was as white as snow

Leprosy turned Miriam's skin white. Alternate translation: "became very white" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Miriam](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

10 And the cloud departed from over the tent. And behold, [Miriam](#) was with a skin disease, like the snow. And [Aaron](#) turned to Miriam, and behold, she was with a skin disease.

Numbers 12:11

do not hold this sin against us

To hold people's sin against them is to say that they are guilty for their sin. Here it represents punishing them for their sin. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [my master](#)
- [sin](#)
- [we sinned](#)

ULT

11 And [Aaron](#) said to [Moses](#), "Please, [my master](#), please do not put upon us [sin](#) which we did foolishly and which [we sinned](#)."

Numbers 12:12

Please do not let her be like a dead newborn whose flesh is half consumed

Miriam's leprosy would cause her body to decay until she died. The flesh being decayed is spoken of as if it were eaten. Alternate translation: "Please do not let her be like a dead newborn baby whose flesh is half decayed" (See: [Simile](#) and [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his flesh](#)
- [and...is eaten](#)

ULT

¹² Please do not let her be like the dead one who when he comes out from the womb of his mother and half of [his flesh is eaten.](#)"

Numbers 12:13

Please heal her, God, please

Here “please” is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Yahweh

ULT

¹³ And Moses cried out to Yahweh, saying, “God, please, please heal her!”

Numbers 12:14

If her father had spit in her face

This describes something that could have happened but did not. Spitting in someone's face was a terrible insult. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#) and [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- If her father
- she...be humiliated
- she may be brought in

ULT

14 And Yahweh said to Moses, "If her father surely spit in her face, would she not be humiliated seven days? She shall be shut up seven days from outside of the camp and afterward she may be brought in."

Numbers 12:15

Miriam was shut outside the camp

Being sent out of the camp and not being allowed to go back in is spoken of as if there were a door that was closed behind her. Alternate translation: “Miriam was sent outside the camp” or “Miriam was kept outside the camp” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Miriam was shut outside the camp

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Moses shut Miriam outside the camp” or “Moses sent Miriam outside the camp” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Miriam](#)
- [Miriam](#)
- [And the people](#)
- [the bringing in of](#)

ULT

15 And [Miriam](#) was shut up from outside of the camp seven days. [And the people](#) did not set out until [the bringing in of Miriam](#).

Numbers 12:16

Hazeroth

This is the name of a place in the desert. See how you translated it in [Numbers 11:35](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [in the wilderness of](#)

ULT

16 And after [the people](#) set out from Hazeroth. And they camped [in the wilderness of](#) Paran.

Numbers 13

Numbers 13 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Spies

Leaders from each of the tribes went to spy on the Promised Land in Canaan. Yahweh was not concerned with how many people were there, because he could defeat them. It appears that he is testing the faith of the people. The people were supposed to be excited to enter this wonderful land, instead they were afraid. (See: [Promised Land](#) and [test, tested, testing, testing in the fire](#) and [faith](#))

Numbers 13:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 13:2

which I have given

God had decided that the land of Canaan would belong to the people of Israel, but they had not yet moved into it. Alternate translation: “which I have decided to give” or “which I will soon give” (See: [Predictive Past](#))

Each man must be a leader among them

“Each man whom you send must be a leader among his tribe”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land of](#)
- [Canaan](#)
- [to the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [according to the tribe of](#)
- [his fathers](#)

ULT

2 “Send for yourself men and they shall explore [the land of Canaan](#), which I am giving [to the sons of Israel](#). You shall send one man by one man [according to the tribe of his fathers](#), every leader among them.”

Numbers 13:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Yahweh
- were the heads of
- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

³ And Moses sent them from the wilderness of Paran in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh. All of them were men, they were the heads of the sons of Israel

Numbers 13:4

Shammua son of Zaccur

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [are their names](#)
- [of the tribe of](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁴ And these [are their names: of the tribe of Reuben](#) was Shammua [the son of Zaccur](#),

Numbers 13:5

Shaphat ... Hori

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the tribe of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

⁵ [of the tribe of](#) Simeon was Shaphat
[the son of](#) Hori,

Numbers 13:6

Jephunneh

A man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- Judah
- the son of

ULT

⁶ of the tribe of Judah was Caleb the son of Jephunneh,

Numbers 13:7

Igal

A man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- Issachar
- the son of
- Joseph

ULT

⁷ of the tribe of Issachar was Igal the son of Joseph,

Numbers 13:8

Nun

A man's name. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- Ephraim
- was Hoshea
- the son of

ULT

⁸ of the tribe of Ephraim was Hoshea
the son of Nun,

Numbers 13:9

Palti ... Raphu

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- Benjamin
- the son of

ULT

⁹ of the tribe of Benjamin was Palti the son of Raphu,

Numbers 13:10

Gaddiel ... Sodi

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the tribe of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

¹⁰ [of the tribe of](#) Zebulun was Gaddiel
[the son of](#) Sodi,

Numbers 13:11

Gaddi ... Susi

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

from the tribe of Joseph (that is to say, from the tribe Manasseh)

The relationship between Joseph and Manasseh can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "from the tribe of Joseph's son Manasseh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹¹ of the tribe of Joseph, of the tribe of Manasseh, was Gaddi the son of Susi,

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- of the tribe of
- Joseph
- the son of

Numbers 13:12

Ammiel ... Gemalli

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the tribe of](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

¹² [of the tribe of](#) Dan was Ammiel [the son of](#) Gemalli,

Numbers 13:13

Sethur ... Michael

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- Asher
- the son of
- Michael

ULT

¹³ of the tribe of Asher was Sethur the son of Michael,

Numbers 13:14

Nahbi ... Vophsi

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- Naphtali
- the son of

ULT

¹⁴ of the tribe of Naphtali was Nahbi the son of Vophsi,

Numbers 13:15

Geuel ... Maki

These are men's names. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- Gad
- the son of

ULT

¹⁵ of the tribe of Gad was Geuel the son of Maki.

Numbers 13:16

Hoshea son of Nun

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 13:8](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- are the names of
- Moses
- Moses
- the land
- And...called
- Hoshea
- the son of
- Joshua

ULT

16 These are the names of the men whom Moses sent to explore the land. And Moses called Hoshea the son of Nun Joshua.

Numbers 13:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- the land of
- Canaan

ULT

¹⁷ And Moses sent them to explore the land of Canaan. And he said to them, "Go up here through the Negev and you shall go up the hill country."

Numbers 13:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- the people
- whether...strong

ULT

¹⁸ And you shall see **the land**, how it is; and **the people** who dwell on it, **whether** he is **strong** or weak, whether he is few or many;

Numbers 13:19

Is it good or bad? What cities are there? Are they like camps, or are they fortified cities?

Moses asks these questions to explain the kind of information that the men were to report back to him. These can be expressed as a statement. Alternate translation: "See if the land is good or bad, what kind of cities are there, and whether those cities are only camps, or whether they have defensive walls around them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁹ and how is [the land](#) in which he is dwelling, whether it is good or [evil](#); and how are the cities in which he is dwelling, whether in camps or in fortifications;

Are they like camps, or are they fortified cities

Fortified cities had strong walls around them to protect them from enemy armies. Camps did not have these walls.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [evil](#)

Numbers 13:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- is the land
- the land
- the firstfruits of
- the grapes

ULT

²⁰ and how **is the land**, whether it is fat or lean, whether there are trees in it or not. And you shall strengthen yourselves and you shall take from the fruit of **the land**." (And the days were the days of **the firstfruits of the grapes**.)

Numbers 13:21

Zin ... Rehob

These are names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

the wilderness of Zin

The word "Zin" here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

ULT

²¹ And they went up and they explored [the land](#) from the wilderness of Zin to Rehob, to enter Hamath.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)

Numbers 13:22

Zoan

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan in Egypt

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the Canaanites had built Hebron 7 years before the Egyptians built Zoan” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Numbers](#))

Ahiman ... Sheshai ... Talmai

These are names of clans that were named after their ancestors. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Anak

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Egypt](#)

ULT

²² And they went up through the Negev and they came to Hebron. And Ahiman, Sheshai, and Talmai, those born of the Anak, were there. (And Hebron had been built seven years before Zoan of [Egypt](#).)

Numbers 13:23

Eshkol

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

between two of their group

“between two men of their group”

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...they cut](#)
- [grapes](#)

ULT

²³ And they came to the wadi of Eschol. And from there [they cut](#) a branch and one cluster of [grapes](#). And they carried it by the pole with two men, and some of the pomegranates, and some of the figs.

Numbers 13:24

That place was named

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They named that place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [He called](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [cut](#)

ULT

²⁴ [He called](#) that place the wadi of Eshkol, on account of the cluster that [the sons of Israel cut](#) from there.

Numbers 13:25

After forty days

“After 40 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they returned](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

²⁵ [And they returned](#) from exploring [the land](#) at the end of 40 days.

Numbers 13:26

They brought back word

Here “word” refers to a report. Alternate translation: “They brought back their report” or “They reported what they had seen” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [And they brought back](#)
- [the fruit of](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

26 And they went and they came to [Moses](#) and to [Aaron](#) and to all the congregation of [the sons of Israel](#), to the wilderness of Paran at Kadesh. [And they brought back](#) them and all the congregation word. And they showed them [the fruit of the land](#).

Numbers 13:27

It certainly flows with milk and honey

“Milk and honey certainly flow there.” They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. Alternate translation: “It is certainly excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” or “It is certainly very fertile land” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

milk

Since milk comes from cows and goats, it represents livestock and the food produced from the livestock. Alternate translation: “food from livestock” (See: [Metonymy](#))

honey

Since honey is produced from flowers, it represents crops and the food produced from the crops. Alternate translation: “food from crops” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [and honey](#)
- [is its fruit](#)

ULT

27 And they recounted to him. And they said, “We entered into [the land](#) where you sent us. And it is certainly flowing with milk [and honey](#). And this [is its fruit](#).”

Numbers 13:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- are fierce

ULT

²⁸ However, the people who dwell in the land are fierce. And the cities are fortified very large. And also we saw those born of the Anak there.

Numbers 13:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Negev
- And the Hittite
- and the Jebusite
- and the Amorite
- the hand of
- the Jordan

ULT

²⁹ Amalek is dwelling in the land of the Negev. And the Hittite, and the Jebusite, and the Amorite is dwelling in the hill country. And the Canaanite is dwelling beside the sea and beside the hand of the Jordan.”

Numbers 13:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- Moses
- and take possession of

ULT

³⁰ And Caleb hushed the people near Moses. And he said, “We will certainly go up and take possession of it, for we are certainly able to prevail over it.”

Numbers 13:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- is stronger

ULT

³¹ And the men who went up with him said, "We are not able to go up against the people because he is stronger than us."

Numbers 13:32

they spread around ... They said

Here “they” refers to all of the men who examined the land except for Caleb and Joshua.

the land that they had examined

Here “they” refers to all of the men who examined the land including Caleb and Joshua.

a land that eats up its inhabitants

The men speak of the land, or the people of the land, being very dangerous as if the land ate up people. Alternate translation: “a very dangerous land” or “a land where the people will kill us” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they caused...to go out](#)
- [the land](#)
- [The land](#)
- [is a land](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [the...Israel](#)
- [that eats](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

³² [And they caused](#) an evil report of [the land](#), it that they had explored, [to go out](#) to the [sons of Israel](#), saying, “[The land](#) in which we passed through to explore it, it [is a land that eats](#) those who dwell in it. And all [the people](#) whom we saw in the midst of it were men of size.”

Numbers 13:33

Anak

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

In our own sight ... in their sight

Here sight represents evaluation and judgement. Alternate translation: "In our own opinion ... in their opinion" or "In our own judgement ... in their judgement" (See: [Metaphor](#))

we were like grasshoppers in comparison with them

The men speak of grasshoppers to show how very small they thought themselves to be compared to the people of the land. Alternate translation: "we are as small as grasshoppers in comparison with them" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)

ULT

³³ And there we saw the Nephilim, [the sons of](#) Anak from the Nephilim. And we were like grasshoppers in our eyes, and so we were in their eyes."

Numbers 14

Numbers 14 General Notes

Important figures of speech in this chapter

Rhetorical Questions

The author uses several rhetorical questions in this chapter. These questions indicate that people did not have faith in Yahweh. Yahweh also uses rhetorical questions to show the people's lack of faith. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [faith](#))

Numbers 14:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the people

ULT

¹ And all the congregation lifted up and gave their voice. And **the people** wept in that night.

Numbers 14:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Moses
- Aaron
- Egypt
- in...wilderness

ULT

² And all the sons of Israel murmured against Moses and against Aaron. And all the congregation said to them, "If only we had died in the land of Egypt, or if only we had died in this wilderness!"

Numbers 14:3

Why did Yahweh bring us to this land to die by the sword?

The people use this question in order to complain and accuse Yahweh of treating them unfairly. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Yahweh should not have brought us to this land only to die by the sword." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³ And why is Yahweh bringing us to this land to fall by the sword? Our wives and our children will be for plunder. Is it not good for us to return to Egypt?"

to die by the sword

Here "the sword" represents either being killed by the sword or being killed in battle. Alternate translation: "to die when people attack us with swords" or "to die in battle" or (See: [Metonymy](#))

Is it not better for us to return to Egypt?

The people use this question to encourage people to agree with them that it would be better to return to Egypt. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "It would be better for us to return to Egypt than to try to conquer Canaan." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [land](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [good](#)
- [to return](#)
- [to Egypt](#)

Numbers 14:4

They said to each another

This refers to the people of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- his brother
- a head
- and let us return
- to Egypt

ULT

⁴ And they said, a man to his brother,
“Let us set a head and let us return to
Egypt.”

Numbers 14:5

lay facedown

“lay down with their faces touching the ground.” Moses and Aaron did this to show that they were humbling themselves before God. They feared that God might punish the people for rebelling against him. Alternate translation: “lay facedown in humility to God” or “lay facedown to pray to God” (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [And...fell](#)
- [their faces](#)
- [the assembly of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁵ And [Moses and Aaron](#) fell on their [faces](#) before the face of all [the assembly of the congregation of the sons of Israel](#).

Numbers 14:6

Nun ... Jephunneh

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

who were some of those sent

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “who were some of those whom Moses sent” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

tore their clothes

Tearing one’s clothes was a gesture indicating the person is very troubled and is mourning. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Joshua](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

⁶ And Joshua [the son of](#) Nun and Caleb [the son of](#) Jephunneh, from the ones who explored [the land](#), tore their garments.

Numbers 14:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- The land
- land
- is a...good

ULT

⁷ And they spoke to all the congregation of **the sons of Israel**, saying, "**The land** in which we passed through to explore it **is a** very exceedingly **good land**."

Numbers 14:8

The land flows with milk and honey

They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants flowed through it. See how you translated this in [Numbers 13:27](#). Alternate translation: "It is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops" or "It is very fertile land" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁸ If [Yahweh delights](#) in us, then he will bring us into this [land](#). And he will give it to us, [a land](#) that is flowing with milk and honey.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [delights](#)
- [land](#)
- [a land](#)
- [and honey](#)

Numbers 14:9

Connecting Statement:

Joshua and Caleb continue speaking to the people of Israel.

for they are bread to us

Joshua and Caleb speak of destroying their enemies as easily as if they were eating bread. Alternate translation: "We will destroy them as easily as we can eat food" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Simile](#))

Their protection will be removed from them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will remove their protection from them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Their protection

The abstract noun "protection" can be stated as "protect." Alternate translation: "Anyone that might protect them" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you must...rebel](#)
- [against Yahweh](#)
- [and Yahweh](#)
- [must...fear](#)
- [You must...fear them](#)
- [the people of](#)
- [the land](#)
- [are our food](#)

ULT

⁹ Only [you must not rebel against Yahweh](#) and you [must not fear the people of the land](#), for they [are our food](#). He has turned their shadow from over them [and Yahweh is with us](#). [You must not fear them!](#)"

Numbers 14:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- meeting
- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

¹⁰ And all the congregation said to stone them with stones. But the glory of Yahweh appeared in the tent of meeting to all the sons of Israel.

Numbers 14:11

How long must this people despise me? How long must they fail to trust me, despite all the signs ... them?

Yahweh uses these questions to show that he was angry and had lost patience with the people. They can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "This people has despised me for too long. They have failed to trust me for too long, despite all the signs ... them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- people
- will they...trust

ULT

¹¹ And Yahweh said to Moses, "Until when will this people spurn me? And until when will they not trust in me, despite all the signs that I have done in the midst of them?"

Numbers 14:12

disinherit them

“reject them from being my people.” This may imply that he would destroy them, and some versions translate it that way.

make from your own clan

Here “your” is singular and refers to Moses. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I will disinherit him](#)
- [into a nation](#)

ULT

12 I will strike him down with the plague [and I will disinherit him](#). And I will make you [into a nation](#) greater and more numerous than them.”

Numbers 14:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Yahweh
- people
- with your power

ULT

¹³ And Moses said to Yahweh, "And the Egyptians have heard that you brought this people up with your power from the midst of him."

Numbers 14:14

you are seen face to face

This could mean: (1) Moses speaks of God showing himself to his people as if God had allowed them to actually see his face. Alternate translation: “they have seen you” or (2) Moses speaks of the intimate relationship between him and God as if Moses could see God’s face when God spoke to him. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you speak directly to me” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [land](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [people](#)
- [is standing](#)
- [and in a column of](#)
- [and in a column of](#)
- [are going](#)
- [fire](#)

ULT

14 And they have said to those dwelling in this [land](#). They have heard that you, [Yahweh](#), are in the midst of this [people](#), that you, [Yahweh](#), have been seen eye by eye, and your cloud [is standing](#) over them, [and in a column of](#) cloud you [are going](#) before their face by day [and in a column of fire](#) at night.

Numbers 14:15

as one man

Killing them all at the same time is spoken of as killing them as one person. Alternate translation: "all at one time" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [If you kill](#)
- [people](#)
- [the nations](#)

ULT

15 [If you kill](#) this [people](#) like one man, then [the nations](#) will say that they heard hearing of you, saying,

Numbers 14:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- people
- the land
- he swore
- so he slaughtered them
- in the wilderness

ULT

¹⁶ 'Because Yahweh was not able to bring this people into the land that he swore to them, so he slaughtered them in the wilderness.'

Numbers 14:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- please
- the power of
- my Lord

ULT

¹⁷ And now, please let the power of my Lord be great, just as you have spoken, saying,

Numbers 14:18

abundant in covenant faithfulness

The abstract noun “faithfulness” can be stated as “faithful” or “faithfully.” Alternate translation: “always faithful to his covenant” or “always faithfully loves his people” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

He will by no means clear the guilty

“he will certainly not clear guilty people.” Clearing away people’s sin is a metaphor for refusing to punish them. God would not clear away the sin of guilty people. Alternate translation: “He will always punish the guilty” (See: [Metaphor](#))

when he brings the punishment of the ancestors’ sin on their descendants

Punishing people is spoken of as if punishment were an object that could be brought and put on people. Alternate translation: “when he punishes the guilty people’s descendants for the guilty people’s sins” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [covenant faithfulness](#)
- [iniquity](#)
- [the iniquity of](#)
- [appointing](#)
- [fathers](#)
- [sons](#)

ULT

18 ‘Yahweh is long of nostrils and abundant of [covenant faithfulness](#), lifting up [iniquity](#) and transgression. But surely he will not leave unpunished, [appointing the iniquity of fathers on sons](#), on thirds, and on fourths.’

Numbers 14:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- people
- people
- your covenant faithfulness
- from Egypt

ULT

¹⁹ Please forgive this **people** of the iniquity according to the greatness of **your covenant faithfulness**, and just as you have lifted up this **people from Egypt** and to here.”

Numbers 14:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁰ And [Yahweh](#) said, "I have forgiven according to your word."

Numbers 14:21

all the earth will be filled with my glory

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “my glory will fill all the earth” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [live](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [the glory of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²¹ But truly, I [live](#), and all [the earth](#) will be filled with [the glory of Yahweh](#).

Numbers 14:22

they have still tempted me

“they have continued to test me”

these ten times

Here the number 10 represents too many times. Alternate translation: “too many times” (See: [Idiom](#))

have not listened to my voice

Here “listened” represents obedience, and God’s voice represents what he said. Alternate translation: “have not obeyed what I have said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my glory](#)
- [my signs](#)
- [in Egypt](#)
- [to my voice](#)

ULT

²² For all the men who have seen [my glory](#) and [my signs](#) that I did [in Egypt](#) and in the wilderness, and they tested me this ten times and have not listened [to my voice](#),

Numbers 14:23

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- I have sworn
- to their fathers

ULT

²³ if they see the land that I have sworn to their fathers...and all those who spurn me will not see it.

Numbers 14:24

because he had another spirit

Here “spirit” represents his attitude. Caleb was willing to obey God. What his attitude was can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “because he had a different attitude” or “because he was willing to obey God” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [But my servant](#)
- [spirit](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

²⁴ [But my servant](#) Caleb, because another [spirit](#) is with him and he was fully after me, I will bring him into [the land](#) that he will come to there. And his seed will inherit it.

Numbers 14:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁵ (And the Amalekite and the Canaanite was dwelling in the valley.) Tomorrow turn and set out for yourselves to the wilderness, the way of the Sea of Reeds.”

Numbers 14:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron

ULT

²⁶ And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,

Numbers 14:27

How long must I tolerate this evil community that criticizes me?

Yahweh asks this question because he has lost patience with the people. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have tolerated this evil community who has criticized me long enough." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁷ "Until when must I listen to this [evil](#) congregation, they who are murmuring against me the murmurings of [the sons of Israel](#), they who are murmuring against me?"

I have heard the complaining of the people of Israel

The word "complaining," an abstract noun, can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: "I have heard the people of Israel complain" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [evil](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Numbers 14:28

as you have spoken in my hearing

“as I have heard you say”

Translation Words - ULT

- [live](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁸ Say to them, ‘I [live](#),’ the declaration of [Yahweh](#), ‘surely just as you have spoken in my ears, so I will do to you.’

Numbers 14:29

Your dead bodies will fall

Their dead bodies falling represents them dying. Alternate translation: "You will die" (See: [Metonymy](#))

you who were counted in the census

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "you whom Moses counted in the census" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

from twenty years old and upward

"twenty years old and older"

Translation Words - ULT

- [In...wilderness](#)
- [your counted ones](#)
- [from a son of](#)

ULT

²⁹ In this [wilderness](#) your corpses will fall and all [your counted ones](#) according to all your number, [from a son of 20](#) years and upward, who have murmured against me.

Numbers 14:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- my hand
- the son of
- the son of
- and Joshua

ULT

³⁰ If you enter into the land that I have lifted up my hand to make you dwell in...except Caleb the son of Jephunneh and Joshua the son of Nun.

Numbers 14:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and they will know
- the land

ULT

³¹ And your children who you said would be for plunder, and I will bring them and they will know the land, it that you have rejected.

Numbers 14:32

your dead bodies will fall

Their dead bodies falling represents them dying. Alternate translation: "you will die" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in...wilderness](#)

ULT

³² And you, your corpses will fall in this [wilderness](#).

Numbers 14:33

Your children will be shepherds in the wilderness

Some modern versions choose to translate, “Your children will wander in the wilderness.” This is because in ancient times, shepherds usually wandered from place to place so their flocks and herds could find pasture.

ULT

³³ **And your sons** will be those who herd **in the wilderness** 40 years. And they will carry your fornications until the finishing of your corpses **in the wilderness**.

They must bear the consequences of your acts

“They must suffer the consequences of your acts” or “They must suffer because of your acts”

until the end of your corpses

A corpse is a dead body. The end of their corpses represents the last of the them dying. Alternate translation: “until the last one of you dies” or “until all of you die” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And your sons](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)

Numbers 14:34

bear the consequences of your sins

“suffer the consequences of your sins” or “suffer because of your sins”

Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- your iniquities
- And you will know

ULT

³⁴ By the number of the days that you explored the land, 40 days, a day for the year, a day for the year, you will carry your iniquities 40 years. And you will know my opposition.

Numbers 14:35

They will be completely cut off

This probably means that they will no longer exist. Alternate translation: "they will come to an end" or "they will all be destroyed" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [evil](#)
- [In...wilderness](#)

ULT

³⁵ I, [Yahweh](#), have spoken. Surely I will do this to all this [evil](#) congregation, the ones who have congregated themselves against me. In this [wilderness](#) they will finish and there they will die."

Numbers 14:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- the land
- the land
- and had returned

ULT

³⁶ And the men whom Moses had sent to explore the land and had returned and caused all the congregation to murmur against him by causing an evil report against the land to go out,

Numbers 14:37

these men who had brought out a bad report about the land were struck down, and they died of a plague before Yahweh

The phrase “plague before Yahweh” shows that Yahweh struck them down. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation:

“Yahweh struck down these men who had brought out a bad report about the land, and they died” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³⁷ even the men who had caused to go out the evil report of the evil land, died by the plague before the face of Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- even...died
- who had caused to go out
- evil
- the...land
- Yahweh

Numbers 14:38

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- But Joshua
- the...son of
- son of...the
- lived
- the land

ULT

³⁸ But Joshua the son of Nun and Caleb the son of Jephunneh lived from those men, the ones who went to explore the land.

Numbers 14:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- the sons of
- Israel
- the people
- And...mourned

ULT

³⁹ And Moses spoke these words to all the sons of Israel. And the people mourned exceedingly.

Numbers 14:40

Look, we are here

They use these words to emphasize that they have changed their minds and now want to do what they should have done the day before. Your language may have a different way of showing this.

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- Yahweh
- we have sinned

ULT

40 And they rose early in the morning and went up to the head of the mountain, saying, "Here we are, and we will go up to the place that Yahweh has said, for we have sinned."

Numbers 14:41

Why are you now violating Yahweh's command?

Moses asks this question to rebuke the people of Israel. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not be violating Yahweh's command again." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [will...succeed](#)

ULT

⁴¹ And [Moses](#) said, "Why this—are you passing over the mouth of [Yahweh](#)? And it will not [succeed](#)."

Numbers 14:42

Yahweh is not with you

Helping them is spoken of as being with them. Alternate translation: "Yahweh will not help you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

to prevent you from being defeated by your enemies

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "to prevent your enemies from defeating you" or "to give you victory over your enemies" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [your enemies](#)

ULT

42 You must not go up because [Yahweh](#) is not in the midst of you, that you not be struck down before the face of [your enemies](#).

Numbers 14:43

you will die by the sword

Here “the sword” refers to battle. Alternate translation: “you will die in battle” or “they will kill you when you fight against them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

you turned back from following Yahweh

Obedying Yahweh is spoken of as following him, and stopping doing that is spoken of as turning away from him. Alternate translation: “you stopped obeying Yahweh” or “you have decided not to obey Yahweh” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he will not be with you

Helping them is spoken of as being with them. Alternate translation: “he will not help you” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and you will fall](#)
- [by the sword](#)
- [you have turned](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

43 For the Amalekite and the Canaanite are there before your face [and you will fall by the sword](#). For therefore [you have turned](#) from after [Yahweh](#), and [Yahweh](#) will not be with you.”

Numbers 14:44

they presumed to go up into the hill country

“they dared to go up into the hill country even though God did not approve”

into the hill country

Much of the land of Israel is elevated. When the Israelites crossed the Jordan River valley to attack the Canaanites, there were hills that they had to climb in order to go farther into the land of Canaan.

ULT

44 And they presumed to go up to **the head of** the mountain, **but the box of the covenant of Yahweh and Moses** did not depart from the midst of the camp.

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- but the box of
- the covenant of
- Yahweh
- and Moses

Numbers 14:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴⁵ And the Amalekite and the Canaanite who dwelled on that mountain, came down. And they smote them and beat them to pieces as far as the Hormah.

Numbers 15

Numbers 15 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Purifying the people

As the people travel through the wilderness, Yahweh is purifying them. He is doing this so that they are able to enter into the Promised Land. (See: [pure](#), [purify](#), [purification](#) and [Promised Land](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Prostitution

The imagery of prostitution is commonly used in Scripture to indicate that Yahweh alone is to be worshiped. The people are compared to the prostitute because a husband is to only have a sexual relationship with his wife. Both the prostitute and the worship of other gods are violations of this exclusive relationship. Many cultures will struggle with this imagery because of a desire to use euphemisms. (See: [god](#), [false god](#), [goddess](#), [idol](#), [idolater](#), [idolatrous](#), [idolatry](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Numbers 15:1

General Information:

Numbers 15:1-32 tells what God told Moses to tell the people of Israel.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

¹ And [Yahweh](#) spoke to [Moses](#), saying,

Numbers 15:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the land of

ULT

² “Speak to [the sons of Israel](#) and say to them, ‘When you enter into [the land of](#) your dwellings, which I am giving to you,

Numbers 15:3

to produce a pleasing aroma for Yahweh from the herd or the flock

“to produce from the herd or flock a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord’s pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. Alternate translation: “to please Yahweh by burning a sacrifice from the herd or the flock” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)
- [a burnt up offering](#)
- [a sacrifice](#)
- [the flock](#)

ULT

³ then you shall make an offering made by fire [to Yahweh](#), [a burnt up offering](#) or [a sacrifice](#), to do an extraordinary vow or with a voluntary offering, or at your appointed times, to make an aroma of soothing [for Yahweh](#) from the herd or from [the flock](#).

Numbers 15:4

a burnt offering

This refers to the offerings spoken of in [Numbers 15:3](#).

a tenth of an ephah

An ephah is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: “about 2 liters” or “two liters” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

one-fourth of a hin

A hin is a unit of volume equal to about 3.7 liters. Alternate translation: “about 1 liter” or “one liter” (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [a grain offering](#)
- [oil](#)

ULT

⁴ And the one who is offering shall offer his offering [to Yahweh](#), [a grain offering](#), a tenth of fine flour mixed with a fourth of the hin of [oil](#).

Numbers 15:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [And wine](#)

ULT

⁵ [And wine](#) for the drink offering, a fourth of the hin, you shall make with the burnt up offering or for the sacrifice, for the one male lamb.

Numbers 15:6

two-tenths of an ephah

An ephah is a unit of volume equal to about 22 liters. Alternate translation: "4 liters" or "four and a half liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

a third of a hin

A hin is a unit of volume equal to about 3.7 liters. Alternate translation: "one liter" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a grain offering](#)

ULT

⁶ Or for the ram you shall make [a grain offering](#), two tenths fine flour mixed with a third of the hin of oil.

Numbers 15:7

It will produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“It will produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord’s pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. Alternate translation: “You will please Yahweh by offering it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And wine](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁷ [And wine](#) for the drink offering, a third of the hin, you shall offer as an aroma of soothing [for Yahweh](#).

Numbers 15:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a son of
- cattle
- a burnt up offering
- a sacrifice
- to Yahweh

ULT

⁸ And when you make a son of cattle a burnt up offering or a sacrifice, to do an extraordinary vow or peace offerings to Yahweh,

Numbers 15:9

three-tenths of an ephah

You may convert this to a modern measure. Alternate translation: "six and one half liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

half a hin

You may convert this to a modern measure Alternate translation: "two liters" (See: [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [a grain offering](#)

ULT

⁹ then you shall offer with [the son of](#) the cattle [a grain offering](#), three tenths fine flour mixed with a half of the hin of the oil,

Numbers 15:10

made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you burn on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. Alternate translation: “to please Yahweh by offering it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁰ and you shall offer a half of the hin of wine for the drink offering; an offering made by fire, an aroma of soothing for Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and...of wine](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

Numbers 15:11

It must be done

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must do it" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

11 Thus it shall be done for the one ox or for the one ram, or for the small livestock among the male lambs or among the goats.

Numbers 15:12

must be done as described

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must do as I have described” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹² According to the number that you do, thus you shall do for the one according to their number.

Numbers 15:13

made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that they burn on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to produce an aroma that is pleasing to Yahweh

“to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” Yahweh being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if Yahweh were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. Alternate translation: “to please Yahweh by offering it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for Yahweh](#)

ULT

13 Every native shall do these things thus for offering an offering made by fire, an aroma of soothing [for Yahweh](#).

Numbers 15:14

he must make an offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “he must burn an offering on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshiper who offers the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. Alternate translation: “to please Yahweh by offering it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

14 And if a sojourner sojourns with you, or whoever is in the midst of you [for your generations](#), and he makes an offering made by fire, an aroma of soothing [for Yahweh](#), just as you shall do so he shall do.

Translation Words - ULT

- [for your generations](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

Numbers 15:15

As you are, so also must be the traveler

This could mean: (1) “You and the traveler staying with you are alike before Yahweh” or (2) “The same law applies to both you and the traveler”

He must act as you act before Yahweh

“He must act as you act in Yahweh’s presence.” Because it says that they must act as the Israelites in Yahweh’s presence, it is implied that they must obey all of Yahweh’s commands. Alternate translation: “he must act as you act and obey all of Yahweh’s commands” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The assembly](#)
- [for your generations](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁵ [The assembly](#) statute is one for you and for the sojourner, the one who is sojourning, a statute of eternity [for your generations](#). As you, so the sojourner shall be before the face of [Yahweh](#).

Numbers 15:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- instruction
- and...ordinance

ULT

¹⁶ One **instruction** and one **ordinance** shall be for you and for the sojourner, the one who is sojourning with you.”

Numbers 15:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹⁷ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 15:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the land

ULT

¹⁸ "Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, 'When you enter into the land there which I am bringing you,

Numbers 15:19

the food produced in the land

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the food that the land produces” or “the food that you produce in the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [raised offering](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

19 and it shall be that when you eat from the bread of [the land](#), you shall raise a [raised offering to Yahweh](#).

Numbers 15:20

the first of your dough

This could mean: (1) the first grain that they would gather during the harvest or (2) the dough that they would make from the first of their grain. (See: [Metonymy](#))

a loaf

Calling it a loaf implies that they would cook the dough first.

to raise it up as a raised offering

This idiom “raise it up” refers to offering it as a gift. Alternate translation: “to offer it as a gift” (See: [Idiom](#))

a raised offering from the threshing floor

The offering is spoken of as being from the threshing floor because this is where they would separate the grain from the other parts of the plant.

Translation Words - ULT

- [The first of](#)
- [as a raised offering](#)
- [the threshing floor](#)

ULT

20 [The first of](#) your dough shall be a cake you shall raise [as a raised offering](#). Like a raised offering of [the threshing floor](#), so you shall raise it.

Numbers 15:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a raised offering
- to Yahweh
- for your generations

ULT

²¹ From the first of your dough you shall give a raised offering to Yahweh for your generations.

Numbers 15:22

General Information:

The word “you” here refers to Israelite people.

Connecting Statement:

God continues telling Moses what he must tell the people.

Translation Words - ULT

- [commandments](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

²² And when you stray and do not do all these [commandments](#) that [Yahweh](#) has spoken to [Moses](#),

Numbers 15:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- has commanded
- commanded (2)
- by the hand of
- Moses
- for your generations

ULT

²³ all that Yahweh has commanded to you by the hand of Moses, from the day that Yahweh commanded and beyond for your generations,

Numbers 15:24

to produce a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“to produce a smell that pleases Yahweh.” The Lord being pleased with the sincere worshipers who offer the sacrifice is spoken of as if God were pleased with the aroma of the sacrifice. Alternate translation: “to please Yahweh by burning it” (See: [Metaphor](#))

must be made a grain offering and drink offering

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must make a grain offering and drink offering” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

as commanded by the decree

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as the decree commands” or “as I commanded when I made the decree” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a bull](#)
- [cattle](#)
- [son of](#)
- [for Yaweh](#)
- [and its grain offering](#)
- [and its drink offering](#)
- [according to the ordinance](#)

ULT

²⁴ and it shall be that if it was done as unintentional sin away from the eyes of the congregation, then all the congregation shall make [a bull](#), one [son of cattle](#), for a burnt up offering, for an aroma of soothing [for Yaweh](#), [and its grain offering and its drink offering according to the ordinance](#), and one buck of the goats for a sin offering.

Numbers 15:25

They will be forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will forgive them" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that they made by fire" or "that they burned on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and their sin offering](#)

ULT

²⁵ And [the priest](#) shall make atonement for all the congregation of [the sons of Israel](#), and it shall be forgiven for them. For it was an unintentional sin and they have brought their offering, an offering made by fire, [to Yahweh, and their sin offering](#) before the face of [Yahweh](#) for their unintentional sin.

Numbers 15:26

all the community of the people of Israel will be forgiven

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will forgive all the community of the people of Israel" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

²⁶ And it shall be forgiven for all the congregation of [the sons of Israel](#) and for the sojourner, the one who is sojourning in the midst of them, because of all [the people](#) with unintentional sin.

Numbers 15:27

a female goat a year old

“a 1-year-old female goat”

Translation Words - ULT

- person
- sins

ULT

²⁷ And if one **person sins** with an unintentional sin, then he shall offer a female goat, a daughter of its year, for a sin offering.

Numbers 15:28

That person will be forgiven when atonement has been made

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "I will forgive that person when the priest has made atonement" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to make atonement](#)

ULT

²⁸ And [the priest](#) shall make atonement for the person, the one who sinned unintentionally with a sin, with an unintentional sin, before the face of [Yahweh](#), [to make atonement](#) for him and it shall be forgiven for him.

Numbers 15:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- among the sons of
- Israel
- instruction

ULT

²⁹ The native **among the sons of Israel** and for the sojourner, the one who is sojourning in the midst of them, one **instruction** shall be for you for the one who does an unintentional sin.

Numbers 15:30

That person must be cut off from among his people

The metaphor “cut off” has at least three possible meanings. They can be expressed in active form: (1) “his people must send him away” or (2) “I will no longer consider him to be one of the people of Israel” or (3) “his people must kill him.” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³⁰ But the person who does [with a raised hand](#), from the native and from the sojourner, he is blaspheming [Yahweh](#). And that person [shall be cut off](#) from the midst of [his people](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [with a...hand](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And...shall be cut off](#)
- [his people](#)

Numbers 15:31

has broken my commandment

Not obeying a commandment is spoken of as breaking it. Alternate translation: “has disobeyed my commandment” or “has not obeyed what I commanded” (See: [Metonymy](#))

His sin will be on him

Here, **sin** could mean: (1) punishment for that sin or (2) guilt of that sin. Sin being on him is a metaphor that could mean: (1) being punished or (2) being guilty. Alternate translation: (1) “I will punish him because of his sin” or (2) “I will consider him guilty” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

31 Because he has despised the word of [Yahweh](#) and has broken [his commandment](#), that person shall [certainly be cut off](#). [His iniquity](#) shall be on him.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [his commandment](#)
- [certainly](#)
- [shall...be cut off](#)
- [His iniquity](#)

Numbers 15:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- in the wilderness
- the Sabbath

ULT

³² And the sons of Israel were in the wilderness. And they found a man gathering pieces of wood on the day of the Sabbath.

Numbers 15:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

³³ And the ones who found him gathering pieces of wood brought him near to [Moses](#) and to [Aaron](#) and to all the congregation.

Numbers 15:34

it had not been declared what should be done with him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh had not declared what they should do with him" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

³⁴ And they made him rest in the keeping place because it had not been declared what should be done to him.

Numbers 15:35

The man must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must surely put the man to death” or “The man must surely die” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

³⁵ And [Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), “The man shall certainly die, all the congregation stoning him with the stones from the outside of the camp.”

Numbers 15:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...brought...out
- had commanded
- and he died
- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

³⁶ And all the congregation brought him out to the outside of the camp. And they stoned him with the stones and he died, just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

Numbers 15:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

³⁷ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 15:38

the descendants of Israel

“the people of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- for their generations

ULT

³⁸ “Speak to the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘And they shall make for themselves a tassel on the wings of their garments for their generations. And they shall put a cord of blue on the tassel of the wing.’”

Numbers 15:39

to carry them out

“to obey them”

so that you do not look to your own heart and your own eyes

“Look to” here is a metaphor for think about. The heart represents what a person wants, and the eyes represent what a person sees and wants. Alternate translation: “so that you do not think about whatever you want” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

prostitute yourselves to them

Being unfaithful to God by choosing to do whatever they want is spoken of as if they were women who were unfaithful to their husband by choosing to have sinful relationships with other men. It can be stated clearly that this was a shameful thing to do. Alternate translation: “be shamefully unfaithful to me” or “do those things instead of obeying me” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the commandments of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [your heart](#)
- [are prostituting](#)

ULT

³⁹ And it shall be for you for a tassel and you shall see it and you shall remember all [the commandments of Yahweh](#), and you shall do them. And you shall not explore after [your heart](#) and after your eyes, them which you [are prostituting](#) after,

Numbers 15:40

Connecting Statement:

God continues telling Moses what to tell the people of Israel. The word “you” refers to the people.

call to mind

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “remember” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [my commandments](#)
- [holy ones](#)
- [for your God](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ so that you shall remember and do all [my commandments](#). And you shall be [holy ones for your God](#).

Numbers 15:41

I am Yahweh your God

This clause is repeated for emphasis.

Translation Words - ULT

- am Yahweh
- am Yahweh
- your God
- a God
- your God
- brought...out
- Egypt

ULT

⁴¹ I am Yahweh your God, who brought you out from the land of Egypt, to become a God for you. I am Yahweh your God.”

Numbers 16

Numbers 16 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Rebellion and punishment

A certain Levite and a few men from the tribe of Reuben claimed that they were just as good as Moses and Aaron, and they also could do the work of sacrificing animals at the sacred tent. So Moses told them to come to the sacred tent and burn incense to Yahweh. God then made the earth open and swallow up these leaders and their families. He also sent fire to destroy 250 other men who had joined with those leaders. These actions showed that only the Levites, those whom Yahweh appointed, could be priests. Also, it taught the people that to rebel against Yahweh's anointed was to rebel against Yahweh. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood](#) and [anoint](#), [anointed](#), [anointing](#))

Numbers 16:1

Kohath

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Korah
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the sons of
- the son of (4)
- the sons of
- Levi
- Reuben

ULT

¹ And Korah the son of Izhar the son of Kohath the son of Levi, and Dathan and Abiram, the sons of Eliab, and On the son of Peleth, the sons of Reuben, took men.

Numbers 16:2

rose up against Moses

Rebelling or criticizing someone in authority is spoken of as if they were standing up to fight. Alternate translation: “rebelled against Moses” (See: [Metaphor](#))

two hundred and fifty

“250” (See: [Numbers](#))

well-known members in the community

“famous members of the community” or “important men in the community”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [from the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the appointed meeting](#)
- [name](#)

ULT

² And they rose up before the face of [Moses](#), and men [from the sons of Israel](#), 250 leaders of the congregation, the called ones of [the appointed meeting](#), men of [name](#).

Numbers 16:3

You have gone too far

This represents doing more than one should. Alternate translation: “You have done more than you should” or “You assume to have more authority than you should” (See: [Idiom](#))

Why do you lift up yourselves above the rest of Yahweh’s community?

The men ask this question to rebuke Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You are wrong to lift up yourselves above the rest of Yahweh’s community.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

lift up yourselves above the rest

Considering someone to be important is spoken of as lifting it up. Alternate translation: “consider yourselves more important than the rest” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [are holy](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the assembly of](#)

ULT

³ And they assembled against [Moses](#) and against [Aaron](#). And they said to them, “It is much for you! For all of the congregation, all of them, [are holy](#) and [Yahweh](#) is in their midst. And why do you lift up yourselves above [the assembly of Yahweh](#)?”

Numbers 16:4

he lay facedown

This indicates that Moses was humbling himself before God. He was afraid that God would punish the people for rebelling against God and his chosen leaders. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [and fell](#)
- [his face](#)

ULT

⁴ And [Moses](#) heard [and fell](#) upon [his face](#).

Numbers 16:5

who is set apart to him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Yahweh has set apart for himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Korah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And...will make known](#)

ULT

⁵ And he spoke to [Korah](#) and to all his congregation, saying, “And in the morning [Yahweh will make known](#) who belongs to him and is the holy one and whom he will bring near to him. And him whom he chooses he will bring near to him.”

Numbers 16:6

Connecting Statement:

Moses continues speaking to Korah and the men who were with Korah.

censers

containers in which to burn incense

Translation Words - ULT

- [Korah](#)

ULT

⁶ Do this, [Korah](#) and all his congregation, take for yourselves censers.

Numbers 16:7

before Yahweh

This is an idiom. Alternate translation: “in Yahweh’s presence” (See: [Idiom](#))

that man will be set apart to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will set apart that man for himself” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

You have gone too far

This represents doing more than one should. Alternate translation: “You have done more than you should” or “You assume to have more authority than you should” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)
- [and set](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)

ULT

⁷ And put [fire](#) in them [and set](#) incense on them before the face of [Yahweh](#) tomorrow. And it will happen that the man whom [Yahweh](#) chooses, he will be the holy one. It is much for you, [sons of Levi!](#)”

Numbers 16:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Korah
- sons of
- Levi

ULT

⁸ And Moses said to Korah, "Now listen, sons of Levi:

Numbers 16:9

is it a small thing for you ... to serve them?

Moses uses this question to rebuke Korah and the men with him. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You behave as though it is a small thing for you ... to serve them!” or “You should not consider it a small thing ... to serve them!” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

a small thing for you

“not enough for you” or “unimportant to you”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the God of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the dwelling of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁹ is it a small thing for you that [the God of Israel](#) has separated you from the congregation of [Israel](#), to bring you near to him, to serve the service of [the dwelling of Yahweh](#) and to stand before the face of the congregation to minister to them?

Numbers 16:10

you are seeking the priesthood also

Wanting to have the priesthood is spoken of as if they were looking for it. Alternate translation: “you want to have the priesthood too” or “you want to be priests also” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your brothers](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [And you are seeking](#)

ULT

10 And he has brought you near, and all [your brothers, the sons of Levi](#), with you. [And you are seeking](#) the priesthood also!

Numbers 16:11

Who is Aaron that you grumble against him?

Moses uses this question to show them that when they complain about what Aaron does, they are really complaining against Yahweh, because Aaron was doing what Yahweh told him to do. Alternate translation: "You are not really complaining about Aaron, but about Yahweh, whom Aaron obeys!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [And Aaron](#)

ULT

11 Therefore you and all your congregation are the ones congregating against [Yahweh](#). [And Aaron](#), what is he that you grumble against him?"

Numbers 16:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- the sons of

ULT

¹² And Moses sent to call for Dathan and for Abiram, the sons of Eliab. And they said, "We will not go up.

Numbers 16:13

Is it a small thing that you have brought us ... to kill us in the wilderness?

Dathan and Abiram use this question to rebuke Moses. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “You behave as though it was a small thing for you to bring us ... and kill us in the wilderness.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

a small thing

“not enough” or “unimportant”

a land flowing with milk and honey

They spoke of the land being good for animals and plants as if the milk and honey from those animals and plants were flowing through the land. See how you translated this in [Numbers 14:8](#). Alternate translation: “that is excellent for raising livestock and growing crops” or “a very fertile land” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

to kill us

The people exaggerate because they will hold Moses responsible if any of them die. Alternate translation: “to have us die” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and honey](#)
- [to make us die](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [you have made yourself ruler](#)
- [to make yourself ruler](#)

ULT

¹³ Is it a small thing that you have brought us up from a land flowing with milk [and honey](#), [to make us die in the wilderness](#)? But [you have made yourself ruler](#) over us, even [to make yourself ruler](#)!

Numbers 16:14

as an inheritance

They spoke of what God would give them to be theirs forever as if it were an inheritance. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Now do you want to blind us with empty promises?

The people used this question to accuse Moses. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Now you want to blind us with empty promises." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

to blind us

Deceiving people is spoken of as making them blind. Alternate translation: "to deceive us" (See: [Metaphor](#))

with empty promises

They speak of promises that are not kept as if they are empty containers. Alternate translation: "with promises that you do not keep" or "by promising to do things that you do not do" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a land
- and honey
- an inheritance of
- or vineyard

ULT

14 Moreover, you have not brought us into a land flowing with milk and honey, or given to us an inheritance of field or vineyard. Will you gouge out the eyes of these men? We will not go up."

Numbers 16:15

I have not taken one donkey from them

One donkey here represents anything that a person may take from someone else. Alternate translation: "I have not taken anything from them, not even one donkey" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [their offering](#)
- [donkey](#)
- [I have...harmed](#)

ULT

15 And it burned exceedingly [for Moses](#) and he said to [Yahweh](#), "Do not turn to [their offering](#). I have not taken one [donkey](#) from them. And [I have](#) not [harmed](#) one of them."

Numbers 16:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Korah
- Yahweh
- and Aaron

ULT

¹⁶ And Moses said to Korah, "You and all your congregation be before the face of Yahweh, you, and they, and Aaron, tomorrow."

Numbers 16:17

censer

a container in which to burn incense

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- and Aaron

ULT

17 And take, a man, his censer and put incense on them. And bring before the face of [Yahweh](#), a man his censer, 250 censers. And you [and Aaron](#), a man his censer.”

Numbers 16:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- fire
- and set
- meeting
- with Moses
- and Aaron

ULT

18 And they took a man his censer, and they put **fire** on it, **and set** incense on it. And they stood at the opening of the tent of **meeting with Moses and Aaron**.

Numbers 16:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Korah
- meeting
- the glory of
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁹ And Korah assembled all the congregation against them at the opening of the tent of meeting. And the glory of Yahweh appeared to all the congregation.

Numbers 16:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron

ULT

²⁰ And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,

Numbers 16:21

that I may consume them

Destroying them is spoken of as if God were to eat them. Alternate translation: "that I may destroy them" or "and I will destroy them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

21 "Separate yourselves from the midst of this congregation and I shall finish them in a moment."

Numbers 16:22

lay facedown

This shows that Moses and Aaron were humbling themselves before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

the God of the spirits of all humanity

Here “spirits” represents the ability to live. Alternate translation: “the God who gives life to all humanity” (See: [Metonymy](#))

if one man sins, must you be angry with all the community?

Moses and Aaron use this question to plead with God for the people. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “please do not be angry with all the community because one man sins” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they fell](#)
- [their faces](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [sin](#)

ULT

22 [And they fell](#) on [their faces](#) and said, “God, [the God of](#) the spirits of all [flesh](#), will one man [sin](#) and you become furious against all the congregation?”

Numbers 16:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

²³ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 16:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the dwellings of
- Korah

ULT

²⁴ "Speak to the congregation, saying, 'Get yourselves up from around **the dwellings of Korah**, Dathan, and Abiram.'" "

Numbers 16:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- the elders of
- Israel

ULT

²⁵ And Moses rose and went to Dathan and Abiram. And the elders of Israel went after him.

Numbers 16:26

you will be consumed

Being destroyed is spoken of as if they would be eaten. Alternate translation: "you will be destroyed" (See: [Metaphor](#))

you will be consumed by all their sins

Being destroyed because of their sins is spoken of as if the sins would destroy them. Alternate translation: "you will be destroyed because of all their sins" (See: [Metaphor](#))

you will be consumed by all their sins

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "all their sins will destroy you" or "Yahweh will destroy you because of all their sins" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their sins](#)

ULT

26 And he spoke to the congregation, saying, "Now turn from beside the tents of these wicked men and do not touch anything that belongs to them, lest you be swept away by all [their sins](#)."

Numbers 16:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the dwelling of
- Korah
- went out
- and their sons

ULT

²⁷ And they got themselves up from beside [the dwelling of Korah](#), Dathan, and Abiram, from all around. And Dathan and Abiram [went out](#), standing at the opening of their tents with their wives [and their sons](#) and their little children.

Numbers 16:28

By this you will know

Here “this” refers to what Moses will say next.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- you will know
- Yahweh
- from my heart

ULT

²⁸ And Moses said, “By this you will know that Yahweh has sent me to do all these deeds, that they are not from my heart:

Numbers 16:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- man
- man
- is appointed
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁹ If these ones die like the death of every man and the appointment of every man is appointed to them, Yahweh has not sent me.

Numbers 16:30

the earth opens its mouth and swallows them

Moses speaks as if the earth were alive and the opening in the ground into which these people would fall were a large mouth that would eat them. Alternate translation: "and they fall into it and are buried underneath the ground" (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [alive](#)
- [then you will know](#)

ULT

³⁰ But if [Yahweh](#) creates a creation and the ground opens its mouth and swallows them and all that belongs to them and they go down [alive](#) to Sheol, [then you will know](#) that these men have spurned [Yahweh](#)."

Numbers 16:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³¹ And it happened when he finished speaking all these words that the ground that was under them split open.

Numbers 16:32

The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them

Moses speaks of the earth as if it were alive, and the hole that the people fell into as if it were the earth's mouth. Alternate translation: "The earth opened up like a large mouth, and they fell into it and were buried in it" or "There was a giant hole in the ground, and they fell into it and were buried in it" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the earth](#)
- [their houses](#)
- [man](#)
- [belonged to Korah](#)

ULT

³² And [the earth](#) opened its mouth and swallowed them and [their houses](#) and every [man](#) who [belonged to Korah](#) and all the property.

Numbers 16:33

went down alive into Sheol

A similar phrase occurs in [Numbers 16:30](#). See how you translated it there.

Translation Words - ULT

- [alive](#)
- [the earth](#)
- [and they perished](#)
- [the assembly](#)

ULT

33 And they went down to Sheol [alive](#), they and all that belonged to them. And [the earth](#) covered over them [and they perished](#) from the midst of [the assembly](#).

Numbers 16:34

They exclaimed

“They” refers to “All Israel.”

The earth may swallow us up also

The people speak of the earth as if it were alive. Alternate translation: “The earth might open up and we too will fall into it” or “If the earth opens up again, we too will fall into it and be buried” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

³⁴ And all [Israel](#) who was surrounding them fled from their sound, for they said, “Lest [the earth](#) swallow us!”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the earth](#)

Numbers 16:35

fire flashed out from Yahweh and devoured the 250 men

Being destroyed by fire is spoken of as if they were eaten by the fire. Alternate translation: "fire flashed out from Yahweh and destroyed the 250 men" (See: [Metaphor](#))

250 men

"two hundred and fifty men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And fire](#)
- [went out](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And it ate](#)

ULT

³⁵ [And fire went out](#) from with [Yahweh](#).
[And it ate](#) the 250 men offering the incense.

Numbers 16:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

³⁶ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 16:37

out of the flames

This refers to the flames that burned the 250 men.

Translation Words - ULT

- Eleazar
- the son of
- Aaron
- the priest
- and he shall lift up
- scatter
- the fire
- they are holy

ULT

³⁷ "Say to Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest and he shall lift up the censers from between the burning and scatter the fire abroad, for they are holy.

Numbers 16:38

those who lost their lives

Losing their lives represents dying. Alternate translation: “those who died” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Let them be made

Here “them” refers to the censers. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Let Eleazar make them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they are set apart ... They will be a sign

Here “they” and “They” refer to the censers.

Translation Words - ULT

- [against their lives](#)
- [for the altar](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and they are holy](#)
- [for the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

38 And the censers of these sinners [against their lives](#), make them hammered sheets of thin metal, plating [for the altar](#). For they offered them before the face of [Yahweh and they are holy](#). And they shall be for a sign [for the sons of Israel](#).”

Numbers 16:39

that had been used by the men who were burned up

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the men whom the fire had burned up had used” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Eleazar](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [bronze](#)
- [for the altar](#)

ULT

³⁹ And [Eleazar the priest](#) took the censers of [bronze](#) that the burned ones had offered and they hammered them as a plating [for the altar](#),

Numbers 16:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- for the sons of
- Israel
- from the seed of
- Aaron
- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- like Korah
- by the hand of
- Moses

ULT

⁴⁰ a reminder for the sons of Israel, so that an unfamiliar man, he who is not from the seed of Aaron, shall not come near to burn incense before the face of Yahweh. And he shall not be like Korah and his congregation, just as Yahweh spoke by the hand of Moses to him.

Numbers 16:41

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Moses
- Aaron
- the people of
- Yahweh

ULT

⁴¹ And all the congregation of **the sons of Israel** grumbled against **Moses** and against **Aaron** from the next day, saying, “You yourselves killed **the people of Yahweh!**”

Numbers 16:42

Then it happened

This phrase is used here to mark an important event in the story. If your language has a way for doing this, you could consider using it here.

had assembled against Moses and Aaron

“had assembled to complain against Moses and Aaron”

behold, the cloud

“suddenly, the cloud.” Here “behold” shows that the people were surprised by what they saw.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Aaron
- meeting
- the glory of
- Yahweh

ULT

42 And it happened when the congregation assembled against **Moses** and against **Aaron** that they turned to the tent of **meeting**. And behold, the cloud covered it and **the glory of Yahweh** was seen.

Numbers 16:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- and Aaron
- the face of
- meeting

ULT

⁴³ And Moses and Aaron came to the face of the tent of meeting.

Numbers 16:44

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁴⁴ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 16:45

so that I may consume them

God speaks of destroying them as if he would eat them. Alternate translation: "so that I may destroy them" or "and I will destroy them" (See: [Metaphor](#))

lay down with their faces to the ground

This indicates that Moses and Aaron are humbling themselves before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And they fell](#)
- [their faces](#)

ULT

45 "Get yourselves up from the midst of this congregation and I shall finish them in a moment. [And they fell on their faces.](#)

Numbers 16:46

anger is coming from Yahweh

Anger coming from God represents God showing his anger.
Alternate translation: "Yahweh is showing us his anger" or "Yahweh is very angry and is acting according to his anger" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [fire](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [and set](#)
- [has gone out](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

46 And [Moses](#) said to [Aaron](#), "Take the censer and put [fire](#) on it from on [the altar and set](#) incense. And go quickly into the congregation and make atonement for them, because the wrath [has gone out](#) from before the face of [Yahweh](#). The plague has begun."

Numbers 16:47

he put in the incense

Putting the incense in the censer here represents burning it.
Alternate translation: "he burned the incense" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [among...the people](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

47 And [Aaron](#) took just as [Moses](#) said and ran into the midst of [the assembly](#). And behold, the plague had begun [among the people](#). And he put the incense and made atonement for [the people](#).

Numbers 16:48

the plague was stopped

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the plague stopped spreading” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the ones who died](#)
- [the ones who lived](#)

ULT

48 And he stood between [the ones who died](#) and [the ones who lived](#). And the plague was stopped.

Numbers 16:49

14,700 in number

“fourteen thousand seven hundred in number” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the ones who died](#)
- [the ones who died](#)
- [Korah](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ And [the ones who died](#) by the plague were 14,700, apart from [the ones who died](#) on account of the matter of [Korah](#).

Numbers 16:50

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Aaron
- And...returned
- Moses
- meeting

ULT

⁵⁰ And Aaron returned to Moses, to the opening of the tent of meeting. And the plague was stopped.

Numbers 17

Numbers 17 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Which tribe should be special workers for God?

God told Moses that each tribe should bring one wooden staff and leave it overnight at the temple. The next day Aaron's staff representing the tribe of Levi bloomed and produced ripe almond nuts. This showed that the tribe of Levi was still the tribe chosen to be Yahweh's priests. (See: [chosen](#), [choose](#), [chosen people](#), [Chosen One](#), [elect](#) and [priest](#), [priesthood](#))

Numbers 17:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 17:2

twelve

“12” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [a father](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [his name](#)

ULT

² “Speak to [the sons of Israel](#) and take a staff from with them, a staff [for the house of a father](#), from with all their leaders [for the house of their fathers](#), 12 staffs. You shall write a man [his name](#) on his staff.

Numbers 17:3

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Levi's staff

The name Levi here refers to the tribe of Levi.

for each leader from his ancestors' tribe

Here "his" refers to "each leader."

Translation Words - ULT

- the name of
- Aaron
- Levi
- the house of
- their fathers

ULT

³ And you shall write the name of Aaron on the staff of Levi, for one staff is for the head of the house of their fathers.

Numbers 17:4

the covenant decrees

The phrase “the covenant decrees” refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. Alternate translation: “the ark of the covenant” or “the box that holds the covenant decrees” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [meeting](#)

ULT

⁴ And you shall rest them in the tent of [meeting](#), before the face of the testimony, there where I meet with you.

Numbers 17:5

the staff of the man whom I choose will bud

“buds will start to grow on the staff of the man whom I choose”

cause the complaints from the people of Israel to stop, which they are speaking against you

Here “complaints” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “make the people of Israel stop complaining against you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁵ And it will happen that the man, him whom I choose, his staff will bud. And I will make the grumbings of [the sons of Israel](#) that they are grumbling against you cease from against me.”

Numbers 17:6

selected from each of the ancestral tribes

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses selected from each of the ancestor’s tribes” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [for the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Moses](#) spoke to [the sons of Israel](#) and all their leaders gave to him a staff for one leader, a staff for one leader, [for the house of their fathers](#), 12 staffs. And the staff of [Aaron](#) was in the midst of their staffs.

Numbers 17:7

the tent of the covenant decrees

The phrase “the covenant decrees” refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. Alternate translation: “the tent of the covenant box” or “the tent that the covenant decrees are in” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁷ And [Moses](#) rested the staffs before the face of [Yahweh](#) in the tent of testimony.

Numbers 17:8

behold

The word “behold” here shows that something especially important has happened. You might have a similar word in your language.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Aaron
- for the house of
- Levi
- and it brought out

ULT

⁸ And it happened from the next day that **Moses** came into the tent of the testimony. And behold, the staff of **Aaron for the house of Levi** had budded, **and it brought out** a bud and it blossomed a flower and it ripened almonds!

Numbers 17:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- And...brought out
- Yahweh
- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

⁹ And Moses brought out all the staffs from before the face of Yahweh to all the sons of Israel. And they saw and took, a man his staff.

Numbers 17:10

the covenant decrees

The phrase “the covenant decrees” refers to the box that held the tablets that the covenant decrees were written on. Alternate translation: “the ark of the covenant” or “the box that holds the covenant decrees” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

so that you may end complaints against me

The word “complaints” is an abstract noun that can be expressed as a verb. Alternate translation: “so that you may stop them from complaining against me” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

or they will die

This is what would happen if the people were to continue complaining. God wanted to prevent this. Alternate translation: “so that they will not die”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Return](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [for the sons of](#)

ULT

10 And [Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#), “Return the staff of [Aaron](#) to the face of the testimony for keeping for a sign [for the sons of](#) rebellion. And you shall end their grumbings from against me and they shall not die.”

Numbers 17:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Yahweh
- had commanded

ULT

¹¹ And Moses did just as Yahweh had commanded him, thus he did.

Numbers 17:12

We will die here. We will all perish!

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [We will perish](#)
- [will perish](#)

ULT

12 And [the sons of Israel](#) spoke to [Moses](#), saying, "Look, we will expire! [We will perish!](#) All of us [will perish!](#)"

Numbers 17:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the dwelling of
- Yahweh

ULT

¹³ All who come near, who come near to the dwelling of Yahweh die. Will we be finished by expiring?"

Numbers 18

Numbers 18 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Tithes and offerings

The tribes of Israel were required to bring a tithe to the Levites in order to free them to serve Yahweh as priests. There is a detailed description of what belonged to Yahweh in this chapter. (See: [priest, priesthood](#))

Numbers 18:1

all sins committed against the sanctuary

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “all sins that anyone commits against the sanctuary” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

all sins committed by anyone in the priesthood

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “all sins that anyone in the priesthood commits” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

anyone in the priesthood

“any priest”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Aaron
- and your sons
- and your sons
- and the house of
- your father
- the iniquity of
- the iniquity of
- the holy place

ULT

¹ And Yahweh said to Aaron, “You and your sons and the house of your father with you shall bear the iniquity of the holy place. And you and your sons with you shall bear the iniquity of your priesthood.”

Numbers 18:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- your brothers
- Levi
- the tribe of
- your father
- and your sons

ULT

² And also bring with you **your brothers**, the staff of **Levi, the tribe of your father**, and they shall be joined to you and serve you. And you **and your sons** with you shall be before the face of the tent of the testimony.

Numbers 18:3

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Aaron.

They must serve you

“They” refers to members of the tribe of Levi; the word “you” is singular and refers to Aaron. (See: [Forms of You](#))

or they and also you will die

Here “they” refers to any member of the tribe of Levi who comes “near to anything in the sanctuary;” the word “you” is plural and refers to both Aaron and the rest of the Levites who are serving in approved roles. (See: [Pronouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the holy place](#)
- [the altar](#)

ULT

³ And they shall keep your keeping and the keeping of all of the tent. However, they shall not come near to the vessels of [the holy place](#) or to [the altar](#), and they will not die, both them and you.

Numbers 18:4

They must join you

“They” refers to members of the tribe of Levi; the word “you” is singular and refers to Aaron. (See: [Forms of You](#))

not come near you

Here “you” is plural and refers to both Aaron and the rest of the Levites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [meeting](#)

ULT

⁴ And they shall be joined to you and shall keep the keeping of the tent of [meeting](#), for all the service of the tent. And a stranger shall not come near to you.

Numbers 18:5

You must take responsibility

Here “you” is plural and refers to both Aaron and the rest of the Levites. (See: [Forms of You](#))

so that my anger does not come on the people of Israel again

This could mean: (1) this represents God being extremely angry with his people. Alternate translation: “so that I do not become very angry with the people of Israel again” or (2) this represents God punishing them because of his anger. Alternate translation: “so that I do not punish the people of Israel again” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the holy place](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁵ And you shall keep the keeping of [the holy place](#) and the keeping of [the altar](#). And there shall not again be fury against [the sons of Israel](#).

Numbers 18:6

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh continues speaking to Aaron.

They are a gift to you

Yahweh appointing the Levites to help Aaron is spoken of as if they were a gift that Yahweh were giving to Aaron. Alternate translation: "They are like a gift to you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

given to me

Here "given" to God represents being set apart to serve God. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "which I have set apart for myself" or "and I have set them apart for myself" (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your brothers](#)
- [the Levites](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

⁶ And I, behold, I have taken [your brothers the Levites](#) from the midst of [the sons of Israel](#) as a gift for you, ones given [to Yahweh](#) to serve the service of the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 18:7

only you and your sons

Here “you” and “your” are singular and refer to Aaron. Other occurrences of “you” and “your” are plural and refer to Aaron and his sons. (See: [Forms of You](#))

exercise the priesthood

“do the work of priests”

everything inside the curtain

Being inside the curtain represents being inside the room behind the curtain. Alternate translation: “everything in the room behind the curtain” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Any foreigner who approaches must be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Any foreigner who approaches must die” or “You must put to death any foreigner who approaches” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

who approaches

What they should not approach can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “who approaches the sacred things” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and your sons](#)
- [shall keep](#)
- [the altar](#)
- [of the curtain](#)

ULT

⁷ And you [and your sons](#) with you [shall keep](#) your priesthood for all the things of [the altar](#) and for the inside of [the curtain](#). And you shall serve. I have given your priesthood as a gift of service. And a stranger who comes near shall be put to death.

Numbers 18:8

the offerings raised up to me

Here “raised up to me” represents giving or offering something to God. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the offerings that people give to me” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

I have given these offerings to you

God speaks as if he had already done this because it is a decision that he had already made. Alternate translation: “I give these offerings to you”

as your ongoing share

A share is a portion of something that someone receives. Alternate translation: “as the portion that you will continually receive”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [my contribution](#)
- [the holy things of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [and to your sons](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁸ And [Yahweh](#) spoke to [Aaron](#), “And I, behold, I have given to you the keeping of [my contribution](#), of all [the holy things of the sons of Israel](#) I have given them to you for a portion [and to your sons](#) for a statute of eternity.”

Numbers 18:9

kept from the fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you do not completely burn on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- holiest
- a...holy thing
- holiest
- the fire
- grain offering of theirs
- sin offering of theirs
- they return
- and for your sons

ULT

⁹ This will belong to you from the holiest holy thing from the fire: every offering of theirs, of every grain offering of theirs and of every sin offering of theirs and of every guilt offering of theirs which they return to me, a holiest holy thing it is for you and for your sons.

Numbers 18:10

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

Translation Words - ULT

- You shall eat it
- shall eat
- holiest
- holy

ULT

¹⁰ You shall eat it as a holiest holy thing.
Every male shall eat it. It is holy for you.

Numbers 18:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the contribution of
- the sons of
- and to your sons
- Israel
- clean one
- in your house
- shall eat

ULT

11 And this belongs to you: the contribution of their gift, of all the wave offerings of the sons of Israel, I have given them to you and to your sons and to your daughters with you for a statute of eternity. Every clean one in your house shall eat it.

Numbers 18:12

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

the firstfruits

This refers to the first of the best oil, wine, and grain that they harvest.

Translation Words - ULT

- fresh oil
- new wine
- and grain
- their firstfruits
- to Yahweh

ULT

¹² All the fat of fresh oil and all the fat of new wine and grain, their firstfruits which they will give to Yahweh, I have given them to you.

Numbers 18:13

Everyone who is clean in your family

Being acceptable to God is spoken of as if they were clean. Alternate translation: "Everyone in your family who is acceptable to me" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The firstfruits of](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [clean one](#)
- [in your house](#)
- [shall eat it](#)

ULT

13 [The firstfruits of](#) all that is in the land which they will bring [to Yahweh](#) will belong to you. Every [clean one in your house shall eat it](#).

Numbers 18:14

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

Translation Words - ULT

- [dedicated thing](#)
- [in Israel](#)

ULT

¹⁴ Every [dedicated thing in Israel](#) will belong to you.

Numbers 18:15

Everything that opens the womb, all the firstborn

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. Alternate translation: "Every firstborn male" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Everything that opens the womb

The idiom "opens the womb" means to be the first male that a mother gives birth to. (See: [Idiom](#))

the people must certainly buy back every firstborn son

Instead of sacrificing their firstborn sons, people had to pay the priests for their sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- [flesh](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [among mankind](#)
- [mankind](#)
- [and among livestock](#)
- [surely](#)
- [you shall...redeem](#)
- [you shall redeem](#)
- [the firstborn of](#)
- [the firstborn of](#)

ULT

¹⁵ Every opener of the womb of all [flesh](#) that they offer [to Yahweh](#), [among mankind and among livestock](#), will belong to you. But [you shall surely redeem the firstborn of mankind](#), and [you shall redeem the firstborn of the unclean livestock](#).

Numbers 18:16

Those that are to be bought back by the people must be bought back after becoming one month old

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The people must buy them back when they become one month old” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

¹⁶ And his redeemed ones [from a son of a month](#) [you shall redeem](#) by your valuation, five [silver](#) shekels by the shekel of [the holy place](#), it is 20 gerahs.

Those that are to be bought back

Most likely this refers only to firstborn humans that must be bought back and not to firstborn unclean animals.

five shekels ... which equals twenty gerahs

If it is necessary to use modern weight units, here are two ways of doing it. Alternate translation: “five pieces of silver ... each of which equals ten grams” or “fifty grams of silver, using the standard weights that are used in the sanctuary” (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

five shekels

A shekel is a unit of weight. What was weighed can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: “five shekels of silver” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

sanctuary shekel

There were shekels of different weights. This is the one that people had to use in the sanctuary of the sacred tent. It weighed twenty gerahs, which was about 11 grams. (See: [Biblical Weight](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from a son of](#)
- [you shall redeem](#)
- [silver](#)
- [the holy place](#)

Numbers 18:17

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

You must sprinkle their blood

That he must kill the animals first can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "You must kill them and sprinkle their blood" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "that you make by fire" or "that you burn with fire on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

an aroma pleasing to Yahweh

The Lord's pleasure with the aroma represents his pleasure with the person who burns the offering. Alternate translation: "and Yahweh will be pleased with you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the firstborn of
- the firstborn of
- the firstborn of
- you shall...redeem
- are holy
- their blood
- the altar
- for Yahweh

ULT

17 But the firstborn of a cow, or the firstborn of a sheep, or the firstborn of a goat you shall not redeem; they are holy. You shall throw their blood on the altar and you shall make their fat smoke as an offering made by fire for an aroma of soothing for Yahweh.

Numbers 18:18

the raised breast and the right thigh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the breast and the right thigh that you lift up as a gift to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

18 And their flesh will belong to you like the breast of the wave offering or like the right thigh it will belong to you.

Numbers 18:19

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

I have given to you

God speaks as if he had already done this because it is a decision that he had already made. Alternate translation: "I give to you"

as a continual share

A share is a portion of something that someone receives. Alternate translation: "as the portion that you will continually receive"

an everlasting covenant of salt ... a binding covenant forever

The two phrases refer to the same thing. Together they emphasize that the covenant will endure forever. Alternate translation: "an agreement forever" (See: [Parallelism](#))

an everlasting covenant of salt

"a covenant made with salt." Salt represented permanence and was used in offerings and covenant meals. Alternate translation: "a permanent covenant" or "an everlasting covenant" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the contributions of
- the holy things
- the sons of
- and to your sons
- Israel
- to Yahweh
- Yahweh
- an...covenant of

ULT

¹⁹ All the contributions of the holy things which the sons of Israel lift up to Yahweh, I have given to you and to your sons and to your daughters with you for a statute of eternity. It is an eternal covenant of salt before the face of Yahweh for you and for your seed with you."

Numbers 18:20

You will have no inheritance in the people's land

God speaks of the land that the other people will possess as if they will inherit it. Alternate translation: "You will not possess any of the people's land" or "You will not receive any of the land that the Israelites will possess" (See: [Metaphor](#))

I am your share and inheritance

God speaks of the great honor that Aaron and his descendants will have by serving him as priests as if God were something that they will inherit. Alternate translation: "Instead, I am what you will have" or "Instead, I will allow you to serve me and I will provide for you through that service" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [You shall...inherit](#)
- [and your inheritance](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

²⁰ And [Yahweh](#) said to [Aaron](#), "You shall not [inherit](#) in their land and a portion in their midst shall not belong to you. I am your portion [and your inheritance](#) in the midst of [the sons of Israel](#)."

Numbers 18:21

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

look, I have given

The word “look” here adds emphasis to what follows. Alternate translation: “indeed, I have given”

as their inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. Alternate translation: “as their portion of what I give to all Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And to the sons of](#)
- [Levi](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [are serving](#)
- [meeting](#)

ULT

²¹ [And to the sons of Levi](#), behold, I have given every tenth [in Israel](#) for an inheritance in exchange for their service which they [are serving](#), the service of the tent of [meeting](#).

Numbers 18:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- meeting
- to die

ULT

²² And **the sons of Israel** shall not again come near to the tent of **meeting** to bear sin **to die**.

Numbers 18:23

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Aaron.

Among the people of Israel they must have no inheritance

God speaks of the land that the other people of Israel will possess as if they will inherit it. The Levites would not receive any of the land.

Alternate translation: "they must not have any of the land that the other people of Israel receive" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²³ And [the Levite](#), he shall serve the service of the tent of [meeting](#) and they shall bear [their iniquity](#). It is a statute of eternity [for your generations](#) and in the midst of [the sons of Israel you shall](#) not [inherit an inheritance](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levite](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [their iniquity](#)
- [for your generations](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [you shall...inherit](#)
- [an inheritance](#)

Numbers 18:24

as their inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. Alternate translation: “as their portion of what I give to all Israel” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to the Levites
- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Israel
- to Yahweh
- as a contribution
- You shall...inherit
- an inheritance

ULT

24 For I have given to the Levites for an inheritance the tenth of the sons of Israel which they lift up to Yahweh as a contribution. Therefore I have said to them, ‘You shall not inherit an inheritance in the midst of the sons of Israel.’”

Numbers 18:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

²⁵ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 18:26

When you receive from the people of Israel the tenth that I have given to you from them

The people of Israel would offer Yahweh a tenth of their crops and animals, and Yahweh would give that to the Levites.

for your inheritance

God speaks of what Aaron and his descendants will receive as if they will inherit it. Alternate translation: "as your portion of what I give to all Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Levites](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [as your inheritance](#)
- [then you shall lift up](#)
- [a contribution of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

²⁶ "And speak to [the Levites](#) and say to them, 'When you take from with [the sons of Israel](#) the tenth that I have given to you from with them [as your inheritance, then you shall lift up](#) from it [a contribution of Yahweh](#), a tenth from the tenth.'

Numbers 18:27

Your contribution must be considered by you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must consider your contribution" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [as your contribution](#)
- [the threshing floor](#)

ULT

²⁷ And it shall be reckoned to you [as your contribution](#) like the grain from [the threshing floor](#) and like the fullness from the winepress.

Numbers 18:28

Connecting Statement:

God continues tell Moses what he must tell the Levites.

you must give his contribution to Aaron the priest

Here “his” refers to Yahweh. It was Yahweh’s contribution in the sense that they had to give it to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “you must give Aaron the priest the contribution that you owe Yahweh”

Translation Words - ULT

- the contribution of
- the contribution of (2)
- Yahweh
- Yahweh (2)
- the sons of
- Israel
- to Aaron
- the priest

ULT

²⁸ Thus you shall lift up, also you, the contribution of Yahweh from all your tenths which you took from with the sons of Israel. And you shall give from it the contribution of Yahweh to Aaron the priest.

Numbers 18:29

that have been given to you

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the people of Israel give to you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the contribution of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [its holy part](#)

ULT

²⁹ From all your gifts you shall lift up all of [the contribution of Yahweh](#), from all its fat, [its holy part](#) from it.'

Numbers 18:30

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Moses.

the best of it

“the best of what you have received from the people of Israel”

Translation Words - ULT

- to the Levites
- the threshing floor

ULT

³⁰ And you shall say to them, ‘When you lift up its fat from it, then it shall be reckoned to the Levites like the product of the threshing floor and like the product of the winepress.’

Numbers 18:31

the rest of your gifts

The “gifts” are the offerings that the Israelites give to God and that the Levites receive from them.

Translation Words - ULT

- And you shall eat
- and your house
- meeting

ULT

³¹ And you shall eat it in every place, you and your house, because it is a wage for you in exchange for your service in the tent of meeting.

Numbers 18:32

You will not incur any guilt by eating and drinking it

“You will not be guilty when you eat and drink it”

Translation Words - ULT

- the holy things of
- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

³² And you shall not bear sin on account of it when you lift up its fat from it. And [the holy things of the sons of Israel](#) you shall not defile and not die.”

Numbers 19

Numbers 19 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Ritually clean

This chapter talks about being clean. Some of these rituals were required to make a priest clean in order to set them apart to serve Yahweh. Other rituals were required because they prevented people from getting sick. (See: [clean, wash](#))

Numbers 19:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron, saying,

Numbers 19:2

a statute, a law

These two words share similar meanings. Alternate translation: “a statute of the law” or “a legal statute” (See: [Doublet](#))

bring to you

Here “you” is singular and refers to Moses.

flaw or blemish

These two words mean basically the same thing and emphasize that this animal is to have no imperfections. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the law](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [has commanded](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

2 “This is the statute of [the law](#) which [Yahweh has commanded](#), saying, ‘Speak to [the sons of Israel](#) and they shall bring to you an unblemished red heifer in which there is no defect, on which a yoke has not gone up.

Numbers 19:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Eleazar
- the priest
- And he shall bring...out
- and shall slaughter

ULT

³ And you shall give it to **Eleazar the priest**. **And he shall bring it out** to the outside of the camp **and shall slaughter** it before his face.

Numbers 19:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Eleazar
- the priest
- the face of
- meeting

ULT

⁴ And Eleazar the priest shall take some of its blood with his finger and shall sprinkle some of its blood to opposite the face of the tent of meeting seven times.

Numbers 19:5

in his sight

“in his view” or “so he could see it”

Translation Words - ULT

- its flesh
- its blood

ULT

⁵ And he shall burn the heifer before his eyes. He shall burn its skin and its flesh, and its blood with its dung.

Numbers 19:6

priest must take cedarwood

“The priest” refers to Eleazar.

scarlet wool

“red wool”

Translation Words - ULT

- the priest
- cedar

ULT

⁶ And the priest shall take wood of cedar, and hyssop, and scarlet material of a worm, and throw into the midst of the burning of the heifer.

Numbers 19:7

Then he must wash his clothes

Here “he” refers to Eleazar the priest.

he will remain unclean

Being unacceptable to God or unfit to do any sacred work is spoken of as not being clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the priest](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [and bathe](#)
- [his flesh](#)

ULT

⁷ And [the priest](#) shall wash his garments [and bathe his flesh](#) in the water and afterward he shall enter into the camp. And [the priest](#) shall be unclean until the evening.

Numbers 19:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and bathe
- his flesh

ULT

⁸ And the one who burned it shall wash his garments in the water and bathe his flesh in the water. And he shall be unclean until the evening.

Numbers 19:9

Someone who is clean

Being acceptable to God and fit to do sacred work is spoken of as being clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

These ashes must be kept

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must keep these ashes" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

in a clean place

Being acceptable to God is spoken of as being clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [clean](#)
- [clean](#)
- [purification](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [is a sin offering](#)

ULT

⁹ And a [clean](#) man shall gather the ashes of the heifer and rest them in a [clean](#) place outside of the camp. And it shall be for the congregation of [the sons of Israel](#) to keep for the water of [purification](#). It is a [sin offering](#).

Numbers 19:10

He will remain unclean

Being unacceptable to God or unfit to do any sacred work is spoken of as not being clean. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

10 And the one who gathers the ashes of the heifer shall wash his garments and be unclean until the evening. And it shall be [for the sons of Israel](#) and for the sojourner who sojourns in their midst for a statute of eternity.

Numbers 19:11

General Information:

The ideas of “clean” and “purify” represent being acceptable to God. The ideas of “unclean,” “defile,” “impurity,” and “uncleanness” represent not being acceptable to God. (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metaphor](#))

the dead body of any man

“the dead body of any person”

Translation Words - ULT

- [human](#)
- [life](#)

ULT

11 The one who touches a dead body of any [human life](#) will be unclean seven days.

Numbers 19:12

purify himself

The person would ask someone who is clean to purify him by sprinkling on him some water mixed with the cows ashes. Asking someone to purify him is spoken of as if he were to purify himself. Alternate translation: "ask someone to purify him" (See: [Metonymy](#))

if he does not purify himself the third day, then he will not be clean on the seventh day

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: "he will be clean on the seventh day only if he purifies himself the third day" (See: [Double Negatives](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- she purify himself
- he does...purify himself
- he will be clean
- he will...be clean

ULT

¹² He [she purify himself](#) with it on the third day and on the seventh day [he will be clean](#). And if [he does](#) not [purify himself](#) on the third day then on the seventh day [he will not be clean](#).

Numbers 19:13

That person must be cut off

Here the phrase “be cut off” means to be disowned and sent away. See how you translated this in [Numbers 9:13](#). Alternate translation: “That person must be sent away” or “you must send that person away” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

the water for impurity was not sprinkled on him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “no one sprinkled the water for impurity on him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the water for impurity

“the water that is sprinkled on impure things to make them pure” or “the water for making things pure”

He will remain unclean; his uncleanness will remain on him

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and are combined for emphasis. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [human](#)
- [a...person](#)
- [does...purify himself](#)
- [the dwelling of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And...shall be cut off](#)
- [from Israel](#)
- [purification](#)

ULT

¹³ Every one who touches a dead body, a [human person](#) who has died, and does not [purify himself](#) makes [the dwelling of Yahweh](#) unclean. And that person [shall be cut off from Israel](#). Because the water of [purification](#) was not sprinkled on him, he will be unclean, his uncleanness is still on him.

Numbers 19:14

General Information:

The idea of “unclean” represents not being acceptable to God or fit for use. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is the law of](#)
- [a man](#)

ULT

14 This [is the law of a man](#) who dies in a tent: Every one who enters into the tent and everyone who is in the tent will be unclean seven days.

Numbers 19:15

Every open container with no cover becomes unclean

This can be stated in a positive form. Alternate translation: “Open containers will remain clean only if they have covers” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

ULT

¹⁵ And every opened vessel on which there is no fastened cover, it is unclean.

Numbers 19:16

someone who has been killed with a sword

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone whom someone else has killed with a sword” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sword
- a human
- the face of

ULT

16 And all who touch one pierced of [the sword](#) or a dead body or a bone of [a human](#) or a grave on [the face of](#) the field will be unclean seven days.

Numbers 19:17

General Information:

The idea of “unclean” represents not being acceptable to God or fit for use. (See: [Metaphor](#))

General Information:

The ideas of “clean” and “purify” here represent being acceptable to God. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [living](#)

ULT

17 And they shall take for the unclean one some of the ashes of the burning of the sin offering. And he shall put [living](#) water with it into a vessel.

Numbers 19:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- clean

ULT

18 And a **clean** man shall take and dip hyssop in the water. And he shall sprinkle on the tent and on all the vessels and on the lives who were there, and on the one who touched the bone, or the pierced one, or the dead body, or the grave.

Numbers 19:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And he shall
- and bathe
- and he will be unclean

ULT

¹⁹ And the clean one shall sprinkle on the unclean one on the third day and on the seventh day. And he shall purify him on the seventh day. And he shall wash his garments and bathe in the water and he will be unclean until the evening.

Numbers 19:20

General Information:

The ideas of “clean” and “purify” represent being acceptable to God and making something acceptable to God. The ideas of “unclean,” “defile,” and “impurity,” represent not being acceptable to God, making something unacceptable to God, and the state of being unacceptable to God. (See: [Metaphor](#)) (See: [Metaphor](#))

that person will be cut off

Here the phrase “be cut off” means to be disowned and sent away. See how you translated this in [Numbers 9:13](#). Alternate translation: “That person must be sent away” or “you must send that person away” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

The water for impurity has not been sprinkled on him

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “No one has sprinkled the water for impurity on him” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- does...purify himself
- shall be cut off
- the assembly
- the holy place of
- Yahweh
- purification

ULT

20 And a man who is unclean and does not [purify himself](#), that person [shall be cut off](#) from the midst of [the assembly](#) because he has made [the holy place of Yahweh](#) unclean. He has not thrown on himself the water of [purification](#). He is unclean.

Numbers 19:21

the water for impurity

“the water that is sprinkled on impure things to make them pure” or “the water for making things pure.” See how you translated this in [Numbers 19:13](#)

ULT

21 And it shall be for them for a statute of eternity, and the one who sprinkles the water of purification shall wash his garments and the one who touches the water of purification will be unclean until the evening.

Numbers 19:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²² And all who touch him, the unclean one, will be unclean. And the person who touches will be unclean until the evening.”

Numbers 20

Numbers 20 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Moses' sin

God told Moses to command water to come out of a rock for the people who were complaining that they had no water. Moses became angry with the people and hit the rock twice. God told him that he and Aaron would not be allowed to go into Canaan because he disobeyed by hitting the rock instead of just speaking to it. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Important figures of speech in this chapter

“It would have been better if we had died when our fellow Israelites died in front of Yahweh”

It is possible that this statement should be taken as hyperbole, but it does not have to be taken this way. The translator should probably avoid treating this as hyperbole. (See: [Hyperbole](#))

Other possible translation difficulties in this chapter

Wilderness of Sin

Sin is the name of a place in this chapter. It is not a place that is known for its sin. The name is not related to the meaning of the word “sin.” (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#))

Numbers 20:1

the wilderness of Zin

The word “Zin” here is the Hebrew name of the wilderness. (See: [Copy or Borrow Words](#))

the first month

This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God rescued the Israelites from the Egyptians. The first month is during the last part of March and the first part of April on the Western calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#))

was buried

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they buried her” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the people
- Miriam
- And...died

ULT

¹ And [the sons of Israel](#), all the congregation, entered the wilderness of Zin in the first month, and [the people](#) stayed at Kadesh. And [Miriam died](#) there and was buried there.

Numbers 20:2

they assembled

Here “they” refers to the community.

assembled together

“came as a mob”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)

ULT

² And there was no water for the congregation, and they assembled against [Moses](#) and against [Aaron](#).

Numbers 20:3

in front of Yahweh

This represents being in front of Yahweh's tent. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- And...quarreled
- Moses
- our brothers
- Yahweh

ULT

³ And the people quarreled with Moses, and spoke, saying, "If only we had expired when our brothers expired before the face of Yahweh!"

Numbers 20:4

Connecting Statement:

The people of Israel continue to complain to Moses and Aaron.

Why have you brought Yahweh's community into this wilderness to die here, we and our animals?

The people use this question in order to complain against Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have brought Yahweh's community into this wilderness to die here, we and our animals." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁴ And why have you brought [the assembly of Yahweh](#) into this wilderness [to die](#) here, we and our livestock?

Translation Words - ULT

- [the assembly of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to die](#)

Numbers 20:5

Why did you make us come up out of Egypt to bring us to this horrible place?

The people use this question in order to complain against Moses and Aaron. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have made us leave Egypt to bring us to this horrible place." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁵ And why did you bring us up from Egypt to bring us into this evil place? It is not a place of seed or fig free or vine or pomegranate tree, and there is no water to drink!"

Translation Words - ULT

- from Egypt
- evil
- seed
- or fig free
- or vine

Numbers 20:6

lay facedown

This indicates that Moses and Aaron are humbling themselves before God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [meeting](#)
- [And they fell](#)
- [their faces](#)
- [the glory of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁶ And [Moses and Aaron](#) went from the face of [the assembly](#) to the opening of the tent of [meeting](#). [And they fell](#) on [their faces](#) and [the glory of Yahweh](#) appeared to them.

Numbers 20:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁷ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 20:8

before their eyes

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “while they watch you” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and Aaron](#)
- [your brother](#)
- [And you shall bring out](#)

ULT

8 “Take the staff and assemble the congregation, you [and Aaron your brother](#), and you shall speak to the rock before their eyes and it will give its water. [And you shall bring out](#) water to them from the rock. And you shall have the congregation and their livestock drink.”

Numbers 20:9

from before Yahweh

This represents Yahweh's tent. Alternate translation: "from Yahweh's tent" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [he had commanded him](#)

ULT

⁹ And [Moses](#) took the staff from before the face of [Yahweh](#), just as [he had commanded him](#).

Numbers 20:10

Must we bring water out of this rock for you?

Moses asks this question out of frustration to rebuke the people for complaining. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You complain that there is no water. Well, we will make water come out of this rock." or "You would not be happy even if we caused water to come out of this rock. But I will do it anyway." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁰ And [Moses and Aaron](#) assembled [the assembly](#) at [the face of](#) the rock. And he said to them, "Listen now, the rebellious ones, shall [we bring out](#) from this rock water for you?"

Must we bring

Here "we" refers to Moses and Aaron and may include Yahweh, but does not include the people. (See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [we bring out](#)

Numbers 20:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- And...lifted up
- his hand
- And...came out

ULT

¹¹ And Moses lifted up his hand and struck the rock with his staff twice. And abundant water came out and the congregation and their livestock drank.

Numbers 20:12

Because you did not trust me or honor me as holy in the eyes of the people of Israel

How Moses showed that he did not trust and honor God can be stated clearly. Alternate translation: "Because you did not trust me or honor me as holy in the eyes of the people of Israel, but struck the rock instead of speaking to it as I told you" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the eyes of the people of Israel

Here the people are represented by their "eyes" to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: "while the people of Israel were watching you" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [you did...trust](#)
- [to regard me as holy](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [assembly](#)
- [the land](#)

ULT

¹² And [Yahweh](#) said to [Moses](#) and to [Aaron](#), "Because [you did not trust](#) in me [to regard me as holy](#) before the eyes of [the sons of Israel](#), therefore you shall not bring this [assembly](#) into [the land](#) that I have given to them."

Numbers 20:13

This place was called

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "People called this place" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and he showed himself holy](#)

ULT

13 These are the waters of Meribah where [the sons of Israel](#) quarreled with [Yahweh](#) and he showed himself holy among them.

Numbers 20:14

Your brother Israel

Moses uses this phrase to emphasize that the Israelites and the Edomites are related because their ancestors, Jacob and Esau, were brothers.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- messengers
- the king of
- your brother
- Israel
- you...know
- the hardship

ULT

14 And Moses sent messengers from Kadesh to the king of Edom, "Thus says your brother Israel: you yourself know all the hardship that we found.

Numbers 20:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- our fathers
- and to our fathers
- to Egypt
- in Egypt

ULT

¹⁵ And **our fathers** went down **to Egypt** and we dwelled **in Egypt** many days. And the Egyptians did evil to us **and to our fathers**.

Numbers 20:16

When we called out to Yahweh

“When we prayed to Yahweh begging him to help us”

he heard our voice

Here “voice” represents their crying or what they said to him.
Alternate translation: “he heard our cry” or “he heard what we asked for” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Look

The word “look” here shows that they have stopped speaking about the past and are now speaking about their present situation.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [a messenger](#)
- [and brought us out](#)
- [from Egypt](#)

ULT

16 And we cried out to [Yahweh](#) and he heard our voice and sent [a messenger](#) and brought us out from [Egypt](#). And behold, we are in Kadesh, the city of the end of your border.

Numbers 20:17

Connecting Statement:

The messengers continue speaking to the king of Edom.

We will not turn aside to the right hand or to the left

Here “turn aside” represents leaving the road. Alternate translation: “We will not leave the road in any direction” (See: [Metonymy](#))

the king’s highway

This is the main road that connects Damascus in the north to the Gulf of Aqabah in the south.

Translation Words - ULT

- [We will go on](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

17 Please let us pass through your land. We will not pass through field or vineyard, and will we not drink the water of a well. [We will go on](#) the road of [the king](#). We will not turn right or left until we have passed through your border.”

Numbers 20:18

You may not pass ... to attack you

Here “you” is singular and refers to Moses, who represents the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “Your people may not pass ... to attack them” (See: [Forms of You](#) and [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

18 And Edom said to him, “You may not pass through me, lest [I go out](#) to meet you [with the sword](#).”

I will come with the sword

Here the sword represents the king’s army. Alternate translation: “I will send my army” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I go out](#)
- [with the sword](#)

Numbers 20:19

the people of Israel

This phrase refers to the Israelite messengers.

walk through on foot

This idiom means that they would simply travel through the area by walking. They would not come in chariots to attack the people of Edom. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

19 And [the sons of Israel](#) said to him, "We will go on the highway. And if we drink your water, me or my livestock, then we will give their value. Only, there is no matter, let me pass through with my feet."

Numbers 20:20

the king of Edom came against Israel with a strong hand with many soldiers

Here the hand represents the king's powerful army. Alternate translation: "the king of Edom sent a strong army of many soldiers to attack Israel" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...came out](#)
- [with a...people](#)
- [and a...hand](#)
- [strong](#)

ULT

²⁰ And he said, "You may not pass through." And Edom [came out](#) to meet him [with a heavy people and a strong hand](#).

Numbers 20:21

cross over their border

Here “their” refers to the Edomites.

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel

ULT

²¹ And Edom refused to give Israel passage through his territory. And Israel turned from near him.

Numbers 20:22

The people of Israel, the whole community

The phrase “the whole community” emphasizes that every person who was a part of “the people of Israel” was present, without exception. (See: [Doublet](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

²² And [the sons of Israel](#), all the congregation, set out from Kadesh and came to Mount Hor.

Numbers 20:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Aaron
- Edom

ULT

²³ And Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Aaron at Mount Hor, near the border of the land of Edom, saying,

Numbers 20:24

Aaron must be gathered to his people

This is a gentle way to say that Aaron must die. It means that it is time for Aaron to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. Alternate translation: "Aaron must die" (See: [Euphemism](#))

rebelled against my word

"refused to do what I said"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [will be gathered](#)
- [the land](#)
- [to the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [you rebelled](#)

ULT

²⁴ "Aaron will be gathered to his people, because he will not enter into the land that I have given to the sons of Israel because you rebelled against my mouth before the waters of Meribah.

Numbers 20:25

Connecting Statement:

God continues speaking to Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

- Aaron
- Eleazar
- his son

ULT

²⁵ Take Aaron and Eleazar his son, and bring them up Mount Hor.

Numbers 20:26

must die and be gathered to his people

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. They mean that it is time for Aaron to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [And Aaron](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [his son](#)
- [shall be gathered](#)
- [and die](#)

ULT

²⁶ And strip [Aaron](#) of his garments and put them on [Eleazar his son](#). [And Aaron shall be gathered and die](#) there.”

Numbers 20:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Yahweh
- had commanded

ULT

²⁷ And Moses did just as Yahweh had commanded. And they went up to Mount Hor before the eyes of all the congregation.

Numbers 20:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Moses
- Aaron
- Aaron
- Eleazar
- and Eleazar
- his son
- And...died
- on the head of

ULT

²⁸ And Moses stripped Aaron of his garments and put them on Eleazar his son. And Aaron died there on the head of the mountain. And Moses and Eleazar came down from the mountain.

Numbers 20:29

thirty days

“30 days” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the house of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

²⁹ And all the congregation saw that [Aaron](#) had expired. And all [the house of Israel](#) bewailed [Aaron](#) 30 days.

Numbers 21

Numbers 21 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 21:14-15, 17-18, 27-30.

Special concepts in this chapter

Ungrateful

The Israelites said, “Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no bread, no water, and we hate this miserable food.” After all Yahweh had done, they were very ungrateful. This showed their lack of faith and trust in Yahweh. (See: [faith](#) and [trust](#), [trusted](#), [trustworthy](#), [trustworthiness](#))

Numbers 21:1

he fought against Israel

Here “he fought” means that his army fought. Alternate translation: “his army fought against Israel” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Canaanite](#)
- [king of](#)
- [the Negev](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [against Israel](#)

ULT

¹ And [the Canaanite king of Arad](#), who dwelled in [the Negev](#), heard that [Israel](#) had come by the road of the Atharim. And he fought [against Israel](#) and took captive some of them as captives.

Numbers 21:2

Israel vowed

This refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “The people of Israel vowed” or “The Israelites made a vow” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [people](#)
- [into my hand](#)
- [then I will dedicate...by ban](#)

ULT

² And [Israel](#) vowed a vow [to Yahweh](#) and said, “If you surely give this [people](#) [into my hand](#), then I will dedicate their cities [by ban](#).”

Numbers 21:3

listened to Israel's voice

Here "listen" means that Yahweh did as they asked. Alternate translation: "did what Israel asked" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Israel's voice

Here "voice" is a metonym that refers to their request. Alternate translation: "what Israel asked" (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

³ And Yahweh listened to the voice of Israel and gave the Canaanites. And he dedicated them and their cities by ban. And he called the name of the place Hormah.

They completely destroyed them and their cities

"The people of Israel completely destroyed the Canaanite army and their cities"

That place was called Hormah

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "They called that place Hormah" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to the voice of
- Israel
- the Canaanites
- And he dedicated...by ban
- And he called
- the name of

Numbers 21:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the land of
- the soul of
- the people

ULT

⁴ And they set out from Mount Hor by the road of the Sea of Reeds to go around the land of Edom. And the soul of the people was short on the road.

Numbers 21:5

Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness?

The people used this question in order to rebuke Moses. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not made us leave Egypt to die in the wilderness!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [against God](#)
- [and against Moses](#)
- [from Egypt](#)
- [to die](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [bread](#)

ULT

⁵ And [the people](#) spoke [against God and against Moses](#): "Why did you bring us up [from Egypt to die in the wilderness](#)? For there is no [bread](#), and there is no water, and our soul detests the worthless bread."

Numbers 21:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- among the people
- the people
- people
- from Israel
- And...died

ULT

⁶ And Yahweh sent snakes, fiery ones, among the people and they bit the people. And many people from Israel died.

Numbers 21:7

we have spoken against Yahweh and you

“we have said bad things about Yahweh and you”

we have spoken ... from us

The words “we” and “us” here refer to the people but not to Moses.
(See: [Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people](#)
- [the people](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [We have sinned](#)
- [against...Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [And...prayed](#)

ULT

⁷ And [the people](#) came to [Moses](#) and said, “[We have sinned](#) because we have spoken [against Yahweh](#) and against you. Pray to [Yahweh](#) and may he remove from on us the snake.” And [Moses prayed](#) on behalf of [the people](#).

Numbers 21:8

Make a snake

Since it is impossible for Moses to make a real snake, it is implied that he was to make a model of a snake. This implied information can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Make a model of a snake" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

everyone who is bitten

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everyone whom a snake bites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- and set

ULT

⁸ And Yahweh said to Moses, "Make for yourself a snake and set it on a pole. And it will happen that any of the bitten will see it and live."

Numbers 21:9

a bronze snake

“a snake out of bronze”

if he looked at the bronze snake, he survived

Here “he” refers to “any person” who was bitten by a snake.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- bronze
- bronze
- and he set it

ULT

⁹ And Moses made a snake of bronze and he set it on the pole. And it happened that if the snake bit a man then he looked to the snake of bronze and he lived.

Numbers 21:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

¹⁰ And [the sons of Israel](#) set out and camped at Oboth.

Numbers 21:11

that faces Moab

Here “faces” is an idiom that means “is across from” or “is next to.”
Alternate translation: “that is next to Moab” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wilderness](#)
- [the face of](#)
- [Moab](#)

ULT

11 And they set out from Oboth and camped at Iye Abarim [in the wilderness](#) that is on [the face of Moab](#) from the rising of the sun.

Numbers 21:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹² From there they set out and camped at the wadi of Zered.

Numbers 21:13

forms the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorites

This means that the two peoples lived on different sides of the river, which was a boundary between them. The Moabite people lived south of the river and the Amorites lived on the north.

Translation Words - ULT

- is in the wilderness
- the Amorite
- the Amorite
- of...Moab
- Moab

ULT

¹³ From there they set out and camped on the other side of the Arnon, which is in the wilderness that goes out from the border of the Amorite, because the Arnon is the border of Moab, between Moab and the Amorite.

Numbers 21:14

Waheb in Suphah

These are both names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

14 Therefore it says in the book of the Wars of [Yahweh](#), "...Waheb in Suphah, and the wadis of the Arnon,

Numbers 21:15

the slope of the valleys that lead toward the town of Ar and lie along the border of Moab

“the valleys that go downhill to the town of Ar and lie along the border of Moab”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)

ULT

¹⁵ and the slope of the wadis that spreads out to the dwelling of Ar and it leans to the border of [Moab](#).”

Numbers 21:16

to Beer, the well

This can be stated as two sentences. Alternate translation: “to Beer. There was a well there”

where Yahweh said to Moses, “Gather the people together for me to give them water.”

This can be stated as an indirect quote. Alternate translation: “where Yahweh told Moses to gather the people together for him to give them water” (See: [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- to Moses
- Gather
- the people

ULT

16 And from there to Beer. It is the well where Yahweh said to Moses, “Gather the people and I will give water to them.”

Numbers 21:17

Spring up, well

Here “well” represents the water in the well. The Israelites are speaking to the water as if it were a person who could hear them, and they are asking for it to fill the well. Alternate translation: “Water, fill up the well” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)

ULT

17 Then [Israel](#) sang this song: “Rise up, well! Sing for it,

Numbers 21:18

the well that our leaders dug, the well the nobles of the people dug

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize the role of the leaders in digging the well. (See: [Parallelism](#))

with the scepter and their staffs

A scepter was carried by those with authority, and the staff was carried by everyone. Neither of these are digging tools. These two items emphasize that they were not too proud to use any means available. Alternate translation: "using even their scepter and staffs" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [leaders](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

¹⁸ the well [leaders](#) dug, the noblemen of [the people](#) dug it, with a decreer's staff and their staffs." And from the wilderness to Mattanah,

Numbers 21:19

Nahaliel ... Bamoth

These are the names of places. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Bamoth](#)

ULT

¹⁹ and from Mattanah to Nahaliel, and from Nahaliel [to Bamoth](#),

Numbers 21:20

Mount Pisgah

This is the name of a mountain. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

looks down on the wilderness

This is an idiom. It is a way of saying that the mountain is high, and speaks of the mountain as if it were a person who looks down to see the wilderness below him. Alternate translation: "rises above the wilderness" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Personification](#))

ULT

²⁰ and from Bamoth to the valley that is in the field of Moab, the head of the Pisgah, and is looking down on the face of the wasteland.

Translation Words - ULT

- and from Bamoth
- Moab
- the head of
- the face of

Numbers 21:21

Then Israel

Here "Israel" refers to the people of Israel, and especially to their leaders. Alternate translation: "Then the Israelites" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [messengers](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the Amorite](#)

ULT

²¹ And [Israel](#) sent [messengers](#) to Sihon [the king of the Amorite](#), saying,

Numbers 21:22

We will not turn into any field or vineyard

“We will not go into any of your fields or vineyards”

the king’s highway

This is the main road that connects Damascus in the north to the Gulf of Aqabah in the south. See how you translated this in [Numbers 20:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [We will go](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

²² “Let us pass through your land. We will not turn into a field or into a vineyard. We will not drink the water of a well. [We will go](#) by the road of [the king](#) until we have passed through your border.”

Numbers 21:23

to pass through their border

“to cross over their border.” Here “their” refers to the Amorites.

Jahaz

This is the name of a place. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

he fought against Israel

Here “he” refers to King Sihon who represents himself and his army. Alternate translation: “they fought against the Israelites” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [with Israel](#)
- [his people](#)
- [and went out](#)

ULT

²³ And Sihon did not give [Israel](#) passage through his boundary. And Sihon gathered all [his people and went out](#) to the wilderness to meet [Israel](#). And he came to Jahaz and fought [with Israel](#).

Numbers 21:24

Israel attacked

Here “Israel” refers to the people of Israel. Alternate translation: “The Israelites attacked” (See: [Metonymy](#))

with the edge of the sword

“with the sharp part of the sword.” The “edge of the sword” is associated with death and complete destruction. Alternate translation: “and completely defeated them” (See: [Metonymy](#))

took their land

“conquered the land of the Amorites.” Here the word “their” refers to the Amorites.

was fortified

“was strongly defended.” The Israelites did not attack the Ammonites.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the sword](#)
- [and took possession of](#)
- [his land](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [was fortified](#)

ULT

24 And [Israel](#) struck him by the mouth of [the sword and took possession of his land](#) from the Arnon as far as the Jabbok, as far as [the sons of Ammon](#), because the border of [the sons of Ammon](#) [was fortified](#).

Numbers 21:25

Heshbon and all of its villages

Here “its” is possessive to show that a relationship existed between the city of Heshbon and these nearby villages. Alternate translation: “Heshbon and the nearby villages that it controlled”

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- the Amorite

ULT

²⁵ And **Israel** took all these cities. And **Israel** dwelled in all the cities of **the Amorite** in Heshbon and in all its daughters.

Numbers 21:26

Sihon had taken all his land

Here “his” refers to the king of Moab.

Translation Words - ULT

- the king of
- with the...king of
- the Amorite
- Moab
- his land
- from his hand

ULT

²⁶ For Heshbon, it was the city of Sihon the king of the Amorite. And he had fought with the previous king of Moab and had taken all his land from his hand as far as the Arnon.

Numbers 21:27

Heshbon ... city of Sihon

These are two names that refer to the same city. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Let the city of Sihon be rebuilt and established again

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Let someone rebuild and establish again the city of Sihon" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

rebuilt and established

These two terms are very similar and emphasize that the city will be fully rebuilt. Alternate translation: "completely rebuilt" (See: [Doublet](#))

ULT

²⁷ Therefore the speakers of proverbs say, "Come to Heshbon. Let the city of Sihon be built and established."

Numbers 21:28

A fire blazed from Heshbon, a flame from the city of Sihon

These two phrases mean basically the same thing and emphasize that destruction will begin at Heshbon. The fire refers to a destroying army. Alternate translation: "King Sihon led a strong army from the city of Heshbon" (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²⁸ For [fire went out](#) from Heshbon, a flame from the city of Sihon. [It ate](#) Ar of [Moab, the lords of](#) the high places of Arnon.

devoured Ar of Moab

The army of Sihon is spoken of as if it was an animal that ate up the city of Ar. Alternate translation: "destroyed the town of Ar in the land of Moab" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [fire](#)
- [went out](#)
- [It ate](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [the lords of](#)

Numbers 21:29

Moab ... people of Chemosh

These two phrases refer to the same people. (See: [Parallelism](#))

people of Chemosh

“Chemosh” was the name of the false god whom the Moabites worshiped. Alternate translation: “the people who worship Chemosh”

He has made his sons

“He” and “his” refer to Chemosh.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)
- [You have perished](#)
- [people of](#)
- [his sons](#)
- [into the captivity](#)
- [of...the king of](#)
- [the Amorites](#)

ULT

²⁹ Woe to you, [Moab](#)! [You have perished, people of](#) Chemosh. He has given [his sons](#) to be escapees and his daughters [into the captivity](#) of Sihon [the king of the Amorites](#).

Numbers 21:30

we have conquered

Here “we” refers to the Israelites who defeated Sihon.

Heshbon is devastated

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “We have devastated Heshbon” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Heshbon ... all the way to Dibon ... all the way to Nophah ... to Medeba

These are all places in Sihon’s kingdom. This means the Israelites destroyed Sihon’s entire nation. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Merism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [has perished](#)

ULT

³⁰ And we have shot them. Heshbon [has perished](#) as far as Dibon. And we have made devastation as far as Nophah, which is as far as Medeba.”

Numbers 21:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- the Amorites

ULT

³¹ And Israel dwelled in the land of the Amorites.

Numbers 21:32

drove out

“chased away”

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- And they dispossessed
- the Amorites

ULT

³² And Moses sent to spy out Jazer and they captured her daughters. And they dispossessed the Amorites who were there.

Numbers 21:33

went out against them

“attacked them”

Translation Words - ULT

- the Bashan
- the Bashan
- the king of
- And...went out
- his people

ULT

³³ And they turned and went up the road of the Bashan. And Og the king of the Bashan went out to meet them, he and all his people, to the battle at Edrei.

Numbers 21:34

Do to him as you did to Sihon king of the Amorites

The Israelites had completely destroyed Sihon. Alternate translation: "Destroy him like you destroyed Sihon king of the Amorites"

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Do...fear
- into your hand
- his people
- his land
- the king of
- the Amorite

ULT

³⁴ And Yahweh said to Moses, "Do not fear him, because I have given into your hand him, and all his people, and his land. And you shall do to him just as you did to Sihon the king of the Amorite, who dwelled in Heshbon."

Numbers 21:35

So they killed him

“So the army of Israel killed Og”

none of his people were left alive

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “all of his people were dead” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they took over his land

“they took control of his land”

Translation Words - ULT

- his sons
- his people
- And they took possession of
- his land

ULT

³⁵ And they struck him and his sons and all his people until they had left no survivor for him. And they took possession of his land.

Numbers 22

Numbers 22 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The chapter begins a section on Balaam. The king of Moab wanted the prophet Balaam to come and curse Israel. God told him not to go but he wanted to go; so God told him to say only what God wanted him to say. Yahweh was able to use Balaam, even though he was not a prophet of Yahweh. (See: [prophet](#), [prophecy](#), [prophesy](#), [seer](#), [prophetess](#) and [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#))

Numbers 22:1

on the other side of the Jordan River from the city

The Israelites were camped on the east side of the Jordan River. Jericho was on the west side of the river.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- Moab
- of the Jordan
- at Jericho

ULT

¹ And the sons of Israel set out and camped in the plains of Moab, from the other side of the Jordan at Jericho.

Numbers 22:2

Balak son of Zippor

Balak was king of Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Zippor

Zippor is the father of Balak. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [to the Amorite](#)

ULT

² And Balak [the son of](#) Zippor saw all that [Israel](#) had done [to the Amorite](#).

Numbers 22:3

Moab was very afraid of the people ... Moab was in terror of the people of Israel

These two phrases mean the same thing, and emphasize how afraid Moab was. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Moab was very afraid

Here “Moab” refers to the people of Moab. Alternate translation: “All of the Moabites were very afraid” (See: [Metonymy](#))

because they were many

“because there were many of them”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [the people](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

³ And [Moab](#) was extremely terrified because of the face of [the people](#), because they were numerous. And [Moab](#) was sick with terror because of the face of [the sons of Israel](#).

Numbers 22:4

The king of Moab said to the elders of Midian

The Moabites and the Midianites were two different groups of people, but the Midianites were living in the land of Moab at that time.

This multitude will eat up all that is around us as an ox eats up the grass in a field

The way the Israelites will destroy their enemies is spoken of as if they were an ox eating up the grass in a field. (See: [Simile](#))

Now Balak son of Zippor was king of Moab at that time

This changes from the main story to background information about Balak. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)
- [the elders of](#)
- [the assembly](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [was the king](#)

ULT

⁴ And [Moab](#) said to [the elders of](#) Midian, "Now [the assembly](#) will lick up all that is around us like an ox licks up the green of the field. And Balak [the son of](#) Zippor [was the king](#) of Moab at that time.

Numbers 22:5

He sent messengers

“Balak sent messengers”

Beor

This is the name of Balaam’s father. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Pethor

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

of his nation and his people

“of Balaam’s nation and people”

He called him

“Balak called Balaam.” Balak did not speak to Balaam directly, but did so through the messengers he sent.

They cover the face of the earth

This is an exaggeration to emphasize how many of them there were. Alternate translation: “They are extremely numerous” (See: [Hyperbole](#))

the face of the earth

This refers to the surface of the earth. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [messengers](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [the land](#)
- [his people](#)
- [a people](#)
- [went out](#)
- [from Egypt](#)

ULT

⁵ And he sent [messengers](#) to [Balaam the son of Beor](#) at Pethor, which is near the River, [the land of the sons of his people](#), to summon him, saying, “Behold, [a people went out from Egypt](#). Behold, he has covered the eye of [the land](#) and he is dwelling opposite me.

Numbers 22:6

drive them

“chase them”

I know that whomever you bless will be blessed, and whomever you curse will be cursed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “I know you have the power to bless or to curse people” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- go
- curse
- you curse
- will be cursed
- people
- the land
- I know
- you bless
- will be blessed

ULT

⁶ And now please go curse this people for me because they are more numerous than I. Perhaps I will be able to strike them and drive them out from the land. For I know whom you bless will be blessed and whom you curse will be cursed.

Numbers 22:7

payment for divination

The abstract noun “divination” can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “money to pay Balaam to curse Israel” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

They came to Balaam

You may prefer to say “They went to Balaam” (See: [Go and Come](#))

spoke to him Balak’s words

“told him the message from Balak”

Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the elders of](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [were in their hand](#)
- [Balaam](#)

ULT

⁷ And [the elders of Moab](#) and the elders of Midian went and divination fees [were in their hand](#). And they came to [Balaam](#) and spoke to him the words of Balak.

Numbers 22:8

I will bring you

Balaam's report is spoken of as if it were something that he would carry to the messengers. Alternate translation: "I will tell you" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and I will bring...back](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the leaders of](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [Balaam](#)

ULT

⁸ And he said to them, "Lodge here tonight [and I will bring](#) you [back](#) a word, just as [Yahweh](#) speaks to me." And [the leaders of Moab](#) stayed with [Balaam](#).

Numbers 22:9

God came to Balaam

“God appeared to Balaam”

Who are these men who came to you?

Yahweh uses a question to introduce a new topic of conversation. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “Tell me about these men who came to you.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁹ And [God](#) came to [Balaam](#) and said,
“Who are these men with you?”

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [Balaam](#)

Numbers 22:10

Balak ... Zippor

These are the names of men. See how you translated these in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- God
- the son of
- the king of
- Moab

ULT

10 And [Balaam](#) said to [God](#), “Balak [the son of Zippor](#), [the king of Moab](#), has sent to me.”

Numbers 22:11

Look ... drive them out

Balaam restates the message that Balak sent to him. See how you translated these phrases in [Numbers 22:5-6](#).

drive them out

“chase them away”

Translation Words - ULT

- the people
- from Egypt
- the land
- go

ULT

11 ‘Behold, [the people](#) who have come out [from Egypt](#) and have covered the eye of [the land](#)! Now [go](#) curse them for me. Perhaps I will be able to fight them and drive them out.’”

Numbers 22:12

because they have been blessed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “because I have blessed them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Balaam
- You shall...go
- You shall...curse
- the people
- are blessed

ULT

12 And God said to Balaam, “You shall not go with them. You shall not curse the people because they are blessed.”

Numbers 22:13

Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- the leaders of
- Go
- your land
- Yahweh

ULT

13 And Balaam rose in the morning and said to the leaders of Balak, "Go to your land because Yahweh has refused to grant me to go with you."

Numbers 22:14

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the leaders of
- Moab
- Balaam
- to come

ULT

¹⁴ And the leaders of Moab rose and came to Balak. And they said, "Balaam refused to come with us."

Numbers 22:15

Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [leaders](#)

ULT

15 And Balak added again and sent many [leaders](#) and they were more honored than these.

Numbers 22:16

They came to Balaam

You may prefer to say "They went to Balaam" (See: [Go and Come](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

16 And they came to [Balaam](#) and said to him, "Thus says Balak [the son of](#) Zippor, 'Please do not refrain from coming to me.

Numbers 22:17

this people

The singular noun refers to the Israelites as a group. Alternate translation: "this group of people"

Translation Words - ULT

- greatly
- I will...honor you
- people

ULT

17 For I will very greatly honor you and I will do all that you say to me. And please go curse this people for me."

Numbers 22:18

Balak

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Even if Balak would give me his palace full of silver and gold

Balaam is describing something that would never happen. He is emphasizing that there is nothing that could make him disobey Yahweh. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

I cannot go beyond the word of Yahweh ... and do less or more than what he tells me

This means Balaam cannot disobey Yahweh in any way.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [the servants of](#)
- [his house](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my God](#)

ULT

18 And [Balaam](#) answered and said to [the servants of](#) Balak, "If Balak gives to me [his house](#) full of [silver and gold](#), I will not be able to go beyond the mouth of [Yahweh my God](#) to do small or big.

Numbers 22:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And may I know
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁹ And now, you also please stay in this place tonight. **And may I know** what **Yahweh** will add to speak with me.”

Numbers 22:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Balaam
- and go

ULT

²⁰ And God came to Balaam at night and said to him, "If the men have come to summon you, rise and go with them. And only the word that I speak to you, it you shall do."

Numbers 22:21

saddled his donkey

A saddle is a seat put on the back of an animal in order to ride it.

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- the leaders of
- Moab

ULT

²¹ And Balaam rose in the morning and saddled his female donkey, and went with the leaders of Moab.

Numbers 22:22

God's anger was kindled

The increase in God's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

as someone hostile to Balaam

"as an enemy to Balaam" or "in order to stop Balaam"

Translation Words - ULT

- [God](#)
- [was going](#)
- [the angel of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his servants](#)

ULT

22 And the nose of [God](#) burned because he [was going](#). And [the angel of Yahweh](#) stationed himself in the road as an adversary to him. And he was riding on his female donkey and two of [his servants](#) were with him.

Numbers 22:23

with his drawn sword

A sword is drawn from its sheath in order to be ready to use.

Alternate translation: "with his sword ready to attack" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

The donkey turned off the road and went into a field

The donkey did this to avoid the angel of Yahweh.

to turn her back

Sometimes animals are referred to as "her" or "she." Alternate translation: "to turn it back"

Translation Words - ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh
- and his...sword
- was in his hand
- Balaam

ULT

²³ And the female donkey saw the angel of Yahweh stationed in the road and his drawn sword was in his hand. And the female donkey turned aside from the road and went in the field. And Balaam struck the female donkey to turn her to the road.

Numbers 22:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁴ And the angel of Yahweh stood in the narrow pass of the vineyards, a wall on this side and a wall on that side.

Numbers 22:25

She went against the wall

This was an attempt to escape from the angel of Yahweh in the road.

She went

Sometimes animals are referred to as “her” or “she.” Alternate translation: “It went”

pinned Balaam’s foot against it

“pushed Balaam’s foot against it” or “hurt Balaam’s foot against it”

Translation Words - ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh
- Balaam

ULT

²⁵ And the female donkey saw the angel of Yahweh and she pressed herself to the wall. And she pressed the foot of Balaam to the wall. And he struck her again.

Numbers 22:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh

ULT

²⁶ And the angel of Yahweh passed on again and stood in a narrow place where there was no road to turn right or left.

Numbers 22:27

Balaam's anger was kindled

The increase in Balaam's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 22:22](#). Alternate translation: "Balaam became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the angel of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Balaam](#)

ULT

27 And the female donkey saw [the angel of Yahweh](#) and lay down under [Balaam](#). And the nose of [Balaam](#) burned and he struck the female donkey with the staff.

Numbers 22:28

Then Yahweh opened the donkey's mouth so she could talk

Opening the mouth is associated with the ability to speak. Alternate translation: "Then Yahweh gave the donkey the ability to speak like a human would speak" (See: [Metonymy](#))

She said to Balaam

"The donkey said to Balaam"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Balaam](#)

ULT

²⁸ And [Yahweh](#) opened the mouth of the female donkey. And she said [to Balaam](#), "What have I done to you that you struck me these three times?"

Numbers 22:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- a sword
- in my hand
- I would slay

ULT

²⁹ And Balaam said to the female donkey, "Because you acted mockingly with me! If only there was a sword in my hand! Surely I would slay you!"

Numbers 22:30

Am not I your donkey on which you have ridden all your life long to this present day?

This rhetorical question was used to convict Balaam that his judgment of the donkey was unfair. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I am your donkey on which you have ridden all your life, right up to the present moment." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

³⁰ And the female donkey said to [Balaam](#), "Am I not your female donkey on which you have ridden from your continuance until this day? Have I ever been accustomed to doing thus to you?" And he said, "No."

Have I ever been in the habit of doing such things to you before?

This rhetorical question was used to further convict Balaam that his judgment of the donkey was unfair. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I have never been in the habit of doing such things to you!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- I

Numbers 22:31

Then Yahweh opened Balaam's eyes, and he saw the angel of Yahweh

To “open one’s eyes” is associated with being able to see. Alternate translation: “Then Yahweh gave Balaam the ability to see the angel of Yahweh” (See: [Metonymy](#))

with his drawn sword

A sword is drawn from its sheath in order to be ready to use. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:23](#). Alternate translation: “with his sword ready to attack” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Balaam lowered his head and lay facedown

This indicates that Balaam is humbling himself before the angel. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [the angel of](#)
- [and his...sword](#)
- [in his hand](#)
- [And he bowed](#)
- [and bowed down](#)

ULT

³¹ And [Yahweh](#) uncovered the eyes of [Balaam](#), and he saw [the angel of Yahweh](#) stationed in the road [and his drawn sword in his hand](#). And he bowed [and bowed down](#) his nose.

Numbers 22:32

Why have you struck your donkey these three times?

This rhetorical question is used to accuse Balaam of doing wrong. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not have struck your donkey these three times." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

as someone hostile to you

"as an enemy to you" or "to oppose you"

Translation Words - ULT

- [the angel of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [myself](#)
- [I...have gone out](#)

ULT

³² And [the angel of Yahweh](#) said to him, "On account of what have you struck your female donkey these three times? Behold, I [myself have gone out](#) as an adversary because your way has been perverse in front of me."

Numbers 22:33

If she had not turned ... killed you and spared her life

This hypothetical statement indicated what could have happened, but it did not because the donkey's actions saved Balaam. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I would have slain](#)
- [kept...alive](#)

ULT

³³ And the female donkey saw me and turned aside before my face these three times. If she had not turned aside from me, surely now even you [I would have slain](#) and [kept](#) her [alive](#).”

Numbers 22:34

So now, if it is displeasing to you

“So if you do not want me to continue going”

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- the angel of
- Yahweh
- I have sinned
- I did...know
- it is evil
- I will return

ULT

³⁴ And Balaam said to the angel of Yahweh, “I have sinned, because I did not know that you were stationed to meet me in the road. And now, if it is evil in your eyes, I will return to me.”

Numbers 22:35

with the leaders of Balak

“with the leaders whom Balak had sent.” See how you translated “Balak” in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the angel of
- Yahweh
- Balaam
- Balaam
- Go
- the leaders of

ULT

³⁵ And the angel of Yahweh said to Balaam, “Go with the men. And only the word that I speak to you, it you must speak.” And Balaam went with the leaders of Balak.

Numbers 22:36

Arnon

This is the name of a river. See how you translated it in [Numbers 21:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [And he went out](#)
- [Moab](#)

ULT

³⁶ And Balak heard that [Balaam](#) had come. [And he went out](#) to meet him at a city of [Moab](#), that is near the border of the Arnon, which is at the end of the border.

Numbers 22:37

Did I not send men to you to summon you?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely I sent men to summon you." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Why did you not come to me?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should have come to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Am I not able to honor you?

This rhetorical question is used to rebuke Balaam for delaying to come. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "Surely you know that I am able to pay you money for coming to me." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [did you...come](#)
- [to honor you](#)

ULT

³⁷ And Balak said to [Balaam](#), "Did I not indeed send to you to summon you? Why [did you](#) not [come](#) to me? Am I truly not able [to honor you](#)?"

Numbers 22:38

Do I now have any power to say anything?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to tell Balak that he will not be able to do everything that Balak asks him to do. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "But I have no power to say anything I want" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

the words that God puts into my mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. Alternate translation: "the message that God wants me to say" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

³⁸ And [Balaam](#) said to Balak, "Behold, I have come to you. Am I now at all able to speak anything? The word that [God](#) puts in my mouth, it will I speak."

Numbers 22:39

Kiriath Huzoth

This is the name of a town. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)

ULT

³⁹ And [Balaam](#) went with Balak, and they came to Kiriath Huzoth.

Numbers 22:40

some meat

“some of the meat from the sacrifices”

Translation Words - ULT

- [cattle](#)
- [and sheep](#)
- [to Balaam](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ And Balak sacrificed [cattle and sheep](#) and sent [to Balaam](#) and to the leaders who were with him.

Numbers 22:41

the high place of Baal

This could mean: (1) this refers to the same place as Bamoth in [Numbers 21:19](#). The word Bamoth means “the high place,” or (2) this is another high place where people sacrificed to Baal.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [to the high place of](#)
- [Baal](#)
- [the people](#)

ULT

41 And it happened in the morning that Balak took [Balaam](#) and brought him up [to the high place of Baal](#). And from there he saw the edge of [the people](#).

Numbers 23

Numbers 23 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Balaam continues in this chapter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 23:7-10, 18-24.

Special concepts in this chapter

Cursing God's people

God does not allow others to curse his people. Balaam blessed Israel twice when he was supposed to curse them. This may be taken as humor or an ironic situation. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#) and [people of God](#))

Numbers 23:1

Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

prepare seven bulls and seven rams

“kill seven bulls and seven rams as a sacrifice”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [altars](#)
- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)

ULT

¹ And [Balaam](#) said to Balak, “Build for me in this place seven [altars](#) and prepare for me in this place seven [bulls](#) and seven [rams](#).”

Numbers 23:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- and Balaam
- a bull
- on the altar

ULT

² And Balak did just as Balaam had said.
And Balak and Balaam offered up a bull
and a ram on the altar.

Numbers 23:3

Stand at your burnt offering and I will go

“Stay here with your burnt offering and I will go a distance away”

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- your burnt up offering
- Yahweh

ULT

³ And Balaam said to Balak, “Station yourself beside your burnt up offering and I will go. Perhaps Yahweh will be met to meet me. And I will declare to you the word of what he shows me.” And he went to a bare high place.

Numbers 23:4

I have offered up a bull and a ram

It has already been stated that he killed these animals as a burnt offering. Alternate translation: "I have killed a bull and a ram and burnt them as an offering" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- God
- Balaam
- altars
- on the altar
- a bull

ULT

⁴ And God met with Balaam and he said to him, "I have arranged seven altars and offered up a bull and a ram on the altar."

Numbers 23:5

Yahweh put a message in Balaam's mouth

Here Yahweh giving Balaam a message to speak is spoken of as if Yahweh placed it in his mouth. Alternate translation: "Yahweh told Balaam what he wanted him to say to Balak" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [And...put](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [Return](#)

ULT

⁵ And [Yahweh](#) [put](#) a word in the mouth of [Balaam](#) and said, "[Return](#) to Balak and speak thus."

Numbers 23:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And he returned
- his burnt up offering
- the leaders of
- Moab

ULT

⁶ And he returned to him, and behold, he was stationed beside his burnt up offering, he and all the leaders of Moab.

Numbers 23:7

Balak has brought me from Aram ... the king of Moab from the eastern mountains

These phrases mean the same thing. (See: [Parallelism](#))

'Come, curse Jacob for me,' ... 'Come, defy Israel.'

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize that Balak wants Balaam to curse the people of Israel. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the king of](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [Go](#)
- [curse](#)
- [Jacob](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁷ And he lifted up his oracle and said, "Balak has led me from Aram, [the king of Moab](#) from the mountains of the east. 'Go [curse Jacob](#) for me, and go denounce [Israel](#).'

Numbers 23:8

How can I curse those whom God has not cursed? How can I oppose those whom Yahweh does not oppose?

These rhetorical questions emphasize Balaam's refusal to disobey God. They can be translated as statements. Alternate translation:

"But I cannot curse those whom God has not cursed. I cannot fight against those whom Yahweh does not fight!"
(See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁸ How can I curse? God has not cursed. And how can I denounce? [Yahweh](#) has not denounced.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

Numbers 23:9

from the top of the rocks I see him ... from the hills I look at him

These two phrases mean the same thing. Balaam viewed Israel from the top of a hill. (See: [Parallelism](#))

I see him ... I look at him

Here “him” is a metonym that refers to the people of Israel. (See: [Metonymy](#))

there is a people

“there is a group of people”

do not consider themselves as just an ordinary nation

This negative statement is used to stress that the opposite is true. Alternate translation: “they consider themselves to be a special nation” (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the head of](#)
- [the people](#)
- [and...among the nations](#)

ULT

⁹ For [from the head of](#) the rocks I see him. And from the hills I look at him. Behold, [the people](#) dwells by itself and it does not reckon itself [among the nations](#).

Numbers 23:10

Who can count the dust of Jacob or number even only one-fourth of Israel?

Here “dust of Jacob” is a metaphor that speaks of the number of Israelites as if they were as numerous as the specks of dust. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: “There are too many Israelites to count. No one could count even a fourth of them because there are so many.” (See: [Rhetorical Question](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

¹⁰ Who can count the dust of [Jacob](#) or number the fourth part of [Israel](#)? Let [my life](#) die the death of [the upright ones](#), and let my end be like his!”

the death of a righteous person

It is understood that this will be a peaceful death. This can be stated. Alternate translation: “the peaceful death of a righteous person” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

a righteous person ... like his

These are metonymies that refer to the people of Israel as a single person. (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [my life](#)
- [the upright ones](#)

Numbers 23:11

Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

What have you done to me?

Balak uses this question to scold Balaam. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I cannot believe you did this to me!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

but look

This emphasizes the shocking action that follows.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [my enemies](#)
- [you have blessed](#)
- [indeed](#)

ULT

11 And Balak said to [Balaam](#), "What have you done to me? I took you to curse [my enemies](#), and behold, [you have blessed indeed!](#)"

Numbers 23:12

Should I not be careful to say only what Yahweh puts in my mouth?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to defend his actions. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I must be very careful to say only what Yahweh tells me to say." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹² And he answered and said, "Should I not [be careful](#) to speak it that [Yahweh](#) puts in my mouth?"

to say only what Yahweh puts in my mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 22:38](#). Alternate translation: "to say only what Yahweh wants me to say" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [I...be careful](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Numbers 23:13

There you will curse them for me

“There you will curse the Israelites for me”

Translation Words - ULT

- go

ULT

13 And Balak said to him, “Please go with me to another place from which you can see him. You will only see his edge and you will not see all of him. And you will curse him for me from there.”

Numbers 23:14

field of Zophim

Translators may add a footnote that says: "The word 'Zophim' means 'to watch' or 'to spy.'" (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mount Pisgah

This is the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in [Numbers 21:20](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the head of](#)
- [altars](#)
- [on the altar](#)
- [a bull](#)

ULT

14 And he took him to the field of Zophim, to [the head of](#) the Pisgah. And he built seven [altars](#) and offered up [a bull](#) and a ram [on the altar](#).

Numbers 23:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- your burnt offering

ULT

¹⁵ Then he said to Balak, "Station yourself here beside your burnt offering, and I will be met with there."

Numbers 23:16

put a message in his mouth

The message is spoken of as if it is something that God put into his mouth. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 22:38](#). Alternate translation: "told him what to say" (See: [Metaphor](#))

He said

"Then Yahweh said"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [and put](#)
- [Return](#)

ULT

16 And [Yahweh](#) met with [Balaam and put](#) a word in his mouth. And he said, "[Return](#) to Balak and thus you shall speak."

Numbers 23:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- his altar
- and the leaders of
- Moab
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁷ And he came to him, and behold, he was stationed beside his altar and the leaders of Moab were with him. And Balak said to him, "What did Yahweh speak?"

Numbers 23:18

Balak, and hear ... Listen to me, you son of Zippor

These two phrases mean the same thing and are repeated to emphasize how important it was for Balak to pay attention. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Balak ... son of Zippor

See how you translated these names in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [son of](#)

ULT

¹⁸ And he lifted up his oracle and said, "Rise up, Balak, and listen. Give ear to me, [son of](#) Zippor.

Numbers 23:19

Has he promised anything without doing it? Has he said he would do something without carrying it out?

Both of these questions mean the same thing and emphasize that God does what he says he will. These rhetorical questions can be translated as statements. Alternate translation: "He has never promised a thing without fulfilling what he promised. He has always done exactly what he said he would do." (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

¹⁹ God is not a man, that he would lie,
[Or a son of mankind](#), that he would
change his mind. Has he said and not
done, Or spoken and not made it arise?

Translation Words - ULT

- [Or a son of](#)
- [mankind](#)

Numbers 23:20

I have been commanded to bless

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "God has commanded me to bless the Israelites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to bless
- And he has blessed
- I can...turn it back

ULT

²⁰ Behold, I have received to bless. And he has blessed, and I can not turn it back.

Numbers 23:21

hardship in Jacob ... trouble in Israel

These two phrases mean the same thing. This could mean: (1) God has given Israel only good things or (2) there is no sin in Israel that would cause him to judge them. (See: [Parallelism](#))

shouts for their king are among them

“they shout with joy because Yahweh is their king”

Translation Words - ULT

- [in Jacob](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his God](#)
- [the king](#)

ULT

21 He has not looked at hardship [in Jacob](#) and he has not seen trouble [in Israel](#). [Yahweh his God](#) is with him, and the shout of [the king](#) is with him.

Numbers 23:22

with strength like that of a wild ox

This simile says that Yahweh's great strength is equal to an ox. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is bringing them out](#)
- [from Egypt](#)

ULT

²² God [is bringing them out from Egypt](#) like the horns of a wild ox for him.

Numbers 23:23

There is no sorcery that works against Jacob ... no fortune-telling harms Israel

These two lines mean the same thing, that no curse that anyone puts on the nation of Israel will be effective. Here "Jacob" is a metonym that refers to Israel. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Metonymy](#))

ULT

²³ For there is no omen [against Jacob](#), and no divination [against Israel](#). At this time it shall be said [of Jacob](#) and of Israel, 'What God has done!'

it must be said

This can be stated in active form. "people must say" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Look what God has done!

It is implied that what God did for them was good. Alternate translation: "Look at the good things God has done for them!"

Translation Words - ULT

- [against Jacob](#)
- [of Jacob](#)
- [against Israel](#)

Numbers 23:24

the people rise like a lioness ... he has killed

This verse is a long metaphor that speaks of Israel defeating her enemies as if Israel was a lion devouring its prey. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a people
- he eats

ULT

²⁴ Look, a people rises like a lioness, and like a lion he lifts himself up. He will not lie down until he eats prey and drinks the blood of the pierced ones.”

Numbers 23:25

Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [at all](#)
- [do...bless him](#)

ULT

²⁵ And Balak said to [Balaam](#), “Even do not curse him at all, also do not [bless him at all!](#)”

Numbers 23:26

Did I not tell you that I must say all that Yahweh tells me to say?

Balaam uses this rhetorical question to remind Balak that Balaam refused to disobey God even before he came to Balak. It can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "I told you before that I must say all that Yahweh tells me to say." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

²⁶ And [Balaam](#) answered and said to Balak, "Did I not speak to you, saying, 'All that [Yahweh](#) speaks, it I must do?'"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Numbers 23:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- Come
- God

ULT

²⁷ And Balak said to Balaam, “Come now, I will take you to another place. Perhaps it will be right in the eyes of God and you will curse him for me from there.”

Numbers 23:28

which looks down on the wilderness

It is understood that this wilderness was where Israel was camped. Alternate translation: “which looks down on the wilderness where Israel was” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [to the head of](#)
- [the face of](#)

ULT

28 And Balak took [Balaam to the head of](#) the Peor, looking down on [the face of](#) the wasteland.

Numbers 23:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- altars
- bulls
- rams

ULT

²⁹ And Balaam said to Balak, "Build for me in this place seven altars and prepare for me in this place seven bulls and seven rams."

Numbers 23:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- a bull
- on the altar

ULT

³⁰ And Balak did just as Balaam had said. And he offered up a bull and a ram on the altar.

Numbers 24

Numbers 24 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Balaam continues in this chapter.

Some translations set each line of poetry farther to the right than the rest of the text to make it easier to read. The ULT does this with the poetry in 24:3-9, 15-24.

Special concepts in this chapter

Cursing God's people

God does not allow others to curse his people. Balaam blesses Israel again and the king is angry and sends him home. This may be taken as humor or an ironic situation. (See: [curse](#), [cursed](#), [cursing](#) and [people of God](#))

Numbers 24:1

as at the other times

“like he did the previous times”

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- Yahweh
- Israel
- he did...go
- his face

ULT

¹ And Balaam saw that it was good in the eyes of Yahweh to bless Israel. And he did not go as time by time to meet omens. And he set his face to the wilderness.

Numbers 24:2

He raised his eyes

Here “raised his eyes” is an idiom that means to look up. Alternate translation: “He looked up” (See: [Idiom](#))

Spirit of God came on him

This mean’s God’s Spirit took control of him to prophesy.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [according to its tribes](#)
- [the Spirit of](#)
- [God](#)

ULT

² And [Balaam](#) lifted up his eyes and he saw [Israel](#) dwelling [according to its tribes](#). And [the Spirit of God](#) was on him.

Numbers 24:3

He received this prophecy

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “God gave him this prophecy” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam’s father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:5](#).

whose eyes are wide open

This idiom means he sees and understands clearly. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

³ And he lifted up his discourse and said, “The declaration of [Balaam the son of Beor](#), and the declaration of the man opened of eye,

Numbers 24:4

General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

He speaks ... He sees ... he bows

Here Balaam refers to himself as "He." (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

he bows down

This is an act of humility. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

with his eyes open

Here "eyes open" is an idiom that means Balaam has received the ability to know what God wants to say. (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Almighty](#)

ULT

⁴ the declaration of the hearer of the words of God, who sees the vision of [the Almighty](#), falling down and opened of eyes:

Numbers 24:5

How beautiful are your tents, Jacob, the place where you live, Israel!

Both of these statements mean the same thing. They emphasize the Israelite camp was beautiful to Balaam. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Jacob](#)
- [your dwellings](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁵ How good are your tents, [Jacob](#), [your dwellings](#), [Israel](#)!

Numbers 24:6

General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

Like valleys they spread out

Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they were numerous enough to cover entire valleys. (See: [Simile](#))

like gardens by the riverside

Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they were well-watered gardens that produce an abundant harvest. (See: [Simile](#))

aloes planted by Yahweh

Aloes are plants with a pleasant smell that grow well even in dry conditions. Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they would thrive and be pleasant like aloe plants. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "aloes which Yahweh has planted" (See: [Translate Unknowns](#) and [Simile](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

like cedars beside the waters

Cedar trees were the largest trees in Israel. Balaam speaks of the Israelies as if they grew as large as well-watered cedar trees. (See: [Simile](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁶ Like wadis they spread out, like gardens beside a river, like aloes [Yahweh](#) has planted, like cedars beside water.

Numbers 24:7

General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

Water flows ... well-watered

Abundant water is associated with God's blessing on the crops of the land. Alternate translation: "God will bless Israel with plenty of water for their crops" (See: [Metonymy](#))

their seed is well-watered

Well-watered seed refers to God's blessing on his people so that they will have abundant crops. Alternate translation: "they will have plenty of water for their seed to grow healthy crops" (See: [Metonymy](#))

Their king is to be higher ... their kingdom will be honored

These two phrases have similar meaning, emphasizing how much God will bless them compared to other nations. (See: [Parallelism](#))

Their king is to be higher than Agag

Here "higher" refers to greater honor and power. This means the future king of Israel will have more honor and will be more powerful than Agag. Agag was king of the Amalekites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Metonymy](#))

their kingdom will be honored

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "other people will give honor to their kingdom" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his king](#)
- [And...will be higher](#)
- [his kingdom](#)

ULT

⁷ Water will flow from his buckets, and his seed with much water. And [his king will be higher](#) than Agag, and [his kingdom will lift itself up](#).

Numbers 24:8

General Information:

Balaam continues to prophesy under the control of the Spirit of God.

God brings him

“God brings the Israelites”

with strength like a wild ox

This simile emphasizes that the Israelites have great strength. (See: [Simile](#))

He will eat up the nations

Balaam speaks of the Israelites as if they are wild animals that eat their enemies. This means they will destroy their enemies. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [is bringing him out](#)
- [from Egypt](#)
- [He will eat](#)
- [the nations](#)
- [his enemies](#)

ULT

⁸ God [is bringing him out from Egypt](#), like the horns of a wild ox for him. [He will eat the nations, his enemies](#). And he will break their bones. And he will strike his arrows.

Numbers 24:9

General Information:

Balaam finishes the prophecy under the control of the Spirit of God.

He crouches down like a lion, like a lioness

In this simile, Balaam compares the Israelites to both male and female lions. This means they are dangerous and always ready to attack. (See: [Simile](#))

Who dares disturb him?

Balaam uses a question to warn all the people to not provoke the Israelites. This can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one dares to disturb him!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

May everyone who blesses him be blessed; may everyone who curses him be cursed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "May God bless those who bless the Israelites; may he curse those who curse the Israelites" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [He crouched](#)
- [Those who bless you](#)
- [are blessed](#)
- [are cursed](#)

ULT

⁹ [He crouched](#), he lay down like a lion, and like a lioness. Who will get him up? [Those who bless you are blessed](#); and those who curse you [are cursed](#)."

Numbers 24:10

Balak's anger was kindled

The increase in Balak's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Balak became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

struck his hands together in anger

This was a sign of great frustration and anger. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [Balaam](#)
- [his palms](#)
- [I called you](#)
- [my enemies](#)
- [you have...blessed](#)
- [repeatedly](#)

ULT

10 And the nose of Balak burned toward [Balaam](#) and he struck [his palms](#). And Balak said to [Balaam](#), "I called you to curse [my enemies](#), and behold, [you have repeatedly blessed](#) these three times!"

Numbers 24:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- greatly
- I would honor you
- Yahweh

ULT

11 And now, flee for yourself to your place. I said **I would honor you greatly**, and behold, **Yahweh** has held you back from honor.”

Numbers 24:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Balaam
- the messengers

ULT

¹² And Balaam said to Balak, "Did I not also speak to the messengers that you sent to me, saying.

Numbers 24:13

Even if Balak gave me his palace full of silver and gold

Balaam is describing something that would never happen. This statement emphasizes that there is nothing that would make Balaam disobey God. (See: [Hypothetical Situations](#))

Did I not say this to them?

Balaam uses a question to remind Balak about what he said earlier. This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. "Alternate translation: I said this to them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his house](#)
- [silver](#)
- [and gold](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [good](#)
- [evil](#)
- [from my heart](#)

ULT

¹³ 'If Balak gives to me [his house](#) full of [silver and gold](#), I will not be able to go beyond the mouth of [Yahweh](#) to do [good](#) or [evil from my heart](#); what [Yahweh](#) speaks, it I must speak?"

Numbers 24:14

this people

“the Israelites”

Translation Words - ULT

- am about to go
- Come
- to my people
- people
- to your people
- I will advise you

ULT

14 And now, behold I am about to go to my people. Come, I will advise you what this people will do to your people in the future days.”

Numbers 24:15

Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam's father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:5](#).

whose eyes are wide open

This idiom means he sees and understands clearly. See how you translated this in [Numbers 24:3](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

15 And he lifted up his discourse and said, "The declaration of [Balaam the son of Beor](#), and the delcaration of the man opened of eye,

Numbers 24:16

who has knowledge from the Most High

The abstract term “knowledge” can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “who knows things that God Most High has revealed to him” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

bows down

This is a sign of submission to God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and the knower of](#)
- [the Almighty](#)

ULT

16 the declaration of the hearer of the words of God, [and the knower of](#) the knowledge of the Most High, he sees the vision of [the Almighty](#), falling down and opened of eyes:

Numbers 24:17

General Information:

Balaam continues the first of his four prophecies.

I see him, but he is not here now. I look at him, but he is not near

Both of these statements mean the same thing. Balaam is having a vision of a future event. The word “him” refers to a future leader of Israel. (See: [Parallelism](#))

A star will come out of Jacob

Here “star” refers to an Israelite king that will rise in power. (See: [Symbolic Language](#))

out of Jacob

Here “Jacob” refers to the descendants of Jacob. Alternate translation: “from among the descendants of Jacob” (See: [Metonymy](#))

a scepter will rise out of Israel

This means the same thing as the first part of the sentence. Here “scepter” refers to a powerful king. (See: [Parallelism](#))

out of Israel

Here “Israel” refers to future Israelites. Alternate translation: “from among the Israelites in the future” (See: [Metonymy](#))

shatter Moab’s leaders

This could mean: (1) he will break the heads of the leaders of Moab or (2) he will destroy the leaders of Moab.

all the descendants of Seth

This also refers to the Moabites, who were descendants of Seth.

Translation Words - ULT

- [from Jacob](#)
- [a rod](#)
- [from Israel](#)
- [Moab](#)
- [the sons of](#)

ULT

17 I will see him, but not now. I will look at him, but not near. A star has marched [from Jacob](#), and [a rod](#) has risen [from Israel](#). And he will strike the sides of [Moab](#) and destroy all [the sons of Seth](#).

Numbers 24:18

General Information:

Balaam finishes the first of his four prophecies.

Edom will become a possession of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The Israelites will occupy Edom” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Seir will also become their possession

Here “Seir” refers to the people who lived near Mount Seir. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Israel will also conquer the people of Seir” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his enemies](#)
- [strongly](#)

ULT

18 And Edom will become a possession, and Seir will become a possession, [his enemies](#). And Israel will act [strongly](#).

Numbers 24:19

Out of Jacob a king will come

Jacob was the ancestor of the Israelites. "Jacob" is a metonym that refers to the whole people group. (See: [Metonymy](#))

of their city

This refers to the city of Ar where Balak met Balaam. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And he will rule](#)
- [from Jacob](#)
- [and he will destroy](#)

ULT

19 [And he will rule from Jacob, and he will destroy](#) the survivor from a city."

Numbers 24:20

Balaam looked at Amalek

Here “Amalek” is a metonym that refers to the people of Amalek. This continues Balaam’s vision while turning to look in the direction of the Amalek nation, and then he prophecies about the Amalekites. (See: [Metonymy](#))

his final end

A singular pronoun is used because the Amalekites are spoken of as a single person. (See: [First, Second or Third Person](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The first of](#)
- [the nations](#)

ULT

20 And he saw Amalek and lifted up his discourse, and said, “[The first of the nations](#) is Amalek, and his end will be up to destruction.”

Numbers 24:21

the Kenites

This is the name of a people group who descended from Kain. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

The place where you live is strong

“The place where you live is well defended”

your nest is in the rocks

This is a metaphor that means that they live in a secure place. Alternate translation: “your location is as secure as a nest high in the rocks” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and...is set](#)

ULT

21 And he saw the Kenite, and he lifted up his discourse, and said, “Your dwelling is permanent, and your nest [is set](#) in the cliff.”

Numbers 24:22

Nevertheless you Kenites will be consumed by fire when Assyria carries you away captive

Here the destruction of the Kenites is spoken of as if they were burned up in a fire. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Nevertheless the Assyrians will destroy you Kenites like a fire, and take you away as captives" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Kenite](#)
- [Assyria](#)
- [will...take you captive](#)

ULT

²² But [the Kenite](#) will be for burning.
Until when will [Assyria take you captive?](#)"

Numbers 24:23

Who will survive when God does this?

This rhetorical question can be translated as a statement. Alternate translation: "No one will survive when God does this!" (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [can live](#)

ULT

²³ And he lifted up his discourse and said, "Woe! Who [can live](#) apart from God establishing him?"

Numbers 24:24

Kittim

This is the name of a city on an island in the Mediterranean Sea.
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

they, too, will end in destruction

The abstract noun “destruction” can be stated as an action. Alternate translation: “God will destroy them also”
(See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- will be from the hand of
- Asshur

ULT

²⁴ And ships will be from the hand of Kittim, and they will afflict Asshur and will afflict Eber, and he, too, will be up to destruction.”

Numbers 24:25

Balak

This is the king of Moab. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [and returned](#)
- [went](#)

ULT

²⁵ And [Balaam](#) got up, and went, [and returned](#) to his place. And Balak also [went](#) on his way.

Numbers 25

Numbers 25 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The story of Balaam concludes in this chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Foreign women

Balaam told the young women from Moab to act friendly to the Israelite men and invite them to feasts in honor of their god Baal. The men went to the feasts and worshiped Baal. God was angry and killed 24,000 Israelite men.

Foreign women are often the source of problems in Israel. They caused the men to worship their false gods. (See: [god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry](#))

Numbers 25:1

Shittim

This is the name of a place in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the people](#)
- [and...began](#)
- [Moab](#)

ULT

¹ And [Israel](#) dwelled in Shittim, and [the people began](#) to prostitute themselves with the daughters of [Moab](#),

Numbers 25:2

bowed down

This was an act of worship. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- And they called
- the people
- the people
- their gods
- their gods
- And...ate
- and they worshipped

ULT

² And they called the people to the sacrifices of their gods. And the people ate and they worshipped their gods.

Numbers 25:3

Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in [Numbers 23:28](#).

Yahweh's anger was kindled

The increase in Yahweh's anger is spoken of as if it was a fire starting to burn. This can be stated in active form. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 21:20](#). Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry" (See: [Idiom](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [against Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

³ And [Israel](#) bound himself to Baal of Peor. And the nose of [Yahweh](#) burned [against Israel](#).

Numbers 25:4

all the leaders of the people

It is implied that this refers to the leaders who were guilty of idolatry. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "all the leaders of the people who are guilty of idolatry" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

to expose them in the daylight

This means that the leaders of Israel will kill these people and leave their dead bodies out where all the people can see them.

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- before Yahweh
- Yahweh
- Moses
- the heads of
- the people
- And...may turn back
- from Israel

ULT

⁴ And Yahweh said to Moses, "Take all the heads of the people and hang them up before Yahweh in front of the sun. And the burning of the nose of Yahweh may turn back from Israel."

Numbers 25:5

to Israel's leaders

"to Israel's leaders who were not guilty of idolatry"

Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in [Numbers 23:28](#).

ULT

⁵ And [Moses](#) said to the judges of [Israel](#),
"Slay a man his men, the ones who
bound themselves to Baal of Peor."

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Slay](#)

Numbers 25:6

brought among his family members a Midianite woman

It is implied that he brought her among his camp to have sex with her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "brought a Midianite woman to the Israelite camp to sleep with her" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in the sight of Moses and all the community of the people of Israel

Here "in the sight of" is an idiom that means they heard about it, or found out about it. (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

⁶ And behold, a man [from the sons of Israel](#) came and brought near to [his brothers](#) the Midianite woman, before the eyes of [Moses](#) and before the eyes of all the congregation of [the sons of Israel](#). And they were weeping at the opening of the tent of [meeting](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [his brothers](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [meeting](#)

Numbers 25:7

Eleazar

This is the name of Aaron's son. See how you translated it in [Numbers 3:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Phinehas](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [a spear](#)
- [in his hand](#)

ULT

⁷ And [Phinehas the son of Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest](#), saw and rose up from the midst of the congregation, and took [a spear in his hand](#).

Numbers 25:8

He followed

“Phinehas followed”

Translation Words - ULT

- Israel
- Israel
- Israel
- the sons of

ULT

⁸ And he came after the man of [Israel](#) into the domed tent, and he pierced the two of them, the man of [Israel](#) and the woman in her stomach. And the plague was stopped from on [the sons of Israel](#).

Numbers 25:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the ones who died

ULT

⁹ And the ones who died by the plague were 24,000.

Numbers 25:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹⁰ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 25:11

Connecting Statement:

Yahweh begins to speak to Moses.

turned my rage away from the people of Israel

God's rage is spoken of as if it were something that could be physically pushed aside in order to stop it. Alternate translation: "caused me to no longer be angry with the people of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

11 "Phinehas the son of Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, has turned my heat from on the sons of Israel by his being zealous with my zeal in the midst of them. And I will not make an end of the sons of Israel in my zeal.

I have not consumed the people of Israel in my fierceness

God is spoken of as if he were a fierce animal that could have eaten up the people of Israel. Alternate translation: "I have not destroyed the people of Israel in my terrible anger" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Phinehas
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the sons of
- the sons of (2)
- I will...make an end of
- Eleazar
- Aaron
- the priest
- has turned
- my heat
- Israel
- Israel

Numbers 25:12

Connecting Statement:

This continues Yahweh's speech from verse 11.

Translation Words - ULT

- my covenant of
- peace

ULT

¹² Therefore say, 'Behold, I am giving to him my covenant of peace.'

Numbers 25:13

Connecting Statement:

This is the end of Yahweh's speech that begins in verse 11.

For him ... of Israel."'"

This is the end of Yahweh's speech from [Numbers 25:11](#). This has quotations within quotations. The direct quotations can be stated as indirect quotation. "Therefore say to them that Yahweh says that he is giving to Phinehas his covenant of peace. For him and his descendants after him, it will be a covenant of an everlasting priesthood because he was zealous for Yahweh, his God. He has atoned for the people of Israel." (See: [Quotes within Quotes](#) and [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#))

ULT

13 And it will be [a covenant of a](#) priesthood of eternity for him and for his seed after him, because he was zealous [for his God](#) and he made atonement for [the sons of Israel.](#)"

Translation Words - ULT

- [a covenant of](#)
- [for his God](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Numbers 25:14

Now

This switches from the main story line to background information about Zimri and Kozbi. (See: [Background Information](#))

who was killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Phinehas killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Zimri ... Salu

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [a house of](#)
- [a father](#)

ULT

14 And the name of the man of [Israel](#), the struck down one who was struck down with the Midianite woman, was Zimri [the son of Salu](#), the leader of [a house of a father](#) of the Simeonites.

Numbers 25:15

Zur

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kozbi

This is the name of a woman. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [was the head of](#)
- [a house of](#)
- [a father](#)

ULT

15 And the name of the woman, the struck down Midanite woman, was Kozbi the daughter of Zur, who [was the head of](#) a tribe of [a house of a father](#) in Midian.

Numbers 25:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹⁶ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 25:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Vex

ULT

¹⁷ "Vex the Midianites and you shall strike them down.

Numbers 25:18

with their deceitfulness

The abstract noun “deceitfulness” can be stated as a verb. Alternate translation: “by deceiving you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

They led you into evil

“They persuaded you to do this evil thing”

in the case of Peor ... in the matter of Peor

Both of these phrases mean that these things happened at Mount Peor.

Peor

Peor was the name of a mountain. See how you translated this in [Numbers 23:28](#).

who was killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Phinehas killed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were vexing](#)

ULT

18 For they [were vexing](#) you by their deceitfulness when they deceived you over the matter of Peor and over the matter of Kosbi the daughter of the leader of Midian, their sister, the one struck down on the plague day over the matter of Peor.”

Numbers 26

Numbers 26 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The ULT sets the lines in 26:12-17, 20-26, 29-32, 35, 38-39, 44-45, 48-49, 57-58 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are long lists.

The people are counted in preparation for entering into the Promised Land. (See: [Promised Land](#))

Special concepts in this chapter

A new generation

None of the adults who came out of Egypt with Moses were still alive except the two faithful spies, Joshua and Caleb. (See: [faithful](#), [faithfulness](#), [trustworthy](#))

Numbers 26:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Eleazar
- the son of
- Aaron
- the priest

ULT

¹ And it happened after the plague that Yahweh spoke to Moses and to Eleazar the son of Aaron the priest, saying,

Numbers 26:2

Count all the community

They were only to count the men, not the women. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Count all the men of the community" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

twenty years old and up

"20 years old and older" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heads of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in Israel](#)
- [according to the house of](#)
- [their fathers](#)
- [who go out](#)

ULT

2 "Lift up [the heads of](#) all the congregation of [the sons of Israel from a son of 20 years](#) and upward [according to the house of their fathers](#), all who go out to war [in Israel](#)."

Numbers 26:3

spoke to them

“spoke to the Israelite leaders”

plains

A plain is a large flat area of land.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- and Eleazar
- the priest
- Moab
- the Jordan
- at Jericho

ULT

³ And Moses and Eleazar the priest spoke with them in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho, saying,

Numbers 26:4

twenty years old and up

“20 years old and older” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- From a son of
- and the sons of
- Yahweh
- commanded
- Moses
- Israel
- Egypt

ULT

⁴ “From a son of 20 years and upward, just as Yahweh commanded Moses and the sons of Israel, the ones who came out from the land of Egypt.”

Numbers 26:5

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

was the firstborn of Israel

Here “Israel” refers to the man also known as Jacob.

From his son

The word “his” refers to Rueben.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Reuben](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [was the firstborn of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [The sons of](#)
- [Hanok](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#)

ULT

⁵ [Reuben](#) was the firstborn of Israel. The sons of Reuben: [Hanok](#), the clan of the Hanokite; of [Pallu](#), the clan of the Palluite;

Numbers 26:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

⁶ of Hezron, the clan of the Hezronite; of Karmi, the clan of the Karmite.

Numbers 26:7

43,730 men

“forty-three thousand seven hundred and thirty men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)
- [their counted ones](#)

ULT

⁷ These [were the clans of](#) the Reubenite. And [their counted ones](#) were 43,730.

Numbers 26:8

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

8 [And the son of](#) Pallu was Eliab.

Eliab

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 16:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the son of](#)

Numbers 26:9

Eliab ... Dathan ... Abiram

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 16:1](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of...were](#)
- [the called ones of](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Korah](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁹ [And the sons of](#) Eliab [were](#) Nemuel and Dathan and Abiram. This is Dathan and Abiram, [the called ones of](#) the congregation, who rebelled against [Moses](#) and against [Aaron](#) with the congregation of [Korah](#) when they rebelled against [Yahweh](#).

Numbers 26:10

The earth opened its mouth and swallowed them up

Here the earth is spoken of as if it were a person opening its mouth and eating something. Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused the earth to split open, and the men fell in the hole" (See: [Personification](#))

fire devoured 250 men

Here the fire is spoken of as if it were a large animal devouring something. Alternate translation: "Yahweh caused a fire that killed 250 men" (See: [Personification](#))

250 men

"two hundred and fifty men" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the earth](#)
- [Korah](#)
- [the fire](#)

ULT

¹⁰ And [the earth](#) opened its mouth and swallowed them and [Korah](#) when the congregation died, when [the fire](#) ate 250 men, and they became a sign.

Numbers 26:11

Korah's line

"all of Korah's family"

die out

"end"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Korah](#)

ULT

11 [And the sons of Korah](#) did not die.

Numbers 26:12

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#) (2)

ULT

12 [The sons of](#) Simeon [according to their clans](#): of Nemuel, [the clan of](#) the Nemuelite; of Jamin, [the clan of](#) the Jaminite; of Jakin, [the clan of](#) the Jakinite;

Numbers 26:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)
- of Shaul

ULT

¹³ of Zerah, the clan of the Zerahite; of Shaul, the clan of the Shaulite.

Numbers 26:14

22,200 men

“twenty-two thousand two hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)

ULT

¹⁴ These [were the clans of](#) the Simeonite, 22,200.

Numbers 26:15

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of \(2\)](#)

ULT

15 [The sons of Gad according to their clans](#): of Zephon, [the clan of the Zephonite](#); of Haggi, [the clan of the Haggite](#); of Shuni, [the clan of the Shunite](#);

Numbers 26:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

¹⁶ of Ozni, the clan of the Oznite; of Eri,
the clan of the Erite;

Numbers 26:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

¹⁷ of Arod, the clan of the Arodite; of Areli, the clan of the Arelite.

Numbers 26:18

40,500 men

“forty thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Gad](#)

ULT

¹⁸ These [were the clans of the sons of Gad](#) according to their counted ones, 40,500.

Numbers 26:19

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of...were](#)
- [Judah](#)
- [and...died](#)
- [Canaan](#)

ULT

19 [The sons of Judah were](#) Er and Onan, and Er and Onan [died](#) in the land of [Canaan](#).

Numbers 26:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Judah
- according to their clans
- the clan of
- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

²⁰ And the sons of Judah according to their clans were: of Shelah, the clan of the Shelanite; of Perez, the clan of the Perezite; of Zerah, the clan of the Zerahite.

Numbers 26:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

²¹ And the sons of Perez were: of Hezron, the clan of the Hezronite; of Hamul, the clan of the Hamulite.

Numbers 26:22

76,500 men

“seventy-six thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)
- [Judah](#)

ULT

²² These [were the clans of Judah](#) according to their counted ones, 76,500.

Numbers 26:23

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Issachar](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of \(2\)](#)

ULT

23 [The sons of Issachar according to their clans](#): Tola, [the clan of](#) the Tolaite; of Puah, [the clan of](#) the Puite;

Numbers 26:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

²⁴ of Jashub, the clan of the Jashubite; of Shimron, the clan of the Shimronite.

Numbers 26:25

64,300 men

“sixty-four thousand three hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)
- [Issachar](#)

ULT

²⁵ These [were the clans of Issachar](#) according to their counted ones, 64,300.

Numbers 26:26

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#) (2)

ULT

26 [The sons of](#) Zebulun [according to their clans](#): of Sered, [the clan of](#) the Seredite; of Elon, [the clan of](#) the Elonite; of Jahleel, [the clan of](#) the Jahleelite.

Numbers 26:27

60,500 men

“sixty thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)

ULT

²⁷ These [were the clans of](#) the Zebulunite according to their counted ones, 60,500.

Numbers 26:28

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of...were](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [according to their clans](#)

ULT

28 [The sons of Joseph according to their clans were](#) Manasseh and Ephraim.

Numbers 26:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the clan of
- the clan of
- the Gileadite

ULT

²⁹ The sons of Manasseh: of Makir, the clan of the Makirite (and Makir fathered Gilead); of Gilead, the clan of the Gileadite.

Numbers 26:30

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- were the sons of
- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

³⁰ These were the sons of Gilead: Iezer, the clan of the Iezerite; of Helek, the clan of the Helekite;

Numbers 26:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

³¹ and Asriel, the clan of the Asrielite;
and Shechem, the clan of the
Shechemite;

Numbers 26:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

³² and Shemida, the clan of the Shemidaite; and Hepher, the clan of the Hepherite.

Numbers 26:33

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [sons](#)
- [and Tirzah](#)

ULT

33 And there were no [sons](#) for Zelophehad [the son of](#) Hepher, but daughters. And the names of the daughters of Zelophehad were Mahlah, and Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, [and Tirzah](#).

Numbers 26:34

52,700 men

“fifty-two thousand seven hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)
- [and their counted ones](#)

ULT

³⁴ These [were the clans of](#) Manasseh [and their counted ones](#), 52,700.

Numbers 26:35

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the sons of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of \(2\)](#)

ULT

³⁵ These [were the sons of Ephraim according to their clans](#): of Shuthelah, [the clan of](#) the Shuthelahite; of Beker, [the clan of](#) the Bekerite; of Tahan, [the clan of](#) the Tahanite.

Numbers 26:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- were the sons of
- the clan of

ULT

³⁶ And these were the sons of Shuthelah: of Eran, the clan of the Eranite.

Numbers 26:37

32,500 men

“thirty-two thousand five hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

These were Joseph’s descendants, counted

The word “these” refers to all of the men descended from Joseph’s sons, Ephraim and Manasseh. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “These were Joseph’s descendants, descended from his sons Manasseh and Ephraim, counted” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

³⁷ These [were the clans of the sons of Ephraim](#) according to their counted ones, 32,500. These [were the sons of Joseph according to their clans](#).

counted in each of their clans

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they counted them in each of their clans” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [were the sons of](#)
- [Ephraim](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [according to their clans](#)

Numbers 26:38

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Benjamin](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#) (2)

ULT

38 [The sons of Benjamin according to their clans](#): of Bela, [the clan of the](#) Belaite; of Ashbel, [the clan of the](#) Ashbelite; of Ahiram, [the clan of the](#) Ahiramite;

Numbers 26:39

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

³⁹ of Shephupham, the clan of the Shuphamite; of Hupham, the clan of the Huphamite.

Numbers 26:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- and Naaman
- of Naaman
- the clan of
- the clan of

ULT

⁴⁰ And the sons of Bela were Ard and Naaman: the clan of the Ardite; of Naaman, the clan of the Naamite.

Numbers 26:41

45,600 men

“forty-five thousand six hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- were the sons of
- Benjamin
- according to their clans
- And their counted ones

ULT

⁴¹ These were the sons of Benjamin according to their clans. And their counted ones were 45,600.

Numbers 26:42

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- were the sons of
- according to their clans
- according to their clans
- the clan of
- were the clans of

ULT

⁴² These were the sons of Dan according to their clans: of Shuham, the clan of the Shuhamite. These were the clans of Dan according to their clans.

Numbers 26:43

64,400 men

“sixty-four thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the clans of](#)

ULT

⁴³ All [the clans of](#) the Shuhamite according to their counted ones were 64,400.

Numbers 26:44

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Asher](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of \(2\)](#)

ULT

44 [The sons of Asher according to their clans](#): of Imnah, [the clan of](#) the Imnite; of Ishvi, [the clan of](#) the Ishvite; of Beriah, [the clan of](#) the Beriite.

Numbers 26:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- The sons of
- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

⁴⁵ The sons of Beriah: of Heber, the clan of the Heberite; of Malkiel, the clan of the Malkielite.

Numbers 26:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Asher](#)

ULT

⁴⁶ And the name of the daughter of [Asher](#) was Serah.

Numbers 26:47

53,400 men

“fifty-three thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the clans of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Asher](#)

ULT

⁴⁷ These [were the clans of the sons of Asher](#) according to their counted ones, 53,400.

Numbers 26:48

General Information:

The leaders of Israel are counting the men, 20 years old and older, according to their tribes and families. (See: [How to Translate Names](#) and [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The sons of](#)
- [Naphtali](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of \(2\)](#)

ULT

48 [The sons of Naphtali according to their clans](#): of Jahzeel, [the clan of the Jahzeelite](#); of Guni, [the clan of the Gunite](#);

Numbers 26:49

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the clan of
- the clan of (2)

ULT

⁴⁹ of Jezer, the clan of the Jezerite; of Shillem, the clan of the Shillemite.

Numbers 26:50

45,400 men

“forty-five thousand four hundred men” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- were the clans of
- Naphtali
- according to their clans
- And their counted ones

ULT

⁵⁰ These were the clans of Naphtali according to their clans. And their counted ones were 45,400.

Numbers 26:51

the complete count

“the total number”

601730

“six-hundred and one thousand, seven hundred and thirty” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the counted ones of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁵¹ These [were the counted ones of the sons of Israel](#): 601,730.

Numbers 26:52

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁵² And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 26:53

The land must be divided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must divide the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

these men

This refers to all of the men that were counted in their clans, beginning in [Numbers 26:5](#).

according to the number of their names

“by the number of people in each clan”

Translation Words - ULT

- [The land](#)
- [as an inheritance](#)
- [the names](#)

ULT

⁵³ “[The land](#) shall be apportioned to these ones [as an inheritance](#) by the number of [the names](#).”

Numbers 26:54

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

give more inheritance

In this passage, the word “inheritance” refers to land inherited. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “give more land as an inheritance” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

who were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom the leaders of Israel counted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [his inheritance](#)
- [his inheritance](#)
- [His inheritance](#)
- [his counted ones](#)

ULT

⁵⁴ To the numerous you shall increase [his inheritance](#), and to the small you shall lessen [his inheritance](#). [His inheritance](#) shall be given, a man according to the mouth of [his counted ones](#).

Numbers 26:55

the land must be divided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must divide the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

by random lots

“by casting lots”

it will be divided

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will divide it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [They shall inherit](#)
- [their fathers](#)

ULT

⁵⁵ Surely [the land](#) shall be apportioned by lots. [They shall inherit](#) according to the names of the tribes of [their fathers](#).

Numbers 26:56

distributed to them

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “and you must distribute the land to them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [His inheritance](#)
- [the lot](#)

ULT

⁵⁶ [His inheritance](#) shall be apportioned in accordance with the mouth of [the lot](#), between the numerous and the small.”

Numbers 26:57

General Information:

This is a list of the Levite clans. Moses counts the Levites separately from the other tribes because they did not receive any land. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

counted clan by clan

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that the leaders also counted clan by clan” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Gershon ... Kohath ... Merari

See how you translated these men’s names in [Numbers 3:17](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [were the counted ones of](#)
- [the Levite](#)
- [according to their clans](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the clan of \(2\)](#)

ULT

57 And these [were the counted ones of the Levite according to their clans](#): of Gershon, [the clan of](#) the Gershonite; of Kohath, [the clan of](#) the Kohathite; of Merari, [the clan of](#) the Merarite.

Numbers 26:58

Amram's

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:19](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- were the clans of
- the clan of
- the clan of
- the clan of (2)
- the clan of
- the clan of
- the Levite

ULT

58 These were the clans of the Levite: the clan of the Libnite, the clan of the Hebronite, the clan of the Mahlite, the clan of the Mushite, the clan of the Korahite. And Kohath fathered Amram.

Numbers 26:59

Amram

See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 3:19](#).

She bore to Amram their children

"She and Amram had children"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Levi](#)
- [in Egypt](#)
- [Aaron](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [Miriam](#)

ULT

⁵⁹ And the name of the wife of Amram was Jochebed, a daughter of [Levi](#), she who was born to Levi [in Egypt](#). And she bore to Amram [Aaron](#), and [Moses](#), and [Miriam](#) their sister.

Numbers 26:60

Nadab ... Abihu ... Ithamar

See how you translated these men's names in [Numbers 3:2](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Aaron](#)
- [Eleazar](#)

ULT

⁶⁰ And [to Aaron](#) were born Nadab and Abihu, [Eleazar](#) and Ithamar.

Numbers 26:61

they offered before Yahweh unacceptable fire

Here the word “fire” is used to refer to “burning incense.” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 3:4](#). Alternate translation: “they burned an incense offering to Yahweh in a way that he did not approve of” (See: [Metonymy](#))

ULT

61 And Nadab and Abihu [died](#) when they offered unfamiliar [fire](#) before the face of [Yahweh](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...died](#)
- [fire](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Numbers 26:62

who were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom the leaders counted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

twenty-three thousand

“23,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

one month old and up

“one month old and older”

they were not counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “but the leaders did not count them” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

because no inheritance was given to them

This can be stated in active form. Here “inheritance” refers to land inherited. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “because Yahweh said they would not receive any land as an inheritance” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [their counted ones](#)
- [they were...counted](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [an inheritance](#)

ULT

62 And [their counted ones](#) were 23,000, every male [from a son of](#) a month and upward. But [they were](#) not [counted](#) in the midst of [the sons of Israel](#) because [an inheritance](#) in the midst of [the sons of Israel](#) was not given to them.

Numbers 26:63

who were counted by Moses and Eleazar the priest

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses and Eleazar the priest counted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are the counted ones of
- they counted
- Moses
- and Eleazar
- the priest
- the sons of
- Israel
- Moab
- the Jordan
- at Jericho

ULT

⁶³ These are the counted ones of Moses and Eleazar the priest when they counted the sons of Israel in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho.

Numbers 26:64

there was no man

“there were no men”

who had been counted by Moses and Aaron the priest

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “whom Moses and Aaron the priest had counted” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

when the descendants of Israel were counted

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “when they counted the descendants of Israel” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [they counted](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [in the wilderness of](#)

ULT

⁶⁴ And among these there was not a man from the counted ones of [Moses](#) and [Aaron the priest](#) when [they counted the sons of Israel in the wilderness of Sinai](#).

Numbers 26:65

There was not a man left among them, except

The word “them” refers to all of the people who were counted in the wilderness of Sinai. This can be stated in positive form. Alternate translation: “The only ones who were still alive were” (See: [Double Negatives](#))

son of Jephunneh

Jephunneh was Caleb’s father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 13:6](#).

son of Nun

Nun was Joshua’s father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 11:28](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [and Joshua](#)

ULT

⁶⁵ For [Yahweh](#) had said to them, “You shall surely die [in the wilderness](#) and a man shall not remain from them, except [Caleb the son of Jephunneh](#) and [Joshua the son of Nun](#).”

Numbers 27

Numbers 27 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Daughters

The daughters of Korah received no land because their father was punished by Yahweh. Yahweh still graciously gave them their father's portion of land. (See: [grace](#), [gracious](#))

The new leader is Joshua

God told Moses to appoint Joshua as the new leader. Joshua became Yahweh's anointed leader. (See: [appoint](#), [appointed](#) and [anoint](#), [anointed](#), [anointing](#))

Numbers 27:1

Then to Moses came the daughters of Zelophehad ... son of Joseph

“Then the daughters of Zelophehad son of Hopher son of Gilead son of Machir son of Manasseh, of the clans of Manasseh son of Joseph came to Moses.” This tells us the genealogy of Zelophehad.

Zelophehad son of Hopher ... Mahlah, Noah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Tirzah

See how you translated these men’s names in [Numbers 26:33](#).

Gilead ... Machir

See how you translated these men’s names in [Numbers 26:29](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the son of (3)
- the son of (4)
- the son of
- of the clans of
- Joseph
- were the names of
- and Tirzah

ULT

¹ And the daughters of Zelophehad [the son of Hopher](#) [the son of Gilead](#) [the son of Machir](#) [the son of Manasseh](#), [of the clans of Manasseh](#) [the son of Joseph](#) came near. And these [were the names of](#) his daughters: Mahlah, Noah, and Hoglah, and Milkah, [and Tirzah](#).

Numbers 27:2

They stood

“The daughters of Zelophehad stood”

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Eleazar
- the priest
- the leaders
- meeting

ULT

² And they stood before the face of Moses, and before the face of Eleazar the priest, and before the face of the leaders, and all the congregation at the opening of the tent of meeting, saying,

Numbers 27:3

who conspired against Yahweh in the company of Korah

The people in the company of Korah gathered together and rebelled against Yahweh. Yahweh caused them to die, because of their sin. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "who died because they were among Korah's followers who rebelled against Yahweh" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

for his own sin

"because of his own sin"

Translation Words - ULT

- [Our father](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Korah](#)
- [and...sons](#)

ULT

³ "Our father died in the wilderness, and he was not in the midst of the congregation who assembled against Yahweh with the congregation of Korah. But he died in his sin and there were no sons for him."

Numbers 27:4

Why should our father's name be taken away from among his clan members because he had no son?

At that time, only sons received land as an inheritance. The daughters use this question to suggest that they should receive the inheritance and continue the family clan. This can be written as a statement. Alternate translation: "You should not remove our father's name from the clan members just because he did not have a son." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁴ Why should [the name of our father](#) be withdrawn from the midst of [his clan](#) because there is no [son](#) for him? Give to us a possession in the midst of [the brothers of our father](#)."

Give us land among our father's relatives

This means that they are asking to inherit land near where their father's relatives are inheriting land. The meaning of this can be made clear. Alternate translation: "Give us land where our father's relatives live" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the name of](#)
- [our father](#)
- [our father](#)
- [his clan](#)
- [son](#)
- [the brothers of](#)

Numbers 27:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- their case
- Yahweh

ULT

⁵ And Moses brought near their case before the face of Yahweh.

Numbers 27:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁶ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 27:7

among their father's relatives

This means that they will be inherit land where their father's relatives are inheriting land. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: "where their father's relatives live" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- an inheritance
- the inheritance of
- the brothers of
- their father
- their father
- And you shall cause...to pass over

ULT

⁷ "The daughters of Zelophehad are speaking rightly. You shall certainly give to them the possession of **an inheritance** in the midst of **the brothers of their father**. **And you shall cause the inheritance of their father to pass over** to them.

Numbers 27:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- and...son
- Israel
- then you shall cause...to pass over
- his inheritance

ULT

⁸ And you shall speak to the sons of Israel, saying, 'If a man dies and there is no son for him, then you shall cause his inheritance to pass over to his daughter.'

Numbers 27:9

General Information:

This continues God's law about who will receive land if a man does not have any sons.

Translation Words - ULT

- his inheritance
- to his brothers

ULT

⁹ And if there is no daughter for him, then you shall give his inheritance to his brothers.

Numbers 27:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- brothers
- to the brothers of
- his inheritance
- his father

ULT

¹⁰ And if there are no brothers for him, then you shall give his inheritance to the brothers of his father.

Numbers 27:11

be a law established by decree for the people of Israel

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “be a law that all the people of Israel must obey” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

has commanded me

Here “me” refers to Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

- [brothers](#)
- [for his father](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [his inheritance](#)
- [and he shall take possession of](#)
- [from his clan](#)
- [for the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [judgment](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [has commanded](#)

ULT

¹¹ And if there are no [brothers for his father](#), then you shall give [his inheritance](#) to his blood-relative, the nearest to him [from his clan](#), and he shall take possession of it. And it shall be [for the sons of Israel](#) as a statute of judgment, just as [Yahweh has commanded Moses](#).”

Numbers 27:12

mountains of Abarim

This is a range of mountains in Moab. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

that I have given to the people of Israel

Here Yahweh speaks about the land that he is giving the Israel as if he has already given it to them. He speaks this way to emphasize that he is committed to give it to them. Alternate translation: "that I will give to the people of Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

12 And Yahweh said to Moses, "Go up to this mountain of Abarim, and see the land that I have given to the sons of Israel."

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- the land
- to the sons of
- Israel

Numbers 27:13

you, too, must be gathered to your people

This is a euphemism that means Moses will die and his spirit will go to the place where his ancestors are. Alternate translation: “you must die” (See: [Euphemism](#))

like Aaron your brother

You can make clear the understood information that Aaron died. Alternate translation: “like your older brother Aaron died” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [your brother](#)
- [was gathered](#)

ULT

13 And you shall see it and be gathered to your people, also you, just as [Aaron your brother was gathered](#).

Numbers 27:14

you two rebelled

This refers to Moses and Aaron.

wilderness of Zin

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 13:21](#).

when the water flowed from the rock, in your anger

This refers to an event when Yahweh made water miraculously flow out of a rock. God told Moses to speak to the rock. Instead, Moses hit the rock because he was angry with the people. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

you failed to honor me as holy

“you did not treat me as holy”

before the eyes of the whole community

Here the people of the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they saw. Alternate translation: “in front of the whole community” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

waters of Meribah

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 20:13](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wilderness of](#)
- [you rebelled against](#)
- [to regard me as holy](#)

ULT

¹⁴ because [in the wilderness of Zin](#), in the quarrel of the congregation, [you rebelled against](#) my mouth [to regard me as holy](#) at the waters before their eyes” These are the waters of Meribah Kadesh in the wilderness of Zin.

Numbers 27:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Yahweh

ULT

¹⁵ And Moses spoke to Yahweh, saying,

Numbers 27:16

the God of the spirits of all humanity

This could mean: (1) here “spirits” refers to all people.” Alternate translation: “the God over all of humanity” or (2) the reference to “spirits” refers to God having given life and breath to all people. Alternate translation: “the God who gives breath to all people” or “the God who give life to all humanity” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

ULT

16 “May [Yahweh](#), [the God of](#) the spirits of all [flesh](#), [appoint](#) a man over the congregation,

a man over the community

To be “over” a group of people means to have authority to lead them. Alternate translation: “a man to lead the community” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the God of](#)
- [flesh](#)
- [May...appoint](#)

Numbers 27:17

a man who may go out and come in before them and lead them out and bring them in

This is an idiom that means a person who will lead all the people and also lead the army into battle. (See: [Idiom](#))

so that your community is not like sheep that have no shepherd

This is a simile that means without a leader the people will wander and be helpless. (See: [Simile](#))

ULT

¹⁷ who [will go out](#) before the face of them and who will come before the face of them and who [will take them out](#) and who will bring them in, and the congregation of [Yahweh](#) will not be like sheep that have no shepherd for them."

Translation Words - ULT

- [will go out](#)
- [will take them out](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Numbers 27:18

Take Joshua son of Nun, a man in whom my Spirit lives

Yahweh's Spirit is in Joshua, meaning that Joshua obeys Yahweh and follows his commands.

lay your hand on him

This is a sign of dedicating someone to God's service. Alternate translation: "lay your hand on him to appoint him" (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Joshua
- the son of
- is a spirit
- your hand

ULT

¹⁸ And Yahweh said to Moses, "Take for yourself Joshua the son of Nun, a man in whom is a spirit, and lay your hand on him."

Numbers 27:19

command him before their eyes to lead them

Here the people are represented by their “eyes” to emphasize what they see. Alternate translation: “in front of all of them command Joshua to lead the people of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Eleazar](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [And you shall command](#)

ULT

19 And you shall stand him before the face of [Eleazar the priest](#) and before the face of all the congregation. [And you shall command](#) him before their eyes.

Numbers 27:20

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses about Joshua.

You must put some of your authority on him

Here Yahweh speaks of Moses giving some of his authority to Joshua as if it were an article of clothing that he could put on him. Alternate translation: “You should give him some of your authority” or “Let him decide what the people should do” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

20 And you shall give some of your authority on him, so that all the congregation of [the sons of Israel](#) will hear.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

Numbers 27:21

Urim

This was a sacred stone that the High Priest wore on his chest plate. He used it to determine God's will. (See: [Translate Unknowns](#))

It will be at his command that the people will go out and come in

This means that Joshua will have authority to command the movements of the community of Israel. "Going out" and "coming in" are two opposite commands used to emphasize that he will have full command over their movements. Alternate translation: "He will command the community's movements" (See: [Merism](#))

both he and all the people of Israel with him, the whole community

Both of these phrases mean the same thing, and they are used together for emphasis. Alternate translation: "both he and the entire nation of Israel" (See: [Parallelism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [he shall stand](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [he shall go out](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

21 And [he shall stand](#) before the face of [Eleazar the priest](#). And he shall ask for him by the judgment of the Urim before the face of [Yahweh](#). In accordance with his mouth [he shall go out](#) and in accordance with his mouth he shall come in, he and all [the sons of Israel](#) with him and all the congregation."

Numbers 27:22

placed him before

“told him to stand in front of”

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Yahweh
- had commanded
- Joshua
- Eleazar
- the priest

ULT

²² And Moses did just as Yahweh had commanded him. And he took Joshua and stood him before the face of Eleazar the priest and before the face of all the congregation.

Numbers 27:23

He laid his hands on him and commanded him to lead

“He” refers to Moses, and “him” refers to Joshua.

He laid his hands on him

The laying on of hands was a way of setting a person apart to do a special task for God. (See: [Symbolic Action](#))

to lead

You can make clear the understood information to lead the people. Alternate translation: “to lead the people” or “to be the leader of the Israelites” (See: [Ellipsis](#))

as Yahweh had commanded him to do

Here “him” refers to Moses.

Translation Words - ULT

- [his hands](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [and he commanded him](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

²³ And he laid [his hands](#) on him [and he commanded him](#), just as [Yahweh](#) had spoken [by the hand of Moses](#).

Numbers 28

Numbers 28 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Offerings for special days

God commanded the Israelites to make special offerings for Sabbaths, new months, Passover and firstfruits. On each of these occasions, specific sacrifices were required. (See: [Sabbath](#) and [Passover](#) and [firstfruits](#))

Numbers 28:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 28:2

at the appointed times

“at the times that I have chosen”

the food of my offerings made by fire to produce

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the food offerings that you will burn on the altar produce” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a sweet aroma for me

“a smell I enjoy”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Command](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [You shall be careful](#)
- [my food](#)

ULT

² “[Command the sons of Israel](#) and say to them, ‘[You shall be careful](#) to offer to me at its appointed time my offering, [my food](#) for my offerings made by fire, an aroma of my soothing.’”

Numbers 28:3

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

the offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. "the burnt offering" or "the offering you have burned by fire on the altar" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [a burnt up offering](#)

ULT

³ And you shall say to them, 'This is the offering made by fire that you shall offer [to Yahweh](#): unblemished [male lambs, sons of](#) a year, two for the day, [a burnt up offering](#) continually.'

Numbers 28:4

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴ One male lamb you shall do in the morning, and the second male lamb you shall do between the evenings,

Numbers 28:5

mixed with

This can be stated in active form. “which you have mixed with” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

one-fourth of a hin

“One-fourth” means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “a liter” or “one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

beaten oil

“pressed oil” or “pure olive oil.” This refers to oil that has been pressed out of olives.

Translation Words - ULT

- [for a grain offering](#)

ULT

⁵ and the tenth of an ephah of fine flour [for a grain offering](#), mixed with the fourth of a hin of beaten oil.

Numbers 28:6

that was commanded at Mount Sinai

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that Yahweh commanded at Mount Sinai” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you burned on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- It is a burnt up offering of
- to Yahweh

ULT

⁶ It is a burnt up offering of continuity, the one done at Mount Sinai for an aroma of soothing, an offering made by fire to Yahweh.

Numbers 28:7

one-fourth of a hin

“One-fourth” means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “a liter” or “one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

You must pour out in the holy place a drink offering of strong drink to Yahweh

This sentence describes the drink offering that is to accompany the lamb. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “It must be a drink offering of strong drink and you must pour it out in the holy place to Yahweh” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And its drink offering](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁷ [And its drink offering](#) shall be the fourth of a hin for one male lamb. You shall pour out in the holy place a drink offering of intoxicating drink [to Yahweh](#).

Numbers 28:8

like the one offered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “like the one you offered” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh

ULT

⁸ And you shall do the second male lamb between the evenings. You shall do like the grain offering of the morning and its drink offering, an offering made by fire, an aroma of soothing to Yahweh.

Numbers 28:9

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

two-tenths of an ephah

“Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters” or “two tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the drink offering with it

Many offerings had a drink offering that was required to be offered with them. The full meaning of the can be made clear. Alternate translation: “the drink offering that accompanies it” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Sabbath](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [as a grain offering](#)
- [and its drink offering](#)

ULT

⁹ And on [the Sabbath](#) day: two unblemished [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year, and two-tenths fine flour [as a grain offering](#) mixed with the oil, [and its drink offering](#).

Numbers 28:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- It is the burnt up offering of
- the burnt up offering (2)
- the Sabbath
- by its Sabbath
- and its drink offering

ULT

¹⁰ It is the burnt up offering of the Sabbath by its Sabbath, in addition to the burnt up offering of the continuity and its drink offering.

Numbers 28:11

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

Translation Words - ULT

- a burnt up offering
- to Yahweh
- bulls
- cattle
- sons of
- sons of
- male lambs

ULT

11 And at the heads of your months, you shall offer a burnt up offering to Yahweh: two bulls, sons of cattle, and one ram, seven male lambs, sons of a year, unblemished;

Numbers 28:12

three-tenths of an ephah

“Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

two-tenths of fine flour

The words “of an ephah” are understood and may stated clearly. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters) of fine flour” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [as a grain offering](#)
- [as a grain offering](#) (2)

ULT

¹² and three-tenths fine flour [as a grain offering](#) mixed with the oil for one bull, and two-tenths fine flour [as a grain offering](#) mixed with the oil for the one ram,

Numbers 28:13

a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “that you burned on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- as a grain offering
- It is a burnt up offering
- to Yahweh

ULT

13 and a tenth, a tenth fine flour as a grain offering mixed with the oil for one male lamb. It is a burnt up offering, an aroma of soothing, an offering made by fire to Yahweh.

Numbers 28:14

half a hin

“Half” means one part out of two equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “two liters” or “half a hin (which is two liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

a third of a hin

“One third of a hin.” “A third” means one part out of three equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “1.2 liters” or “One and one-fifth liters” or “half a hin (which is 1.2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

one-fourth of a hin

“One-fourth” means one part out of four equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “a liter” or “one-fourth of a hin (which is almost 1 liter)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their drink offerings](#)
- [wine](#)
- [shall...the burnt up offering of](#)

ULT

14 [And their drink offerings](#) shall be half of a hin of [wine](#) for the bull, and a third of a hin for the ram, and a fourth of a hin for the male lamb. This shall be [the burnt up offering of](#) the month by its month for the months of the year.

Numbers 28:15

One male goat as a sin offering to Yahweh must be offered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must offer one male goat to Yahweh as a sin offering” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [the burnt up offering of](#)
- [and its drink offering](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And one buck of the goats shall be done as a sin offering [to Yahweh](#), in addition to [the burnt up offering of](#) the continuity [and its drink offering](#).

Numbers 28:16

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

the first month, on the fourteenth day of the month

“During the first month, on day 14 of the month.” This refers to the first month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

comes Yahweh’s Passover

“you must celebrate Yahweh’s Passover”

Translation Words - ULT

- [of Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹⁶ And in the first month, on day 14 of the month is the Passover [of Yahweh](#).

Numbers 28:17

On the fifteenth day of this month

“On day 15 day of this month.” This refers to the first month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

a feast is to be held

This can be stated in active form. “you must have a feast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

bread without yeast must be eaten

This can be stated in active form. “you must eat bread without yeast” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shall be a feast](#)
- [you shall eat](#)
- [unleavened bread](#)

ULT

17 And on day 15 of this month [shall be a feast](#). Seven days [you shall eat unleavened bread](#).

Numbers 28:18

On the first day

This refers to the first day of the feast. This can be stated clearly.
Alternate translation: "On day 1 of the feast" (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

there must be a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"you must gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

Translation Words - ULT

- [holiness](#)

ULT

18 On the first day shall be a convocation of [holiness](#). You shall not do any work of labor.

Numbers 28:19

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

you must offer a sacrifice made by fire, a burnt offering

The idea of “burnt” can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must burn an offering on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a burnt up offering
- to Yahweh
- bulls
- cattle
- sons of
- sons of
- male lambs

ULT

19 And you shall offer an offering made by fire, a burnt up offering to Yahweh: two bulls, sons of cattle, and one ram, and seven male lambs, sons of a year. They shall be unblemished for you.

Numbers 28:20

three-tenths of an ephah

“Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

two-tenths

The words “of an ephah of fine flour” are understood from the previous phrase. They can be repeated. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)

ULT

20 [And their grain offering](#): you shall do fine flour mixed with the oil, three-tenths for the bull and two-tenths for the ram.

Numbers 28:21

a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

ULT

21 A tenth, a tenth you shall do for one male lamb of the seven male lambs,

Numbers 28:22

to make atonement

The phrase "make atonement" can be expressed with the verb "atone." Alternate translation: "to atone" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [as the sin offering](#)
- [to make atonement](#)

ULT

²² and one male goat [as the sin offering to make atonement](#) for yourselves.

Numbers 28:23

required each morning

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which Yahweh requires each morning” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the burnt up offering of](#)

ULT

²³ You shall do these apart from [the burnt up offering of](#) the morning, which is for the burnt up offering of the continuity.

Numbers 28:24

As described here

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “As I, Yahweh, have described here” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the food of the offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must burn the food offering on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

a sweet aroma for Yahweh

“as a sweet aroma for Yahweh”

It must be offered

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must offer it” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the food of
- to Yahweh
- the burnt up offering of
- and its drink offering

ULT

24 You shall do like these for the day, seven days, [the food of](#) the offering made by fire, an aroma of soothing [to Yahweh](#). It shall be done in addition to [the burnt up offering of](#) the continuity [and its drink offering](#).

Numbers 28:25

have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

Translation Words - ULT

- [holiness](#)

ULT

²⁵ And on the seventh day there shall be a convocation of [holiness](#) for you. You shall not do any work of labor.

Numbers 28:26

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

the day of the firstfruits

“the day of the firstfruits, that is the day.” This refers to the day during the Festival of Weeks when they offer the grain offering to Yahweh.

have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

Translation Words - ULT

- the...grain offering
- to Yahweh
- holiness

ULT

²⁶ And on the day of the firstfruits, when you offer the new grain offering to Yahweh in your festival of weeks, there shall be a convocation of holiness for you. You shall not do any work of labor.

Numbers 28:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a burnt up offering
- to Yahweh
- bulls
- cattle
- sons of
- sons of
- ram
- male lambs

ULT

²⁷ And you shall offer a burnt up offering as an aroma of soothing to Yahweh: two bulls, sons of cattle, one ram, seven male lambs, sons of a year,

Numbers 28:28

mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

three-tenths of an ephah

“Three tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

three-tenths of an ephah

“Three tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

two-tenths

The words “of an ephah of fine flour” are understood from the previous phrase and can be repeated. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah of fine flour (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)

ULT

28 [And their grain offering](#) shall be fine flour mixed with the oil, three-tenths for one bull, two-tenths for the one ram,

Numbers 28:29

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour which you mix with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁹ a tenth, a tenth for one male lamb of the seven of the male lambs,

Numbers 28:30

to make atonement

The word "atonement" can be expressed with the verb "atone."
Alternate translation: "to atone" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to make atonement](#)

ULT

³⁰ one buck of the goats [to make atonement](#) for yourselves.

Numbers 28:31

their drink offerings

This refers to the drink offerings that are required to accompany each of the animals when they are sacrificed. Alternate translation: “the drink offerings that are offered with them” or “the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the burnt up offering of
- and its grain offering
- and their drink offerings

ULT

31 You shall do apart from the burnt up offering of the continuity and its grain offering. They shall be unblemished for you and their drink offerings.”

Numbers 29

Numbers 29 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the material from the previous chapter about offerings on specific days.

Numbers 29:1

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

In the seventh month, on the first day of the month

This refers to the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. Alternate translation: "On day 1 of month 7" (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

"gather together to worship and honor Yahweh." The phrase "a holy assembly" means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

It will be a day when you blow trumpets

The word "you" refers to the people of Israel who here represent the priests. The priests blew the trumpet to begin a worship service or to gather the community together. Alternate translation: "It will be a day when the priests blow trumpets" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holiness](#)

ULT

¹ "And in the seventh month, on the first of the month, there shall be a convocation of [holiness](#) for you. You shall not do any work of labor. It shall be a day of horn blowing for you.

Numbers 29:2

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

Translation Words - ULT

- a burnt up offering
- to Yahweh
- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- sons of
- ram
- male lambs

ULT

² And you shall do a burnt up offering for an aroma of soothing to Yahweh: one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, seven male lambs, sons of a year, unblemished.

Numbers 29:3

their grain offering

This refers to the grain offerings that are required to accompany each of the animals when they are sacrificed. Alternate translation: “the grain offerings that are offered with them” or “the grain offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

ULT

³ [And their grain offering](#) shall be fine flour mixed with the oil, three-tenths for the bull, two-tenths for the ram,

mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

three-tenths of an ephah

The phrase “of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from the previous phrase and can be repeated. “Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

two-tenths

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “Two tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)

Numbers 29:4

one-tenth

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “One-tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

ULT

⁴ and one-tenth for one male lamb of the seven male lambs.

Numbers 29:5

to make atonement

The word "atonement" can be expressed with the verb "atone."
Alternate translation: "to atone" (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shall be a sin offering](#)
- [to make atonement](#)

ULT

⁵ And one buck of the goats [shall be a sin offering to make atonement](#) for yourselves.

Numbers 29:6

in the seventh month ... the first of each month

“in month 7...day 1 of each month.” The word “month” refers to a month of the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

of each month: the special burnt offering ... with it

“of each month--the special burnt offering ... with it.” This is the offering that is made on the first day of each month.

the regular burnt offering, its grain offering, and its drink offerings

This refers to the offerings the priests were to give every day. The grain offering and drink offering were to be offered with the regular burnt offering. Alternate translation: “the regular burnt offering, with the grain offering and drink offerings that accompany it” (See: [Possession](#))

you will obey what has been decreed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you will obey Yahweh’s decree” or “you will obey what Yahweh had decreed” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

an offering made by fire to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “an offering you burnt on the altar to Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the burnt up offering of
- and the burnt up offering of
- the month
- and its grain offering
- and its grain offering
- and their drink offerings
- according to their ordinance
- to Yahweh

ULT

⁶ It is apart from the burnt up offering of the month and its grain offering, and the burnt up offering of the continuity and its grain offering, and their drink offerings according to their ordinance, for an aroma of soothing, an offering made by fire to Yahweh.

Numbers 29:7

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

the tenth day of the seventh month

“day 10 of month 7” The word “month” refers to those in the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

Translation Words - ULT

- [holiness](#)
- [your lives](#)

ULT

⁷ And on the tenth of this seventh month there shall be a convocation of [holiness](#) for you. And you shall afflict [your lives](#). You shall not do any work.

Numbers 29:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- a burnt up offering
- to Yahweh
- bull
- cattle
- a son of
- sons of
- ram
- male lambs

ULT

⁸ And you shall offer a burnt up offering to Yahweh, an aroma of soothing: one bull, a son of cattle, one ram, seven male lambs, sons of a year. They shall be unblemished for you.

Numbers 29:9

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

three-tenths of an ephah

“Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

two-tenths

The words “of an ephah” are understood from earlier in the verse. They can be repeated here. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)

ULT

⁹ [And their grain offering](#) shall be fine flour mixed with the oil, three-tenths for the bull, two-tenths for the one ram,

Numbers 29:10

a tenth of an ephah

“A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

ULT

10 a tenth, a tenth for the one male lamb, for the seven male lambs.

Numbers 29:11

of atonement

The word “atonement” can be expressed with the verb “atone.”
Alternate translation: “that atones for you” (See: [Abstract Nouns](#))

its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: “along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them” (See: [Possession](#))

ULT

11 One buck of the goats shall be a sin offering, apart from the sin offering of the atonement and the burnt up offering of the continuity and its grain offering and their drink offerings.

Translation Words - ULT

- [shall be a sin offering](#)
- [the sin offering of](#)
- [and the burnt up offering of](#)
- [and its grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)

Numbers 29:12

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

the fifteenth day of the seventh month

“day 15 of month 7.” The word “month” refer to those in the Hebrew calendar. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

have a holy assembly to honor Yahweh

“gather together to worship and honor Yahweh.” The phrase “a holy assembly” means the people gather together to worship Yahweh. Worshiping Yahweh is a holy event.

you must keep the festival for him

This is an idiom. Here the word “keep” means to observe or celebrate. The word “him” refers to Yahweh. Alternate translation: “you must observe the festival for Yahweh” or “you must celebrate the festival for Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [holiness](#)
- [a feast](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)

ULT

¹² And on day 15 of the seventh month there shall be for you a convocation of [holiness](#). You shall not do any work of labor, and you shall feast [a feast to Yahweh](#) seven days.

Numbers 29:13

a sacrifice made by fire

This can be stated in active form. "you must burn it on the altar"
(See: [Active or Passive](#))

thirteen young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

"13 young bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a burnt up offering
- to Yahweh
- bulls
- cattle
- sons of
- sons of
- rams
- male lambs

ULT

13 And you shall offer a burnt up offering, a sacrifice made by fire, an aroma of soothing to Yahweh, 13 bulls, sons of cattle, two rams, 14 male lambs, sons of a year. They shall be unblemished.

Numbers 29:14

fine flour mixed with oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “fine flour which you have mixed with oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

three-tenths of an ephah

The phrase “of fine flour mixed with oil” is understood from earlier in the sentence and can be repeated. “Three-tenths” means three parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “six liters of fine flour mixed with oil” or “three-tenths of an ephah (which is about six liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

thirteen bulls

“13 bulls” (See: [Numbers](#))

two-tenths

The phrase “of an ephah of fine flour” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “Two-tenths” means two parts out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “four and a half liters of fine flour” or “two-tenths of an ephah (which is about 4.5 liters)” (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)
- [the...bulls](#)

ULT

14 [And their grain offering](#) shall be fine flour mixed with the oil, three-tenths for one bull for the 13 [bulls](#), two-tenths for one ram for the two rams,

Numbers 29:15

fourteen lambs

“14 lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

a tenth of an ephah

The phrase “of fine flour” is understood from earlier in the sentence. “A tenth” means one part out of ten equal parts. This can be written in modern measurements. Alternate translation: “2 liters of fine flour” or “a tenth of an ephah (which is about 2 liters)” (See: [Fractions](#) and [Biblical Volume](#))

ULT

¹⁵ and a tenth, a tenth for one male lamb for the 14 [male lambs](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [male lambs](#)

Numbers 29:16

its grain offering, and the drink offering with it

The grain offering and drink offering accompany the regular burnt offering.

Translation Words - ULT

- shall be a sin offering
- the burnt up offering of
- its grain offering
- and its drink offering

ULT

¹⁶ And one buck of the goats shall be a sin offering, apart from the burnt up offering of the continuity, its grain offering, and its drink offering.

Numbers 29:17

On the second day of the assembly

“On day 2 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

twelve young bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

“12 young bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bulls](#)
- [cattle](#)
- [sons of](#)
- [sons of \(2\)](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)

ULT

17 And on the second day: 12 [bulls](#), [sons of cattle](#), two [rams](#), 14 [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year, unblemished.

Numbers 29:18

as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "as Yahweh commanded" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)
- [according to the ordinance](#)

ULT

18 [And their grain offering and their drink offerings](#) for the bulls, for the rams, and for the male lambs shall be by their number [according to the ordinance](#).

Numbers 29:19

its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. Drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shall be a sin offering](#)
- [the burnt up offering of](#)
- [and its grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)

ULT

¹⁹ And one buck of the goats shall be a [sin offering](#), apart from [the burnt up offering of the continuity](#), and its [grain offering](#), and their [drink offerings](#).

Numbers 29:20

the third day of the assembly

“day 3 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

eleven bulls, two rams, and fourteen male lambs

“11 bulls, 2 rams, and 14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)

ULT

²⁰ And on the third day: 11 [bulls](#), two [rams](#), 14 [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year, unblemished.

Numbers 29:21

as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)
- [according to the ordinance](#)

ULT

21 [And their grain offering and their drink offerings](#) for the bulls, for the rams, and for the male lambs shall be by their number [according to the ordinance](#),

Numbers 29:22

its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sin offering](#)
- [the burnt up offering of](#)
- [and its grain offering](#)
- [and its drink offering](#)

ULT

²² and one male goat of [the sin offering](#), apart from [the burnt up offering of the continuity](#) [and its grain offering and its drink offering](#).

Numbers 29:23

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do during the festival in the seventh month.

the fourth day of the assembly

“day 4 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

fourteen male lambs

“14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)

ULT

²³ And on the fourth day: 10 [bulls](#), two [rams](#), 14 [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year, unblemished.

Numbers 29:24

as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)
- [according to the ordinance](#)

ULT

²⁴ [And their grain offering and their drink offerings](#) for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be by their number [according to the ordinance](#).

Numbers 29:25

its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [shall be a sin offering](#)
- [the burnt up offering of](#)
- [its grain offering](#)
- [and its drink offering](#)

ULT

²⁵ And one buck of the goats shall be a [sin offering](#), apart from [the burnt up offering of the continuity, its grain offering, and its drink offering](#).

Numbers 29:26

the fifth day of the assembly

“day 5 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

fourteen male lambs

“14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)

ULT

²⁶ And on the fifth day: nine [bulls](#), two [rams](#), 14 [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year, unblemished.

Numbers 29:27

as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)
- [according to the ordinance](#)

ULT

27 [And their grain offering and their drink offerings](#) for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be by their number [according to the ordinance](#),

Numbers 29:28

its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a sin offering
- the burnt up offering of
- and its grain offering
- and its drink offering

ULT

²⁸ and one male goat of a sin offering, apart from the burnt up offering of the continuity, and its grain offering, and its drink offering.

Numbers 29:29

the sixth day of the assembly

“day 6 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

fourteen male lambs

“14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)

ULT

²⁹ And on the sixth day: eight [bulls](#), two [rams](#), 14 [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year, unblemished.

Numbers 29:30

as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)
- [according to the ordinance](#)

ULT

30 [And their grain offering and their drink offerings](#) for the bulls, for the rams, and for the lambs, shall be by their number [according to the ordinance](#),

Numbers 29:31

its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a sin offering](#)
- [the burnt up offering of](#)
- [its grain offering](#)
- [and its drink offerings](#)

ULT

³¹ and one male goat of [a sin offering](#), apart from [the burnt up offering of](#) the continuity, [its grain offering](#), and [its drink offerings](#).

Numbers 29:32

the seventh day of the assembly

“day 7 of the festival.” Here the word “assembly” refers to the Festival of Weeks. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

fourteen male lambs

“14 male lambs” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [bulls](#)
- [rams](#)
- [male lambs](#)
- [sons of](#)

ULT

³² And on the seventh day: seven [bulls](#), two [rams](#), 14 [male lambs](#), [sons of](#) a year, unblemished.

Numbers 29:33

as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And their grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)
- [according to their ordinance](#)

ULT

33 [And their grain offering and their drink offerings](#) for the bulls, for the rams, and for the male lambs, shall be by their number [according to their ordinance](#),

Numbers 29:34

its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [of the sin offering](#)
- [the burnt up offering of](#)
- [its grain offering](#)
- [and its drink offering](#)

ULT

³⁴ and one male goat [of the sin offering](#), apart from [the burnt up offering of](#) the continuity, [its grain offering](#), and [its drink offering](#).

Numbers 29:35

General Information:

Yahweh tells Moses what the people must do after the seven-day festival in the seventh month.

eighth day

This “eighth” is the ordinal number for eight. (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

have another solemn assembly

“gather together again to worship Yahweh.” This is another assembly similar to the one on the first day of the festival.

Translation Words - ULT

- [an assembly](#)

ULT

³⁵ On the eighth day [an assembly](#) shall be for you. You shall not do any work of labor.

Numbers 29:36

an offering made by fire

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “you must burn it on the altar” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- a burnt up offering
- to Yahweh
- bull
- ram
- male lambs
- sons of

ULT

³⁶ And you shall offer a burnt up offering, an offering made by fire, an aroma of soothing to Yahweh: one bull, one ram, seven male lambs, sons of a year, unblemished.

Numbers 29:37

their grain offering and their drink offerings

These offerings were to be offered with the bull, the ram, and the lambs. Alternate translation: “the grain offerings and the drink offerings” (See: [Possession](#))

as were commanded

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Their grain offering](#)
- [and their drink offerings](#)
- [according to the ordinance](#)

ULT

³⁷ [Their grain offering and their drink offerings](#), for the bull, for the ram, and for the male lambs, shall be by their number [according to the ordinance](#),

Numbers 29:38

its grain offering, and their drink offerings

The grain offering was to be offered with the burnt offering. The drink offerings were to be offered with both the sin offering and the burnt offering. Alternate translation: "along with the grain offering and the drink offerings that accompany them" (See: [Possession](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sin offering](#)
- [the burnt up offering of](#)
- [and its grain offering](#)
- [and its drink offering](#)

ULT

³⁸ and one male goat of [the sin offering](#) apart from [the burnt up offering of the continuity](#) [and its grain offering and its drink offering](#).

Numbers 29:39

These are what you must offer

“These offerings are what you must offer”

fixed festivals

“planned festivals.” These are festivals that occurred at regularly scheduled times. The word “fixed” means “set” or “predetermined.”

Translation Words - ULT

- for Yahweh

ULT

³⁹ You shall do these for Yahweh at your appointed times, apart from your vows and your voluntary offerings, for your burnt up offerings, and for your grain offerings, and for your drink offerings, and for your peace offerings.”

Numbers 29:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Moses
- the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- had commanded

ULT

⁴⁰ And Moses spoke to the sons of Israel according to all that Yahweh had commanded Moses.

Numbers 30

Numbers 30 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Vows

Because a vow is a type of promise, men must do what they have vowed to do. A father or a husband has one day in which to cancel a woman's vow. Otherwise, she must do what she vowed she would do. (See: [vow](#) and [promise, promised](#))

Numbers 30:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- the heads of
- of the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- has commanded

ULT

¹ And Moses spoke to the heads of the tribes of the sons of Israel, saying, "This is the word that Yahweh has commanded:

Numbers 30:2

a man makes a vow

The words “a man” refer to any man, not one particular man. It refers only to men and does not include women. Alternate translation: “any man”

to bind himself with a binding promise

Here Moses speaks of a person promising to do something as if his promise were a physical object that he ties to himself. Alternate translation: “committing to fulfill a promise” or “promising to do something” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he must not break his word. He must keep his promise to do everything that comes out of his mouth

These two sentences have similar meanings and are combined to emphasize that he must fulfill his promises. Here “word” is a metonym that refers to what he said. (See: [Parallelism](#))

he must not break his word

The phrase “his word” refers to a man’s oaths and vows. Here Moses speaks of not fulfilling these as if they were physical objects that the man could break. Alternate translation: “he must fulfill his promises” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Metonymy](#))

everything that comes out of his mouth

Here the word “mouth” is a metonym for the things that the man says. Alternate translation: “to do everything that he says he will do” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- to Yahweh
- swears
- an oath
- his life

ULT

² When a man vows a vow to Yahweh, or swears an oath to bind a binding vow on his life, he shall not profane his word. He shall do according to all that came out from his mouth.

Numbers 30:3

binds herself with a promise

Here Moses speaks of a woman promising to do something as if her promise were a physical object that she ties to herself. Alternate translation: “commits herself to fulfilling a promise” or “promises to do something” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to Yahweh](#)
- [in the house of](#)
- [her father](#)

ULT

³ And if a woman vows a vow [to Yahweh](#) and binds a binding vow [in the house of her father](#), in her youth,

Numbers 30:4

the vow and the promise

These two phrases have very similar meanings. They emphasize what she has promised to do. Alternate translation: “the vow” (See: [Doublet](#))

by which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. Alternate translation: “that she has committed herself to fulfill” (See: [Metaphor](#))

he says nothing to reverse her

“he does not cancel what she has said”

will stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and that she will be required to fulfill them. Alternate translation: “she will be obligated to fulfill” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [her father](#)
- [her father](#)
- [she bound](#)
- [she has bound](#)
- [her life](#)
- [her life](#)

ULT

⁴ and [her father](#) hears her vow and her binding vow that [she bound](#) on [her life](#) and [her father](#) is silent to her, then all her vows shall stand and every binding vow that [she has bound](#) on [her life](#) shall stand.

Numbers 30:5

her vows or the pledges

These two phrases have very similar meanings. They emphasize what she has promised to do. Alternate translation: “her vows” (See: [Doublet](#))

will stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 30:4](#). Alternate translation: “she will be obligated to fulfill” (See: [Idiom](#))

Yahweh will release her

This refers to Yahweh forgiving her for not fulfilling her vows. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vows” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [her father](#)
- [her father](#)
- [she bound](#)
- [her life](#)
- [And Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁵ And if [her father](#) forbids her on the day of his hearing, any of her vows and her binding vows that [she bound on her life](#) shall not stand. [And Yahweh](#) will forgive her because [her father](#) forbade her.

Numbers 30:6

rash

something done without thinking

by which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. Alternate translation: "which she has committed herself to fulfill" (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁶ And if she ever belongs to a man and her vows are on her, or thoughtless speech of her lips that [she has bound](#) is on [her life](#),

Translation Words - ULT

- [she has bound](#)
- [her life](#)

Numbers 30:7

says nothing to her

You may need to specify that he says nothing to her about her vow. Alternate translation: "says nothing to her about her vow" or "does not tell her to have Yahweh release her from the vow" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

by which she bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. Alternate translation: "that she has committed herself to fulfill" See how this is translated in [Numbers 30:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

will stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and that she will be required to fulfill them. Alternate translation: "she will be obligated to fulfill" See how this is translated in [Numbers 30:4](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [she bound](#)
- [her life](#)

ULT

⁷ and her husband hears on the day of his hearing and is silent to her, then her vows shall stand, and her binding vows that [she bound](#) on [her life](#) shall stand.

Numbers 30:8

the vow that she has made ... the rash talk of her lips

“the vow that she has made ... that is, the rash talk of her lips.” These two phrases refer to the same thing. The second phrase describes the vow that the woman made. (See: [Parallelism](#))

the rash talk of her lips

The phrase “the rash talk” refers to the rash promise that she made. Here “her lips” means the woman herself. She is referred to as “her lips” because lips are related to what she says. Alternate translation: “the rash things she has said” or “her rash promise” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

with which she has bound herself

Here Moses speaks of how a woman has committed herself to fulfilling a promise as if her promise were a physical object that she had bound to her body. Alternate translation: “that she has committed herself to fulfill” See how this is translated in [Numbers 30:4](#). (See: [Metaphor](#))

Yahweh will release her

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh forgiving the woman for not fulfilling her vow as if he were releasing her from something that bound her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will forgive her” or “Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vow” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [she bound](#)
- [her life](#)
- [And Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁸ And if her husband forbids her on the day of his hearing, then he breaks her vow which is on her and the thoughtless speech of her lips that [she bound on her life](#). And [Yahweh](#) will forgive her.

Numbers 30:9

General Information:

Moses continues telling the leaders of the tribes what Yahweh has commanded.

a divorced woman

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “a woman whom a man has divorced” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

will stand against her

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 30:4](#). Alternate translation: “she will be obligated to fulfill” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [she binds](#)
- [her life](#)

ULT

⁹ And the vow of a widow and a cast out woman, all that [she binds on her life](#) shall stand on her.

Numbers 30:10

If a woman made a vow in her husband's house

This refers to a married woman. You can make the meaning of this statement clear. Alternate translation: "If a married woman makes a vow" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

¹⁰ And if she vowed or [bound](#) a binding vow on [her life](#) by an oath [in the house of](#) her husband,

Translation Words - ULT

- [bound](#)
- [her life](#)
- [in the house of](#)

Numbers 30:11

then all her vows will stand

This is an idiom. The phrase “will stand” means that her vows will remain in effect and she will be required to fulfill them. See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 30:4](#). Alternate translation: “then she must fulfill all her vows” (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [she bound](#)
- [her life](#)

ULT

11 and her husband hears and is silent to her, he does not forbid her, then all her vows shall stand, and every binding vow that [she bound](#) on [her life](#) shall stand.

Numbers 30:12

then whatever came out of her lips

Here what the woman said is referred to as something that came out of her lips. Alternate translation: “then whatever she said” (See: [Metonymy](#))

will not stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will not remain in effect and she will be not required to fulfill them. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 30:4](#). Alternate translation: “she will not be obligated to fulfill” (See: [Idiom](#))

Yahweh will release her

Here Moses speaks about Yahweh forgiving the woman for not fulfilling her vow as if he were releasing her from something that bound her. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “Yahweh will forgive her” or “Yahweh will forgive her for not fulfilling her vow” (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [her life](#)
- [and Yahweh](#)

ULT

12 And if her husband ever breaks them on the day of his hearing, all that went out of her lips for her vows and for the binding vow of [her life](#) shall not stand. Her husband has broken them [and Yahweh](#) will forgive her.

Numbers 30:13

binding oath to afflict her

an oath by which the woman says that unless she fulfills the oath, God or other people have the right to afflict her

Translation Words - ULT

- oath of
- to afflict
- her life

ULT

¹³ Every vow and every oath of a binding vow to afflict her life, her husband may make it stand and her husband may break it.

Numbers 30:14

binding promises

Moses describes a woman's promises as if they were something that she is physically bound by. Alternate translation: "obligations" or "promises" (See: [Metaphor](#))

will stand

This is an idiom. It means that her vows will remain in effect and that she will be required to fulfill them. Alternate translation: "she will be obligated to fulfill" See how this is translated in [Numbers 30:4](#). (See: [Idiom](#))

because he has said nothing to her

You can make clear the understood information. Alternate translation: "because he has said nothing to her about them" (See: [Ellipsis](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [wholly](#)
- [is...silent](#)
- [he was silent](#)

ULT

14 And if her husband is [wholly silent](#) to her from day to day, then he will make all her vows or all her binding vows which are on her stand. He made them stand because [he was silent](#) to her on the day of his hearing.

Numbers 30:15

then he will be responsible for her guilt

This means that he will be guilty of her sin instead of her if she does not fulfill her vow. The full meaning of this statement can be made clear. Alternate translation: “if she does not fulfill her vow, she will not be guilty of her sin, and he will be guilty instead of her” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [her iniquity](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And if he ever breaks them after his hearing, then he will bear [her iniquity](#).”

Numbers 30:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- are the statutes
- Yahweh
- commanded
- Moses
- a father
- her father
- in the house of

ULT

¹⁶ These are the statutes that Yahweh commanded Moses, between a man and his wife, between a father and his daughter in her youth in the house of her father.

Numbers 31

Numbers 31 General Notes

Special concepts in this chapter

Midianites

Israel killed the Midianites, including Balaam, for tempting them to worship Baal. This battle was at Yahweh's command. Yahweh would bring justice. (See: [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#))

Numbers 31:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 31:2

Take vengeance on the Midianites for what they did to the Israelites

Yahweh was punishing the Midianites for convincing the Israelites to worship idols.

you will die and be gathered to your people

These two phrases mean basically the same thing. This is a polite way to emphasize that it is time for Moses to die and for his spirit to go to the place where his ancestors are. (See: [Parallelism](#) and [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [you shall be gathered](#)

ULT

² "Take vengeance, the vengeance of [the sons of Israel](#), from with the Midianites. Afterward [you shall be gathered](#) to your people."

Numbers 31:3

Arm some of your men for war

“Give weapons to some of your men”

go against Midian and carry out Yahweh’s vengeance on it

“go fight a war against the Midianites and punish them for what they did to us”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the people](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

³ And [Moses](#) spoke to [the people](#), saying, “Equip yourselves, some of the men with you, for the war. And they will be against Midian to give the vengeance of [Yahweh](#) on Midian.

Numbers 31:4

a thousand

“1,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Israel](#)
- [for a tribe](#)
- [for a tribe](#)

ULT

⁴ You shall send to the war for all the tribes of [Israel](#), a thousand [for a tribe](#), a thousand [for a tribe](#).”

Numbers 31:5

twelve thousand

“12,000” (See: [Numbers](#))

Israel’s thousands of men

“the thousands of Israel’s men”

one thousand was provided from each tribe

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “every tribe sent 1,000 men to war” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

twelve thousand men armed for war

All 12 tribes sent men, including the tribe of Levi. Each tribe sent 1,000 men into battle. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for a tribe](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁵ And a thousand [for a tribe](#) were provided from the thousands of [Israel](#), 12,000 equipped for battle.

Numbers 31:6

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- for a tribe
- Phinehas
- the son of
- Eleazar
- the priest
- holiness
- were in his hand

ULT

⁶ And Moses sent them to the war, a thousand for a tribe, them and Phinehas the son of Eleazar the priest to the war. And the vessels of holiness and the blasting trumpets were in his hand.

Numbers 31:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- had commanded
- Moses

ULT

⁷ And they waged war against Midian,
just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.
And they slew every male.

Numbers 31:8

Evi, Rekem, Zur, Hur, and Reba

These are names of kings of Midian. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Balaam son of Beor

Beor was Balaam's father. See how you translated this in [Numbers 22:5](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- they slew
- they slew
- the kings of
- the...kings of
- Balaam
- the son of
- by the sword

ULT

⁸ And they slew the kings of Midian with their pierced ones: Evi, and Rekem, and Zur, and Hur, and Reba, the five kings of Midian. And they slew Balaam the son of Beor by the sword.

Numbers 31:9

They took these as plunder

“They took the Midianites’ possessions as their own”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- their animals
- their wealth

ULT

⁹ And [the sons of Israel](#) took captive the women of Midian and their children. And they plundered all [their animals](#), and all their livestock, and all [their wealth](#).

Numbers 31:10

They burned all their cities where they lived and all their camps

“Israel’s army burned all the Midianites’ cities where the Midianites lived and all the Midianites’ camps”

Translation Words - ULT

- with the fire

ULT

¹⁰ And they burned with the fire all their cities with their dwellings and all their encampments.

Numbers 31:11

They took

“The army of Israel took”

plunder

This refers to the material goods they recovered from killing the Midianite men.

Translation Words - ULT

- of human
- and of animal

ULT

11 And they took all the spoil and all the booty of human and of animal.

Numbers 31:12

plains

a large area of flat land

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Eleazar
- the priest
- the sons of
- Israel
- the captives
- Moab
- the Jordan
- at Jericho

ULT

¹² And they brought to Moses and to Eleazar the priest, and to the congregation of the sons of Israel, the captives and the booty and the spoil to the camp at the plains of Moab which are beside the Jordan at Jericho.

Numbers 31:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- and Eleazar
- the priest
- And...went out

ULT

¹³ And Moses, and Eleazar the priest, and all the leaders of the congregation went out to meet them at the outside of the camp.

Numbers 31:14

the commanders of thousands and the captains of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. Alternate translation: “the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and the captains of 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders of large military divisions and the captains of smaller military divisions” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

¹⁴ And [Moses](#) was furious with [the appointed ones of the army, the leaders of the thousands and the leaders of the hundreds, the ones coming from the battle of the war.](#)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the appointed ones of](#)
- [the leaders of](#)
- [and the leaders of](#)

Numbers 31:15

Have you let all the women live?

The law was explicit on who would be permitted to live. The army violated the law by allowing all the women and children to live. This was a rebuke to the army leaders. (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)

ULT

¹⁵ And [Moses](#) said to them, "Have you let every woman live?"

Numbers 31:16

Look

This word is used here to draw the audience's attention to what is said next. Alternate translation: "Listen" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Balaam](#)
- [for the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [unfaithful](#)
- [against Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

16 Look, these were by the word of [Balaam for the sons of Israel](#) to commit [unfaithful against Yahweh](#) concerning the matter of Peor, and the plague was among the congregation of [Yahweh](#).

Numbers 31:17

has known a man by lying with him

“has had sexual relations with a man” (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- slay
- slay
- who has known

ULT

17 And now, [slay](#) every male among the children and [slay](#) every woman [who has known](#) a man by the bed of a male.

Numbers 31:18

General Information:

Moses speaks to the commanders of the Israelite army about becoming clean before God.

who have not known a man by lying with him

“who have not had sexual relations with any man.” This refers to girls who were virgins. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [keep alive](#)
- [has...known](#)

ULT

18 And [keep alive](#) for yourselves every child among the women who has not [known](#) the bed of a male.

Numbers 31:19

All of you

Moses is referring to anyone who fought in battle, not just the commanders.

you must purify yourselves

They must become spiritually clean again before entering the camp.

Translation Words - ULT

- [who have slain](#)
- [a person](#)
- [Purify yourselves](#)

ULT

19 And you, camp outside of the camp seven days, all [who have slain a person](#) and all who have touched a pierced one. [Purify yourselves](#) on the third day and on the seventh day, you and your captives.

Numbers 31:20

everything made of animal hide and goats' hair, and everything made of wood

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "everything that someone has made of animal hide, goats' hair, or wood" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [you shall purify](#)

ULT

²⁰ And [you shall purify](#) every garment and every vessel of skin and every work of goats, and every vessel of wood."

Numbers 31:21

General Information:

Eleazar teaches the soldiers the customs of becoming ceremonially clean before Yahweh after going to war.

Translation Words - ULT

- Eleazar
- the priest
- the law
- Yahweh
- has commanded
- Moses

ULT

²¹ And Eleazar the priest said to the men of the army who had gone to the battle, "This is a statute of the law that Yahweh has commanded Moses:

Numbers 31:22

gold, silver, bronze, iron, tin, and lead

metals that were used during that time period

Translation Words - ULT

- the gold
- the silver
- the bronze

ULT

²² Only the gold, and the silver, the bronze, the iron, the tin, and the lead,

Numbers 31:23

that resists fire

“that will not burn”

put it through the fire

“put it into the fire”

water of cleansing

This refers to water that someone has mixed with ashes from a sin offering. See: [Numbers 19:17-19](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- through the fire
- through the fire
- through the fire
- and it will become clean
- it must be purified
- purification

ULT

²³ every thing that can come through the fire you shall pass through the fire, and it will become clean. However, it must be purified with the water of purification. And all that can not come through the fire you shall pass through the water.

Numbers 31:24

then you will become clean

These are the customs of becoming ceremonially clean before Yahweh.

Translation Words - ULT

- and you will be clean

ULT

²⁴ And you shall wash your garments on the seventh day, **and you will be clean**. And afterward you may enter into the camp.”

Numbers 31:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

²⁵ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 31:26

Count all the plundered things that were taken

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Count all of the possessions that the soldiers took" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

the leaders of the community's ancestor's clans

"the leaders of each clan"

Translation Words - ULT

- the head of
- and the heads of
- the captives
- of human
- and of animal
- and Eleazar
- the priest
- the fathers of

ULT

²⁶ "Lift up the head of the booty of the captives, of human and of animal. You, and Eleazar the priest, and the heads of the fathers of the congregation.

Numbers 31:27

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁷ And you shall divide the booty between the wielders of the war who went out to the battle, and all the congregation.

Numbers 31:28

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses. The word “me” refers to Yahweh.

Then levy a tax to be given to me from the soldiers who went out to battle

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Collect a tax from the soldiers’ plunder and give it to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

every five hundred

“every 500” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And you shall raise](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)
- [life](#)
- [human](#)
- [the donkeys](#)
- [the flock](#)

ULT

28 [And you shall raise](#) a tax [for Yahweh](#) from with the men of the war who went out to the battle, one [life](#) from 500, from [human](#) and from cattle, and from [the donkeys](#), and from [the flock](#).

Numbers 31:29

from their half

“from the soldiers’ half”

to be presented to me

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “which he will present to me” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

²⁹ You shall take from half of them and give [the contribution of Yahweh to Eleazar the priest](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the contribution of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Eleazar](#)
- [the priest](#)

Numbers 31:30

General Information:

Yahweh continues speaking to Moses.

Also from the people of Israel's half

"Also from the people of Israel's half of the plunder"

who take care

those who oversee and maintain the tabernacle and sacrifices to Yahweh

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- human
- the donkeys
- the flock
- to the Levites
- the keepers of
- the dwelling of
- Yahweh

ULT

³⁰ And from the half of the sons of Israel you shall take one taken from the 50, from human, from cattle, from the donkeys, and from the flock, from every animal, and you shall give them to the Levites, the keepers of the keeping of the dwelling of Yahweh."

Numbers 31:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- Moses
- and Eleazar
- the priest
- Yahweh
- had commanded

ULT

³¹ And Moses and Eleazar the priest did just as Yahweh had commanded Moses.

Numbers 31:32

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main teaching. Here Moses begins listing the amount of plunder and how much went to the soldiers, to the people, and to Yahweh.

675,000 sheep

“six hundred and seventy-five thousand sheep” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the people of](#)
- [sheep](#)

ULT

³² And the booty, the remainder of the plunder that [the people of](#) the army plundered, was 675,000 [sheep](#),

Numbers 31:33

seventy-two thousand oxen

“72,000 oxen” (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

³³ and 72,000 cattle,

Numbers 31:34

sixty-one thousand donkeys

“61,000 donkeys” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and...donkeys](#)

ULT

³⁴ and 61,000 [donkeys](#),

Numbers 31:35

thirty-two thousand women

“32,000 women” (See: [Numbers](#))

women who had not known a man by lying with him

“women who had no had sexual relations with a man.” This refers to women who are virgins. (See: [Euphemism](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [human](#)
- [had...known](#)
- [life](#)

ULT

³⁵ and [human](#) lives, from the women who had not [known](#) the bed of a male, every [life](#), 32,000.

Numbers 31:36

General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the soldiers and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: [Numbers](#))

The half that was kept for the soldiers

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “The soldiers’ part of the sheep” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

337,000 sheep

“three hundred and thirty-seven thousand sheep” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sheep](#)

ULT

³⁶ And the half of the portion of the ones who went out with the army: the number of the sheep was 337,500.

Numbers 31:37

was 675

“was six hundred and seventy-five” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for Yahweh](#)
- [the flock](#)

ULT

³⁷ And the tax [for Yahweh](#) from [the flock](#) was 675.

Numbers 31:38

thirty-six thousand

36,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

seventy-two

72 (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for Yahweh](#)

ULT

³⁸ And the cattle were 36,000 and their tax [for Yahweh](#) was 72.

Numbers 31:39

General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the soldiers and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: [Numbers](#))

were 30,500

“were thirty thousand five hundred” (See: [Numbers](#))

sixty-one

61 (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the donkeys were](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)

ULT

³⁹ [And the donkeys were](#) 30,500, and their tax [for Yahweh](#) was 61.

Numbers 31:40

sixteen thousand

16,000 (See: [Numbers](#))

thirty-two

32 (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [human](#)
- [for Yahweh](#)
- [lives](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ And the [human](#) lives were 16,000, and their tax [for Yahweh](#) was 32 [lives](#).

Numbers 31:41

to be an offering presented to Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “to be an offering to Yahweh” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the contribution of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [to Eleazar](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [had commanded](#)

ULT

41 And [Moses](#) gave the tax of [the contribution of Yahweh to Eleazar the priest](#), just as [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#).

Numbers 31:42

General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the people and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Moses](#)

ULT

⁴² And from the half of [the sons of Israel](#) whom [Moses](#) had divided from the men who waged war,

Numbers 31:43

337,500 sheep

“three hundred and thirty-seven thousand five hundred sheep”
(See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the flock](#)

ULT

⁴³ and the half of the congregation from [the flock](#) was 337,500,

Numbers 31:44

thirty-six thousand oxen

36,000 oxen (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁴⁴ and 36,000 cattle,

Numbers 31:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [and...donkeys](#)

ULT

⁴⁵ and 30,500 [donkeys](#),

Numbers 31:46

sixteen thousand women

“16,000 women.” It has been stated earlier that all the males and the married women captives were put to death (See: [Numbers](#) and [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

ULT

⁴⁶ and 16,000 [human](#) lives.

Translation Words - ULT

- [human](#)

Numbers 31:47

General Information:

Moses is listing the plunder that goes to the people and the tax that goes to Yahweh. (See: [Numbers](#))

General Information:

The tax on the people's portion was higher than the tax on the soldiers' portion.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [human](#)
- [to the Levites](#)
- [the keepers of](#)
- [the dwelling of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [had commanded](#)

ULT

47 And [Moses](#) took from the half of [the sons of Israel](#) the taken, one from the 50, from [human](#) and from animal. And he gave them [to the Levites, the keepers of the keeping of the dwelling of Yahweh](#), just as [Yahweh had commanded Moses](#).

Numbers 31:48

the commanders over thousands and the captains over hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. Alternate translation: “the commanders over 1,000 soldiers and the captains over 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “the commanders over large military divisions and the captains over smaller military divisions” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 31:14](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁴⁸ And the appointed ones who were for the thousands of the army, [the leaders of the thousands](#) and [the leaders of the hundreds](#), came near to [Moses](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the leaders of](#)
- [and the leaders of](#)
- [Moses](#)

Numbers 31:49

Your servants have counted

The commanders refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a polite way to speak to someone with greater authority.

not one man is missing

This can be stated in a positive statement. “we know for certain that every man is here” (See: [Litotes](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Your servants](#)
- [the heads of](#)
- [were in our hand](#)
- [is missing](#)

ULT

⁴⁹ And they said to [Moses](#), “[Your servants](#) have lifted up [the heads of](#) the men of the war who [were in our hand](#), and not a man from us [is missing](#).”

Numbers 31:50

General Information:

The officers of the army continue speaking to Moses.

armlets and bracelets, signet rings, earrings, and necklaces

These are all types of jewelry that people wore.

to make atonement for ourselves before Yahweh

“to thank God for saving our lives”

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Yahweh
- gold
- to make atonement
- our lives

ULT

⁵⁰ And we have offered the offering of Yahweh, a man what he found of the objects of gold, armllet, and bracelet, signet ring, earring, and ornament, to make atonement for our lives before the face of Yahweh.”

Numbers 31:51

the gold and all the articles of craftsmanship

“all the articles of gold” or “all the golden jewelry”

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- and Eleazar
- the priest
- the gold

ULT

⁵¹ And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold from with them, every object of craft.

Numbers 31:52

All the gold of the offering that they gave to Yahweh—the offerings from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds—weighed

“All the gold of the offering that the commanders of thousands and the captains of hundreds gave to Yahweh weighed”

ULT

⁵² And all [the gold of](#) the contribution which they raised [to Yahweh](#) from with [the leaders of](#) the thousands and from with [the leaders of](#) the hundreds was 16,750 shekels.

from the commanders of thousands and from the captains of hundreds

This could mean: (1) these numbers represent the exact amount of soldiers that these commanders and captains led. Alternate translation: “from the commanders of 1,000 soldiers and from the captains of 100 soldiers” or (2) the words translated as “thousands” and “hundreds” do not represent exact numbers, but are the names of larger and smaller military divisions. Alternate translation: “from the commanders of large military divisions and from the captains of smaller military divisions” See how you translated a similar phrase in [Numbers 31:14](#). (See: [Numbers](#))

16750

“sixteen thousand, seven hundred and fifty” (See: [Numbers](#))

shekels

A shekel is 11 grams. (See: [Biblical Money](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the gold of](#)
- [to Yahweh](#)
- [the leaders of](#)
- [the leaders of](#)

Numbers 31:53

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁵³ The men of the army had plundered,
a man for himself.

Numbers 31:54

as a reminder of the people of Israel for Yahweh

The gold will remind the people that Yahweh gave them victory. It will also remind Yahweh that the people fulfilled his revenge on the Midianites.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- and Eleazar
- the priest
- the gold
- the leaders of
- meeting
- for the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh

ULT

⁵⁴ And Moses and Eleazar the priest took the gold from with the leaders of the thousands and the hundreds. And they brought it to the tent of meeting, a memorial for the sons of Israel before the face of Yahweh.

Numbers 32

Numbers 32 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Reuben and Gad's inheritance

Reuben and Gad were given the land conquered east of the Jordan River. This land had good pastures, and suited these tribes because they had many sheep, goats and cattle. They had not yet entered into the Promised Land, and it would have been sinful to not fight with the rest of Israel. So they promised to enter the land to fight with the other tribes, and then return to their own land. (See: [sin](#), [sinful](#), [sinner](#), [sinning](#) and [Promised Land](#) and [promise](#), [promised](#))

Numbers 32:1

Now

This word is used here to mark a break in the main story line. Here Moses tells background information about the tribes of Reuben and Gad. (See: [Background Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the sons of
- and of the sons of
- Reuben
- Gad
- the land of
- the land of

ULT

¹ And the livestock of the sons of Reuben and of the sons of Gad was great, very numerous. And they saw the land of Jazer and the land of Gilead, and behold, the place was a place of livestock.

Numbers 32:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- and the sons of
- Gad
- Reuben
- Moses
- Eleazar
- the priest

ULT

² And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben came and said to Moses, and to Eleazar the priest, and to the leaders of the congregation, saying,

Numbers 32:3

Ataroth, Dibon, Jazer, Nimrah, Heshbon, Elealeh, Sebam, Nebo, and Beon

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³ "Ataroth, and Dibon, and Jazer, and
Nimrah, and Heshbon, and Elealeh, and
Sebam, and Nebo, and Beon

Numbers 32:4

General Information:

The people from Reuben and Gad continue speaking to Moses, Eleazar, and the other leaders.

the lands that Yahweh attacked before the community of Israel

Yahweh enabling the Israelites to conquer the people who lived in the land is spoken of as if Yahweh went before the Israelites and attacked the people. Alternate translation: “the lands where Yahweh enabled us to defeat the people living there” (See: [Metaphor](#))

We, your servants

The people of the tribes of Reuben and Gad refer to themselves in this way to show respect to a person of higher authority.

Translation Words - ULT

- [are the land](#)
- [a land of](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁴ [are the land](#) that [Yahweh](#) struck before the face of the congregation of [Israel](#). It is [a land of](#) livestock and livestock belongs to your servants.”

Numbers 32:5

If we have found favor in your eyes

Here “found favor” is an idiom that means be approved of or that the leaders are pleased with them. Here “eyes” are a metonym for sight, and sight is a metaphor representing his evaluation. Alternate translation: “If we have found favor with you” or “If you are pleased with us” (See: [Idiom](#) and [Metonymy](#) and [Metaphor](#))

ULT

⁵ And they said, “If we have found favor in your eyes, let this land be given to your servants as a possession. Do not make us cross over the Jordan.”

let this land be given to us

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “give this land to us” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Do not make us cross over the Jordan

They wanted the land on the east side of the Jordan River instead of crossing over to the west side and claiming land there. Alternate translation: “Do not make us cross over the Jordan to take possession of land on that side” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- favor
- land
- to your servants
- the Jordan

Numbers 32:6

Should your brothers go to war while you settle down here?

Moses asks this question to rebuke the people from the tribes of Gad and Reuben. Alternate translation: "It is wrong for you to settle down in this land while your brothers go to war." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁶ And Moses said to the sons of Gad and to the sons of Reuben, "Will your brothers go to the war and you yourselves will dwell here?"

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- to the sons of
- and to the sons of
- Gad
- Reuben

Numbers 32:7

Why discourage the hearts ... the land that Yahweh has given them?

Moses asks this question to correct the people from the tribes of Gad and Reuben. Alternate translation: "Do not discourage the hearts ... the land that Yahweh has given them." or "Your actions would discourage the hearts ... the land that Yahweh has given them." (See: [Rhetorical Question](#))

ULT

⁷ And why do you discourage [the heart of the sons of Israel](#) from crossing over into [the land](#) that [Yahweh](#) has given to them?

discourage the hearts of the people of Israel from going

Here the word "hearts" represents the people themselves and refers to the seat of their emotions. Alternate translation: "discourage the people of Israel from going" or "cause the people of Israel to not want to go" (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the heart of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [the land](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Numbers 32:8

General Information:

Moses continues speaking to the people of Reuben and Gad.

Translation Words - ULT

- your fathers
- the land

ULT

⁸ Thus [your fathers](#) did when I sent them from Kadesh Barnea to see [the land](#).

Numbers 32:9

Valley of Eshkol

This is the name of a place. See how you translated this in [Numbers 13:23](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

They saw the land

This refers to seeing what was in the land. Alternate translation:

“They saw the strong people and cities in the land” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

discouraged the hearts of the people of Israel

Here the word “hearts” represents the people themselves and refers to the seat of their emotions. See how you translated this in [Numbers 32:7](#). Alternate translation: “discouraged the people of Israel” (See: [Synecdoche](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [the land](#) (2)
- [the heart of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

⁹ And they went up as far as the wadi of Eshkol. And they saw [the land](#) and discouraged [the heart of the sons of Israel](#) to not enter into [the land](#) that [Yahweh](#) had given to them.

Numbers 32:10

Yahweh's anger was kindled

Yahweh becoming angry is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that begins to burn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

10 And the nose of [Yahweh](#) burned on that day. [And he swore](#), saying,

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [And he swore](#)

Numbers 32:11

none of the men

“none of the people.” This phrase refers to both men and women.

twenty years old and up

“20 years old or older” (See: [Numbers](#))

completely followed me

Being devoted to Yahweh and obeying him are spoken of as if they were following Yahweh. Alternate translation: “completely obeyed me” or “been completely devoted to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from Egypt](#)
- [from a son of](#)
- [I swore](#)
- [and to Jacob](#)

ULT

11 'If the men who went up [from Egypt](#), [from a son of](#) 20 years and upward, will see the ground which [I swore](#) to Abraham, to Isaac, [and to Jacob](#)! For they are not fully after me,

Numbers 32:12

Jephunneh ... Nun

These are names of men. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kenizzite

This is the name of a people group. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the son of
- the son of
- and Joshua
- Yahweh

ULT

¹² except Caleb the son of Jephunneh the Kenizzite and Joshua the son of Nun because they are fully after Yahweh.'

Numbers 32:13

Yahweh's anger was kindled against Israel

Yahweh becoming angry is spoken of as if his anger was a fire that begins to burn. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Yahweh became very angry with Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

forty years

"40 years" (See: [Numbers](#))

all the generation ... sight was destroyed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "he destroyed all the generation ... sight" or "all the generation ... sight had died" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

who had done evil in his sight

Being in someone's sight means to be in front of that person where he can see. Alternate translation: "who had done evil before Yahweh" or "who had done evil in Yahweh's presence" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [against Israel](#)
- [in the wilderness](#)
- [evil](#)

ULT

13 And the nose of [Yahweh](#) burned [against Israel](#). And he made them wander [in the wilderness](#) 40 years until the finishing of all the generation who had done [evil](#) in the eyes of [Yahweh](#).

Numbers 32:14

you have risen up in your fathers' place

The people of Reuben and Gad acting like their ancestors did is spoken of as if they were standing in the place where their ancestors did. Alternate translation: "you have begun to act just like your ancestors" (See: [Metaphor](#))

to add to Yahweh's burning anger toward Israel

The people causing Yahweh to become angrier is spoken of as if his anger was a fire and the people are adding more fuel to that fire. Alternate translation: "to cause Yahweh to be even more angry with Israel" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [your fathers](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

14 And behold, you have risen up in place of [your fathers](#), a brood of sinful men, to add more to the burning of the nose of [Yahweh](#) toward [Israel](#).

Numbers 32:15

all this people

“this entire people” or “all this generation of people”

Translation Words - ULT

- you turn
- in the wilderness
- people

ULT

¹⁵ If you turn from after him, then he will yet again leave him in the wilderness and you will have destroyed all this people.”

Numbers 32:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the flock

ULT

¹⁶ And they came near to him and said,
“Here we will build walls of **the flock** for
our livestock and cities for our children.

Numbers 32:17

will be ready and armed

“will be ready with weapons” or “will be ready to fight a war”

in the fortified cities

“in the secured cities”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the land

ULT

17 And we ourselves will be equipped for war, hurrying before the face of [the sons of Israel](#) until when we have brought them into their place. And our children will dwell in the cities of the fortification because of the face of those who dwell in [the land](#).

Numbers 32:18

General Information:

The leaders of Gad and Reuben continue speaking.

has obtained his inheritance

The land that the people were to receive as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they were to obtain. Alternate translation: “has taken possession of his portion of the land” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

18 We will not return to our houses until the sons of Israel get an inheritance for themselves, a man his inheritance.

Translation Words - ULT

- We will...return
- our houses
- the sons of
- Israel
- get an inheritance for themselves
- his inheritance

Numbers 32:19

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- we will...inherit
- our inheritance
- of the Jordan
- the Jordan

ULT

¹⁹ For we will not inherit with them from across of the Jordan and beyond, because our inheritance came to us from beyond the Jordan toward the sunrise.”

Numbers 32:20

if you arm yourselves

“if you take your weapons”

before Yahweh

This means Yahweh will go with them to battle and enable them to defeat their enemy and take their land.
Alternate translation: “in the presence of Yahweh” (See: [Idiom](#))

ULT

²⁰ And [Moses](#) said to them, “If you do this thing, if you equip yourselves before the face of [Yahweh](#) for the war,

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

Numbers 32:21

until he has driven out his enemies from before him

“until Yahweh has driven out his enemies from his presence.” The pronouns here all refer to Yahweh. Yahweh enabling the Israelites to defeat their enemies is spoken of as if Yahweh were fighting their battles. Alternate translation: “until Yahweh has enabled your soldiers to defeat the enemy and force them away from his presence” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²¹ then every man equipped for war shall cross over the Jordan for you before the face of Yahweh, until he has dispossessed his enemy from his face

Translation Words - ULT

- [then...shall cross over](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [his enemy](#)

Numbers 32:22

the land is subdued before him

Here the word “land” refers to the people who live there. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “in his presence the Israelites have subdued the people who live in the land” (See: [Metonymy](#) and [Active or Passive](#))

you may return

It is implied that they will return to the east side of the Jordan. Alternate translation: “you may return to this land on the east side of the Jordan” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

You will be guiltless toward Yahweh and toward Israel

This could mean: (1) “You will have fulfilled your obligation to Yahweh and to Israel” or (2) “There will be nothing for which Yahweh or the people of Israel can blame you.”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [land](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [you may return](#)
- [free of obligation](#)
- [and from Israel](#)

ULT

²² and [the land](#) is subdued before the face of [Yahweh](#), then afterward [you may return](#). And you will be [free of obligation](#) from Yahweh and from [Israel](#). And this [land](#) will be for you for a possession before the face of [Yahweh](#).

Numbers 32:23

Be sure that your sin will find you out

Moses speaks of sin as if it were a person who will condemn the guilty person. This means that the people cannot escape the punishment that their sin deserves. Alternate translation: “Know for sure that Yahweh will punish you for your sin” (See: [Personification](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- you will have sinned
- your sin
- against Yahweh
- And know

ULT

²³ And if you do not do so, behold, you will have sinned against Yahweh. And know that your sin will find you.

Numbers 32:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁴ Build for yourselves cities for your children and walls for your livestock. And you shall do what has gone out from your mouth.”

Numbers 32:25

Your servants

The people of Gad and Reuben refer to themselves as “your servants.” This is a polite way of speaking to someone with greater authority.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- and the sons of
- Gad
- Reuben
- Moses
- Your servants
- my master
- is commanding

ULT

²⁵ And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben spoke to Moses, saying, “Your servants will do just as my master is commanding.”

Numbers 32:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- our animals
- the Gilead

ULT

²⁶ Our children, our wives, our livestock, and all our animals will be there in the cities of the Gilead.

Numbers 32:27

will cross over

You can make it clear that they will cross over the Jordan. Alternate translation: "will cross over the Jordan River" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

every man who is armed for war

"every man prepared for war"

Translation Words - ULT

- [And your servants](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [my master](#)

ULT

27 [And your servants](#) will cross over, every man equipped for war of the army, before the face of [Yahweh](#) for the war, just as [my master](#) has spoken."

Numbers 32:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- And...commanded
- Eleazar
- the priest
- Joshua
- the son of
- of the sons of
- the heads of
- the fathers of
- Israel

ULT

²⁸ And Moses commanded Eleazar the priest, and Joshua the son of Nun, and the heads of the fathers of the tribes of the sons of Israel concerning them.

Numbers 32:29

every man who is armed

“every man who is ready with his weapon”

if the land is subdued before you

Here the word “land” refers to the people who live there. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “if Yahweh subdues before you the people living in the land” or “if they help you subdue the people living in the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [and the sons of](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the land](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [the Gilead](#)

ULT

²⁹ And [Moses](#) said to them, “If [the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben](#) cross over [the Jordan](#) with you, every equipped man for the war before the face of [Yahweh](#), and [the land](#) is subdued before your faces, then you will give to them [the land of the Gilead](#) as a possession.

Numbers 32:30

then they will acquire their possessions among you in the land of Canaan

“then the descendants of Gad and Reuben will receive land with you
in Canaan”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Canaan](#)

ULT

³⁰ And if the men equipped for war do not cross over with you, then they will take possession in your midst in the land of [Canaan](#).”

Numbers 32:31

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- and the sons of
- Gad
- Reuben
- Yahweh
- your servants

ULT

³¹ And the sons of Gad and the sons of Reuben answered, saying, "What Yahweh has spoken to your servants, so we will do."

Numbers 32:32

We will cross over armed

You can make it clear that they will cross the Jordan. Alternate translation: "We will cross over the Jordan ready to fight" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

our possessed inheritance

The land that the people were to receive as a permanent possession is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they were to obtain. Alternate translation: "the portion of land that we will possess" (See: [Metaphor](#))

will remain with us

This idiom refers to ownership. Alternate translation: "will be ours" (See: [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [the land of](#)
- [Canaan](#)
- [our inheritance](#)
- [the Jordan](#)

ULT

³² We will cross over, the men equipped for war, before the face of [Yahweh](#) into [the land of Canaan](#). And with us will be the possession of [our inheritance](#) from beyond [the Jordan](#)."

Numbers 32:33

the kingdom of Sihon ... and of Og

These are names of kings who ruled two separate kingdoms.
Alternate translation: "the kingdom of Sihon ... and the kingdom of Og" (See: [Ellipsis](#) and [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [to the sons of](#)
- [and to the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [the Amorites](#)
- [the Bashan](#)
- [the land](#)
- [the...land](#)
- [Gad](#)
- [Reuben](#)
- [the tribe of](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [the kingdom of](#)
- [the kingdom of](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the king of \(2\)](#)

ULT

³³ And [Moses](#) gave to them, [to the sons of Gad](#) and [to the sons of Reuben](#), and to the half of [the tribe of Manasseh](#) [the son of Joseph](#), [the kingdom of Sihon](#) [the king of the Amorites](#), and [the kingdom of Og](#) [the king of the Bashan](#), [the land of its cities with the borders of the cities of the surrounding land](#).

Numbers 32:34

Dibon, Ataroth, Aroer

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Gad](#)

ULT

³⁴ And [the sons of Gad](#) built Dibon, and Ataroth, and Aroer,

Numbers 32:35

Atroth Shophan, Jazer, Jogbehah

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁵ and Atroth Shophan, and Jazer, and Jogbehah,

Numbers 32:36

Beth Nimrah, and Beth Haran

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the flock](#)

ULT

³⁶ and Beth Nimrah, and Beth Haran,
the cities of fortification and the walls of
[the flock](#).

Numbers 32:37

Heshbon, Elealeh, Kiriathaim

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And the sons of](#)
- [Reuben](#)

ULT

³⁷ [And the sons of Reuben](#) built
Heshbon, and Elealeh, and Kiriathaim,

Numbers 32:38

Nebo, Baal Meon ... Sibmah

These are names of cities. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

their names were later changed

This can be translated in active form. Alternate translation: “people later changed the names of these cities” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [names](#)
- [by names](#)
- [the names of](#)
- [And they called](#)

ULT

³⁸ and Nebo, and Baal Meon ([names](#) were changed) and Sibmah. [And they called the names of](#) the cities that they built [by names](#).

Numbers 32:39

Machir

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this name in [Numbers 26:29](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- and dispossessed
- the Amorites

ULT

³⁹ And [the sons of Machir](#) [the son of Manasseh](#) went to Gilead and captured it [and dispossessed the Amorites](#) who were in it.

Numbers 32:40

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- the Gilead
- the son of

ULT

⁴⁰ And Moses gave the Gilead to Machir the son of Manasseh, and he dwelled in it.

Numbers 32:41

Jair

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Havvoth Jair

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the son of](#)
- [went](#)
- [And he called](#)

ULT

41 And Jair [the son of](#) Manasseh [went](#) and captured their tent villages. [And he called](#) them Havvoth Jair.

Numbers 32:42

Nobah

This is the name of a man. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Kenath

This is the name of a city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [went](#)
- [And he called](#)
- [by his name](#)

ULT

⁴² And Nobah [went](#) and captured Kenath and its daughters. [And he called](#) it Nobah, [by his name](#).

Numbers 33

Numbers 33 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter is a summary of Israel's exodus from Egypt to the Promised Land, including their wandering through the desert. The phrase "they set out" means "they left."

Numbers 33:1

by their armed groups

“by their military divisions.” This means that each tribe had their own men, who were armed, to protect them. See how you translated “armed groups” in [Numbers 1:3](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [went out](#)
- [Egypt](#)
- [by the hand of](#)
- [Moses](#)
- [and Aaron](#)

ULT

¹ These are the journeys of [the sons of Israel](#) who [went out](#) from the land of [Egypt](#) according to their tribes [by the hand of Moses and Aaron](#).

Numbers 33:2

as commanded by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “as Yahweh commanded” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

departure after departure

“from one place to another place”

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moses](#)
- [Yahweh](#)

ULT

² And [Moses](#) wrote down their departure points according to their tribes in accordance with the mouth of [Yahweh](#) And these are their journeys according to their departure points.

Numbers 33:3

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

during the first month, leaving on the fifteenth day of the first month

Here “first” is the ordinal number one and “fifteenth” is the ordinal number fifteen. This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. The fifteenth day is near the beginning of April on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

the people of Israel left openly, in the sight of all the Egyptians

“the Israelites left in plain view of the Egyptians”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Passover](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [went out](#)
- [with a...hand](#)

ULT

³ And they set out from Rameses on the first month, on day 15 of the first month, from the day after [the Passover](#) the sons of Israel went out with a raised [hand](#) before the eyes of all the Egyptians.

Numbers 33:4

their firstborn

This refers to the firstborn sons. Alternate translation: “their firstborn sons” (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

he also inflicted punishment on their gods

Yahweh proving that he is more powerful than all of the false gods that the Egyptians worshiped is spoken of as if Yahweh punished those false gods. Alternate translation: “he also proved that he is greater than their gods” (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [were burying](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [the firstborn](#)

ULT

⁴ And the Egyptians [were burying](#) those whom [Yahweh](#) had struck down, all [the firstborn](#). And [Yahweh](#) enacted judgment against their gods.

Numbers 33:5

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

set out from

“departed from”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁵ And [the sons of Israel](#) set out from Rameses and camped at Succoth.

Numbers 33:6

on the edge of the wilderness

“on the border of the wilderness”

ULT

⁶ And they set out from Succoth and camped at Etham, which is at the edge of the wilderness.

Numbers 33:7

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- and turned back
- the face of

ULT

⁷ And they set out from Etham and turned back to Pi Hahiroth, which is on the face of Baal Zephon. And they camped before the face of Migdol.

Numbers 33:8

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

passed through the middle of the sea

This refers to when Yahweh divided the Red Sea so that the Israelites could escape from the Egyptian army.

Translation Words - ULT

- [and passed](#)
- [in the wilderness of](#)

ULT

⁸ And they set out from the face of Hahiroth [and passed](#) through the midst of the sea to the wilderness. And they went a distance of three days [in the wilderness of](#) Etham and camped at Marah.

Numbers 33:9

twelve springs ... seventy palm trees

“12 springs...70 palm trees” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [palm trees](#)

ULT

⁹ And they set out from Marah and camped at Elim. And at Elim were 12 springs of water and 70 [palm trees](#). And they camped there.

Numbers 33:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹⁰ And they set out from Elim and camped beside the Sea of Reeds.

Numbers 33:11

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wilderness of](#)

ULT

11 And they set out from the Sea of Reeds and camped [in the wilderness of](#) Sin.

Numbers 33:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹² And they set out from the wilderness of Sin and camped at Dophkah.

Numbers 33:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹³ And they set out from Dophkah and camped at Alush.

Numbers 33:14

where no water was found for the people to drink

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “where the people could not find water to drink” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the people](#)

ULT

¹⁴ And they set out from Alush and camped at Rephidim, and there was no water there [for the people](#) to drink.

Numbers 33:15

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [in the wilderness of](#)

ULT

15 And they set out from Rephidim and camped [in the wilderness of](#) Sinai.

Numbers 33:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

16 And they set out from the wilderness of Sinai and camped at Kibroth Hattaavah.

Numbers 33:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

17 And they set out from Kibroth
Hattaavah and camped at Hazeroth.

Numbers 33:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

18 And they set out from Hazeroth and camped at Rithmah.

Numbers 33:19

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

19 And they set out from Rithmah and camped at Rimmon Perez.

Numbers 33:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁰ And they set out from Rimmon Perez and camped at Libnah.

Numbers 33:21

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²¹ And they set out from Libnah and camped at Rissah.

Numbers 33:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²² And they set out from Rissah and camped at Kehelathah.

Numbers 33:23

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

23 And they set out from Kehelathah and camped at Mount Shepher.

Numbers 33:24

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁴ And they set out from Mount Shepher and camped at Haradah.

Numbers 33:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁵ And they set out from Haradah and camped at Makheloth.

Numbers 33:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁶ And they set out from Makheloth and camped at Tahath.

Numbers 33:27

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [at Terah](#)

ULT

27 And they set out from Tahath and camped [at Terah](#).

Numbers 33:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- from Terah

ULT

²⁸ And they set out from Terah and camped at Mithkah.

Numbers 33:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

²⁹ And they set out from Mithkah and camped at Hashmonah.

Numbers 33:30

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁰ And they set out from Hashmonah and camped at Moseroth.

Numbers 33:31

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³¹ And they set out from Moseroth and camped at Bene Jaakan.

Numbers 33:32

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³² And they set out from Bene Jaakan and camped at Hor Haggidgad.

Numbers 33:33

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³³ And they set out from Hor Haggidgad and camped at Jotbathah.

Numbers 33:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³⁴ And they set out from Jotbathah and camped at Abronah.

Numbers 33:35

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

³⁵ And they set out from Abronah and camped at Ezion Geber.

Numbers 33:36

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in the wilderness of

ULT

³⁶ And they set out from Ezion Geber and camped in the wilderness of Zin (it is Kadesh).

Numbers 33:37

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the land of

ULT

³⁷ And they set out from Kadesh and camped at Mount Hor, at the edge of the land of Edom.

Numbers 33:38

in the fortieth year after

Here “fortieth” is the ordinal number for forty. Alternate translation: “40 years after” (See: [Ordinal Numbers](#))

in the fifth month, on the first day of the month

This “fifth” is the ordinal number for five. This “first” is the ordinal number for one. This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. The first day is near the middle of July on Western calendars. (See: [Hebrew Months](#) and [Ordinal Numbers](#))

ULT

38 And [Aaron the priest](#) went up to Mount Hor in accordance with the mouth of [Yahweh and died](#) there in the fortieth year of the going out of [the sons of Israel](#) from the land of [Egypt](#), in the fifth month, on 1 of the month.

Translation Words - ULT

- [Aaron](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [Yahweh](#)
- [and died](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [Egypt](#)

Numbers 33:39

123 years old

“one hundred and twenty-three years old” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And Aaron](#)
- [was a son of](#)

ULT

³⁹ [And Aaron was a son of](#) 123 years when he died at Mount Hor.

Numbers 33:40

The Canaanite, the king of Arad

“The Canaanite king of Arad”

Arad

This was the name of a Canaanite city. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

heard of the coming of the people of Israel

“heard that the people of Israel were coming”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the Canaanite](#)
- [Canaan](#)
- [the king of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁴⁰ And [the Canaanite, the king of Arad](#) (and he was dwelling in the Negev in the land of [Canaan](#)), heard when [the sons of Israel](#) came.

Numbers 33:41

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

41 And they set out from Mount Hor and camped at Zalmonah.

Numbers 33:42

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴² And they set out from Zalmonah and camped at Punon.

Numbers 33:43

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁴³ And they set out from Punon and camped at Oboth.

Numbers 33:44

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)

ULT

44 And they set out from Oboth and camped at Iye Abarim, on the border of [Moab](#).

Numbers 33:45

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- at Dibon Gad

ULT

⁴⁵ And they set out from Iye and camped at Dibon Gad.

Numbers 33:46

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- from Dibon Gad

ULT

⁴⁶ And they set out from Dibon Gad and camped at Almon Diblathaim.

Numbers 33:47

General Information:

Moses lists the places the Israelites went after they left Egypt. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

47 And they set out from Almon
Diblathaim and camped in the
mountains of Abarim, before the face of
Nebo.

Numbers 33:48

plains

a large area of flat land

Translation Words - ULT

- [Moab](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [at Jericho](#)

ULT

48 And they set out from the mountains of Abarim and camped in the plains of [Moab](#) beside [the Jordan at Jericho](#).

Numbers 33:49

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jordan
- Moab

ULT

⁴⁹ And they camped beside the Jordan, from Beth Jeshimoth to Abel Shittim in the plains of Moab.

Numbers 33:50

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moab
- the Jordan
- at Jericho

ULT

⁵⁰ And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho, saying,

Numbers 33:51

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the Jordan
- the land of
- Canaan

ULT

⁵¹ “Speak to [the sons of Israel](#) and say to them, ‘When you cross over [the Jordan](#) into [the land of Canaan](#),

Numbers 33:52

demolish all their high places

“destroy all of their high places”

Translation Words - ULT

- then you shall dispossess
- the land
- And you shall destroy
- you shall destroy

ULT

⁵² then you shall dispossess all those who dwell in the land from your face. And you shall destroy all their carved figures, and you shall destroy all the figures of their molten metal, and you shall destroy all their high places.

Numbers 33:53

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

Translation Words - ULT

- And you shall take possession of
- the land
- the land (2)
- to possess

ULT

⁵³ And you shall take possession of the land and dwell in it, because I have given the land to you to possess it.

Numbers 33:54

inherit the land

The Israelites claiming the land as their permanent possession is spoken of as if they were inheriting the land. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Wherever the lot falls to each clan, that land will belong to it

“Each clan will receive the land according to how the lot falls”

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [according to your clans](#)
- [his inheritance](#)
- [his inheritance](#)
- [you shall inherit for yourselves](#)
- [the lot](#)
- [goes out](#)
- [According to the tribes of](#)
- [your fathers](#)

ULT

54 And you shall inherit for yourselves [the land](#) by lot, [according to your clans](#). You shall increase [his inheritance](#) for the numerous, and you shall decrease [his inheritance](#) for the few. To there where [the lot goes out](#) for him, to him it will belong. [According to the tribes of your fathers you shall inherit for yourselves](#).

Numbers 33:55

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

like objects in your eyes and thorns in your sides

Just like a small object in a person's eye or a small thorn that sticks into a person skin can cause great irritation, so even a small portion of the Canaanites, if left in the land, would cause great trouble for the Israelites. (See: [Simile](#))

ULT

⁵⁵ And if you do not disposses those who dwell in [the land](#) from your face, then whom you leave from them will be as thorns in your eyes and as pricks in your sides. And they shall vex you on [the land](#) that you are about to dwell in.

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [the land](#)

Numbers 33:56

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁵⁶ And it will happen that I will do to you just as I had intended to do to them.”

Numbers 34

Numbers 34 General Notes

Structure and formatting

The ULT sets the lines in 34:19-28 farther to the right on the page than the rest of the text because they are long lists.

Special concepts in this chapter

The boundaries

Moses told them all of the land they would inherit and live in and said that they should divide it up by casting lots. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#))

Numbers 34:1

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 34:2

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Command
- the sons of
- Israel
- the land of
- is the land
- the land of
- Canaan
- Canaan
- as an inheritance

ULT

² “Command the sons of Israel and say to them, ‘When you enter into the land of Canaan, this is the land that has fallen to you as an inheritance, the land of Canaan and its borders,

Numbers 34:3

wilderness of Zin

See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 33:12](#).

Translation Words - ULT

- [the hands of](#)

ULT

³ and the corner of the south will be for you from the wilderness of Zin beside [the hands of](#) Edom. And the border of the south will be for you from the end of the Sea of Salt eastward.

Numbers 34:4

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and cross over](#)
- [and cross over](#)
- [And it will go out to](#)

ULT

⁴ And the border will turn for you from the south to the ascent of Akrabbim [and cross over](#) to Zin. And its outer limits will be from the south to Kadesh Barnea. [And it will go out to](#) Hazar Addar [and cross over](#) to Azmon.

Numbers 34:5

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [Egypt](#)

ULT

⁵ And the border will turn from Azmon toward the wadi of [Egypt](#) and its outer limits will be to the sea.

Numbers 34:6

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites.

ULT

⁶ And the border of the west, it will be for you the Great Sea and the border. This will be for you the border of the west.

Numbers 34:7

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Mount Hor

See how you translated this name in [Numbers 20:22](#).

ULT

⁷ And this will be for you the border of the north, from the Great Sea you shall mark out for you to Mount Hor.

Numbers 34:8

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

⁸ From Mount Hor you shall mark out to Lebo Hamath, and the outer limits of the border will be to Zedad.

Numbers 34:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- And...will go out

ULT

⁹ And the border will go out to Ziphron and its outer limits will be at Hazar Enan. This will be for you the border of the north.

Numbers 34:10

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses where the borders are for the land that he is giving to the Israelites. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

ULT

10 And you shall mark out for you the border to the east from Hazar Enan to Shepham.

Numbers 34:11

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

11 And the border will go down from Shepham to Riblah, from east of Ain. And the border will go down and strike on the shoulder of the Sea of Kinnereth eastward.

Numbers 34:12

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- to the Jordan
- the land

ULT

¹² And the border will go down to the Jordan and its outer limits will be the Sea of Salt. This will be for you the land according to its borders all around.”

Numbers 34:13

to the nine tribes and to the half tribe

This means the remaining tribes of Israel who will live on the west side of the Jordan River in the land of Canaan. The tribes of Reuben and Gad and the half tribe of Manasseh had already received their land on the east side of the Jordan River.

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- And...commanded
- has commanded
- the sons of
- Israel
- is the land
- you will inherit for yourselves
- Yahweh

ULT

¹³ And Moses commanded the sons of Israel, saying, "This is the land, it which you will inherit for yourselves by lot, which Yahweh has commanded to give to the nine tribes and to the half of the tribe.

Numbers 34:14

following the assignment of property to their ancestor's tribe

“according to how Yahweh assigned the property to their ancestor's tribe”

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the sons of
- according to the house of
- according to the house of (2)
- their fathers
- their fathers
- their inheritance

ULT

¹⁴ For the tribe of the sons of the Reubenites according to the house of their fathers and the tribe of the sons of the Gadites according to the house of their fathers have taken, and the half of the tribe of Manasseh has taken their inheritance.

Numbers 34:15

The two tribes and the half tribe

“The tribes of Reuben and Gad, and half of the tribe of Manasseh”

Translation Words - ULT

- [their inheritance](#)
- [the Jordan](#)
- [at Jericho](#)

ULT

15 The two tribes and the half of the tribe have taken [their inheritance](#) from beyond [the Jordan at Jericho](#) eastward, toward the sunrise.”

Numbers 34:16

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

¹⁶ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 34:17

divide the land for your inheritance

Here “your” is plural and refers to the people of Israel. These men will cast lots to divide the land. Then they will distribute it to the tribes. (See: [Forms of You](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [are the names of](#)
- [will divide...as an inheritance](#)
- [the land](#)
- [Eleazar](#)
- [the priest](#)
- [and Joshua](#)
- [the son of](#)

ULT

17 “These [are the names of](#) the men who [will divide the land](#) for you [as an inheritance](#): [Eleazar the priest](#) and [Joshua the son of Nun](#).

Numbers 34:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the land

ULT

¹⁸ And you shall take one leader, one leader from a tribe to divide the land as an inheritance.

Numbers 34:19

General Information:

This is the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes.
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- are the names of
- of the tribe of
- Judah
- the son of

ULT

19 And these are the names of the men:
of the tribe of Judah, Caleb the son of
Jephunneh;

Numbers 34:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- Shemuel

ULT

²⁰ and of the tribe of the sons of
Simeon, Shemuel the son of Ammihud;

Numbers 34:21

General Information:

This continues the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- of the tribe of
- Benjamin
- the son of

ULT

²¹ of the tribe of Benjamin, Elidad the son of Kislou;

Numbers 34:22

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of

ULT

²² and of the tribe of the sons of Dan a leader, Bukki the son of Jogli;

Numbers 34:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- of the sons of
- the sons of
- the son of
- Joseph
- of the tribe of

ULT

²³ of the sons of Joseph, of the tribe of the sons of Manasseh a leader, Hannel the son of Ephod;

Numbers 34:24

General Information:

This continues the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- Ephraim

ULT

²⁴ and of the tribe of [the sons of Ephraim](#) a leader, Kemuel [the son of Shiptan](#);

Numbers 34:25

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of

ULT

²⁵ and of the tribe of the sons of Zebulun a leader, Elizaphan the son of Parnak;

Numbers 34:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- Issachar

ULT

²⁶ and of the tribe of the sons of Issachar a leader, Paltiel the son of Azzan;

Numbers 34:27

General Information:

This concludes the list of men who will help divide the land among the tribes. (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- Asher

ULT

²⁷ and of the tribe of [the sons of Asher](#) a leader, Ahihud [the son of Shelomi](#);

Numbers 34:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- the son of
- Naphtali

ULT

²⁸ and of the tribe of the sons of Naphtali a leader, Pedahel the son of Ammihud.”

Numbers 34:29

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- commanded
- for the sons of
- Israel
- Canaan

ULT

²⁹ These are whom Yahweh commanded to divide an inheritance for the sons of Israel in the land of Canaan.

Numbers 35

Numbers 35 General Notes

Structure and formatting

This chapter continues the material from the previous chapter.

Special concepts in this chapter

Revenge

Yahweh told Moses to establish safe places for people who accidentally killed other people. This prevented revenge killings. Justice is an important concept in this chapter. (See: [avenge](#), [avenger](#), [revenge](#), [vengeance](#) and [just](#), [justice](#), [unjust](#), [injustice](#), [justify](#), [justification](#))

Numbers 35:1

plains

a large area of flat land

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses
- Moab
- the Jordan
- at Jericho

ULT

¹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho, saying,

Numbers 35:2

give some of their own shares of land to the Levites

Yahweh did not give the Levites their own land, so they had to live in cities that belonged to other tribes.

pastureland

an area of land where animals feed on grass

Translation Words - ULT

- Command
- the sons of
- Israel
- to the Levites
- to the Levites

ULT

² “Command the sons of Israel and they shall give to the Levites cities for dwelling from the inheritance of their possession. And you shall give to the Levites pastureland for the cities, all around them.

Numbers 35:3

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

³ And the cities will be for them for dwelling, and their pastureland will be for their livestock and for their property and for all their living things.

Numbers 35:4

one thousand cubits

“1,000 cubits.” If it is necessary to use modern distance units, here is a way of doing it. Alternate translation: “457 meters” (See: [Numbers](#) and [Biblical Distance](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the Levites](#)

ULT

⁴ And the pasturelands of the cities that you shall give [to the Levites](#) shall be from the wall of the city and outward 1,000 cubits all around.

Numbers 35:5

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

two thousand cubits

“2,000 cubits.” A cubit is 46 centimeters. (See: [Biblical Distance](#) and [Numbers](#))

ULT

⁵ And you shall measure 2,000 by the cubit from outside of the city toward the corner of the east, and 2,000 by the cubit to the corner of the south, and 2,000 by the cubit to the corner of the west, and 2,000 by the cubit to the corner of the north, and the city will be in the middle. This will be the pastureland of the cities for them.

Numbers 35:6

a person who has killed someone

This refers to people who have killed someone, but it had not yet been determined whether they killed the person intentionally or accidentally.

forty-two

"42" (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the Levites](#)

ULT

⁶ And along with the cities which you shall give [to the Levites](#) you shall give six cities of refuge to which the one who kills may flee. And in addition to them you shall give 42 cities.

Numbers 35:7

forty-eight

“48” (See: [Numbers](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to the Levites](#)

ULT

⁷ All the cities that you shall give [to the Levites](#) shall be 48 cities, them and their pasturelands.

Numbers 35:8

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- to the Levites
- his inheritance
- he has inherited

ULT

⁸ And the cities that you shall give from the possession of [the sons of Israel](#), you shall increase from with the numerous, and you shall decrease from with the few. A man shall give from his cities [to the Levites](#) according to the mouth of [his inheritance](#) that [he has inherited](#).”

Numbers 35:9

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- Moses

ULT

⁹ And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying,

Numbers 35:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the sons of
- Israel
- the Jordan
- into the land of
- Canaan

ULT

¹⁰ “Speak to [the sons of Israel](#) and say to them, ‘When you cross over [the Jordan into the land of Canaan](#),

Numbers 35:11

unintentionally

accidentally or without wanting to or trying to

Translation Words - ULT

- a person

ULT

11 then you shall choose for yourselves cities, they will be cities of refuge for you. And the one who kills, the one who struck down a person by mistake, shall flee to there.

Numbers 35:12

the avenger

This refers to a close relative that seeks vengeance by killing the accused man.

so that the accused man will not be killed without first standing trial before the community

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “so that no one will kill the accused man before the community is able to judge him in court” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the avenger](#)
- [he stands](#)

ULT

12 And the cities will be for you for refuge [from the avenger](#). And the one who kills will not die until [he stands](#) before the face of the congregation for the judgment.

Numbers 35:13

(There are no notes for this verse.)

ULT

¹³ And the cities that you shall give shall be six cities of refuge for you.

Numbers 35:14

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

Translation Words - ULT

- the Jordan
- Canaan

ULT

14 You shall give three cities from beyond the Jordan. And you shall give three cities in the land of Canaan. They shall be cities of refuge.

Numbers 35:15

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- For the sons of
- Israel
- a person

ULT

¹⁵ For the sons of Israel, and for the sojourner, and for the temporary dweller in your midst, these six cities shall be for refuge to flee to, every one who has struck down a person by mistake.

Numbers 35:16

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

He must certainly be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "You must certainly execute him" (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he died](#)

ULT

16 And if he struck him down with an object of iron [and he died](#), he is one who murders. The one who murders shall certainly be put to death.

Numbers 35:17

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in hand
- and he died

ULT

17 And if he struck him down with a stone **in hand** by which one could die **and he died**, he is one who murders. The one who murders shall certainly be put to death.

Numbers 35:18

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- in hand
- and he died

ULT

¹⁸ Or if he struck him down with an object of wood **in hand** by which one could die **and he died**, he is one who murders. The one who murders shall certainly be put to death.

Numbers 35:19

The avenger of blood

Here the word “blood” is a metonym for the murder. Alternate translation: “The one who avenges the murder” or “The relative seeking vengeance” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [The avenger of](#)

ULT

19 [The avenger of](#) blood, he shall put the one who murders to death. When he meets him, he shall put him to death.

Numbers 35:20

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- [and he dies](#)

ULT

²⁰ And if with hatred he pushes him or throws something at him by lying in wait [and he dies](#),

Numbers 35:21

the accused who struck him must surely be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the relative must certainly execute the accused man” or “the accused man must die” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [with his hand](#)
- [and he dies](#)
- [The avenger of](#)

ULT

²¹ or if with hostility he strikes him down [with his hand and he dies](#), you shall certainly put to death the one who strikes down; he is one who murders. [The avenger of](#) blood shall put to death the one who murders when he meets him.

Numbers 35:22

without premeditated hate

“without planning it out of hate ahead of time”

without lying in wait

Someone intentionally seeking a way to harm another person is spoken of as if someone were hiding in order to ambush that other person. Alternate translation: “without intentionally having tried to harm the victim” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

²² And if with suddenness without hostility he pushes him or throws any object at him without lying in wait,

Numbers 35:23

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- he drops
- and he dies
- was...an enemy
- was...seeking
- his harm

ULT

²³ or if with any stone by which one could die without seeing **he drops** it on him **and he dies**, and he was not **an enemy** to him and was not **seeking his harm**,

Numbers 35:24

the avenger of blood

Here the word “blood” is a metonym for the murder. See how you translated this phrase in [Numbers 35:19](#). Alternate translation: “the one who avenges the murder” or “the relative seeking vengeance” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- then...shall judge
- the avenger of
- judgments

ULT

²⁴ then the congregation shall judge between the one who struck down and the avenger of blood in accordance with these judgments.

Numbers 35:25

The community must rescue the accused

This means if the community judges that the death was accidental then they must save the accused man from the relative who wants to kill him. If the community judges that the death was not accidental, then the relative must execute the accused man. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

the one who was anointed with the holy oil

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “the one you anointed with holy oil” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [And...shall rescue](#)
- [from the hand of](#)
- [the avenger of](#)
- [And...shall bring...back](#)
- [the...priest](#)
- [holiness](#)

ULT

²⁵ And the congregation shall rescue the one who kills from the hand of the avenger of blood. And the congregation shall bring him back into the city of his refuge to which he had fled. And he shall dwell in it until the death of the great priest, him whom he anointed with the oil of holiness.

Numbers 35:26

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- ever
- goes out of

ULT

²⁶ And if the one who kills **ever goes out of** the border of the city of his refuge to which he has fled,

Numbers 35:27

the avenger of blood

Here the word “blood” is a metonym for the murder. See how you translated these words in [Numbers 35:19](#). Alternate translation: “the one who avenges the murder” or “the relative seeking vengeance” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the avenger of](#)
- [the avenger of](#)
- [blood](#)

ULT

27 and [the avenger of](#) blood finds him outside the border of the city of his refuge, and [the avenger of blood](#) kills the one who kills, there will be no blood against him.

Numbers 35:28

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the...priest
- the...priest (2)
- may return
- the land of

ULT

²⁸ For in the city of his refuge he must dwell until the death of the great priest, and after the death of the great priest the one who kills may return to the land of his possession.

Numbers 35:29

General Information:

Yahweh continues telling Moses what the people must do.

through all your people's generations

“and all of your descendants who will live after you”

Translation Words - ULT

- judgment
- for your generations

ULT

²⁹ And these shall be for you as a statute of **judgment for your generations**, in all your dwellings.

Numbers 35:30

the murderer must be killed

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “someone must execute the murderer” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

as testified to by the words of witnesses

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “according to the testimony of witnesses” or “as witnesses testify to the murder” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

But one witness’ word alone may not cause any person to be put to death

The testimony of one witness is not enough to execute a person for murder. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “But the word of only one witness is not enough for you to execute a person” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [a person](#)
- [witnesses](#)
- [shall...testify](#)
- [against a person](#)
- [to put to death](#)

ULT

³⁰ Every one who strikes down [a person](#), according to the mouth of [witnesses](#) he must kill the one who kills. And one witness shall not [testify against a person to put to death](#).

Numbers 35:31

He must certainly be put to death

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “You must execute him” (See: [Active or Passive](#) and [Idiom](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [to die](#)

ULT

31 And you shall not take a ransom for the life of one who kills, he who is guilty [to die](#), because he shall certainly be put to death.

Numbers 35:32

You must not ... allow him to reside on his own property

This implied that the man would have left the city of refuge and returned home. Alternate translation: "You must not ... allow him to leave the city of refuge and return home to live on his own property" (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

in this way

"by accepting a ransom"

Translation Words - ULT

- [to return](#)
- [the priest](#)

ULT

³² And you shall not take a ransom for the one who flees into the city of his refuge, [to return](#) to dwell in the land until the death of [the priest](#).

Numbers 35:33

Do not pollute in this way the land where you live, because blood from murder pollutes the land

Making the land unacceptable to Yahweh is spoken of as if it were physically polluting the land. Alternate translation: “Do not make the land where you live unacceptable to me in this way, because blood from murder makes the land unacceptable to me” (See: [Metaphor](#))

ULT

³³ And you shall not pollute [the land](#) which you are in because the blood itself pollutes [the land](#). And atonement cannot be made for the land [for the blood](#) that is poured out on it except by the blood of the one who poured it out.

in this way

This means by disobeying the laws concerning a person who kills someone.

No atonement can be made for the land when blood has been shed on it, except by the blood of the one who shed it

This refers to when a person intentionally kills another person. This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “When someone has shed blood in the land, only the execution of the murderer can make atonement for the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [the land](#)
- [the land](#)
- [for the blood](#)

Numbers 35:34

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- the land
- Yahweh
- the sons of
- Israel

ULT

³⁴ And you shall not defile the land which you are dwelling in, which I am dwelling in the midst of, because I, Yahweh, am dwelling in the midst of the sons of Israel.”

Numbers 36

Numbers 36 General Notes

Structure and formatting

Female heirs

Women who inherited land from their father must marry men from their tribe so the inheritance does not leave the tribe. (See: [inherit](#), [inheritance](#), [heir](#))

Numbers 36:1

Machir

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this man's name in [Numbers 26:29](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- the heads of
- the heads of
- the fathers
- the fathers
- the leaders
- Israel
- of the clans of
- the sons of
- the son of
- the son of (2)
- the sons of
- of the sons of
- from the clans of
- Joseph
- Moses

ULT

¹ And the heads of the fathers of the clans of the sons of Gilead the son of Machir the son of Manasseh from the clans of the sons of Joseph came near and spoke before the face of Moses and before the face of the leaders, the heads of the fathers of the sons of Israel.

Numbers 36:2

You were commanded by Yahweh

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “Yahweh commanded you” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Zelophehad

This is the name of a man. See how you translated this man’s name in [Numbers 26:33](#). (See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- by Yahweh
- commanded
- was commanded
- our brother
- my master
- the land
- as an inheritance
- the inheritance of
- to the sons of
- Israel

ULT

² And they said, “Yahweh commanded my master to give the land as an inheritance by lot to the sons of Israel. And my master was commanded by Yahweh to give the inheritance of Zelophehad our brother to his daughters.

Numbers 36:3

will be removed from our ancestor's share

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "will no longer belong to our ancestor's share" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

It will be added

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "It will belong to" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

it will be removed from the assigned share of our inheritance

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "it will no longer be a part of our inheritance" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the sons of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the tribes of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [their inheritance will](#)
- [the inheritance](#)
- [our inheritance](#)
- [our fathers](#)

ULT

³ And they will become wives for one [from the sons of the tribes of the sons of Israel](#). And [their inheritance will](#) be withdrawn from the inheritance of [our fathers](#), and it will be added onto [the inheritance](#) of the tribe that they belong to. And it will be withdrawn from the lot of [our inheritance](#).

Numbers 36:4

the year of Jubilee of the people

This refers to a celebration which happens once every fifty years. In this celebration, all land that someone sold or traded must return to the original owner. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))

their share will be joined

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “their share will belong” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

their share will be taken away from the share of our ancestors’ tribe

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: “they will take our tribe’s share of the land” (See: [Active or Passive](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [for the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)
- [their inheritance](#)
- [the inheritance of](#)
- [their inheritance](#)
- [our fathers](#)

ULT

⁴ And when it will be the Jubilee [for the sons of Israel](#), then [their inheritance](#) will be added onto [the inheritance of](#) the tribe which they belong to. And [their inheritance](#) will be withdrawn from the inheritance of the tribe of [our fathers](#).”

Numbers 36:5

at Yahweh's word

"according to what Yahweh said"

Translation Words - ULT

- Moses
- And...commanded
- the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Yahweh
- Joseph

ULT

⁵ And Moses commanded the sons of Israel in accordance with the mouth of Yahweh, saying, "What the tribe of the sons of Joseph is speaking is right."

Numbers 36:6

Let them be married to whom they think best

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "Let them marry whom they want" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

they must marry only within the family of their father's tribe

This can be stated in active form. Alternate translation: "but they may only marry someone from their father's tribe" (See: [Active or Passive](#))

ULT

⁶ This is the word that [Yahweh commands](#) to the daughters of Zelophehad, saying, 'They may become wives of the good one in their eyes, only they must become wives [of the clan of](#) the tribe of [their father](#).'

Translation Words - ULT

- [Yahweh](#)
- [commands](#)
- [of the clan of](#)
- [their father](#)

Numbers 36:7

No share

The word “share” represents the portion of land that each tribe received as an inheritance. Alternate translation: “No portion of the land” (See: [Metonymy](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- an inheritance
- the inheritance of
- of the sons of
- the sons of
- Israel
- Israel
- his father

ULT

⁷ And an inheritance of the sons of Israel shall not go around from tribe to tribe, but a man of the sons of Israel shall cling to the inheritance of the tribe of his father.

Numbers 36:8

who owns a share in her tribe

“who owns a share of land in her tribe”

may own an inheritance

The land that each clan possesses is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they received. (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- an inheritance
- the inheritance of
- the sons of
- the sons of (2)
- Israel
- Israel
- from the clan of
- her father
- his fathers

ULT

⁸ And every daughter who possesses an inheritance from the tribes of the sons of Israel shall become a wife for one from the clan of the tribe of her father, so that the sons of Israel will have a possession, a man the inheritance of his fathers.

Numbers 36:9

No share may change hands from one tribe to another

Transferring ownership from one tribe to another is spoken of as if the property passed from one person's hands to another person's hands. Alternate translation: "No one may transfer the ownership of any share of land from one tribe to another" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [an inheritance](#)
- [to his inheritance](#)
- [to...tribe](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [Israel](#)

ULT

⁹ And [an inheritance](#) shall not go around from a tribe to another [tribe](#), but each tribe of [the sons of Israel](#) shall cling [to his inheritance](#)."

Numbers 36:10

(There are no notes for this verse.)

Translation Words - ULT

- Yahweh
- commanded
- Moses

ULT

¹⁰ Just as Yahweh commanded Moses, so did the daughters of Zelophehad.

Numbers 36:11

Mahlah, Tirzah, Hoglah, Milkah, and Noah

See how you translated these women's names in [Numbers 26:33](#).
(See: [How to Translate Names](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [Tirzah](#)
- [for the sons of](#)

ULT

11 And Mahlah, [Tirzah](#), and Hoglah, and Milkah, and Noah, the daughters of Zelophehad, became wives [for the sons of](#) their uncles.

Numbers 36:12

their inheritances

The land that each of Zelophehad's daughters possessed is spoken of as if it were an inheritance that they received. Alternate translation: "the lands that they received as an inheritance" (See: [Metaphor](#))

Translation Words - ULT

- [from the clans of](#)
- [the clan of](#)
- [the sons of](#)
- [the son of](#)
- [Joseph](#)
- [their inheritance](#)
- [their father](#)

ULT

¹² They became wives [from the clans of the sons of Manasseh the son of Joseph](#). And [their inheritance](#) was with the tribe of [the clan of their father](#).

Numbers 36:13

plains

a large area of flat land

Translation Words - ULT

- are the commands
- commanded
- Yahweh
- by the hand of
- Moses
- the sons of
- Israel
- Moab
- the Jordan
- at Jericho

ULT

¹³ These are the commands and the judgments that Yahweh commanded by the hand of Moses to the sons of Israel in the plains of Moab beside the Jordan at Jericho.



unfoldingWord® Translation Academy

Version 24

Abstract Nouns

Description

Abstract nouns are nouns that refer to attitudes, qualities, events, or situations. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as happiness, weight, unity, friendship, health, and reason. This is a translation issue because some languages may express a certain idea with an abstract noun, while others would need a different way to express it.

This page answers the question: *What are abstract nouns and how do I deal with them in my translation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Remember that nouns are words that refer to a person, place, thing, or idea. Abstract nouns are the nouns that refer to ideas. These can be attitudes, qualities, events, situations, or even relationships between those ideas. These are things that cannot be seen or touched in a physical sense, such as joy, peace, creation, goodness, contentment, justice, truth, freedom, vengeance, slowness, length, weight, and many, many more.

Some languages, such as Biblical Greek and English, use abstract nouns a lot. They provide a way of giving names to actions or qualities. With names, people who speak these languages can talk about the concepts as though they were things. For example, in languages that use abstract nouns, people can say, "I believe in the forgiveness of sin."

But some languages do not use abstract nouns very much. In these languages, speakers may not have the two abstract nouns "forgiveness" and "sin," but they would express the same meaning in other ways. For example, they would express, "I believe that God is willing to forgive people after they have sinned," by using verb phrases instead of nouns for those ideas.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible that you translate from may use abstract nouns to express certain ideas. Your language might not use abstract nouns for some of those ideas. Instead, it might use phrases to express those ideas. Those phrases will use other kinds of words such as adjectives, verbs, or adverbs to express the meaning of the abstract noun. For example, "What is its **weight**?" could be expressed as "How much does it **weigh**?" or "How **heavy** is it?"

Examples From the Bible

From **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

The abstract noun "childhood" refers to when someone was a child.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

The abstract nouns "godliness" and "contentment" refer to being godly and content. The abstract noun "gain" refers to something that benefits or helps someone.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

The abstract noun "salvation" here refers to being saved.

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The abstract noun "slowness" refers to the lack of speed with which something is done.

He will both bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

The abstract noun “purposes” refers to the things that people want to do and the reasons they want to do them.

Translation Strategies

If an abstract noun would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Reword the sentence with a phrase that expresses the meaning of the abstract noun. Instead of a noun, the new phrase will use a verb, an adverb, or an adjective to express the idea of the abstract noun. Alternative translations are indented below the Scripture example.

... from **childhood** you have known the sacred writings ... (2 Timothy 3:15a ULT)

Ever since **you were a child** you have known the sacred writings.

But **godliness** with **contentment** is great **gain**. (1 Timothy 6:6 ULT)

But **being godly** and **content** is very **beneficial**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **are godly** and **content**. But we **benefit** greatly when we **honor and obey God** and when we are **happy with what we have**.

Today **salvation** has come to this house, because he too is a son of Abraham. (Luke 19:9 ULT)

Today the people in this house **have been saved** ... Today God **has saved** the people in this house ...

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **slowness** to be. (2 Peter 3:9a ULT)

The Lord does not move slowly concerning his promises, as some consider **moving slowly** to be.

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal the **purposes** of the heart. (1 Corinthians 4:5b ULT)

He will bring to light the hidden things of darkness and reveal **the things that people want to do and the reasons that they want to do them**.

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:38](#); [3:46](#); [3:49](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:16](#); [4:28](#); [4:33](#); [6:5](#); [6:13](#); [6:18](#); [6:19](#); [6:21](#); [7:2](#); [8:22](#); [9:18](#); [9:23](#); [10:10](#); [14:9](#); [14:18](#); [14:27](#); [17:5](#); [17:10](#); [22:7](#); [24:16](#); [24:24](#); [25:18](#); [28:22](#); [28:30](#); [29:5](#); [29:11](#))

Active or Passive

Some languages use both active and passive sentences. In active sentences, the subject does the action. In passive sentences, the subject is the one that receives the action. Here are some examples with their subjects bolded:

- Active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- Passive: **The house** was built in 2010.

Translators whose languages do not use passive sentences will need to know how they can translate passive sentences that they find in the Bible. Other translators will need to decide when to use a passive sentence and when to use the active form.

This page answers the question: *What do active and passive mean, and how do I translate passive sentences?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

Description

Some languages have both active and passive forms of sentences.

- In the active form, the subject does the action and is always mentioned.
- In the passive form, the action is done to the subject, and the one who does the action is not always mentioned.

In the examples of active and passive sentences below, we have bolded the subject.

- active: **My father** built the house in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built by my father in 2010.
- passive: **The house** was built in 2010. (This does not tell who did the action.)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All languages use active forms. Some languages use passive forms, and some do not. Some languages use passive forms only for certain purposes, and the passive form is not used for the same purposes in all of the languages that use it.

Purposes for the Passive

- The speaker is talking about the person or thing the action was done to, not about the person who did the action.
- The speaker does not want to tell who did the action.
- The speaker does not know who did the action.

Translation Principles Regarding the Passive

- Translators whose language does not use passive forms will need to find another way to express the idea.
- Translators whose language has passive forms will need to understand why the passive is used in a particular sentence in the Bible and decide whether or not to use a passive form for that purpose in his translation of the sentence.

Examples From the Bible

Then their shooters shot at your soldiers from off the wall, and some of the king's servants **were killed**, and your servant Uriah the Hittite **was killed** too. (2 Samuel 11:24 ULT)

This means that the enemy's shooters shot and killed some of the king's servants, including Uriah. The point is what happened to the king's servants and Uriah, not who shot them. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on the king's servants and Uriah.

When the men of the city arose early in the morning, and see, the altar of Baal **was torn down**. (Judges 6:28a ULT)

The men of the town saw what had happened to the altar of Baal, but they did not know who broke it down. The purpose of the passive form here is to communicate this event from the perspective of the men of the town.

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

This describes a situation in which a person ends up in the sea with a millstone around his neck. The purpose of the passive form here is to keep the focus on what happens to this person. Who does these things to the person is not important.

Translation Strategies

If your language would use a passive form for the same purpose as in the passage that you are translating, then use a passive form. If you decide that it is better to translate without a passive form, here are some strategies that you might consider.

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who or what did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.
- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who or what did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."
- (3) Use a different verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the same verb in an active sentence and tell who did the action. If you do this, try to keep the focus on the person receiving the action.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21b ULT)

The king's servants gave Jeremiah a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

- (2) Use the same verb in an active sentence, and do not tell who did the action. Instead, use a generic expression like "they" or "people" or "someone."

It would be better for him if a millstone **were put** around his neck and he **were thrown** into the sea. (Luke 17:2a ULT)

It would be better for him if **they were to put** a millstone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

It would be better for him if **someone were to put** a heavy stone around his neck and **throw** him into the sea.

- (3) Use a different verb in an active sentence.

A loaf of bread **was given** him every day from the street of the bakers. (Jeremiah 37:21 ULT)

He **received** a loaf of bread every day from the street of the bakers.

Next we recommend you learn about:

Abstract Nouns

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-order]]

(Go back to: Numbers 1:16; 1:17; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:45; 1:47; 1:51; 2:32; 3:3; 3:9; 3:10; 3:22; 3:28; 3:31; 3:34; 3:38; 3:51; 4:4; 4:18; 4:26; 4:38; 4:40; 4:42; 4:44; 4:49; 5:8; 5:9; 5:14; 5:21; 5:23; 5:27; 5:28; 5:29; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:7; 6:8; 6:12; 6:13; 6:15; 6:19; 6:20; 6:21; 7:13; 7:19; 7:25; 7:31; 7:37; 7:43; 7:49; 7:55; 7:61; 7:67; 7:73; 7:79; 7:88; 8:4; 8:8; 9:13; 9:15; 9:17; 9:22; 9:23; 10:11; 10:13; 11:3; 11:26; 11:34; 12:15; 13:22; 13:24; 14:6; 14:9; 14:14; 14:21; 14:29; 14:42; 15:10; 15:11; 15:12; 15:13; 15:14; 15:19; 15:24; 15:25; 15:26; 15:28; 15:30; 15:34; 15:35; 16:5; 16:7; 16:26; 16:38; 16:39; 16:48; 17:6; 18:1; 18:6; 18:7; 18:8; 18:9; 18:16; 18:17; 18:18; 18:27; 18:29; 19:9; 19:13; 19:16; 19:20; 20:1; 20:13; 21:3; 21:8; 21:27; 21:30; 21:35; 22:6; 22:12; 22:22; 22:27; 23:20; 23:23; 24:3; 24:6; 24:7; 24:9; 24:10; 24:18; 24:22; 25:3; 25:14; 25:18; 26:37; 26:53; 26:54; 26:55; 26:56; 26:57; 26:62; 26:63; 26:64; 27:11; 28:2; 28:3; 28:5; 28:6; 28:8; 28:9; 28:12; 28:13; 28:15; 28:17; 28:19; 28:20; 28:23; 28:24; 28:28; 28:29; 29:3; 29:6; 29:9; 29:13; 29:14; 29:18; 29:21; 29:24; 29:27; 29:30; 29:33; 29:36; 29:37; 30:9; 31:5; 31:20; 31:26; 31:28; 31:29; 31:36; 31:41; 32:5; 32:10; 32:13; 32:22; 32:29; 32:38; 33:2; 33:14; 35:12; 35:16; 35:21; 35:25; 35:30; 35:31; 35:33; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:6)

Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information

Assumed knowledge is whatever a speaker assumes his audience knows before he speaks and gives them some kind of information. The speaker does not give the audience this information because he believes that they already know it.

This page answers the question: *How can I be sure that my translation communicates the assumed knowledge and implicit information along with the explicit information of the original message?*

When the speaker does give the audience information, he can do so in two ways. The speaker gives explicit information in what he states directly. Implicit Information is what the speaker does not state directly because he expects his audience to be able to learn it from other things he says.

Description

When someone speaks or writes, he has something specific that he wants people to know or do or think about. He normally states this directly. This is explicit information.

The speaker assumes that his audience already knows certain things that they will need to think about in order to understand this information. Normally he does not tell people these things, because they already know them. This is called assumed knowledge.

The speaker does not always directly state everything that he expects his audience to learn from what he says. Implicit information is information that he expects people to learn from what he says even though he does not state it directly.

Often, the audience understands this implicit information by combining what they already know (assumed knowledge) with the explicit information that the speaker tells them directly.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

All three kinds of information are part of the speaker's message. If one of these kinds of information is missing, then the audience will not understand the message. Because the target translation is in a language that is very different from the biblical languages and is made for an audience that lives in a very different time and place than the people in the Bible, many times the assumed knowledge or the implicit information is missing from the message. In other words, modern readers do not know everything that the original speakers and hearers in the Bible knew. When these things are important for understanding the message, it is helpful if you include this information in the text or in a footnote.

Examples From the Bible

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

Jesus did not say what foxes and birds use holes and nests for, because he assumed that the scribe would have known that foxes sleep in holes in the ground and birds sleep in their nests. This is **assumed knowledge**.

Jesus did not directly say here "I am the Son of Man" but, if the scribe did not already know it, then that fact would be **implicit information** that he could learn because Jesus referred to himself that way. Also, Jesus did not state explicitly that he travelled a lot and did not have a house that he slept in every night. That is **implicit information** that the scribe could learn when Jesus said that he had nowhere to lay his head.

Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! If the mighty deeds had been done in **Tyre and Sidon** which were done in you, they would have repented long ago in sackcloth and ashes. But

I say to you, it will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the **day of judgment** than for you.
(Matthew 11:21-22 ULT)

Jesus assumed that the people he was speaking to knew that Tyre and Sidon were very wicked, and that the day of judgment is a time when God will judge every person. Jesus also knew that the people he was talking to believed that they were good and did not need to repent. Jesus did not need to tell them these things. This is all **assumed knowledge**.

An important piece of **implicit information** here is that the people he was speaking to would be judged more severely than the people of Tyre and Sidon would be judged **because** they did not repent.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands when they eat bread**. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

One of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating. People thought that in order to be righteous, they had to follow all the traditions of the elders. This was **assumed knowledge** that the Pharisees who were speaking to Jesus expected him to know. By saying this, they were accusing his disciples of not following the traditions, and thus not being righteous. This is **implicit information** that they wanted him to understand from what they said.

Translation Strategies

If readers have enough assumed knowledge to be able to understand the message, along with any important implicit information that goes with the explicit information, then it is good to leave that knowledge unstated and leave the implicit information implicit. If the readers do not understand the message because one of these is missing for them, then follow these strategies:

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not have certain assumed knowledge, then provide that knowledge as explicit information.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes**, and the birds of the sky **have nests**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:20 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the foxes slept in their holes and birds slept in their nests.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes **have holes to live in**, and the birds of the sky **have nests to live in**, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head and sleep."

It will be more tolerable for **Tyre and Sidon** at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that the people of Tyre and Sidon were very, very wicked. This can be stated explicitly.

>

At the day of judgment, it will be more tolerable for **those cities of Tyre and Sidon, whose people were very wicked**, than it will be for you. or At

the day of judgment, It will be more tolerable for those **wicked cities, Tyre and Sidon**, than for you.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not wash their hands** when they eat bread. (Matthew 15:2 ULT)

The assumed knowledge was that one of the traditions of the elders was a ceremony in which people would wash their hands in order to be ritually clean before eating, which they must do to be righteous. It was not to remove germs from their hands to avoid sickness, as a modern reader might think.

Why do your disciples violate the traditions of the elders? For **they do not go through the ceremonial handwashing ritual of righteousness** when they eat bread.

(2) If readers cannot understand the message because they do not know certain implicit information, then state that information clearly, but try to do it in a way that does not imply that the information was new to the original audience.

Then a scribe came to him and said, "Teacher, I will follow you wherever you go." Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but the Son of Man has nowhere to lay his head." (Matthew 8:19-20 ULT)

The implicit information is that Jesus himself is the Son of Man. Other implicit information is that if the scribe wanted to follow Jesus, then, like Jesus, he would have to live without a house.

Jesus said to him, "Foxes have holes, and the birds of the sky have nests, but **I, the Son of Man, have no home to rest in. If you want to follow me, you will live as I live.**"

It will be more tolerable for Tyre and Sidon at the day of judgment than for you (Matthew 11:22 ULT)

The implicit information is that God would not only judge the people; he would punish them. This can be made explicit.

At the day of judgment, God will **punish Tyre and Sidon**, cities whose people were very wicked, **less severely than he will punish you.**
or:
At the day of judgment, God will **punish you more severely** than Tyre and Sidon, cities whose people were very wicked.

Modern readers may not know some of the things that the people in the Bible and the people who first read it knew. This can make it hard for them to understand what a speaker or writer says, and to learn things that the speaker left implicit. Translators may need to state some things explicitly in the translation that the original speaker or writer left unstated or implicit.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:50; 1:54; 2:9; 2:16; 2:24; 2:25; 2:31; 2:34; 3:10; 3:15; 3:38; 3:41; 3:47; 4:6; 4:7; 4:8; 4:11; 4:14; 4:18; 4:22; 4:25; 4:29; 4:34; 4:35; 4:38; 4:39; 4:43; 4:47; 5:4; 5:6; 5:8; 5:12; 5:13; 5:16; 5:27; 5:28; 6:12; 6:14; 6:15; 6:20; 6:21; 7:3; 7:9; 8:15; 9:2; 9:3; 9:6; 9:7; 9:10; 9:16; 9:21; 10:33; 10:36; 11:29; 13:11; 14:24; 14:35; 14:37; 15:15; 15:39; 18:7; 18:16; 18:17; 20:12; 21:8; 21:18; 22:23; 22:31; 23:4; 23:10; 23:28; 24:19; 25:4; 25:6; 26:2; 26:37; 26:54; 26:62; 27:3; 27:4; 27:7; 27:14; 28:7; 28:9; 28:18; 30:5; 30:8; 30:10; 30:12; 30:15; 31:5; 31:46; 32:5; 32:9; 32:22; 32:27; 32:32; 33:4; 35:25; 35:32; 36:4](#))

Background Information

Description

When people tell a story, they normally tell the events in the order that they happened. This sequence of events makes up the storyline. The storyline is full of action verbs that move the story along in time. But sometimes a writer may take a break from the storyline and give some information to help his listeners understand the story better. This type of information is called background information. The background information might be about things that happened before the events he has already told about, or it might explain something in the story, or it might be about something that would happen much later in the story.

This page answers the question: *What is background information, and how can I show that some information is background information?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-events]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro]]

Example — The bolded phrases in the story below are all background information.

Peter and John went on a hunting trip because **their village was going to have a feast the next day. Peter was the best hunter in the village. He once killed three wild pigs in one day!** They walked for hours through low bushes until they heard a wild pig. The pig ran, but they managed to shoot the pig and kill it. Then they tied up its legs with some rope **they had brought with them** and carried it home on a pole. When they brought it to the village, Peter’s cousin saw the pig and realized that it was his own pig. Peter had mistakenly killed his cousin’s pig.

Background information often tells about something that had happened earlier or something that would happen much later. Examples of these are: “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” “He once killed three wild pigs in one day,” and “that they had brought with them.”

Often background information uses “be” verbs like “was” and “were,” rather than action verbs. Examples of these are “their village was going to have a feast the next day,” and “Peter **was** the best hunter in the village.”

Background information can also be marked with words that tell the reader that this information is not part of the event line of the story. In this story, some of these words are “because,” “once,” and “had.”

A writer may use background information:

- to help their listeners be interested in the story
- to help their listeners understand something in the story
- to help the listeners understand why something is important in the story
- to tell the setting of a story
 - > * Setting includes:
 - > * where the story takes place
 - > * when the story takes place
 - > * who is present when the story begins
 - > * what is happening when the story begins

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Languages have different ways of marking background information and storyline information.
- You (the translator) need to know the order of the events in the Bible, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.
- You will need to translate the story in a way that marks the background information in a way that your own readers will understand the order of events, which information is background information, and which is storyline information.

Examples From the Bible

Hagar gave birth to Abram's son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael. Abram **was 86 years old** when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:15-16 ULT)

The first sentence tells about two events. Hagar gave birth and Abraham named his son. The second sentence is background information about how old Abram was when those things happened.

And Jesus himself, when he began to teach, **was about 30 years of age**. He **was the son** (as was supposed) of Joseph, the son of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

And Jesus himself was beginning about 30 years old. He was the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli,

The verses before this tell about when Jesus was baptized. This sentence introduces background information about Jesus' age and ancestors. The story resumes in chapter 4 where it tells about Jesus going to the wilderness.

Then **it happened on a Sabbath** that he was **going through the grain fields**, and his **disciples were picking and eating the heads of grain**, rubbing them in their hands. But some of the Pharisees said ... (Luke 6:1-2a ULT)

These verses give the setting of the story. The events took place in a grain field on the Sabbath day. Jesus, his disciples, and some Pharisees were there, and Jesus' disciples were picking heads of grain and eating them. The main action in the story starts with the phrase, "But some of the Pharisees said"

Translation Strategies

To keep translations clear and natural you will need to study how people tell stories in your language. Observe how your language marks background information. You may need to write down some stories in order to study this. Observe what kinds of verbs your language uses for background information and what kinds of words or other markers signal that something is background information. Do these same things when you translate, so that your translation is clear and natural and people can understand it easily.

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first. (This is not always possible when the background information is very long.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Use your language's way of showing that certain information is background information. The examples below explain how this was done in the ULT English translations.

And Jesus himself **was** beginning about 30 years old. He **was** the son (as it was assumed) of Joseph, of Heli. (Luke 3:23 ULT)

English uses the word "and" to show that there is some kind of change in the story. The verb "was" shows that it is background information.

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother**, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The bolded phrases happened before John rebuked Herod. In English, the helping verb "had" in "had done" shows that Herod did those things before John rebuked him.

(2) Reorder the information so that earlier events are mentioned first.

Hagar gave birth to Abram’s son, and Abram named his son, whom Hagar bore, Ishmael.
Abram was 86 years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

“**When Abram was 86 years old**, Hagar gave birth to his son, and Abram named his son Ishmael.”

Therefore, also exhorting many other things, he preached the good news to the people. But Herod the tetrarch, **having been rebuked by him concerning Herodias, the wife of his brother**, and **concerning all the evil things that Herod had done**, added even this to them all: He locked John up in prison. (Luke 3:18-20 ULT)

The translation below reorders John’s rebuke and Herod’s actions.

“Now Herod the tetrarch married his brother’s wife, Herodias, and he did many other evil things, so John rebuked him. But then Herod did another very evil thing. He had John locked up in prison.”

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/grammar-connect-words-phrases]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-newevent]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:3](#); [22:4](#); [25:14](#); [32:1](#))

Biblical Distance

Description

The following terms are the most common measures for distance or length that were originally used in the Bible. Most of these are based on the sizes of the hand and forearm.

- The **handbreadth** was the width of the palm of a man’s hand.
- The **span** or handspan was the width of a man’s hand with the fingers spread out.
- The **cubit** was the length of a man’s forearm, from the elbow to the tip of the longest finger.
- The **“long” cubit** is used only in Ezekiel 40-48. It is the length of a normal cubit plus a span.
- The **stadium** (plural, **stadia**) referred to a certain footrace that was about 185 meters in length. Some older English versions translated this word as “furlong,” which referred to the average length of a plowed field.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the lengths and distances that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)
[Fractions](#)

The metric values in the table below are close but not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact length from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Metric Measure
handbreadth	8 centimeters
span	23 centimeters
cubit	46 centimeters
“long” cubit	54 centimeters
stadia	185 meters

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the Biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one cubit as “.46 meters” or even as “46 centimeters,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a meter,” “45 centimeters,” or “50 centimeters.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, Luke 24:13 says that Emmaus was 60 stadia from Jerusalem. This can be translated as “about ten kilometers” from Jerusalem.

When God tells people how long something should be, and when people make things according to those lengths, do not use “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how long something should be.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 25:10 below.

They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be two and a half cubits; its width will be one cubit and a half; and its height will be one cubit and a half. (Exodus 25:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements given in the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half kubits**; its width will be **one kubit and a half**; and its height will be **one kubit and a half**.”

- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement. For example, if you measure things using the standard meter length, you could translate it as below.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **two and a half cubits (one meter)**; its width will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**; and its height will be **one cubit and a half (two thirds of a meter)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

“They are to make an ark of acacia wood. Its length must be **one meter**; ¹ its width will be **two thirds of a meter**; ² and its height will be **two thirds of a meter**.”

The footnotes would look like:

[1] two and a half cubits
[2] one cubit and a half

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:31](#); [35:4](#); [35:5](#))

Biblical Money

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of money in the Bible?*

In early Old Testament times, people weighed their metals, such as silver and gold, and would pay a certain weight of that metal in order to buy things. Later, people started to make coins that each contained a standard amount of a certain metal. The daric is one such coin. In New Testament times, people used silver and copper coins.

The two tables below show some of the most well-known units of money found in the Old Testament (OT) and New Testament (NT). The table for Old Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it weighed. The table for New Testament units shows what kind of metal was used and how much it was worth in terms of a day's wage.

Unit in OT	Metal	Weight
daric	gold coin	8.4 grams
shekel	various metals	11 grams
talent	various metals	33 kilograms

Unit in NT	Metal	Day's Wage
denarius/denarii	silver coin	1 day
drachma	silver coin	1 day
mite	copper coin	1/64 day
shekel	silver coin	4 days
talent	silver	6,000 days

Translation Principle

Do not use modern money values since these change from year to year. Using them will cause the Bible translation to become outdated and inaccurate.

Translation Strategies

The value of most money in the Old Testament was based on its weight. So when translating these weights in the Old Testament, see [Biblical Weight](#). The strategies below are for translating the value of money in the New Testament.

- (1) Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many coins were used.
- (3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.
- (4) Use the biblical term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

(5) Use the biblical term and explain it in a footnote.

Translation Strategies Applied

The translations strategies are all applied to Luke 7:41 below.

█ The one owed 500 denarii, and the other, 50. (Luke 7:41b ULT)

Use the Bible term and spell it in a way that is similar to the way it sounds. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

█ "The one owed **500 denali**, and the other, **50**."

Describe the value of the money in terms of what kind of metal it was made of and how many pieces or coins were used.

█ "The one owed **500 silver coins**, and the other, **50**."

(3) Describe the value of the money in terms of what people in Bible times could earn in one day of work.

█ "The one owed **500 days' wages**, and the other, **50**."

(4) Use the Bible term and give the equivalent amount in the text or a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii** 1, and the other owed **50 denarii**. 2"

The footnotes would look like:

█ [1] 500 days' wages [2] 50 days' wages

(5) Use the Bible term and explain it in a footnote.

█ "The one owed **500 denarii**,¹ and the other, **50**." (Luke 7:41 ULT)

█ ^[1] A denarius was the amount of silver that people could earn in one day of work.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[Translate Unknowns](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:46](#); [3:50](#); [31:52](#))

Biblical Volume

Description

The following terms are the most common units of volume used in the Bible to state how much a certain container could hold. The containers and measurements are given for both liquids (such as wine) and dry solids (such as grain). The metric values are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures probably differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are an attempt to give an average measurement.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the measures of volume that are in the Bible?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/translate-decimal\]\]](#)

Type	Original Measure	Liters
Dry	omer	2 liters
Dry	ephah	22 liters
Dry	homer	220 liters
Dry	cor	220 liters
Dry	seah	7.7 liters
Dry	letheke	114.8 liters
Liquid	metrete	40 liters
Liquid	bath	22 liters
Liquid	hin	3.7 liters
Liquid	kab	1.23 liters
Liquid	log	0.31 liters

Translation Principles

- The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.
- Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.
- Whatever measures you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kinds of measures in the text or a footnote.
- If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one hin as “3.7 liters,” readers might think that the measurement is exactly 3.7 liters, not 3.6 or 3.8. It would be better to use a more approximate measure such as “three and a half liters” or “four liters.”
- When God tells people how much of something to use, and when people use those amounts in obedience to him, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much they used.

When the unit of measure is stated

Translation Strategies

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)
- (2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.
- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.
- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.
- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Isaiah 5:10 below.

For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one bath, and one homer of seed will yield only an ephah. (Isaiah 5:10 ULT)

- (1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only one **bat**, and one **homer** of seed will yield only an **efa**.”

- (2) Use the measurements given in the UST. Usually they are metric measurements. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22 liters** and **220 liters** of seed will yield only **22 liters**.”

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **22**, and **ten baskets** of seed will yield only **one basket**.”

- (3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **six gallons**, and **six and a half bushels** of seed will yield only **20 quarts**.”

- (4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note. The following shows both measurements in the text.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only **one bath (six gallons)**, and **one homer (six and a half bushels)** of seed will yield only **an ephah (20 quarts)**.”

- (5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note. The following shows the ULT measurements in footnotes.

“For a ten-yoke vineyard will yield only 22 liters¹, and 220 liters² of seed will yield only 22 liters³.”

The footnotes would look like:

- [1] one bath
- [2] one homer
- [3] one ephah

When the unit of measure is implied

Sometimes the Hebrew does not specify a particular unit of volume but only uses a number. In these cases, many English versions, including the ULT and UST, add the word “measure.”

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 measures** of wine, there were only 20. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.
- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”
- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.
- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Haggai 2:16 below.

When you came to a heap of **20 measures** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty measures** of wine, there were only **20**. (Haggai 2:16 ULT)

- (1) Translate literally by using the number without a unit.

When you came to a heap of **20** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (2) Use a generic word like “measure” or “quantity” or “amount.”

When you came to a heap of **20 amounts** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **fifty amounts** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (3) Use the name of an appropriate container, such as “basket” for grain or “jar” for wine.

When you came to a heap of **20 baskets** of grain, there were only **ten**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 jars** of wine, there were only **20**.

- (4) Use a unit of measure that you are already using in your translation.

When you came to a heap for **20 liters** of grain, there were only **ten liters**, and when you came to the wine vat to draw out **50 liters** of wine, there were only **20 liters**.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:15; 11:32; 15:4; 15:6; 15:9; 28:5; 28:7; 28:9; 28:12; 28:13; 28:14; 28:20; 28:21; 28:28; 28:29; 29:3; 29:4; 29:9; 29:10; 29:14; 29:15](#))

Biblical Weight

Description

This page answers the question: *How can I translate the values of weight in the Bible?*

The following terms are the most common units of weight in the Bible. The term “shekel” means “weight,” and many other weights are described in terms of the shekel. Some of these weights were used for money. The metric values in the table below are not exactly equal to the biblical measures. The biblical measures differed in exact amount from time to time and place to place. The equivalents below are only an attempt to give an average measurement.

Original Measure	Shekels	Grams	Kilograms
shekel	1 shekel	11 grams	-
bekah	1/2 shekel	5.7 grams	-
pim	2/3 shekel	7.6 grams	-
gerah	1/20 shekel	0.57 grams	-
mina	50 shekels	550 grams	1/2 kilogram
talent	3,000 shekels	-	34 kilograms

Translation Principles

The people in the Bible did not use modern measures such as meters, liters, and kilograms. Using the original measures can help readers know that the Bible really was written long ago in a time when people used those measures.

Using modern measures can help readers understand the text more easily.

Whatever measure you use, it would be good, if possible, to tell about the other kind of measure in the text or a footnote.

If you do not use the biblical measures, try not to give the readers the idea that the measurements are exact. For example, if you translate one gerah as “.57 grams,” readers might think that the measurement is exact. It would be better to say “half a gram.”

Sometimes it can be helpful to use the word “about” to show that a measurement is not exact. For example, 2 Samuel 21:16 says that Goliath’s spear weighed 300 shekels. Instead of translating this as “3300 grams” or “3.3 kilograms,” it can be translated as “about three and one half kilograms.”

When God tells people how much something should weigh, and when people use those weights, do not say “about” in the translation. Otherwise, it will give the impression that God did not care exactly how much the thing should weigh.

Translation Strategies

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this, you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a note.

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a note.

Translation Strategies Applied

The strategies are all applied to Exodus 38:29 below.

█ The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. (Exodus 38:29 ULT)

(1) Use the measurements from the ULT. These are the same kinds of measurements that the original writers used. Spell them in a way that is similar to the way they sound or are spelled in the ULT. (See [Copy or Borrow Words](#).)

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talentes and 2,400 sekeles**."

(2) Use the metric measurements given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **2,400 kilograms**."

(3) Use measurements that are already used in your language. In order to do this you would need to know how your measurements relate to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **5,300 pounds**."

(4) Use the measurements from the ULT and include measurements that your people know in the text or a footnote. The following shows both measurements in the text.

█ "The bronze from the wave offering weighed **70 talents (2,380 kilograms)** and **2,400 shekels (26.4 kilograms)**."

(5) Use measurements that your people know, and include the measurements from the ULT in the text or in a footnote. The following shows the ULT measurements in notes.

█ "The bronze from the offering weighed **70 talents and 2,400 shekels**. ¹"

The footnote would look like:

█ ^[1] This was a total of about 2,400 kilograms.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:46; 3:47; 7:13; 7:14; 7:19; 7:20; 7:25; 7:26; 7:31; 7:32; 7:37; 7:38; 7:43; 7:44; 7:49; 7:50; 7:55; 7:56; 7:61; 7:62; 7:67; 7:68; 7:73; 7:74; 7:79; 7:80; 7:85; 7:86; 18:16](#))

Copy or Borrow Words

Description

Sometimes the Bible includes things that are not part of your culture and for which your language may not have a word. The Bible also includes people and places for which you may not have names.

When that happens you can “borrow” the word from the Bible in a familiar language and use it in your translation in your own language. This means that you basically copy it from the other language. This page tells how to “borrow” words. (There are also other ways to translate words for things that are not in your language. See [Translate Unknowns](#).)

This page answers the question: *What does it mean to borrow words from another language and how can I do it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples From the Bible

Seeing one fig tree along the roadside, he went to it. (Matthew 21:19a ULT)

If there are no fig trees where your language is spoken, there might not be a name for this kind of tree in your language.

Above him were the **seraphim**; each one had six wings; with two each covered his face, and with two he covered his feet, and with two he flew. (Isaiah 6:2 ULT)

Your language might not have a name for this kind of creature.

The declaration of the word of Yahweh to Israel by the hand of **Malachi**. (Malachi 1:1 ULT)

Malachi might not be a name that people who speak your language use.

Translation Strategies

There are several things to be aware of when borrowing words from another language.

- Different languages use different scripts, such as the Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Cyrillic, Devanagari, and Korean scripts. These scripts use different shapes to represent the letters in their alphabets.
- Languages that use the same script might pronounce the letters in that script differently. For example, when speaking German, people pronounce the letter “j” the same way that people pronounce the letter “y” when speaking English.
- Languages do not all have the same sounds or combinations of sounds. For example, many languages do not have the soft “th” sound in the English word “think,” and some languages cannot start a word with a combination of sounds like “st” as in “stop.”

There are several ways to borrow a word.

- (1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.
- (2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.
- (3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If your language uses a different script from the language you are translating from, you can simply substitute each letter shape with the corresponding letter shape of the script of your language.

.A man’s name in Hebrew letters — זְפַנְיָהּ
“Zephaniah” — The same name in Roman letters

(2) You can spell the word as the Other Language spells it, and pronounce it the way your language normally pronounces those letters.

Zephaniah — This is a man’s name.
“Zephaniah” — The name as it is spelled in English, but you can pronounce it according to the rules of your language.

(3) You can pronounce the word similarly to the way the Other Language does, and adjust the spelling to fit the rules of your language.

Zephaniah — If your language does not have the “z,” you could use “s.” If your writing system does not use “ph” you could use “f.” Depending on how you pronounce the “i” you could spell it with “i” or “ai” or “ay.”
“Sefania”
“Sefanaia”
“Sefanaya”

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:21](#); [20:1](#))

Direct and Indirect Quotations

Description

There are two kinds of quotations: direct quotations and indirect quotations.

A direct quotation occurs when someone reports what another person said from the viewpoint of that original speaker. People usually expect that this kind of quotation will represent the original speaker's exact words. In the example below, John would have said "I" when referring to himself, so the narrator, who is reporting John's words, uses the word "I" in the quotation to refer to John. To show that these are John's exact words, many languages put the words between quotation marks: "".

- John said, "I do not know at what time I will arrive."

An indirect quotation occurs when a speaker reports what someone else said, but in this case, the speaker is reporting it from his own point of view instead and not from the original person's point of view. This kind of quotation usually contains changes in pronouns, and it often includes changes in time, in word choices, and in length. In the example below, the narrator refers to John as "he" in the quotation and uses the word "would" to replace the future tense, indicated by "will."

- John said that he did not know at what time he would arrive.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages, reported speech can be expressed by either direct or indirect quotations. In other languages, it is more natural to use one than the other. There may be a certain meaning implied by using one rather than the other. So for each quotation, translators need to decide whether it is best to translate it as a direct quotation or as an indirect quotation.

Examples From the Bible

The verses in the examples below contain both direct and indirect quotations. In the explanation below the verse, we have marked in bold the words that are quoted.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, "Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them."
(Luke 5:14 ULT)

- Indirect quote: He commanded him **to tell no one**,
- Direct quote: but told him, "**Go, show yourself to the priest ...**"

And being asked by the Pharisees when the kingdom of God was coming, he answered them and said, "The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you."
(Luke 17:20-21 ULT)

- Indirect quote: Being asked by the Pharisees **when the kingdom of God was coming**,
- Direct quote: he answered them and said, "**The kingdom of God is not coming with careful observation. Neither will they say, 'Look, here it is!' or 'There it is!' For indeed, the kingdom of God is among you.**"
- Direct quotes: Neither will they say, '**Look, here it is!**' or, '**There it is!**'

This page answers the question: *What are direct and indirect quotations?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

Pronouns

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-quotations]]

Translation Strategies

If the kind of quote used in the source text would work well in your language, consider using it. If the kind of quote used in that context is not natural for your language, follow these strategies.

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.
- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If a direct quote would not work well in your language, change it to an indirect quote.

And he commanded him to tell no one, but, **“Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”** (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him to tell no one, but **to go and show himself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for his cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.**

- (2) If an indirect quote would not work well in your language, change it to a direct quote.

And he commanded him **to tell no one**, but, “Go, show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing, according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.” (Luke 5:14 ULT)

He commanded him, **“Tell no one.** But go and show yourself to the priest and offer a sacrifice for your cleansing according to what Moses commanded, for a testimony to them.”

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_quotations.

Next we recommend you learn about:
[Quotes within Quotes](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:16; 25:13](#))

Double Negatives

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each express the meaning of “not.” Double negatives mean very different things in different languages. To translate sentences that have double negatives accurately and clearly, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express this idea in your language.

This page answers the question: *What are double negatives?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Description

Negative words are words that have in them the meaning “not.” Examples in English are “no,” “not,” “none,” “no one,” “nothing,” “nowhere,” “never,” “nor,” “neither,” and “without.” Also, some words have prefixes or suffixes that mean “not,” such as the bolded parts of these words: “**un**happy,” “**im**possible,” and “**useless**.” Some other kinds of words also have a negative meaning, such as “lack” or “reject,” or even “fight” or “evil.”

A double negative occurs when a clause has two words that each have a negative meaning.

We did this **not** because we have **no** authority ... (2 Thessalonians 3:9a ULT)

And this was **not** done **without** an oath! (Hebrews 7:20a ULT)

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **un**punished. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Double negatives mean very different things in different languages.

- In some languages, such as Spanish, a double negative emphasizes the negative. The Spanish sentence, “No vi a nadie,” literally says “I did not see no one.” It has both the word ‘no’ next to the verb and ‘nadie,’ which means “no one.” The two negatives are seen as in agreement with each other, and the sentence means, “I did not see anyone.”
- In some languages, a second negative cancels the first one, creating a positive sentence. So, “He is not unintelligent” means “He is intelligent.”
- In some languages the double negative creates a positive sentence, but it is a weak statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” means, “He is somewhat intelligent.”
- In some languages, such as the languages of the Bible, the double negative can create a positive sentence, and often strengthens the statement. So, “He is not unintelligent” can mean “He is intelligent” or “He is very intelligent.”

To translate sentences with double negatives accurately and clearly in your language, you need to know what a double negative means in the Bible and how to express the same idea in your language.

Examples From the Bible

... in order **not** to be **un**fruitful. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

This means “so that they will be fruitful.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

By using a double negative, John emphasized that the Son of God created absolutely everything. The double negative makes a stronger statement than the simple positive.

Translation Strategies

If double negatives are natural and are used to express the positive in your language, consider using them. Otherwise, you could consider these strategies:

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.
- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is simply to make a positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives so that it is positive.

For we do **not** have a high priest who **cannot** feel sympathy for our weaknesses. (Hebrews 4:15a ULT)

“For we have a high priest who can feel sympathy for our weaknesses.”

... in order **not** to be **unfruitful**. (Titus 3:14b ULT)

“... so that they may be fruitful.”

- (2) If the purpose of a double negative in the Bible is to make a strong positive statement, and if it would not do that in your language, remove the two negatives and put in a strengthening word or phrase such as “very” or “surely” or “absolutely.”

Be sure of this—the wicked person will **not** go **unpunished**. (Proverbs 11:21a ULT)

“Be sure of this—wicked people will **certainly** be punished.”

All things were made through him and **without** him there was **not** one thing made that has been made. (John 1:3 ULT)

“All things were made through him. He made **absolutely** everything that has been made.”

Next we recommend you learn about:
[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs\]\]](https://en.ta.man/translate/figs-verbs)

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:32](#); [19:12](#); [19:15](#); [26:65](#))

Doublet

Description

We are using the word “doublet” to refer to two words or phrases that are used together and either mean the same thing or mean very close to the same thing. Often they are joined with the word “and.” Unlike Hendiadys, in which one of the words modifies the other, in a doublet the two words or phrases are equal and are used to emphasize or intensify the one idea that is expressed by the two words or phrases.

This page answers the question: *What are doublets and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

In some languages people do not use doublets. Or they may use doublets, but only in certain situations, so a doublet might not make sense in their language in some verses. People might think that the verse is describing two ideas or actions, when it is only describing one. In this case, translators may need to find some other way to express the meaning expressed by the doublet.

Examples From the Bible

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

The bolded words mean the same thing. Together they mean the people were spread out.

He attacked two men **more righteous** and **better** than himself. (1 Kings 2:32b ULT)

This means that they were “much more righteous” than he was.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

This means that they had decided to lie, which is another way of saying that they intended to deceive people.

... like of a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

This means that he was like a lamb that did not have any defect—not even one.

Translation Strategies

If a doublet would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, consider these strategies.

- (1) Translate only one of the words or phrases.
- (2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words or phrases and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”
- (3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Translate only one of the words.

You have decided to prepare **false** and **deceptive** words. (Daniel 2:9b ULT)

“You have decided to prepare **false** things to say.”

(2) If the doublet is used to intensify the meaning, translate one of the words and add a word that intensifies it such as “very” or “great” or “many.”

He has one people **scattered** and **dispersed** among the peoples (Esther 3:8 ULT)

“He has one people **very spread out**.”

(3) If the doublet is used to intensify or emphasize the meaning, use one of your language’s ways of doing that.

... like a lamb **without blemish** and **without spot**. (1 Peter 1:19b ULT)

• English can emphasize this with “any” and “at all.”

“... like a lamb **without any blemish at all**.”

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:22](#); [19:2](#); [20:22](#); [21:27](#); [30:4](#); [30:5](#))

Ellipsis

Description

An ellipsis¹ occurs when a speaker or writer leaves out one or more words that normally should be in the sentence. The speaker or writer does this because he knows that the hearer or reader will understand the meaning of the sentence and supply the words in his mind when he hears or reads the words that are there. For example:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, **nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous.**
(Psalm 1:5 ULT)

There is ellipsis in the second part because “nor sinners in the assembly of the righteous” is not a complete sentence. The speaker assumes that the hearer will understand what it is that sinners will not do in the assembly of the righteous by filling in the action from the previous clause. With the action filled in, the complete sentence would read:

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **will sinners stand** in the assembly of the righteous.

[¹] English has a punctuation symbol which is also called an ellipsis. It is a series of three dots (...) used to indicate an intentional omission of a word, phrase, sentence or more from text without altering its original meaning. This translationAcademy article is not about the punctuation mark, but about the concept of omission of words that normally should be in the sentence.

Two Types of Ellipsis

A Relative Ellipsis happens when the reader has to supply the omitted word or words from the context. Usually the word is in the previous sentence, as in the example above.

An Absolute Ellipsis happens when the omitted word or words are not in the context, but the phrases are common enough in the language that the reader is expected to supply what is missing from this common usage or from the nature of the situation.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers who see incomplete sentences or phrases may not know that there is information missing that the writer expects them to fill in. Or readers may understand that there is information missing, but they may not know what information is missing because they do not know the original biblical language, culture, or situation as the original readers did. In this case, they may fill in the wrong information. Or readers may misunderstand the ellipsis if they do not use ellipsis in the same way in their language.

Examples From the Bible

Relative Ellipsis

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox.** (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

The writer wants his words to be few and to make good poetry. The full sentence with the information filled in would be:

This page answers the question: *What is ellipsis ?* ([¹])

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**not as unwise but as wise**. (Ephesians 5:15b ULT)

The information that the reader must understand in the second parts of these sentences can be filled in from the first parts:

Watch carefully, therefore, how you walk—**walk** not as unwise but **walk** as wise,

Absolute Ellipsis

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

It seems that the man answered in an incomplete sentence because he wanted to be polite and not directly ask Jesus for healing. He knew that Jesus would understand that the only way he could receive his sight would be for Jesus to heal him. The complete sentence would be:

“Lord, **I want you to heal me so** that I might receive my sight.”

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. Grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior. (Titus 1:4 ULT)

The writer assumes that the reader will recognize this common form of a blessing or wish, so he does not need to include the full sentence, which would be:

To Titus, a true son in our common faith. **May you receive** grace and peace from God the Father and Christ Jesus our Savior.

Translation Strategies

If ellipsis would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add the missing words to the incomplete phrase or sentence.

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, nor **sinner in the assembly** of the righteous. (Psalm 1:5 ULT)

So the wicked will not stand in the judgment, and **sinner will not stand in the assembly** of the righteous.

Then when he had come near, he asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” And so he said, “Lord, **that I might recover my sight**.” (Luke 18:40b-41 ULT)

Then when the man was near, Jesus asked him, “What do you want me to do for you?” He said, “Lord, **I want you to heal me** that I might receive my sight.”

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf **and Sirion like a young ox**. (Psalm 29:6 ULT)

He makes Lebanon skip like a calf, and **he makes** Sirion **skip** like a young ox.

(Go back to: [Numbers 2:8](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:15](#); [2:19](#); [2:21](#); [2:23](#); [2:26](#); [2:28](#); [2:30](#); [4:40](#); [6:3](#); [6:17](#); [8:7](#); [8:18](#); [27:13](#); [27:23](#); [28:12](#); [28:20](#); [28:28](#); [29:3](#); [29:9](#); [29:14](#); [30:7](#); [30:14](#); [32:33](#))

Euphemism

Description

A euphemism is a mild or polite way of referring to something that is unpleasant, embarrassing, or socially unacceptable, such as death or activities usually done in private.

... they found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa.
(1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

This means that Saul and his sons “were dead.” It is a euphemism because the important thing was not that Saul and his sons had fallen but that they were dead. Sometimes people do not like to speak directly about death because it is unpleasant.

This page answers the question: *What is a euphemism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages use different euphemisms. If the target language does not use the same euphemism as in the source language, readers may not understand what it means and they may think that the writer means only what the words literally say.

Examples From the Bible

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT)

The original hearers would have understood that Saul went into the cave to use it as a toilet, but the writer wanted to avoid offending or distracting them, so **he did not say specifically** what Saul did or what he left in the cave.

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

In order **to be polite**, Mary uses a euphemism to say that she has never had sexual intercourse with a man.

Translation Strategies

If euphemism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.
- (2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a euphemism from your own culture.

... where there was a cave. Saul went inside to **cover his feet**. (1 Samuel 24:3b ULT) — Some languages might use euphemisms like these:

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **dig a hole**”

“... where there was a cave. Saul went into the cave to **have some time alone**”

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **known a man?**” (Luke 1:34 ULT)

But Mary said to the angel, “How will this be, since I have not **slept with a man?**”

(2) State the information plainly without a euphemism if it would not be offensive.

They found Saul and his sons **fallen** on Mount Gilboa. (1 Chronicles 10:8b ULT)

“They found Saul and his sons **dead** on Mount Gilboa.”

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:13](#); [5:19](#); [5:21](#); [5:27](#); [8:17](#); [Notes](#); [20:24](#); [20:26](#); [27:13](#); [31:2](#); [31:17](#); [31:18](#); [31:35](#))

Exclusive and Inclusive 'We'

Description

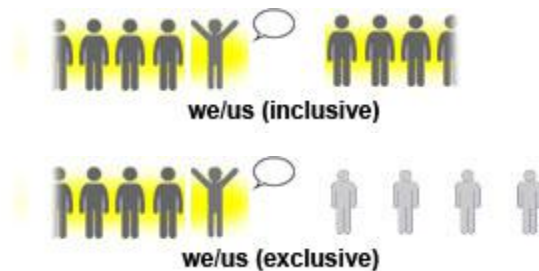
Some languages have more than one form of "we": an inclusive form that means "I and you" and an exclusive form that means "I and someone else but not you." The exclusive form excludes the person being spoken to. The inclusive form includes the person being spoken to and possibly others. This is also true for "us," "our," "ours," and "ourselves." Some languages have inclusive forms and exclusive forms for each of these. Translators whose language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms for these words will need to understand what the speaker meant so that they can decide which form to use.

This page answers the question: *What are the exclusive and inclusive forms of "we"?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Pronouns](#)

See the pictures. The people on the right are the people that the speaker is talking to. The yellow highlight shows who the inclusive "we" and the exclusive "we" refer to.



Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible was first written in the Hebrew, Aramaic, and Greek languages. Like English, these languages do not have separate exclusive and inclusive forms for "we." If your language has separate exclusive and inclusive forms of "we," then you will need to understand what the speaker meant so that you can decide which form of "we" to use.

Examples From the Bible

Exclusive

They said, "There are not more than five loaves of bread and two fish with us—unless **we** go and buy food for all these people." (Luke 9:13 ULT)

In the second clause, the disciples are talking about some of them going to buy food. They were speaking to Jesus, but Jesus was not going to buy food. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" would use the **exclusive** form there.

We have seen it, and **we** bear witness to it. **We** are announcing to you the eternal life, which was with the Father, and which has been made known to **us**. (1 John 1:2 ULT)

John is telling people who have not seen Jesus what he and the other apostles have seen. So languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **exclusive** forms in this verse.

Inclusive

The shepherds said one to each other, "Let **us** now go to Bethlehem, and see this thing that has happened, which the Lord has made known to **us**." (Luke 2:15b ULT)

The shepherds were speaking to one another. When they said "us," they were including the people they were speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Now it happened that on one of those days, he indeed got into a boat with his disciples, and he said to them, "Let **us** go over to the other side of the lake." So they set sail. (Luke 8:22 ULT)

When Jesus said "us," he was referring to himself and to the disciples he was speaking to, so languages that have inclusive and exclusive forms of "we" and "us" would use the **inclusive** form in this verse.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-gendernotations]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:10](#); [21:7](#))

First, Second or Third Person

Normally a speaker refers to himself as “I” and the person he is speaking to as “you.” Sometimes in the Bible a speaker refers to himself or to the person he is speaking to with terms other than “I” or “you.”

Description

- First person — This is how a speaker normally refers to himself. English uses the pronouns “I” and “we.” (Also: me, my, mine; us, our, ours)
- Second person — This is how a speaker normally refers to the person or people he is speaking to. English uses the pronoun “you.” (Also: your, yours)
- Third person — This is how a speaker refers to someone else. English uses the pronouns “he,” “she,” “it,” and “they.” (Also: him, his, her, hers, its; them, their, theirs) Noun phrases like “the man” or “the woman” are also third person.

This page answers the question: *What are first, second, and third person, and how do I translate when a third person form does not refer to the third person?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-explicitinfo\]\]](#)

[Pronouns](#)

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses the third person to refer to himself or to the people he is speaking to. Readers might think that the speaker was referring to someone else. They might not understand that he meant “I” or “you.”

Examples From the Bible

Sometimes people used the third person instead of “I” or “me” to refer to themselves.

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34 ULT)

David referred to himself in the third person as “your servant” and used “his.” He was calling himself Saul’s servant in order to show his humility before Saul.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said,
“... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

God referred to himself in the third person with the words “God’s” and “his.” He did this to emphasize that he is God, and he is powerful.

Sometimes people use the third person instead of “you” or “your” to refer to the person or people they are speaking to.

Abraham answered and said, “Look, I have undertaken to speak to my Lord, even though I am only dust and ashes!” (Genesis 18:27 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to the Lord, and referred to the Lord as “My Lord” rather than as “you.” He did this to show his humility before God.

So also my heavenly Father will do to you, if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

After saying “each of you,” Jesus used the third person “his” instead of “your.”

Translation Strategies

If using the third person to mean “I” or “you” would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”
- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the third person phrase along with the pronoun “I” or “you.”

But David said to Saul, “**Your servant** used to keep **his** father’s sheep.” (1 Samuel 17:34)

But David said to Saul, “**I, your servant**, used to keep **my** father’s sheep.”

- (2) Simply use the first person (“I”) or second person (“you”) instead of the third person.

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **God’s**? Can you thunder with a voice like **his**?” (Job 40:6, 9 ULT)

Then Yahweh answered Job out of a fierce storm and said, “... Do you have an arm like **mine**? Can you thunder with a voice like **mine**?”

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **his** brother from your heart. (Matthew 18:35 ULT)

So also my heavenly Father will do to you if **each of you** does not forgive **your** brother from your heart.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Forms of You](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:11](#); [24:4](#); [24:20](#))

Forms of You

Singular, Dual, and Plural

Some languages have more than one word for “you” based on how many people the word “you” refers to. The **singular** form refers to one person, and the **plural** form refers to more than one person. Some languages also have a **dual** form which refers to two people, and some languages have other forms that refer to three or four people.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_younum.

Sometimes in the Bible a speaker uses a singular form of “you” even though he is speaking to a crowd.

- Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups

Formal and Informal

Some languages have more than one form of “you” based on the relationship between the speaker and the person he is talking to. People use the **formal** form of “you” when speaking to someone who is older, or has higher authority, or is someone they do not know very well. People use the **informal** form when speaking to someone who is not older, or does not have higher authority, or is a family member or close friend.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_youform.

For help with translating these, we suggest you read:

- Forms of “You” — Formal or Informal

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:3](#); [6:23](#); [6:24](#); [6:25](#); [6:26](#); [9:14](#); [10:5](#); [10:6](#); [10:8](#); [10:10](#); [14:12](#); [18:3](#); [18:4](#); [18:5](#); [18:7](#); [20:18](#); [34:17](#))

This page answers the question: *What are the different forms of you?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-yousingular\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-youdual\]\]](#)

Fractions

Description

A fraction is a number that represents part of a whole. When an item is divided into several equal parts, a fraction refers to one or more of those parts.

For the drink offering, you must offer **a third** of a hin of wine. (Numbers 15:7a ULT)

A hin is a container of a set size which is used for measuring wine and other liquids. The people were to think about dividing a hin container into three equal parts, filling up only one of those parts and offering that amount.

... **a third** of the ships were destroyed. (Revelation 8:9b ULT)

There were many ships. If all those ships were divided into three equal groups of ships, one group of ships was destroyed.

Most fractions in English simply have the letters “th” added to the end of the number, such as fourth, sixth, ninth, tenth.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | four | fourth | | ten | tenth | | one hundred | one hundredth | | one thousand | one thousandth |

Some fractions in English do not follow that pattern.

| Number of parts the whole is divided into | Fraction | | ----- | ----- | | two | half | | three | third | | five | fifth |

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use fractions. They may simply talk about parts or groups, but they do not use fractions to tell how big a part is or how many parts are included in a group.

Examples From the Bible

Now to the **half-tribe** of Manasseh, Moses had given a possession in Bashan, but to the other **half**, Joshua gave a possession among their brothers across the Jordan on the west. (Joshua 22:7 ULT)

The tribe of Manasseh divided into two groups. The phrase “the half-tribe of Manasseh” refers one of those groups. The phrase “the other half” refers to the other group.

So the four angels who had been prepared for that hour, that day, that month, and that year, were released so that they would kill **a third** of mankind. (Revelation 9:15 ULT)

If all the people in the world were to be divided into three equal groups, then the number of people in one group would be killed.

You must also prepare **a fourth** of a hin of wine as the drink offering. (Numbers 15:5 ULT)

They were to imagine dividing a hin of wine into four equal parts and prepare the amount equal to one of them.

This page answers the question: *What are fractions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

Translation Strategies

If a fraction in your language would give the right meaning, consider using it. If not, you could consider these strategies.

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.
- (2) For measurements such as for weight and length, use a unit that your people might know or the unit in the UST.
- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

Examples of These Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the number of parts or groups that the item would be divided into, and then tell the number of parts or groups that is being referred to.

A third of the ocean became red like blood (Revelation 8:8 ULT)

It was like they **divided** the ocean **into three parts**, and **one part** of the ocean became blood.

Then you must offer with the bull a grain offering of **three-tenths** of an ephah of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9 ULT)

... then you must **divide** an ephah of fine flour **into ten parts** and **divide** a hin of oil **into two parts**. Then mix **three of those parts** of the flour with **one of the parts** of oil. Then you must offer that grain offering along with the bull.

- (2) For measurements, use the measurements that are given in the UST. The translators of the UST have already figured how to represent the amounts in the metric system.

... **two-thirds of a shekel** ... (1 Samuel 13:21b ULT)

... **eight grams** of silver ... (1 Samuel 13:21b UST)

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

... **six and one-half liters** of finely ground flour mixed with **two liters** of olive oil. (Numbers 15:9b UST)

- (3) For measurements, use ones that are used in your language. In order to do that you would need to know how your measurements relates to the metric system and figure out each measurement.

... **three-tenths of an ephah** of fine flour mixed with **half a hin** of oil. (Numbers 15:9b ULT)

six quarts of fine flour mixed with **two quarts** of oil.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Biblical Money](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:7](#); [5:15](#); [28:5](#); [28:7](#); [28:9](#); [28:12](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [28:20](#); [28:21](#); [28:28](#); [28:29](#); [29:3](#); [29:4](#); [29:9](#); [29:10](#); [29:14](#); [29:15](#))

Go and Come

Description

This page answers the question: *What do I do if the word "go" or "come" is confusing in a certain sentence?*

Different languages have different ways of determining whether to use the words "go" or "come" and whether to use the words "take" or "bring" when talking about motion. For example, when saying that they are approaching a person who has called them, English speakers say "I'm coming," while Spanish speakers say "I'm going." You will need to study the context in order to understand what is meant by the words "go" and "come" (and also "take" and "bring"), and then translate those words in a way that your readers will understand which direction people are moving in.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Different languages have different ways of talking about motion. The biblical languages or your source language may use the words "go" and "come" or "take" and "bring" differently than your language uses them. If these words are not translated in the way that is natural in your language, your readers may be confused about which direction people are moving.

Examples From the Bible

Yahweh said to Noah, "**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark." (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

In some languages, this would lead people to think that Yahweh was in the ark.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. Then you will be free from my oath. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

Abraham was speaking to his servant. Abraham's relatives lived far away from where he and his servant were standing and he wanted his servant to **go** to them, not **come** toward Abraham.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14a ULT)

Moses is speaking to the people in the wilderness. They had not yet gone into the land that God was giving them. In some languages, it would make more sense to say, "When you have **gone** into the land ..."

They **brought** him up to the temple in Jerusalem to present him to the Lord. (Luke 2:22b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to say that they **took** or **carried** Jesus to the temple.

Then see, there was a man whose name was Jairus, and he was a leader of the synagogue. And falling at the feet of Jesus, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

The man was not at his house when he spoke to Jesus. He wanted Jesus to **go** with him to his house.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

In some languages, it might make more sense to ask what did you come out to see.

Translation Strategies

If the word used in the ULT would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other strategies.

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.
- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the word “go,” “come,” “take,” or “bring” that would be natural in your language.

But you will be free from my oath if you **come** to my relatives and they will not give her to you. (Genesis 24:41 ULT)

But you will be free from my oath if you **go** to my relatives and they will not give her to you.

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you come out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

- (2) Use another word that expresses the right meaning.

When you have **come** to the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ... (Deuteronomy 17:14 ULT)

“When you have **arrived** in the land that Yahweh your God gives you, and when you take possession of it and begin to live in it ...”

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Come**, you and all your household, into the ark ...” (Genesis 7:1 ULT)

Yahweh said to Noah, “**Enter**, you and all your household, into the ark ...”

What did you go out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind? (Luke 7:24b ULT)

What did you travel out into the desert to see? A reed shaken by the wind?

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:7; 22:16](#))

Hebrew Months

Description

This page answers the question: *What are the Hebrew months?*

The Hebrew calendar used in the Bible has twelve months. Unlike the western calendar, its first month begins in the spring of the northern hemisphere. Sometimes a month is called by its name (Aviv, Ziv, Sivan), and sometimes it is called by its order in the Hebrew calendar year (first month, second month, third month).

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may be surprised to read of months that they have never heard of, and they may wonder how those months correspond to the months that they use.
- Readers may not realize that phrases such as “the first month” or “the second month” refer to the first or second month of the Hebrew calendar, not some other calendar.
- Readers may not know when the first month of the Hebrew calendar begins.
- The Bible may tell about something happening in a certain month, but readers will not be able to fully understand what is said about it if they do not know what season of the year that was.

List of Hebrew Months

This is a list of the Hebrew months with information about them that may be helpful in the translation.

Aviv — (This month was called **Nisan** after the Babylonian exile.) This is the first month of the Hebrew calendar. It marks when God brought the people of Israel out of Egypt. It is at the beginning of the spring season when the late rains come and people begin to harvest their crops. It is during the last part of March and the first part of April on western calendars. The Passover celebration started on Aviv 10; the Festival of Unleavened Bread was right after that, and the Festival of Harvest was a few weeks after that.

Ziv — This is the second month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the harvest season. It is during the last part of April and the first part of May on Western calendars.

Sivan — This is the third month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the harvest season and the beginning of the dry season. It is during the last part of May and the first part of June on Western calendars. The Feast of Weeks is celebrated on Sivan 6.

Tammuz — This is the fourth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of June and the first part of July on Western calendars.

Ab — This is the fifth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the dry season. It is during the last part of July and the first part of August on Western calendars.

Elul — This is the sixth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is at the end of the dry season and the beginning of the rainy season. It is during the last part of August and the first part of September on Western calendars.

Ethanim — This is the seventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the early rain season which would soften the land for sowing. It is during the last part of September and the first part of October on Western calendars. The Feast of Ingathering and the Day of Atonement are celebrated in this month.

Bul — This is the eighth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the rainy season when people plough their fields and sow seed. It is during the last part of October and the first part of November on Western calendars.

Kislev — This is the ninth month of the Hebrew calendar. This is at the end of the sowing season and the beginning of the cold season. It is during the last part of November and the first part of December on Western calendars.

Tebeth — This is the tenth month of the Hebrew calendar. It is during the cold season when there may be rain and snow. It is during the last part of December and the first part of January on Western calendars.

Shebat — This is the eleventh month of the Hebrew calendar. This is the coldest month of the year, and it has heavy rainfall. It is during the last part of January and the first part of February on Western calendars.

Adar — This is the twelfth and last month of the Hebrew calendar. This is during the cold season. It is during the last part of February and the first part of March on western calendars. The feast called Purim is celebrated in Adar.

Examples From the Bible

Today you are going out, in **the month of Aviv**. (Exodus 13:4 ULT)

You must eat unleavened bread from evening of the fourteenth day **in the first month of the year**, until evening of the twenty-first day of the month. (Exodus 12:18 ULT)

Translation Strategies

You may need to make some information about the months explicit. (See [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#).)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.
- (2) Use the names for months that people know.
- (3) State clearly what season the month occurred in.
- (4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the Hebrew name of the month. (If possible, use a footnote to show the Hebrew month and day.)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

The examples below use these two verses.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of Aviv**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt. (Exodus 23:15b ULT)

It will always be a statute for you that in **the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work. (Leviticus 16:29a ULT)

- (1) Tell the number of the Hebrew month.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the first month of the year**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

- (2) Use the months that people know.

At that time, you will appear before me in **the month of March**, which is fixed for this purpose. It was in this month that you came out from Egypt.

It will always be a statute for you that **on the day I choose in late September** you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(3) State clearly what season the month occurs in.

It will always be a statute for you that **in the autumn, on the tenth day of the seventh month**, you must humble yourselves and do no work.

(4) Refer to the time in terms of the season rather than in terms of the month.

It will always be a statute for you that in **the day I choose in early autumn**¹ you must humble yourselves and do no work.

The footnote would look like:

^[1] The Hebrew says, "the seventh month, on the tenth day of the month."

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1; 1:18; 9:1; 9:5; 9:11; 10:10; 10:11; 20:1; 28:16; 28:17; 29:1; 29:6; 29:7; 29:12; 33:3; 33:38](#))

How to Translate Names

Description

The Bible contains the names of many people, groups of people, and places. Some of these names may sound strange and be hard to say. Sometimes readers may not know what a name refers to, and sometimes they may need to understand what a name means. This page will help you see how you can translate these names and how you can help people understand what they need to know about them.

This page answers the question: *How can I translate names that are new to my culture?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Meaning of names

Most names in the Bible have meaning. Most of the time, names in the Bible are used simply to identify the people and places they refer to, but sometimes the meaning of a name is especially important.

For this **Melchizedek**, king of Salem, priest of God Most High, was the one who met Abraham returning from the slaughter of the kings and blessed him. (Hebrews 7:1 ULT)

Here the writer uses the name “Melchizedek” primarily to refer to a man who had that name, and the title “king of Salem” tells us that he ruled over a certain city.

His name first indeed means “king of righteousness,” and then also “king of Salem,” that is, “king of peace.” (Hebrews 7:2b ULT)

Here the writer explains the meanings of Melchizedek’s name and title because those things tell us more about the person. Other times, the writer does not explain the meaning of a name because he expects the reader to already know the meaning. If the meaning of the name is important to understand the passage, you can include the meaning in the text or in a footnote.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the names in the Bible. They may not know whether a name refers to a person or place or something else.
- Readers may need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand the passage.
- Some names may have different sounds or combinations of sounds that are not used in your language or are unpleasant to say in your language. For strategies to address this problem, see [Borrow Words](#).
- Some people and places in the Bible have two names. Readers may not realize that two names refer to the same person or place.

Examples From the Bible

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

Readers might not know that “Jordan” is the name of a river, “Jericho” is the name of a city, and “Amorites” is the name of a group of people.

She said, “Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?” Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

Readers may not understand the second sentence if they do not know that “Beer Lahai Roi” means “Well of the Living One who sees me.”

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

Readers may not understand why she said this if they do not know that the name Moses sounds like the Hebrew words “pull out.”

Saul was in agreement with his execution. (Acts 8:1a ULT)

But when the apostles, Barnabas and **Paul**, heard of it, they tore their clothing. (Acts 14:14a ULT)

Readers may not know that the names Saul and Paul refer to the same person.

Translation Strategies

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.
- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.
- (3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.
- (4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently.
- (5) Or if a person or place has two different names, then use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If readers cannot easily understand from the context what kind of a thing a name refers to, you can add a word to clarify it.

Then you crossed over the **Jordan** and came to **Jericho**, and the men of Jericho, and the **Amorites** ... fought against you, but I gave them into your hand. (Joshua 24:11 ULT)

You went over the **Jordan River** and came to the **city of Jericho**. The men of Jericho fought against you, along with **the tribe of the Amorites**.

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Leave and go away from here, because **Herod** wants to kill you.” (Luke 13:31 ULT)

At that hour, certain Pharisees approached, saying to him, “Go and leave here, because **King Herod** wants to kill you.”

- (2) If readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, copy the name and tell about its meaning either in the text or in a footnote.

And she called his name **Moses** and she said, “For out of the water I drew him.” (Exodus 2:10b ULT)

She called his name **Moses (which sounds like 'drawn out')**, and she said, "For out of the water I drew him."

(3) Or if readers need to understand the meaning of a name in order to understand what is said about it, and that name is used only once, translate the meaning of the name instead of copying the name.

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?" Therefore, the well was called **Beer Lahai Roi**. (Genesis 16:13b-14a ULT)

She said, "Do I really continue to see, even after he has seen me?"
Therefore, the well was called **Well of the Living One who sees me**.

(4) If a person or place has two different names, use one name most of the time and the other name only when the text tells about the person or place having more than one name or when it says something about why the person or place was given that name. Write a footnote when the source text uses the name that is used less frequently. For example, Paul is called "Saul" before Acts 13 and "Paul" after Acts 13. You could translate his name as "Paul" all of the time, except in Acts 13:9 where it talks about him having both names.

... a young man named **Saul**. (Acts 7:58b ULT)

... a young man named **Paul** ¹

The footnote would look like:

^[1] Most versions say "Saul" here, but most of the time in the Bible he is called "Paul."

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

(5) Or if a person or place has two names, use whatever name is given in the source text, and add a footnote that gives the other name. For example, you could write "Saul" where the source text has "Saul" and "Paul" where the source text has "Paul."

a young man named **Saul** (Acts 7:58 ULT)

a young man named **Saul**

The footnote would look like:

^[1] This is the same man who is called Paul beginning in Acts 13.

Then later in the story, you could translate this way:

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit; (Acts 13:9)

But **Saul**, who is also called **Paul**, was filled with the Holy Spirit;

Then after the story has explained the name change, you could translate this way.

It came about in Iconium that **Paul** and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue (Acts 14:1 ULT)

It came about in Iconium that **Paul**¹ and Barnabas entered together into the synagogue

The footnote would look like:

[1] This is the same man who was called Saul before Acts 13.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

(Go back to: Numbers 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:10; 1:12; 2:18; 2:20; 2:24; 2:25; 2:29; 2:31; 3:2; 3:17; 3:21; 3:24; 3:27; 3:30; 3:33; 7:41; 7:77; 10:29; 11:34; 11:35; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 13:21; 13:22; 13:23; 13:33; 14:6; 21:14; 21:19; 21:20; 21:23; 21:30; 22:2; 22:5; 22:39; 23:14; 24:7; 24:21; 24:24; 25:1; 25:14; 25:15; 26:5; 26:8; 26:12; 26:15; 26:19; 26:23; 26:26; 26:28; 26:30; 26:33; 26:35; 26:38; 26:42; 26:44; 26:48; 26:57; 27:12; 31:8; 32:3; 32:9; 32:12; 32:33; 32:34; 32:35; 32:36; 32:37; 32:38; 32:41; 32:42; 33:3; 33:5; 33:8; 33:11; 33:15; 33:19; 33:23; 33:27; 33:31; 33:35; 33:40; 33:41; 33:44; 33:47; 34:4; 34:7; 34:10; 34:19; 34:21; 34:24; 34:27; 36:1; 36:2; 36:11)

Hyperbole

Description

A speaker or writer can use exactly the same words to say something that he means as completely true, or as generally true, or as a hyperbole. This is why it can be hard to decide how to understand a statement. For example, the sentence below could mean three different things.

It rains here every night.

The speaker means this as literally true if he means that it really does rain here every night.

The speaker means this as a **generalization** if he means that it rains here most nights.

The speaker means this as a **hyperbole** if he wants to say that it rains more than it actually does, usually in order to express a strong attitude toward the amount or frequency of rain, such as being annoyed or being happy about it.

This page answers the question: *What are hyperboles? What are generalizations? How can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Hyperbole

In hyperbole, a figure of speech that uses exaggeration, a speaker deliberately describes something with an extreme or even unreal statement, usually to show his strong feeling or opinion about it. He expects people to understand that he is exaggerating.

They will not leave **stone upon stone in you**. (Luke 19:44b ULT)

This is an exaggeration. It means that the enemies will completely destroy Jerusalem.

Moses was educated in **all the wisdom of the Egyptians**. (Acts 7:22a ULT)

This hyperbole means that he had learned everything an Egyptian education could offer.

Generalization

This is a statement that is true most of the time or in most situations that it could apply to.

The one who ignores instruction **will have poverty and shame**, but **honor will come** to him who learns from correction. (Proverbs 13:18)

These generalizations tell about what normally happens to people who ignore instruction and what normally happens to people who learn from correction. There may be some exceptions to these statements, but they are generally true.

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as **the Gentiles do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words**. (Matthew 6:7)

This generalization tells about what Gentiles were known for doing. Many Gentiles did this. It does not matter if a few did not. The point was that the hearers should not join in this well-known practice.

Even though a hyperbole or a generalization may have a strong-sounding word like "all," "always," "none," or "never," it does not necessarily mean **exactly** "all," "always," "none," or "never." It simply means "most," "most of the time," "hardly any," or "rarely."

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Readers need to be able to understand whether or not a statement is literally true.

If readers realize that a statement is not literally true, they need to be able to understand whether it is a hyperbole, a generalization, or a lie. (Though the Bible is completely true, it tells about people who did not always tell the truth.)

Examples From the Bible

Examples of Hyperbole

If your hand causes you to stumble, **cut it off**. It is better for you to enter into life maimed ... (Mark 9:43a ULT)

When Jesus said to cut off your hand, he meant that we should **do whatever extreme things** we need to do in order not to sin. He used this hyperbole to show how extremely important it is to try to stop sinning.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel with 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The bolded phrase is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that the Philistine army was overwhelming in number. It means that there were **many, many** soldiers in the Philistine army.

But as his anointing teaches you **everything** and is true and is not a lie, and just as it has taught you, remain in him. (1 John 2:27b ULT)

This is a hyperbole. It expresses the assurance that God's Spirit teaches us about **all things that we need to know**. God's Spirit does not teach us about everything that it is possible to know.

When they found him, they also said to him, "**Everyone** is looking for you." (Mark 1:37 ULT)

The disciples probably did not mean that everyone in the city was looking for Jesus, but that **many people** were looking for him, or that all of Jesus' closest friends there were looking for him. This is an exaggeration for the purpose of expressing the emotion that they and many others were worried about him.

Examples of Generalization

Can **any good thing** come out of Nazareth? (John 1:46b ULT)

This rhetorical question is meant to express the generalization that there is nothing good in Nazareth. The people there had a reputation for being uneducated and not strictly religious. Of course, there were exceptions.

One of them, of their own prophets, has said, "**Cretans are always liars, evil beasts, lazy bellies**." (Titus 1:12 ULT)

This is a generalization that means that Cretans had a reputation to be like this because, in general, this is how Cretans behaved. It is possible that there were exceptions.

A lazy hand causes a person to be poor, but the hand of the diligent person gains riches. (Proverbs 10:4 ULT)

This is generally true, and it reflects the experience of most people. It is possible that there are exceptions in some circumstances.

Caution

- Do not assume that something is an exaggeration just because it seems to be impossible. God does miraculous things.

They saw Jesus **walking on the sea** and coming near the boat. (John 6:19b ULT)

This is not hyperbole. Jesus really walked on the water. It is a literal statement.

- Do not assume that the word “all” is always a generalization that means “most.”
 - > Yahweh is righteous in **all** his ways
 - > and gracious in **all** he does. (Psalms 145:17 ULT)

Yahweh is always righteous. This is a completely true statement.

Translation Strategies

If the hyperbole or generalization would be natural and people would understand it and not think that it is a lie, consider using it. If not, here are other options.

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.
- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”
- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.
- (4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Express the meaning without the exaggeration.

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and troops **as numerous as the sand on the seashore**. (1 Samuel 13:5a ULT)

The Philistines gathered together to fight against Israel: 3,000 chariots, 6,000 men to drive the chariots, and **a great number of troops**.

- (2) For a generalization, show that it is a generalization by using a phrase like “in general” or “in most cases.”

The one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame. (Proverbs 13:18a ULT)

In general, the one who ignores instruction will have poverty and shame

When you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the **Gentiles do**, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words. (Matthew 6:7 ULT)

And when you pray, do not make useless repetitions as the Gentiles **generally** do, for they think that they will be heard because of their many words.

- (3) For a hyperbole or a generalization, add a word like “many” or “almost” to show that the hyperbole or generalization is not meant to be exact.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

Almost all the country of Judea and **almost all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him.
or:

Many of the country of Judea and **many** of the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(4) For a hyperbole or a generalization that has a word like “all,” “always,” “none,” or “never,” consider deleting that word.

The **whole** country of Judea and **all** the people of Jerusalem went out to him. (Mark 1:5a ULT)

The country of Judea and the people of Jerusalem went out to him.

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:22](#); [16:13](#); [Notes](#); [22:5](#))

Hypothetical Situations

Consider these phrases: “If the sun stopped shining ...” “What if the sun stopped shining ...” “Suppose the sun stopped shining ...” and “If only the sun had not stopped shining.” We use such expressions to set up hypothetical situations, imagining what might have happened or what could happen in the future but probably will not. We also use them to express regret or wishes. Hypothetical expressions occur often in the Bible. You (the translator) need to translate them in a way that people will know that the event did not actually happen and so that they will understand why the event was imagined.

This page answers the question: *What is a hypothetical situation?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

Description

Hypothetical situations are situations that are not real. They can be in the past, present, or future. Hypothetical situations in the past and present have not happened, are not happening now, and ones in the future are not expected to happen.

People sometimes tell about conditions and what would happen if those conditions were met, but they know that these things have not happened or probably will not happen. (The conditions comprise a phrase that starts with “if.”)

- If he had lived to be 100 years old, he would have seen his grandson’s grandson. (But he did not.)
- If he lived to be 100 years old, he would still be alive today. (But he is not.)
- If he lives to be 100 years old, he will see his grandson’s grandson. (But he probably will not.)

People sometimes express wishes about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- I wish he had come.
- I wish he were here.
- I wish he would come.

People sometimes express regrets about things that have not happened or that are not expected to happen.

- If only he had come.
- If only he were here.
- If only he would come.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Translators need to recognize the different kinds of hypothetical situations in the Bible and understand that they are unreal.
- Translators need to know their own language’s ways of talking about different kinds of hypothetical situations.

Examples From the Bible

Hypothetical Situations in the Past

“Woe to you, Chorazin! Woe to you, Bethsaida! **If the mighty deeds had been done** in Tyre and Sidon which were done in you, **they would have repented** long ago in sackcloth and ashes.” (Matthew 11:21 ULT)

Here in Matthew 11:21, Jesus said that **if** the people living in the ancient cities of Tyre and Sidon had been able to see the miracles that he performed, they would have repented long ago. The people of Tyre and Sidon did not actually see his miracles, and they did not repent. He said this to rebuke the people of Chorazin and Bethsaida who had seen his miracles and yet did not repent.

Martha then said to Jesus, “Lord, **if you had been here, my brother would not have died.**” (John 11:21 ULT)

Martha said this to express her wish that Jesus would have come sooner so that her brother would not have died. But Jesus did not come sooner and her brother did die.

Hypothetical Situations in the Present

And no man puts new wine into old wineskins. **But if he did do that, the new wine would burst the wineskins, and it would be spilled out, and the wineskins would be destroyed.** (Luke 5:37 ULT)

Jesus told about what would happen if a person were to put new wine into old wineskins. But no one would do that. He used this imaginary situation as an example to show that there are times when it is unwise to mix new things with old things. He did this so that people could understand why his disciples were not fasting as people traditionally did.

Jesus said to them, “What man would there be among you, who, **if he had just one sheep, and if this sheep fell into a deep hole on the Sabbath, would not grasp hold of it and lift it out?**” (Matthew 12:11 ULT)

Jesus asked the religious leaders what they would do on the Sabbath if one of their sheep fell into a hole. He was not saying that their sheep would fall into a hole. He used this imaginary situation to show them that they were wrong to judge him for healing people on the Sabbath.

Hypothetical Situation in the Future

Unless those days are shortened, no flesh would be saved. But for the sake of the elect, those days will be shortened. (Matthew 24:22 ULT)

Jesus was talking about a future time when very bad things would happen. He told what would happen if those days of trouble were to last a long time. He did this to show how bad those days will be—so bad that if they lasted a long time, no one would be saved. But then he clarified that God will shorten those days of trouble so that the elect (those he has chosen) will be saved.

Expressing Emotion About a Hypothetical Situation

People sometimes talk about hypothetical situations in order to express regrets and wishes. Regrets are about the past and wishes are about the present and future.

The Israelites said to them, “**If only we had died by Yahweh’s hand in the land of Egypt when we were sitting by the pots of meat and were eating bread to the full.** For you have brought us out into this wilderness to kill our whole community with hunger.” (Exodus 16:3 ULT)

Here the Israelites were afraid that they would have to suffer and die of hunger in the wilderness, and so they wished that they had stayed in Egypt and died there with full stomachs. They were complaining, expressing regret that this had not happened.

I know what you have done, and that you are neither cold nor hot. **I wish that you were either cold or hot!** (Revelation 3:15 ULT)

Jesus wished that the people were either hot or cold, but they are neither. He was rebuking them, expressing anger at this.

Translation Strategies

Find out how people speaking your language show:

- that something could have happened, but did not.
- that something could be true now, but is not.
- that something could happen in the future, but will not unless something changes.
- that they wish for something, but it does not happen.
- that they regret that something did not happen.

Use your language's ways of showing these kinds of things.

You may also want to watch the video at https://ufw.io/figs_hypo.

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:11](#); [12:14](#); [22:18](#); [22:33](#); [24:13](#))

Idiom

An idiom is a figure of speech made up of a group of words that, as a whole, has a meaning that is different from what one would understand from the meanings of the individual words. Someone from outside of the culture usually cannot understand an idiom without someone inside the culture explaining its true meaning. Every language uses idioms. Some English examples are:

- You are pulling my leg. (This means, “You are teasing me by telling me something that is not true.”)
- Do not push the envelope. (This means, “Do not take a matter to its extreme.”)
- This house is under water. (This means, “The debt owed for this house is greater than its actual value.”)
- We are painting the town red. (This means, “We are going around town tonight celebrating very intensely.”)

This page answers the question: *What are idioms and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Description

An idiom is a phrase that has a special meaning to the people of the language or culture who use it. Its meaning is different than what a person would understand from the meanings of the individual words that form the phrase.

He **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

The words “set his face” is an idiom that means “decided.”

Sometimes people may be able to understand an idiom from another culture, but it might sound like a strange way to express the meaning.

I am not worthy that you would **come under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

The phrase “come under my roof” is an idiom that means “enter my house.”

Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

This idiom means “Listen carefully and remember what I say.”

Purpose: An idiom is probably created in a culture somewhat by accident when someone describes something in an unusual way. But, when that unusual way communicates the message powerfully and people understand it clearly, other people start to use it. After a while, it becomes a normal way of talking in that language.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People can easily misunderstand idioms in the original languages of the Bible if they do not know the cultures that produced the Bible.
- People can easily misunderstand idioms that are in the source language Bibles if they do not know the cultures that made those translations.
- It is useless to translate idioms literally (according to the meaning of each word) when the target language audience will not understand what they mean.

Examples From the Bible

Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, “Look, we are your **flesh and bone**.” (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

This means, “We and you belong to the same race, the same family.”

█ The children of Israel went out **with a high hand**. (Exodus 14:8b ASV)

This means, "The Israelites went out defiantly."

█ the one who **lifts up my head** (Psalm 3:3b ULT)

This means, "the one who helps me."

Translation Strategies

If the idiom would be clearly understood in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.
- (2) Use a different idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the meaning plainly without using an idiom.

█ Then all Israel came to David at Hebron and said, "Look, we are your **flesh and bone**." (1 Chronicles 11:1 ULT)

█ Look, we all **belong to the same nation**.

█ Then he **set his face** to go to Jerusalem. (Luke 9:51b ULT)

█ He started to travel to Jerusalem, **determined to reach it**.

█ I am not worthy that you would come **under my roof**. (Luke 7:6b ULT)

█ I am not worthy that you should enter **my house**.

- (2) Use an idiom that people use in your own language that has the same meaning.

█ Put these words **into your ears**. (Luke 9:44a ULT)

█ **Be all ears** when I say these words to you.

█ My **eyes grow dim** from grief. (Psalm 6:7a ULT)

█ I am crying my **eyes out**

(Go back to: Numbers 1:18; 1:50; 3:4; 3:8; 4:5; 5:12; 5:14; 5:19; 5:20; 5:21; 5:29; 5:30; 6:2; 6:3; 6:4; 6:5; 6:6; 6:7; 6:8; 6:13; 6:18; 6:19; 6:21; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 7:84; 8:16; 9:1; 9:3; 9:4; 9:6; 9:10; 9:11; 9:13; 9:20; 10:9; 10:31; 11:14; Notes; 14:22; 15:20; 15:40; 16:3; 16:7; 18:8; 18:15; 20:19; 21:11; 21:20; 22:5; 22:22; 22:27; 24:2; 24:3; 24:4; 24:10; 24:15; 25:3; 25:6; 27:16; 27:17; 29:12; 30:4; 30:5; 30:7; 30:9; 30:11; 30:12; 30:14; 31:16; 32:5; 32:13; 32:20; 32:32; 35:16; 35:21; 35:31)

Litotes

Description

Litotes is a figure of speech in which the speaker expresses a strong positive meaning by using two negative words or a negative word with a word that means the opposite of the meaning he intends. A few examples of negative words are “no,” “not,” “none,” and “never.” The opposite of “good” is “bad.” Someone could say that something is “not bad” to mean that it is extremely good.

This page answers the question: *What is litotes?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use litotes. People who speak those languages might not understand that a statement using litotes actually strengthens the positive meaning. Instead, they might think that it weakens or even cancels the positive meaning.

Examples From the Bible

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**, (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

By using litotes, Paul emphasized that his visit with them was **very** useful.

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

By using litotes, Luke emphasized that there was a **lot** of excitement or anxiety among the soldiers about what happened to Peter. (Peter had been in prison, and even though there were soldiers guarding him, he escaped when an angel let him out. So they were very agitated.)

But you, Bethlehem, in the land of Judah,
are **not the least** among the leaders of Judah,
for from you will come a ruler
who will shepherd my people Israel. (Matthew 2:6 ULT)

By using litotes, the prophet emphasized that Bethlehem would be a **very important city**.

Translation Strategies

If the litotes would be understood correctly, consider using it.

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the meaning with the negative would not be clear, give the **positive** meaning in a strong way.

For you yourselves know, brothers, that our coming to you was **not useless**. (1 Thessalonians 2:1 ULT)

“For you yourselves know, brothers, our visit to you **did much good**.”

Now when it became day, there was **no small disturbance** among the soldiers over what therefore had happened to Peter. (Acts 12:18 ULT)

“Now when it became day, there was **great excitement** among the soldiers, regarding what had happened to Peter.”

or:

“Now when it became day, the soldiers were **very concerned** because of what had happened to Peter.”

(Go back to: [Numbers 23:9](#); [31:49](#))

Merism

Definition

Merism is a figure of speech in which a person refers to something by speaking of two extreme parts of it. By referring to the extreme parts, the speaker intends to include also everything in between those parts.

“I am **the alpha and the omega**,” says the Lord God,
“the one who is, and who was, and who is to come, the Almighty.” (Revelation 1:8 ULT)

I am **the alpha and the omega, the first and the last, the beginning and the end**.
(Revelation 22:13, ULT)

This page answers the question: *What does the word merism mean and how can I translate phrases that have it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Alpha and omega are the first and last letters of the Greek alphabet. This is a merism that includes everything from the beginning to the end. It means eternal.

... I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth** ..., (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

Heaven and earth is a merism that includes everything that exists.

Reason This is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not use merism. The readers of those languages may think that the phrase only applies to the items mentioned. They may not realize that it refers to those two things and everything in between.

Examples From the Bible

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh’s name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

This bolded phrase is a merism because it speaks of the east and the west and everywhere in between. It means “everywhere.”

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13)

The bolded phrase is merism because it speaks of old people and young people and everyone in between. It means “everyone.”

Translation Strategies

If the merism would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.
- (2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Identify what the merism refers to without mentioning the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything**.

From the rising of the sun to its setting, Yahweh's name should be praised. (Psalm 113:3 ULT)

In all places, people should praise Yahweh's name.

(2) Identify what the merism refers to and include the parts.

I praise you, Father, Lord of **heaven and earth**. (Matthew 11:25b ULT)

I praise you, Father, Lord of **everything, including both what is in heaven and what is on earth**.

He will bless those who honor him, both **young and old**. (Psalm 115:13 ULT)

He will bless **all those** who honor him, regardless of whether they are **young or old**.

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:4](#); [21:30](#); [27:21](#))

Metaphor

Description

A metaphor is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of one thing as if it were a different thing because he wants people to think about how those two things are alike.

For example, someone might say, “The girl I love is a red rose.”

A girl and a rose are very different things, but the speaker considers that they are alike in some way. The hearer’s task is to understand in what way they are alike.

This page answers the question: *What is a metaphor and how can I translate a Bible passage that has one?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[Simile](#)

The Parts of a Metaphor

The example above shows us that a metaphor has three parts. In this metaphor, the speaker is talking about “the girl I love.” This is the **Topic**. The speaker wants the hearer to think about what is similar between her and “a red rose.” The red rose is the **Image** to which he compares the girl. Most probably, he wants the hearer to consider that they are both beautiful. This is the **Idea** that the girl and the rose both share, and so we may also call it the **Point of Comparison**.

Every metaphor has three parts:

- The **Topic**, the item being immediately discussed by the writer/speaker.
- The **Image**, the physical item (object, event, action, etc.) which the speaker uses to describe the topic.
- The **Idea**, the abstract concept or quality that the physical **Image** brings to the mind of the hearer when he thinks of how the **Image** and the **Topic** are similar. Often, the **Idea** of a metaphor is not explicitly stated in the Bible, but it is only implied from the context. The hearer or reader usually needs to think of the **Idea** himself.

Using these terms, we can say that a metaphor is a figure of speech that uses a physical **Image** to apply an abstract **Idea** to the speaker’s **Topic**.

Usually, a writer or speaker uses a metaphor in order to express something about a **Topic**, with at least one **Point of Comparison (Idea)** between the **Topic** and the **Image**. Often in metaphors, the **Topic** and the **Image** are explicitly stated, but the **Idea** is only implied. The writer/speaker often uses a metaphor in order to invite the readers/listeners to think about the similarity between the **Topic** and the **Image** and to figure out for themselves the **Idea** that is being communicated.

Speakers often use metaphors in order to strengthen their message, to make their language more vivid, to express their feelings better, to say something that is hard to say in any other way, or to help people remember their message.

Sometimes speakers use metaphors that are very common in their language. However, sometimes speakers use metaphors that are uncommon, and even some metaphors that are unique. When a metaphor has become very common in a language, often it becomes a “passive” metaphor, in contrast to uncommon metaphors, which we describe as being “active.” Passive metaphors and active metaphors each present a different kind of translation problem, which we will discuss below.

Passive Metaphors

A passive metaphor is a metaphor that has been used so much in the language that its speakers no longer regard it as one concept standing for another. Linguists often call these “dead metaphors.” Passive metaphors are extremely common. Examples in English include the terms “table **leg**,” “family **tree**,” “book **leaf**” (meaning a page

in a book), or the word “crane” (meaning a large machine for lifting heavy loads). English speakers simply think of these words as having more than one meaning. Examples of passive metaphors in Biblical Hebrew include using the word “hand” to represent “power,” using the word “face” to represent “presence,” and speaking of emotions or moral qualities as if they were “clothing.”

Patterned Pairs of Concepts Acting as Metaphors

Many ways of metaphorical speaking depend on pairs of concepts, where one underlying concept frequently stands for a different underlying concept. For example, in English, the direction “up” (the Image) often represents the concepts of “more” or “better” (the Idea). Because of this pair of underlying concepts, we can make sentences such as “The price of gasoline is going **up**,” “A **highly** intelligent man,” and also the opposite kind of idea: “The temperature is going **down**,” and “I am feeling very **low**.”

Patterned pairs of concepts are constantly used for metaphorical purposes in the world’s languages because they serve as convenient ways to organize thought. In general, people like to speak of abstract qualities (such as power, presence, emotions, and moral qualities) as if they were body parts, or as if they were objects that could be seen or held, or as if they were events that could be watched as they happened.

When these metaphors are used in normal ways, it is rare that the speaker and audience regard them as figurative speech. Examples of metaphors in English that go unrecognized are:

- “Turn the heat **up**.” More is spoken of as up.
- “Let us **go ahead** with our debate.” Doing what was planned is spoken of as walking or advancing.
- “You **defend** your theory well.” Argument is spoken of as war.
- “A **flow** of words.” Words are spoken of as liquids.

English speakers do not view these as metaphorical expressions or figures of speech, so it would be wrong to translate them into other languages in a way that would lead people to pay special attention to them as figurative speech. For a description of important patterns of this kind of metaphor in biblical languages, please see [Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns](#) and the pages it will direct you to.

When translating something that is a passive metaphor into another language, do not treat it as a metaphor. Instead, just use the best expression for that thing or concept in the target language.

Active Metaphors

These are metaphors that people recognize as one concept standing for another concept, or one thing for another thing. Metaphors make people think about how the one thing is like the other thing, because in most ways the two things are very different. People also easily recognize these metaphors as giving strength and unusual qualities to the message. For this reason, people pay attention to these metaphors. For example,

But for you who fear my name, the sun of righteousness will rise with healing in its wings.
(Malachi 4:2a ULT)

Here, God speaks about his salvation as if it were the sun rising in order to shine its rays on the people whom he loves. He also speaks of the sun’s rays as if they were wings. Also, he speaks of these wings as if they were bringing medicine that would heal his people. Here is another example:

And he said to them, “Go and tell that fox ...” (Luke 13:32a ULT)

Here, “that fox” refers to King Herod. The people listening to Jesus certainly understood that Jesus was intending for them to apply certain characteristics of a fox to Herod. They probably understood that Jesus intended to communicate that Herod was evil, either in a cunning way or as someone who was destructive, murderous, or who took things that did not belong to him, or all of these.

Active metaphors require the translator's special care to make a correct translation. To do so, you need to understand the parts of a metaphor and how they work together to produce meaning.

Jesus said to them, "I am the bread of life; he who comes to me will not be hungry, and he who believes in me will never be thirsty." (John 6:35 ULT)

In this metaphor, Jesus called himself the bread of life. The **Topic** is "I" (meaning Jesus himself) and the **Image** is "bread." Bread was the primary food that people ate in that place and time. The similarity between bread and Jesus is that people need both to live. Just as people need to eat food in order to have physical life, people need to trust in Jesus in order to have eternal life. The **Idea** of the metaphor is "life." In this case, Jesus stated the central Idea of the metaphor, but often the Idea is only implied.

Purposes of Metaphor

- One purpose of metaphor is to teach people about something that they do not know (the **Topic**) by showing that it is like something that they already do know (the **Image**).
- Another purpose is to emphasize that something (the **Topic**) has a particular quality (the **Idea**) or to show that it has that quality in an extreme way.
- Another purpose is to lead people to feel the same way about the **Topic** as they would feel about the **Image**.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not recognize that something is a metaphor. In other words, they may mistake a metaphor for a literal statement, and thus, misunderstand it.
- People may not be familiar with the thing that is used as an image, and so, not be able to understand the metaphor.
- If the topic is not stated, people may not know what the topic is.
- People may not know the points of comparison that the speaker wants them to understand. If they fail to think of these points of comparison, they will not understand the metaphor.
- People may think that they understand the metaphor, but they do not. This can happen when they apply points of comparison from their own culture, rather than from the biblical culture.

Translation Principles

- Make the meaning of a metaphor as clear to the target audience as it was to the original audience.
- Do not make the meaning of a metaphor more clear to the target audience than you think it was to the original audience.

Examples From the Bible

Listen to this word, **you cows of Bashan**, (Amos 4:1q ULT)

In this metaphor Amos speaks to the upper-class women of Samaria ("you," the Topic) as if they were cows (the Image). Amos does not say what similarity(s) he intends between these women and cows. He wants the reader to think of them, and he fully expects that readers from his culture will easily do so. From the context, we can see that he means that the women are like cows in that they are fat and interested only in feeding themselves. If we were to apply similarities from a different culture, such as that cows are sacred and should be worshiped, we would get the wrong meaning from this verse.

NOTE: Amos does not actually mean that the women are cows. He speaks to them as human beings.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; **we are the clay. You are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

The example above has two related metaphors. The Topic(s) are “we” and “you,” and the Image(s) are “clay” and “potter.” The similarity between a potter and God is the fact that both make what they wish out of their material. The potter makes what he wishes out of the clay, and God makes what he wishes out of his people. The Idea being expressed by the comparison between the potter’s clay and “us” is that **neither the clay nor God’s people have a right to complain about what they are becoming.**

Jesus said to them, “Take heed and beware of **the yeast of the Pharisees and Sadducees.**”
The disciples reasoned among themselves and said, “It is because we did not take bread.”
(Matthew 16:6-7 ULT)

Jesus used a metaphor here, but his disciples did not realize it. When he said “yeast,” they thought he was talking about bread, but “yeast” was the Image in his metaphor, and the Topic was the teaching of the Pharisees and Sadducees. Since the disciples (the original audience) did not understand what Jesus meant, it would not be good to state clearly here what Jesus meant.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the metaphor in the same way that the original readers would have understood it, go ahead and use it. Be sure to test the translation to make sure that people do understand it in the right way.

If people do not or would not understand it, here are some other strategies.

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, it is a passive metaphor), then express the **Idea** in the simplest way preferred by your language.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible.** If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as “like” or “as.” See [Simile](#).

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the Topic was.)

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity (the **Idea**) between the topic and the image, then state it clearly.

(8) If none of these strategies is satisfactory, then simply state the **Idea** plainly without using a metaphor.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) If the metaphor is a common expression in the source language or expresses a patterned pair of concepts in a biblical language (that is, a passive metaphor), then express the Idea in the simplest way preferred by your language.

Then, see, one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **fell at his feet**. (Mark 5:22 ULT)

Then one of the leaders of the synagogue, named Jairus, came, and when he saw him, **immediately bowed down in front of him**.

(2) If the metaphor seems to be an active metaphor, you can translate it literally **if you think that the target language also uses this metaphor in the same way to mean the same thing as in the Bible**. If you do this, be sure to test it to make sure that the language community understands it correctly.

But Jesus said to them, "He wrote this commandment to you because of your **hardness of heart**." (Mark 10:5 ULT)

It was because of your **hard hearts** that he wrote you this law.

We made no change to this one, but it must be tested to make sure that the target audience correctly understands this metaphor.

(3) If the target audience does not realize that it is a metaphor, then change the metaphor to a simile. Some languages do this by adding words such as "like" or "as."

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we **are the clay**. You **are our potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are **like** clay. You are **like** a potter; and we all are the work of your hand.

(4) If the target audience would not know the **Image**, see [Translate Unknowns](#) for ideas on how to translate that image.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14b ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you to **kick against a pointed stick**.

(5) If the target audience would not use that **Image** for that meaning, use an image from your own culture instead. Be sure that it is an image that could have been possible in Bible times.

Yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **clay**. You are our **potter**; and we all are the work of your hand. (Isaiah 64:8 ULT)

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **wood**. You are our **carver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

"And yet, Yahweh, you are our father; we are the **string**. You are the **weaver**; and we all are the work of your hand."

(6) If the target audience would not know what the **Topic** is, then state the topic clearly. (However, do not do this if the original audience did not know what the topic was.)

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; **He is my rock**. May he be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

(7) If the target audience would not know the intended similarity between the Topic and the Image, then state it clearly.

Yahweh lives; may **my rock** be praised. May the God of my salvation be exalted. (Psalm 18:46 ULT)

Yahweh lives; may he be praised because he is the rock **under which I can hide from my enemies**. May the God of my salvation be exalted.

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? It is hard for you **to kick against a goad**. (Acts 26:14 ULT)

Saul, Saul, why do you persecute me? You **fight against me and hurt yourself like an ox that kicks against its owner's pointed stick**.

(8) If none of these strategies are satisfactory, then simply state the idea plainly without using a metaphor.

I will make you to become **fishers of men**. (Mark 1:17b ULT)

I will make you to become **people who gather men**.
Now you gather fish. I will make you **gather people**.

To learn more about specific metaphors, see Biblical Imagery — Common Patterns.

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:53](#); [3:18](#); [3:21](#); [5:2](#); [5:21](#); [5:28](#); [6:7](#); [6:27](#); [8:19](#); [9:6](#); [9:10](#); [9:13](#); [10:35](#); [11:10](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [11:17](#); [11:20](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:29](#); [12:5](#); [12:9](#); [12:12](#); [12:15](#); [13:27](#); [13:32](#); [13:33](#); [14:8](#); [14:9](#); [14:14](#); [14:15](#); [14:18](#); [14:42](#); [14:43](#); [15:3](#); [15:7](#); [15:10](#); [15:13](#); [15:14](#); [15:24](#); [15:30](#); [15:31](#); [15:39](#); [16:2](#); [16:3](#); [16:10](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:21](#); [16:26](#); [16:32](#); [16:34](#); [16:35](#); [16:45](#); [18:6](#); [18:13](#); [18:17](#); [18:20](#); [18:21](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:26](#); [19:7](#); [19:9](#); [19:10](#); [19:11](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [19:17](#); [19:20](#); [21:28](#); [22:8](#); [22:38](#); [23:5](#); [23:10](#); [23:12](#); [23:16](#); [23:24](#); [24:8](#); [24:21](#); [25:11](#); [27:12](#); [27:20](#); [30:2](#); [30:3](#); [30:4](#); [30:6](#); [30:7](#); [30:8](#); [30:12](#); [30:14](#); [32:4](#); [32:5](#); [32:10](#); [32:11](#); [32:13](#); [32:14](#); [32:18](#); [32:21](#); [32:32](#); [33:4](#); [33:54](#); [35:22](#); [35:33](#); [36:8](#); [36:9](#); [36:12](#))

Metonymy

Description

Metonymy is a figure of speech in which an item (either physical or abstract) is called not by its own name, but by the name of something closely associated with it. A metonym is a word or phrase used as a substitute for something that it is associated with.

This page answers the question: *What is a metonymy?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

... and **the blood** of Jesus his Son cleanses us from every sin. (1 John 1:7b ULT)

The blood represents Christ's death.

And he took **the cup** in the same way after supper, saying, "**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you." (Luke 22:20 ULT)

The cup represents the wine that is in the cup.

Metonymy can be used

- as a shorter way of referring to something
- to make an abstract idea more meaningful by referring to it with the name of a physical object associated with it

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

The Bible uses metonymy very often. Speakers of some languages are not familiar with metonymy and they may not recognize it when they read it in the Bible. If they do not recognize the metonymy, they will not understand the passage or, worse yet, they will get a wrong understanding of the passage. Whenever a metonym is used, people need to be able to understand what it represents.

Examples From the Bible

The Lord God will give to him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

A throne represents the authority of a king. "Throne" is a metonym for "kingly authority," "kingship," or "reign." This means that God would make him become a king who would follow King David.

Then immediately his **mouth** was opened (Luke 1:64a ULT)

The mouth here represents the power to speak. This means that he was able to talk again.

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

The word "wrath" or "anger" is a metonym for "punishment." God was extremely angry with the people and, as a result, he would punish them.

Translation Strategies

If people would easily understand the metonym, consider using it. Otherwise, here are some options.

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.
- (2) Use only the name of the thing the metonym represents.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the metonym along with the name of the thing it represents.

And he took the cup in the same way after the supper, saying, “**This cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.” (Luke 22:20 ULT)

He took the cup in the same way after supper, saying, “**The wine in this cup** is the new covenant in my blood, which is poured out for you.”

This verse also contains a second metonym: The cup, (representing the wine it contains) also represents the new covenant made with the blood Christ shed for us.

- (2) Use the name of the thing the metonym represents.

The Lord God will give him **the throne** of his father David. (Luke 1:32b ULT)

“The Lord God will give him **the kingly authority** of his father, David.”
or:
“The Lord God will **make him king** like his ancestor, King David.”

Who warned you to flee from **the wrath** that is coming? (Luke 3:7b ULT)

“Who warned you to flee from God’s coming **punishment**?”

To learn about some common metonymies, see [Biblical Imagery — Common Metonymies](#).

(Go back to: Numbers 3:4; 3:6; 3:8; 3:48; 3:51; 4:5; 4:15; 4:16; 5:7; 5:8; 5:14; 5:30; 6:9; 7:2; 10:2; 10:5; 10:6; 10:9; 10:10; 11:17; 11:23; 11:25; 12:7; 12:11; 13:26; 13:27; 14:3; 14:22; 14:24; 14:29; 14:32; 14:33; 14:43; 15:20; 15:31; 15:39; 16:13; 16:22; 16:38; 16:46; 16:47; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 19:12; 20:3; 20:9; 20:16; 20:17; 20:18; 20:20; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:17; 21:21; 21:24; 22:3; 22:28; 22:31; 23:9; 23:10; 23:23; 24:7; 24:17; 24:18; 24:19; 24:20; 26:61; 30:2; 30:12; 32:5; 32:22; 35:19; 35:24; 35:27; 36:7)

Numbers

Description

There are many numbers in the Bible. They can be written as words (“five”) or as numerals (“5”). Some numbers are very large, such as “two hundred” (200), “twenty-two thousand” (22,000), or “one hundred million” (100,000,000). Some languages do not have words for all of these numbers. Translators need to decide how to translate numbers and whether to write them as words or numerals.

This page answers the question: *How do I translate numbers?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Some numbers are exact and others are rounded.

▮ Abram was **86** years old when Hagar bore Ishmael to Abram. (Genesis 16:16 ULT)

Eighty-six (86) is an exact number.

▮ That day about **3,000** of the people died. (Exodus 32:28b ULT)

Here the number three thousand (3,000) is a round number. It may have been a little more than that or a little less than that. The word “about” shows that it is not an exact number.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have words for some of these numbers.

Translation Principles

- Exact numbers should be translated as closely and specifically as they can be.
- Rounded numbers can be translated more generally.

Examples From the Bible

▮ When Jared had lived **162** years, he became the father of Enoch. After he became the father of Enoch, Jared lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Jared lived **962** years, and then he died. (Genesis 5:18-20 ULT)

The numbers 162, 800, and 962 are exact numbers and should be translated with something as close to those numbers as possible.

▮ Our sister, may you be the mother of **thousands of ten thousands**. (Genesis 24:60b ULT)

This is a rounded number. It does not say exactly how many descendants she should have, but it was a huge number of them.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Write numbers using numerals.
- (2) Write numbers using your language’s words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.
- (3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parentheses after them.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

We will use the following verse in our examples:

Now, see, at great effort I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities. (1 Chronicles 22:14a ULT)

(1) Write numbers using numerals.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **100,000** talents of gold, **1,000,000** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(2) Write numbers using your language's words or the Gateway Language words for those numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **one million** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(3) Write numbers using words, and put the numerals in parenthesis after them.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house one **hundred thousand (100,000)** talents of gold, **one million (1,000,000)** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(4) Combine words for large numbers.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **one hundred thousand** talents of gold, **a thousand thousand** talents of silver, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

(5) Use a very general expression for very large rounded numbers and write the numeral in parentheses afterward.

I have prepared for Yahweh's house **a great amount of gold (100,000 talents), ten times that amount of silver (1,000,000 talents)**, and bronze and iron in large quantities.

Consistency

Be consistent in your translations. Decide how the numbers will be translated, using numbers or numerals. There are different ways of being consistent.

- Use words to represent numbers all of the time. (You might have very long words.)
- Use numerals to represent numbers all of the time.
- Use words to represent the numbers that your language has words for and use numerals for the numbers that your language does not have words for.
- Use words for low numbers and numerals for high numbers.
- Use words for numbers that require few words and numerals for numbers that require more than a few words.
- Use words to represent numbers, and write the numerals in parentheses after them.

Consistency in the ULT and UST

The *unfoldingWord® Literal Text* (ULT) and the *unfoldingWord® Simplified Text* (UST) use words for the numbers one through ten and use numerals for all numbers above ten.

When Adam had lived **130** years, he became the father of a son in his own likeness, after his image, and he called his name Seth. After Adam became the father of Seth, he lived **800** years. He became the father of more sons and daughters. Adam lived **930** years, and then he died.
(Genesis 5:3-5 ULT)

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Ordinal Numbers](#)

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:3; 1:21; 1:23; 1:25; 1:27; 1:29; 1:31; 1:33; 1:35; 1:37; 1:39; 1:41; 1:43; 1:46; 2:4; 2:5; 2:6; 2:7; 2:8; 2:9; 2:10; 2:11; 2:12; 2:13; 2:14; 2:15; 2:16; 2:18; 2:19; 2:20; 2:21; 2:22; 2:23; 2:24; 2:25; 2:26; 2:27; 2:28; 2:29; 2:30; 2:31; 2:32; 3:22; 3:28; 3:34; 3:39; 3:43; 3:46; 3:47; 3:50; 4:3; 4:23; 4:30; 4:35; 4:36; 4:39; 4:40; 4:43; 4:44; 4:47; 4:48; 7:3; 7:13; 7:19; 7:25; 7:31; 7:37; 7:43; 7:49; 7:55; 7:61; 7:67; 7:73; 7:79; 7:85; 7:86; 7:87; 7:88; 8:24; 8:25; 11:21; 11:31; 13:22; 13:25; 16:2; 16:35; 16:49; 17:2; 20:29; 26:2; 26:4; 26:5; 26:7; 26:10; 26:12; 26:14; 26:15; 26:18; 26:19; 26:22; 26:23; 26:25; 26:26; 26:27; 26:33; 26:34; 26:35; 26:37; 26:38; 26:41; 26:42; 26:43; 26:44; 26:47; 26:48; 26:50; 26:51; 26:62; 29:13; 29:14; 29:15; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 31:4; 31:5; 31:14; 31:28; 31:32; 31:33; 31:34; 31:35; 31:36; 31:37; 31:38; 31:39; 31:40; 31:42; 31:43; 31:44; 31:46; 31:47; 31:48; 31:52; 32:11; 32:13; 33:9; 33:39; 35:4; 35:5; 35:6; 35:7\)](#))

Ordinal Numbers

Description

Ordinal numbers are used in the Bible mainly to tell the position of something in a list.

And God has indeed appointed some in the church, **first** apostles, **second** prophets, **third** teachers, then miracles. (1 Corinthians 12:28a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What are ordinal numbers and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Numbers](#)

This is a list of workers that God gave to the church in their order.

Ordinal Numbers in English

Most ordinal numbers in English simply have “-th” added to the end.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
4	four	fourth
10	ten	tenth
100	one hundred	one hundredth
1,000	one thousand	one thousandth

Some ordinal numbers in English do not follow that pattern.

Numeral	Number	Ordinal Number
1	one	first
2	two	second
3	three	third
5	five	fifth
12	twelve	twelfth

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages do not have special numbers for showing the order of items in a list. There are different ways to deal with this.

Examples From the Bible

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

The people cast lots and one went to each of these people in the order given.

You must place in it four rows of precious stones. The **first** row must have a ruby, a topaz, and a garnet. The **second** row must have an emerald, a sapphire, and a diamond. The **third** row must have a jacinth, an agate, and an amethyst. The **fourth** row must have a beryl, and an onyx, and a jasper. They must be mounted in gold settings. (Exodus 28:17-20 ULT)

This describes four rows of stones. The first row is probably the top row, and the fourth row is probably the bottom row.

Translation Strategies

If your language has ordinal numbers and using them would give the right meaning, consider using them. If not, here are some strategies to consider:

- (1) Use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.
- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Tell the total number of items, and use “one” with the first item and “another” or “the next” with the rest.

The first lot went to Jehoiarib, the second to Jedaiah, the third to Harim, the fourth to Seorim ... the twenty-third to Delaiah, and the twenty-fourth to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **another** to Jedaiah, **another** to Harim ... **another** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

There were **24** lots. **One lot** went to Jehoiarib, **the next** to Jedaiah, **the next** to Harim ... **the next** to Delaiah, **and the last** went to Maaziah.

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **the first** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the second** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the third** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The fourth** river is the Euphrates. (Genesis 2:10-14 ULT)

A river went out of Eden to water the garden. From there it divided and became **four** rivers. The name of **one** is Pishon. It is the one which flows throughout the whole land of Havilah, where there is gold. The gold of that land is good. There is also bdellium and the onyx stone there. The name of **the next** river is Gihon. This one flows throughout the whole land of Cush. The name of **the next** river is Tigris, which flows east of Asshur. **The last** river is the Euphrates.

- (2) Tell the total number of items and then list them or the things associated with them.

The **first** lot went to Jehoiarib, the **second** to Jedaiah, the **third** to Harim, the **fourth** to Seorim ... the **twenty-third** to Delaiah, and the **twenty-fourth** to Maaziah. (1 Chronicles 24:7-18 ULT)

They cast **24** lots. The lots went to Jerhoiarib, Jedaiah, Harim, Seorim ... Delaiah, and Maaziah.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Fractions](#)

(Go back to: Numbers 1:1; 1:18; 2:9; 2:16; 2:24; 6:9; 6:10; 7:12; 7:18; 7:24; 7:30; 7:36; 7:42; 7:48; 7:54; 7:60; 7:66; 7:72; 7:78; 9:1; 9:3; 9:5; 9:11; 10:6; 10:11; 10:14; 28:16; 28:17; 28:18; 29:1; 29:6; 29:7; 29:12; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 29:35; 33:3; 33:38)

Parallelism

Description

Parallelism is a poetic device in which two phrases or clauses that are similar in structure or idea are used together. The following are some of the different kinds of parallelism.

- The second clause or phrase means the same as the first. This is called synonymous parallelism.
- The second clarifies or strengthens the meaning of the first.
- The second completes what is said in the first.
- The second says something that contrasts with the first, but adds to the same idea.

Parallelism is most commonly found in Old Testament poetry, such as in the books of Psalms and Proverbs. It also occurs in Greek in the New Testament, both in the four gospels and in the apostles' letters.

This article will only discuss synonymous parallelism, the kind in which the two parallel phrases mean the same thing, because that is the kind that presents a problem for translation. Note that we use the term "synonymous parallelism" for long phrases or clauses that have the same meaning. We use the term "**doublet**" for words or very short phrases that mean basically the same thing and are used together.

In the poetry of the original languages, synonymous parallelism has several effects:

- It shows that something is very important by saying it more than once and in more than one way.
- It helps the hearer to think more deeply about the idea by saying it in different ways.
- It makes the language more beautiful and raises it above the ordinary way of speaking.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

Some languages would not use synonymous parallelism. They would either think it odd that someone said the same thing twice, or, since it is in the Bible, they would think that the two phrases must have some difference in meaning. For them it would be confusing, rather than beautiful. They would not understand that the repetition of the idea in different words serves to emphasize the idea.

Examples From the Bible

Your word is a lamp to my feet
and a light for my path. (Psalm 119:105 ULT)

Both parts of the sentence are metaphors saying that God's word teaches people how to live. That is the single idea. The words "lamp" and "light" are similar in meaning because they refer to light. The words "my feet" and "my path" are related because they refer to a person walking. Walking is a metaphor for living.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands;
you have put all things under his feet (Psalm 8:6 ULT)

Both lines say that God made man the ruler of everything. "To rule over" is the same idea as putting things "under his feet," and "the works of your [God's] hands" is the same idea as "all things."

This page answers the question: *What is parallelism?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Yahweh sees everything a person does
and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The first phrase and the second phrase mean the same thing. There are three ideas that are the same between these two phrases. "Sees" corresponds to "watches," "everything...does" corresponds to "all the paths...takes," and "a person" corresponds to "he."

Praise Yahweh, all you nations;
exalt him, all you peoples! (Psalm 117:1 ULT)

Both parts of this verse tell people everywhere to praise Yahweh. The words 'Praise' and 'exalt' mean the same thing. The words 'Yahweh' and 'him' refer to the same person. The terms 'all you nations' and 'all you peoples' refer to the same people.

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people,
and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2b ULT)

The two parts of this verse say that Yahweh has a serious disagreement with his people, Israel. These are not two different disagreements or two different groups of people.

Translation Strategies

For most kinds of parallelism, it is good to translate both of the clauses or phrases. For synonymous parallelism, it is good to translate both clauses if people in your language understand that the purpose of saying something twice is to strengthen a single idea. But if your language does not use parallelism in this way, then consider using one of the following translation strategies.

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.
- (2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as "truly" or "certainly."
- (3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like "very," "completely," or "all."

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Combine the ideas of both clauses into one.

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)

Delilah expressed this idea twice to emphasize that she was very upset.

Until now you have deceived me with your lies.
Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)

The phrase "all the paths he takes" is a metaphor for "all he does."

Yahweh pays attention to everything a person does.
For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, and he will fight in court against Israel. (Micah 6:2 ULT)

This parallelism describes one serious disagreement that Yahweh had with one group of people. If this is unclear, the phrases can be combined:

For Yahweh has a lawsuit with his people, Israel.

(2) If it appears that the clauses are used together to show that what they say is really true, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and include words that emphasize the truth such as “truly” or “certainly.”

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
Yahweh truly sees everything a person does.

You make him to rule over the works of your hands; you have put all things under his feet
(Psalm 8:6 ULT)

You have certainly made him to rule over everything that you have created.

(3) If it appears that the clauses are used together to intensify an idea in them, you could combine the ideas of both clauses into one and use words like “very,” “completely” or “all.”

Until now you have dealt deceitfully with me and you have spoken lies to me. (Judges 16:13, ULT)
All you have done is lie to me.

Yahweh sees everything a person does and watches all the paths he takes. (Proverbs 5:21 ULT)
Yahweh sees absolutely everything that a person does.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Personification](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:18; 3:16; 3:51; 4:20; 5:10; 6:21; 7:2; 7:89; 8:16; 8:20; 9:3; 9:14; 10:4; 11:33; 12:8; 17:12; 18:15; 18:19; 19:13; 20:26; 21:18; 21:27; 21:28; 21:29; 22:3; 23:7; 23:9; 23:18; 23:19; 23:21; 23:23; 24:5; 24:7; 24:17; 27:21; 30:2; 30:8; 31:2\)](#)

Personification

Description

Personification is a figure of speech in which someone speaks of something as if it could do things that animals or people can do. People often do this because it makes it easier to talk about things that we cannot see:

Such as wisdom:

Does not Wisdom call out? (Proverbs 8:1a ULT)

Or sin:

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT)

People also use personification because it is sometimes easier to talk about people's relationships with non-human things such as wealth as if they were relationships between people.

You cannot serve God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

In each case, the purpose of the personification is to highlight a certain characteristic of the non-human thing. As in metaphor, the reader needs to think of the way that the thing is like a certain kind of person.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use personification.
- Some languages use personification only in certain situations.

Examples From the Bible

You cannot **serve** God and wealth. (Matthew 6:24b ULT)

Jesus speaks of wealth as if it were a master whom people might serve. Loving money and basing one's decisions on it is like serving it as a slave would serve his master.

Does not Wisdom **call** out? Does not Understanding **raise her voice**? (Proverbs 8:1 ULT)

The author speaks of wisdom and understanding as if they were woman who calls out to teach people. This means that they are not something hidden, but something obvious that people should pay attention to.

Translation Strategies

If the personification would be understood clearly, consider using it. If it would not be understood, here are some other ways for translating it.

- (1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.
- (2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as "like" or "as" to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.
- (3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

This page answers the question: *What is personification?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Add words or phrases to make the human (or animal) characteristic clear.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — God speaks of sin as if it were a wild animal that is waiting for the chance to attack. This shows how dangerous sin is. An additional phrase can be added to make this danger clear.

Sin is at your door, **waiting to attack you**.

(2) In addition to Strategy (1), use words such as “like” or “as” to show that the sentence is not to be understood literally.

Sin crouches at the door. (Genesis 4:7b ULT) — This can be translated with the word “as.”

Sin is crouching at the door, **just as a wild animal does as it waits to attack a person..**

(3) Find a way to translate it without the personification.

Even the **winds and the sea obey him**. (Matthew 8:27b ULT) — The men speak of the “wind and the sea” as if they are able to hear and obey Jesus, just as people can. This could also be translated without the idea of obedience by speaking of Jesus controlling them.

He even **controls the winds and the sea**.

NOTE: We have broadened our definition of “personification” to include “zoomorphism” (speaking of other things as if they had animal characteristics) and “anthropomorphism” (speaking of non-human things as if they had human characteristics) because the translation strategies for them are the same.

Next we recommend you learn about:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-apostrophe]]
[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:14](#); [5:19](#); [10:33](#); [10:35](#); [10:36](#); [21:17](#); [21:20](#); [26:10](#); [32:23](#))

Possession

Description

In English, the grammatical form that commonly indicates possession is also used to indicate a variety of relationships between people and objects or people and other people. In English, that grammatical relationship is shown by using the word “**of**,” by using **an apostrophe and the letter “s”**, or by using a **possessive pronoun**. The following examples are different ways to indicate that my grandfather owns a house.

- the house **of** my grandfather
- my grandfather’s house
- **his** house

Possession is used in Hebrew, Greek, and English for a variety of situations. Here are a few common situations that it is used for.

- Ownership — Someone owns something.
 - My clothes — The clothes that I own
- Social Relationship — Someone has some kind of social relationship with another.
 - my mother — the woman who gave birth to me, or the woman who cared for me
 - my teacher — the person who teaches me
- Association — A particular thing is associated with a particular person, place, or thing.
 - David’s sickness — the sickness that David is experiencing
 - the fear of the Lord — the fear that is appropriate for a human being to have when relating to the Lord
- Contents — Something has something in it.
 - a bag of clothes — a bag that has clothes in it, or a bag that is full of clothes
- Part and whole: One thing is part of another.
 - my head — the head that is part of my body
 - the roof of a house — the roof that is part of a house

In some languages there is a special form of possession, termed **inalienable possession**. This form of possession is used for things that cannot be removed from you, as opposed to things you could lose. In the examples above, *my head* and *my mother* are examples of inalienable possession (at least in some languages), while *my clothes* or *my teacher* would be alienably possessed. What may be considered alienable vs. inalienable may differ by language.

This page answers the question: *What is possession and how can I translate phrases that show it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]
 [[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences]]

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- You (the translator) need to understand the relationship between two ideas represented by the two nouns when one is in the grammatical relationship of possessing the other.
- Some languages do not use grammatical possession for all of the situations that your source text Bible might use it for.

Examples From the Bible

Ownership — In the example below, the son owned the money.

█ The younger son ... wasted his wealth by living recklessly. (Luke 15:13b)

Social Relationship — In the example below, the disciples were people who learned from John.

█ Then **the disciples of John** came to him. (Matthew 9:14a ULT)

Association — In the example below, the gospel is the message associated with Paul because he preaches it.

█ Remember Jesus Christ, raised from the dead, from the seed of David, according to **my gospel**, (2 Timothy 2:8 ULT)

Material — In the example below, the material used for making the crowns was gold.

█ On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

Contents — In the example below, the cup has water in it.

█ For whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Part of a whole — In the example below, the door was a part of the palace.

█ But Uriah slept at **the door of the king's palace**. (2 Samuel 11:9a ULT)

Part of a group — In the example below, "us" refers to the whole group and "each one" refers to the individual members.

█ Now to **each one of us** grace has been given according to the measure of the gift of Christ. (Ephesians 4:7 ULT)

Events and Possession

Sometimes one or both of the nouns is an abstract noun that refers to an event or action. In the examples below, the abstract nouns are in **bold** print. These are just some of the relationships that are possible between two nouns when one of them refers to an event.

Subject — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who would do the action named by the first noun. In the example below, **John baptized people**.

█ The **baptism of John**, was it from heaven or from men? Answer me. (Mark 11:30)

In the example below, **Christ loves us**.

█ Who will separate us from the **love of Christ**? (Romans 8:35)

Object — Sometimes the word after "of" tells who or what something would happen to. In the example below, **people love money**.

For the **love of money** is a root of all kinds of evil. (1 Timothy 6:10a ULT)

Instrument — Sometimes the word after “of” tells how something would happen. In the example below, God would **punish people by sending enemies to attack them with swords**.

Then be afraid of the sword, because wrath brings **the punishment of the sword**. (Job 19:29a ULT)

Representation — In the example below, John was baptizing people who were repenting of their sins. They were being baptized to show that they were repenting. Their **baptism represented their repentance**.

John came, baptizing in the wilderness and preaching **a baptism of repentance** for the forgiveness of sins. (Mark 1:4 ULT)

Strategies for learning what the relationship is between the two nouns

- (1) Read the surrounding verses to see if they help you to understand the relationship between the two nouns.
- (2) Read the verse in the UST. Sometimes it shows the relationship clearly.
- (3) See what the notes say about it.

Translation Strategies

If possession would be a natural way to show a particular relationship between two nouns, consider using it. If it would be strange or hard to understand, consider these.

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.
- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.
- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use an adjective to show that one noun describes the other.

On their heads were something like **crowns of gold**. (Revelation 9:7b)

“On their heads were **gold crowns**”

- (2) Use a verb to show how the two are related.

Whoever gives you **a cup of water** to drink ... will not lose his reward. (Mark 9:41 ULT)

Whoever gives you a **cup that has water in it** to drink ... will not lose his reward.

Wealth is worthless on **the day of wrath**. (Proverbs 11:4a ULT)

Wealth is worthless on **the day when God shows his wrath**.
or:

Wealth is worthless on the **day when God punishes people because of his wrath**.

- (3) If one of the nouns refers to an event, translate it as a verb. (In the example below, there are two possession relationships, “punishment of Yahweh” and “your God.”)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children, who have not known or seen **the punishment of Yahweh your God**. (Deuteronomy 11:2a ULT)

Notice that I am not speaking to your children who have not known or seen **how Yahweh, the God whom you worship, punished the people of Egypt**.

You will only observe and see the **punishment of the wicked**. (Psalms 91:8 ULT)

You will only observe and see **how Yahweh punishes the wicked**.

You will receive **the gift of the Holy Spirit**. (Acts 2:38b ULT)

You will receive the **Holy Spirit, whom God will give to you**.

(Go back to: [Numbers 28:31](#); [29:3](#); [29:6](#); [29:11](#); [29:19](#); [29:22](#); [29:25](#); [29:28](#); [29:31](#); [29:34](#); [29:37](#); [29:38](#))

Predictive Past

Description

The predictive past is a figure of speech that uses the past tense to refer to things that will happen in the future. This is sometimes done in prophecy to show that the event will certainly happen. It is also called the prophetic perfect.

Therefore my people have gone into captivity for lack of understanding; their honored leaders go hungry, and their common people have nothing to drink. (Isaiah 5:13 ULT)

In the example above, the people of Israel had not yet gone into captivity, but God spoke of their going into captivity as if it had already happened because he had decided that they certainly would go into captivity.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue:

Readers who are not aware of the past tense being used in prophecy to refer to future events may find it confusing.

Examples From the Bible

Now Jericho was tightly closed because of the sons of Israel. No one went out and no one came in. Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:1-2 ULT)

For to us a child has been born, to us a son has been given; and the rule will be on his shoulder. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

In the examples above, God spoke of things that would happen in the future as if they had already happened.

But even Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them, saying, "Look! The Lord came with thousands and thousands of his holy ones." (Jude 1:14 ULT)

Enoch was speaking of something that would happen in the future, but he used the past tense when he said "the Lord came."

Translation Strategies

If the past tense would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here are some other options.

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.
- (2) If it refers to something in the immediate future, use a form that would show that.
- (3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use the future tense to refer to future events.

This page answers the question: *What is the predictive past?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-verbs]]

For to us a child **has been born**, to us a son **has been given**. (Isaiah 9:6a ULT)

For to us a child **will be born**, to us a son **will be given**.

(2) If it refers to something that would happen very soon, use a form that shows that.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am about to deliver** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(3) Some languages may use the present tense to show that something will happen very soon.

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I have delivered Jericho, and its king, and its powerful soldiers into your hand." (Joshua 6:2 ULT)

Yahweh said to Joshua, "See, I **am delivering** over to you Jericho, its king, and its powerful soldiers."

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:2](#))

Pronouns

Description

Pronouns are words that people might use instead of using a noun when referring to someone or something. Some examples are “I,” “you,” “he,” “it,” “this,” “that,” “himself,” “someone,” and others. The personal pronoun is the most common type of pronoun.

This page answers the question: *What are pronouns, and what kinds of pronouns are in some languages?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-partsofspeech]]

Personal Pronouns

Personal pronouns refer to people or things and show whether the speaker is referring to himself, the person he is speaking to, or someone or something else. The following are kinds of information that personal pronouns may provide. Other types of pronouns may give some of this information, as well.

Person

- First Person — The speaker and possibly others (I, me, we, us)
 - [Exclusive and Inclusive “We”](#)
- Second Person — The person or people that the speaker is talking to and possibly others (you)
 - [Forms of You](#)
- Third Person — Someone or something other than the speaker and those he is talking to (he, she, it, they)

Number

- Singular — one (I, you, he, she, it)
- Plural — more than one (we, you, they)
 - [Singular Pronouns that Refer to Groups](#)
- Dual — two (Some languages have pronouns specifically for two people or two things.)

Gender

- Masculine — he
- Feminine — she
- Neuter — it

Relationship to other words in the sentence

- Subject of the verb: I, you, he, she, it, we, they
- Object of the verb or preposition: me, you, him, her, it, us, them
- Possessor with a noun: my, your, his, her, its, our, their
- Possessor without a noun: mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs

Other Types of pronouns

Reflexive Pronouns refer to another noun or pronoun in the same sentence: myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

- John saw **himself** in the mirror. The word “himself” refers to John.

Interrogative Pronouns are used to make a question that needs more than just a yes or no for an answer: what, which, who, whom, whose.

- **Who** built the house?

Relative Pronouns mark a relative clause. The relative pronouns, who, whom, whose, which and that give more information about a noun in the main part of the sentence. Sometimes, the relative adverbs when and where can also be used as relative pronouns.

- I saw the house **that John built**. The clause “that John built” tells which house I saw.
- I saw the man **who built the house**. The clause “who built the house” tells which man I saw.

Demonstrative Pronouns are used to draw attention to someone or something and to show distance from the speaker or something else. The demonstrative pronouns are: this, these, that, and those.

- Have you seen **this** here?
- Who is **that** over there?

Indefinite pronouns are used when no particular noun is being referred to. The indefinite pronouns are: any, anyone, someone, anything, something, and some. Sometimes a personal pronoun is used in a generic way to do this: you, they, he or it.

- He does not want to talk to **anyone**.
- **Someone** fixed it, but I do not know who.
- **They** say that **you** should not wake a sleeping dog.

In the last example, “they” and “you” just refer to people in general.

(Go back to: [Numbers 18:3](#))

Quotes within Quotes

Description

A quotation may have a quote within it, and quotes that are inside of other quotes can also have quotes within them. When a quote has quotes within it, we say there are “layers” of quotation, and each of the quotes is a layer. When there are many layers of quotes inside of quotes, it can be hard for listeners and readers to know who is saying what. Some languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes to make it easier.

This page answers the question: *What is a quote within a quote, and how can I help the readers understand who is saying what?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Direct and Indirect Quotations](#)

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

When there is a quote within a quote, the listener needs to know who the pronouns refer to. For example: if a quote that is inside a quote has the word “I,” the listener needs to know whether “I” refers to the speaker of the inner quote or the outer quote.

Some languages make this clear by using different kinds of quotes when there are quotes within quotes.

They may use direct quotes for some and indirect quotes for others.

Some languages do not use indirect quotes.

Examples From the Bible

A quotation with only one layer

But Paul said, “I, however, was indeed born a citizen.” (Acts 22:28b ULT)

Quotations with two layers

Jesus answered and said to them, “Be careful that no one leads you astray. For many will come in my name. They will say, ‘I am the Christ,’ and will lead many astray.” (Matthew 24:4-5 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to his disciples. The second layer is what other people will say.

Jesus answered, “You say that I am a king.” (John 18:37b ULT)

The outermost layer is what Jesus said to Pilate. The second layer is what Pilate said about Jesus.

A quotation with three layers

Abraham said, “... I said to her, ‘You must show me this faithfulness as my wife: At every place where we go, say about me, **“He is my brother.”**’” (Genesis 20:11a, 13 ULT)

The outermost layer is what Abraham responded to Abimelech. The second layer is what Abraham had told his wife. The third layer is what he wanted his wife to say. (We have bolded the third layer.)

A quotation with four layers

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: **'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal- Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'**"'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

The outermost layer is what the messengers said to the king. The second layer is what the man who had met the messengers told them. The third is what that man wanted the messengers to say to the king. The fourth is what Yahweh said. (We have bolded the fourth layer.)

Translation Strategies

Some languages use only direct quotes. Other languages use a combination of direct quotes and indirect quotes. In those languages it might sound strange and perhaps even be confusing if there are many layers of direct quotes.

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes.
- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. (See [Direct and Indirect Quotations](#).)

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate all of the quotes as direct quotes. In the example below we have bolded the indirect quotes in the ULT and the quotes that we have changed to direct quotes below it.

Festus presented to the king the things concerning Paul, saying, "There is a certain man was left here as a prisoner by Felix. So I am uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked **if he was willing to go to Jerusalem and there to be judged concerning these things**. But when Paul appealed **to keep him in custody for the decision of the emperor**, I ordered him **to be held in custody until when I could send him to Caesar**." (Acts 25:14b, 20-21 ULT)

Festus presented Paul's case to the king. He said, "A certain man was left behind here by Felix as a prisoner. I was uncertain about the things concerning this matter. I asked him, **'Will you go to Jerusalem to be judged there concerning these things?'** But when Paul said, **'I want to be kept in custody for the emperor's decision,'** I told the guard, **'Keep him in custody until when I can send him to Caesar.'**"

- (2) Translate one or some of the quotes as indirect quotes. In English the word "that" can come before indirect quotes. It is bolded in the examples below. The pronouns that changed because of the indirect quote are also bolded.

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Speak to them and say, 'During the evenings you will eat meat, and in the morning you will be satisfied with bread. And you will know that I am Yahweh your God.'" (Exodus 16:11-12 ULT)

And Yahweh spoke to Moses, saying, "I have heard the complaints of the sons of Israel. Tell them **that** during the evenings **they** will eat meat, and in the morning **they** will be satisfied with bread. And **they** will know that I am Yahweh **their** God."

They said to him, "A man came to meet us who said to us, 'Go back to the king who sent you, and say to him, "Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal-Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'""'" (2 Kings 1:6 ULT)

They told him **that** a man had come to meet **them** who said to **them**, "Go back to the king who sent you, and tell him **that** Yahweh says this: 'Is it because there is no God in Israel that you sent men to consult with Baal Zebub, the god of Ekron? Therefore you will not come down from the bed to which you have gone up; instead, you will certainly die.'"

Next we recommend you learn about:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-quotemarks\]\]](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 25:13](#))

Rhetorical Question

A rhetorical question is a question that a speaker asks when he is more interested in expressing his attitude about something than in getting information about it. Speakers use rhetorical questions to express deep emotion or to encourage hearers to think deeply about something. The Bible contains many rhetorical questions, often to express surprise, to rebuke or scold the hearer, or to teach. Speakers of some languages use rhetorical questions for other purposes as well.

This page answers the question: *What are rhetorical questions and how can I translate them?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro\]\]](#)

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentencetypes\]\]](#)

Description

A rhetorical question is a question that strongly expresses the speaker's attitude toward something. Often the speaker is not looking for information at all. Or, if he is asking for information, it is not usually the information that the question appears to ask for. The speaker is more interested in expressing his attitude than in getting information.

But those who stood by said, **“Are you insulting the high priest of God?”** (Acts 23:4 ULT)

The people who asked Paul this question were not asking if he was insulting God's high priest. Rather, they used this question to accuse Paul of insulting the high priest.

The Bible contains many rhetorical questions. These rhetorical questions might be used for the purposes: of expressing attitudes or feelings, rebuking people, teaching something by reminding people of something they know and encouraging them to apply it to something new, or introducing something they want to talk about.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some languages do not use rhetorical questions; for them a question is always a request for information.
- Some languages use rhetorical questions, but for purposes that are different or more limited than in the Bible.
- Because of these differences between languages, some readers might misunderstand the purpose of a rhetorical question in the Bible.

Examples From the Bible

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

Jezebel used the question above to remind King Ahab of something he already knew: he still ruled the kingdom of Israel. The rhetorical question made her point more strongly than if she had merely stated it, because it forced Ahab to admit the point himself. She did this in order to rebuke him for being unwilling to take over a poor man's property. She was implying that, since he was the king of Israel, he had the power to take the man's property.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

God used the question above to remind his people of something they already knew: a young woman would never forget her jewelry or a bride forget her veils. He then rebuked his people for forgetting him who is so much greater than those things.

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

Job used the question above to show deep emotion. This rhetorical question expresses how sad he was that he did not die as soon as he was born. He wished that he had not lived.

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord would come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

Elizabeth used the question above to show how surprised and happy she was that the mother of her Lord came to her.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Jesus used the question above to remind the people of something they already knew: a good father would never give his son something bad to eat. By introducing this point, Jesus could go on to teach them about God with his next rhetorical question:

Therefore, if you who are evil know how to give good gifts to your children, how much more will your Father who is in heaven give good things to those who ask him? (Matthew 7:11 ULT)

Jesus used this question to teach the people in an emphatic way that God gives good things to those who ask him.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed that a man took and threw into his garden ... (Luke 13:18b-19a ULT)

Jesus used the question above to introduce what he was going to talk about. He was about to compare the kingdom of God to something. In this case, he compared the kingdom of God to a mustard seed.

Translation Strategies

In order to translate a rhetorical question accurately, first be sure that the question you are translating truly is a rhetorical question and is not an information question. Ask yourself, "Does the person asking the question already know the answer to the question?" If so, it is a rhetorical question. Or, if no one answers the question, did the person who asked it expect to receive an answer? If not, it is a rhetorical question.

When you are sure that the question is rhetorical, then be sure that you understand the purpose for the rhetorical question. Is it to encourage or rebuke or shame the hearer? Is it to bring up a new topic? Is it to do something else?

When you know the purpose of the rhetorical question, then think of the most natural way to express that purpose in the target language. It might be as a question, or a statement, or an exclamation.

If using the rhetorical question would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider doing so. If not, here are other options:

- (1) Add the answer after the question.
- (2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.
- (3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.
- (4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Add the answer after the question.

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? **Of course not!** Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number!

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? **None of you would do that!**

(2) Change the rhetorical question to a statement or exclamation.

What is the kingdom of God like, and what can I compare it to? It is like a mustard seed. (Luke 13:18-19a ULT)

This is what the kingdom of God is like. It is like a mustard seed ...

Are you insulting the high priest of God? (Acts 23:4b ULT) (Acts 23:4 ULT)

You should not insult God's high priest!

Why did I not die when I came out from the womb? (Job 3:11a ULT)

I wish I had died when I came out from the womb!

And how has this happened to me that the mother of my Lord should come to me? (Luke 1:43 ULT)

How wonderful it is that the mother of my Lord has come to me!

(3) Change the rhetorical question to a statement, and then follow it with a short question.

Do you not still rule the kingdom of Israel? (1 Kings 21:7b ULT)

You still rule the kingdom of Israel, **do you not?**

(4) Change the form of the question so that it communicates in your language what the original speaker communicated in his.

Or what man is there among you, of whom his son will ask for a loaf of bread, but he will give him a stone? (Matthew 7:9 ULT)

If your son asks you for a loaf of bread, **would you give him a stone?**

Will a virgin forget her jewelry, a bride her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number! (Jeremiah 2:32 ULT)

What virgin would forget her jewelry, and what bride would forget her veils? Yet my people have forgotten me for days without number

(Go back to: [Numbers 9:7](#); [11:4](#); [11:11](#); [11:12](#); [11:13](#); [11:18](#); [11:20](#); [11:22](#); [11:23](#); [11:29](#); [12:2](#); [12:8](#); [13:19](#); [Notes](#); [14:3](#); [14:11](#); [14:27](#); [14:41](#); [16:3](#); [16:9](#); [16:11](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#); [16:22](#); [20:4](#); [20:5](#); [20:10](#); [21:5](#); [22:9](#); [22:30](#); [22:32](#); [22:37](#); [22:38](#); [23:8](#); [23:10](#); [23:11](#); [23:12](#); [23:19](#); [23:26](#); [24:9](#); [24:13](#); [24:23](#); [27:4](#); [31:15](#); [32:6](#); [32:7](#))

Simile

Description

A simile is a comparison of two things that are not normally thought to be similar. The simile focuses on a particular trait the two items have in common, and it includes the words “like,” “as,” or “than.”

This page answers the question: *What is a simile?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

When he saw the crowds, he had compassion for them, because they were troubled and discouraged, **like sheep not having a shepherd**. (Matthew 9:36)

Jesus compared the crowds of people to sheep without a shepherd. Sheep grow frightened when they do not have a good shepherd to lead them in safe places. The crowds were like that because they did not have good religious leaders.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, so be as wise **as the serpents** and harmless **as the doves**. (Matthew 10:16 ULT)

Jesus compared his disciples to sheep and their enemies to wolves. Wolves attack sheep; Jesus' enemies would attack his disciples.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

God's word is compared to a two-edged sword. A two-edged sword is a weapon that can easily cut through a person's flesh. God's word is very effective in showing what is in a person's heart and thoughts.

Purposes of Simile

- A simile can teach about something that is unknown by showing how it is similar to something that is known.
- A simile can emphasize a particular trait, sometimes in a way that gets people's attention.
- Similes help form a picture in the mind or help the reader experience what he is reading about more fully.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- People may not know how the two items are similar.
- People may not be familiar with both of the items being compared.

Examples From the Bible

Suffer hardship with me, **as a good soldier** of Christ Jesus. (2 Timothy 2:3 ULT)

In this simile, Paul compares suffering with what soldiers endure, and he encourages Timothy to follow their example.

Just as the lightning flashing from a place under the sky shines to another place under the sky, so will the Son of Man be. (Luke 17:24b ULT)

This verse does not tell how the Son of Man will be like the lightning. But in context we can understand from the verses before it that just as lighting flashes suddenly and everyone can see it, the Son of Man will come suddenly and everyone will be able to see him. No one will have to be told about it.

Translation Strategies

If people would understand the correct meaning of a simile, consider using it. If they would not, here are some strategies you can use:

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.
- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.
- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) If people do not know how the two items are alike, tell how they are alike. However, do not do this if the meaning was not clear to the original audience.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — This compares the danger that Jesus' disciples would be in with the danger that sheep are in when they are surrounded by wolves.

See, I send **you out among wicked people** and you will be in danger from them **as sheep are in danger when they are among wolves**.

For the word of God is living and active and sharper **than any two-edged sword**. (Hebrews 4:12a ULT)

For the word of God is living and active and **more powerful than a very sharp two-edged sword**.

- (2) If people are not familiar with the item that something is compared to, use an item from your own culture. Be sure that it is one that could have been used in the cultures of the Bible. If you use this strategy, you may want to put the original item in a footnote.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**, (Matthew 10:16a ULT) — If people do not know what sheep and wolves are, or that wolves kill and eat sheep, you could use some other animal that kills another.

See, I send you out **as chickens in the midst of wild dogs**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to gather your children together, **as a mother closely watches over her infants**, but you refused!

If you have faith **as a grain of mustard** ... (Matthew 17:20)

If you have faith even as small **as a tiny seed**,

- (3) Simply describe the item without comparing it to another.

See, I send you out **as sheep in the midst of wolves**. (Matthew 10:16a ULT)

See, I send you out among **people who will want to harm you**.

How often did I long to gather your children together, just **as a hen gathers her chickens under her wings**, but you were not willing! (Matthew 23:37b ULT)

How often I wanted to **protect you**, but you refused!

Next we recommend you learn about:

Metaphor

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bita-part1]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:4; 8:11; 8:13; 8:15; 9:15; 9:16; 12:10; 12:12; 13:33; 14:9; 16:30; 22:4; 23:22; 24:6; 24:8; 24:9; 27:17; 33:55](#))

Symbolic Action

Description

A symbolic action is something that someone does in order to express a certain idea. For example, in some cultures people nod their heads up and down to mean “yes” or turn their heads from side to side to mean “no.” Symbolic actions do not mean the same things in all cultures. In the Bible, sometimes people perform symbolic actions and sometimes they only refer to the symbolic action.

This page answers the question: *What is a symbolic action and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[Translate Unknowns](#)

Examples of symbolic actions

- In some cultures people shake hands when they meet to show that they are willing to be friendly.
- In some cultures people bow when they meet to show respect to each other.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

An action may have a meaning in one culture and a different meaning or no meaning at all in another culture. For example, in some cultures raising the eyebrows means “I am surprised” or “What did you say?” In other cultures it means “yes.”

In the Bible, people did things that had certain meanings in their culture. When we read the Bible, we might not understand what someone meant if we interpret the action based on what it means in our own culture today.

You (the translator) need to understand what people in the Bible meant when they used symbolic actions. If an action does not mean the same thing in your own culture, then you need to figure out how to translate what the action meant.

Examples From the Bible

And behold, a man came whose name was Jairus, and he was a ruler of the synagogue. And **falling at the feet of Jesus**, he begged him to come to his house. (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: He did this to show great respect to Jesus.

Look, I am standing at the door and am knocking. If anyone hears my voice and opens the door, I will come into him and will eat with him, and he with me. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Meaning of symbolic action: When people wanted someone to welcome them into their home, they stood at the door and knocked on it.

Translation Strategies

If people would correctly understand what a symbolic action meant to the people in the Bible, consider using it. If not, here are some strategies for translating it.

- (1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.
- (2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning. Do this only in poetry, parables, and sermons. Do not do this when there actually was a person who did a specific action.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) Tell what the person did and why he did it.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus fell down at Jesus' feet in order to show that he greatly respected him.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and knock on it, asking you to let me in.

(2) Do not tell what the person did, but tell what he meant.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT)

Jairus showed Jesus great respect.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT)

Look, I stand at the door and ask you to let me in.

(3) Use an action from your own culture that has the same meaning.

And **falling at the feet of Jesus** (Luke 8:41 ULT) — Since Jairus actually did this, you should not substitute an action from your own culture.

Look, I am **standing at the door and am knocking**. (Revelation 3:20 ULT) — Jesus was not standing at a real door. Rather he was speaking about wanting to have a relationship with people. So in cultures where it is polite to clear one's throat when wanting to be let into a house, you could use that.

Look, I stand at the door and clear my throat.

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:7](#); [8:10](#); [8:12](#); [12:14](#); [14:5](#); [14:6](#); [16:4](#); [16:22](#); [16:45](#); [18:19](#); [20:6](#); [22:31](#); [24:4](#); [24:10](#); [24:16](#); [25:2](#); [27:18](#); [27:23](#))

Symbolic Language

Description

Symbolic language in speech and writing is the use of symbols to represent other things, other events, etc. In the Bible it occurs most in prophecy and poetry, especially in visions and dreams about things that will happen in the future. Though people may not immediately know the meaning of a symbol, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.

This page answers the question: *What is symbolic language and how do I translate it?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/writing-intro\]\]](#)

█ Eat this scroll; then go speak to the house of Israel. (Ezekiel 3:1 ULT)

This was in a dream. Eating the scroll is a symbol of Ezekiel reading and understanding well what was written on the scroll, and accepting these words from God into himself.

Purposes of Symbolism

- One purpose of symbolism is to help people understand the importance or severity of an event by putting it in other, very dramatic terms.
- Another purpose of symbolism is to tell some people about something while hiding the true meaning from others who do not understand the symbolism.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

People who read the Bible today may find it hard to recognize that the language is symbolic, and they may not know what the symbol stands for.

Translation Principles

- When symbolic language is used, it is important to keep the symbol in the translation.
- It is also important not to explain the symbol more than the original speaker or writer did, since he may not have wanted everyone living then to be able to understand it easily.

Examples From the Bible

█ After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

The meaning of the bolded symbols is explained in Daniel 7:23-24 as shown below. The animals represent kingdoms, iron teeth represent a powerful army, and the horns represent powerful leaders.

█ This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

█ I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me, and as I turned I saw **seven golden lampstands**. In the middle of the lampstands there was one like a son of man ... He had **seven**

stars in his right hand and **a sword with two sharp edges** was coming out of his mouth. As for the hidden meaning about the seven stars that you saw in my right hand, and the seven golden lampstands: **The seven stars are the angels of the seven churches**, and **the seven lampstands are the seven churches**. (Revelation 1:12-13a, 16a, 20 ULT)

This passage explains the meaning of the seven lampstands and the seven stars. The two-edged sword represents God's word and judgment.

Translation Strategies

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.
- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Translate the text with the symbols. Often the speaker or author explains the meaning later in the passage.

This is what that person said, 'As for the fourth animal, it will be **a fourth kingdom** on earth that will be different from all the other kingdoms. It will devour the whole earth, and it will trample it down and break it into pieces. As for the ten horns, out of this kingdom **ten kings** will arise, and another will arise after them. He will be different from the previous ones, and he will conquer the three kings.' (Daniel 7:23-24 ULT)

- (2) Translate the text with the symbols. Then explain the symbols in footnotes.

After this I saw in my visions of the night **a fourth animal**, terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had **large iron teeth**; it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had **ten horns**. (Daniel 7:7 ULT)

After this I saw in my dream at night a fourth animal, ¹ terrifying, frightening, and very strong. It had large iron teeth; ² it devoured, broke in pieces, and trampled underfoot what was left. It was different from the other animals, and it had ten horns. ³

The footnotes would look like:

[1] The animal is a symbol for a kingdom.

[2] The iron teeth is a symbol for the kingdom's powerful army.

[3] The horns are a symbol of powerful kings.

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:17](#))

Synecdoche

Description

Synecdoche is a figure of speech in which a speaker uses a part of something to refer to the whole thing, or uses the whole to refer to a part.

■ **My soul** magnifies the Lord. (Luke 1:46b ULT)

Mary was very happy about what the Lord was doing, so she said “my soul,” which means the inner, emotional part of herself, to refer to her whole self.

■ So **the Pharisees** said to him, “Look, why are they doing that which is not lawful?” (Mark 2:24a ULT)

The Pharisees who were standing there did not all say the same words at the same time. Instead, it is more likely that one man representing the group said those words.

Reasons This Is a Translation Issue

- Some readers may not recognize the synecdoche and thus misunderstand the words as a literal statement.
- Some readers may realize that they are not to understand the words literally, but they may not know what the meaning is.

Example From the Bible

■ Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

“My hands” is a synecdoche for the whole person because clearly the arms and the rest of the body and the mind were also involved in the person’s accomplishments. The hands are chosen to represent the person because they are the parts of the body most directly involved in the work.

Translation Strategies

If the synecdoche would be natural and give the right meaning in your language, consider using it. If not, here is another option:

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

(1) State specifically what the synecdoche refers to.

■ **“My soul** magnifies the Lord.” (Luke 1:46b ULT)

■ **“I** magnify the Lord.”

So **the Pharisees** said to him ... (Mark 2:24a ULT)

■ **A representative of the Pharisees** said to him ...

Then I looked on all the deeds that **my hands** had accomplished. (Ecclesiastes 2:11a ULT)

This page answers the question: *What is a synecdoche, and how can I translate such a thing into my language?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-intro]]

I looked on all the deeds that I had accomplished

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Metonymy](#)

[[rc://en/ta/man/translate/bit-part2]]

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:49](#); [2:17](#); [4:15](#); [7:89](#); [10:9](#); [16:15](#); [17:4](#); [17:7](#); [17:10](#); [20:8](#); [20:12](#); [20:18](#); [21:23](#); [27:14](#); [27:16](#); [27:19](#); [29:1](#); [30:8](#); [32:7](#); [32:9](#))

Translate Unknowns

While working to translate the Bible, you (the translator) might find yourself asking: “How do I translate words like lion, fig tree, mountain, priest, or temple when people in my culture have never seen these things and we do not have a word for them?”

This page answers the question: *How can I translate ideas that my readers are not familiar with?*

In order to understand this topic, it would be good to read:

[\[\[rc://en/ta/man/translate/figs-sentences\]\]](#)

Description

Unknowns are things that occur in the source text that are not known to the people of your culture. The unfoldingWord® Translation Words pages and the unfoldingWord® Translation Notes will help you understand what they are. After you understand them, you will need to find ways to refer to those things so that people who read your translation will understand what they are.

They said to him, “We have nothing here except five loaves of **bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

Bread is a particular food made by mixing finely crushed grains with oil, and then cooking the mixture so that it is dry. (Grains are the seeds of a kind of grass.) In some cultures people do not have bread and do not know what it is.

Reason This Is a Translation Issue

- Readers may not know some of the things that are in the Bible because those things are not part of their own culture.
- Readers may have difficulty understanding a text if they do not know some of the things that are mentioned in it.

Translation Principles

- Use words that are already part of your language if possible.
- Keep expressions short if possible.
- Represent God’s commands and historical facts accurately.

Examples From the Bible

So I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals**. (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

Jackals are wild animals like dogs that live in only a few parts of the world. So they are not known in many places.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep’s clothing, but inwardly they are ravenous **wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

If wolves do not live where the translation will be read, the readers may not understand that they are fierce, wild animals like dogs that attack and eat sheep.

They offered him wine mixed with **myrrh**, but he did not drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT)

People may not know what myrrh is and that it was used as a medicine.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

Some languages have terms for things that give light, like the sun and fire, but they have no general term for lights.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT)

People in many parts of the world have not seen snow, but they may have seen it in pictures.

Translation Strategies

Here are ways you might translate a term that is not known in your language:

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.
- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.
- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.
- (4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.
- (5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

Examples of Translation Strategies Applied

- (1) Use a phrase that describes what the unknown item is, or what is important about the unknown item for the verse being translated.

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but inwardly they are **ravenous wolves**. (Matthew 7:15 ULT)

Beware of false prophets, who come to you in sheep's clothing, but **inwardly they are very hungry and dangerous animals**.

"Ravenous wolves" is part of a metaphor here, so the reader needs to know that they are very dangerous to sheep in order to understand this metaphor. (If sheep are also unknown, then you will need to also use one of the translation strategies to translate sheep, or change the metaphor to something else, using a translation strategy for metaphors. See [Translating Metaphors](#).)

"We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish." (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked grain seeds** and two fish.

- (2) Substitute something similar from your language if doing so does not falsely represent a historical fact.

Your sins ... will be white like **snow**. (Isaiah 1:18b ULT) This verse is not about snow. It uses snow in a figure of speech to help people understand how white something will be.

Your sins ... will be white like **milk**.

Your sins ... will be white like **the moon**.

- (3) Copy the word from another language, and add a general word or descriptive phrase to help people understand it.

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **myrrh**. But he refused to drink it. (Mark 15:23 ULT) — People may understand better what myrrh is if it is used with the general word “medicine.”

Then they tried to give Jesus wine that was mixed with **a medicine called myrrh**. But he refused to drink it.

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT) — People may understand better what bread is if it is used with a phrase that tells what it is made of (seeds) and how it is prepared (crushed and baked).

We have nothing here except five loaves of **baked crushed seed bread** and two fish.

(4) Use a word that is more general in meaning.

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **jackals** (Jeremiah 9:11a ULT)

I will turn Jerusalem into piles of ruins, a hideout for **wild dogs**

“We have nothing here except five **loaves of bread** and two fish.” (Matthew 14:17 ULT)

We have nothing here except five **loaves of baked food** and two fish.

(5) Use a word or phrase that is more specific in meaning.

... to him who made **great lights** ... (Psalm 136:7a ULT)

to him who made **the sun and the moon**

Next we recommend you learn about:

[Copy or Borrow Words](#)

[How to Translate Names](#)

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:31](#); [24:6](#); [27:21](#))



unfoldingWord® Translation Words

Version 27

Aaron

Facts:

Aaron was Moses' older brother. God chose Aaron to be the first high priest for the people of Israel.

- Aaron helped Moses speak to Pharaoh about letting the Israelites go free.
- While the Israelites were traveling through the desert, Aaron sinned by making an idol for the people to worship.
- God also appointed Aaron and his descendants to be the [priest](#) priests for the people of Israel.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [priest](#), [Moses](#), [Israel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:14
- Acts 7:38-40
- Exodus 28:1-3
- Luke 1:5
- Numbers 16:45

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:15** God warned Moses and **Aaron** that Pharaoh would be stubborn.
- **10:5** Pharaoh called Moses and **Aaron** and told them that if they stopped the plague, the Israelites could leave Egypt.
- **13:9** God chose Moses' brother, **Aaron**, and Aaron's descendants to be his priests.
- **13:11** So they (the Israelites) brought gold to **Aaron** and asked him to form it into an idol for them!
- **14:7** They (the Israelites) became angry with Moses and **Aaron** and said, "Oh, why did you bring us to this horrible place?"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0175, G00020

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:3; 1:17; 1:44; 2:1; 3:1; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:6; 3:9; 3:10; 3:32; 3:38; 3:39; 3:48; 3:51; 4:1; 4:5; 4:15; 4:16; 4:17; 4:19; 4:27; 4:28; 4:33; 4:34; 4:37; 4:41; 4:45; 4:46; 6:23; 7:8; 8:2; 8:3; 8:11; 8:13; 8:19; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 9:6; 10:8; 12:1; 12:4; 12:5; 12:10; 12:11; 13:26; 14:2; 14:5; 14:26; 15:33; 16:3; 16:11; 16:16; 16:17; 16:18; 16:20; 16:37; 16:40; 16:41; 16:42; 16:43; 16:46; 16:47; 16:50; 17:3; 17:6; 17:8; 17:10; 18:1; 18:8; 18:20; 18:28; 19:1; 20:2; 20:6; 20:8; 20:10; 20:12; 20:23; 20:24; 20:25; 20:26; 20:28; 20:29; 25:7; 25:11; 26:1; 26:9; 26:59; 26:60; 26:64; 27:13; 33:1; 33:38; 33:39](#))

Adam

Facts:

Adam was the first person whom God created. He and his wife Eve were made in the image of God.

- God formed Adam from dirt and breathed life into him.
- Adam's name sounds similar to the Hebrew word for "red dirt" or "ground."
- The name "Adam" is the same as the Old Testament word for "mankind" or "human being."
- All people are descendants of Adam and Eve.
- Adam and Eve disobeyed God. This separated them from God and caused sin and death to come into the world.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [death](#), [descendant](#), Eve, image of God, [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 2:14
- Genesis 3:17
- Genesis 5:1
- Genesis 11:5
- Luke 3:38
- Romans 5:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:9** Then God said, "Let us make human beings in our image to be like us."
- **1:10** This man's name was **Adam**. God planted a garden where **Adam** could live, and put him there to care for it.
- **1:12** Then God said, "It is not good for man to be alone." But none of the animals could be **Adam's** helper.
- **2:11** And God clothed **Adam** and Eve with animal skins.
- **2:12** So God sent **Adam** and Eve away from the beautiful garden.
- **49:8** When **Adam** and Eve sinned, it affected all of their descendants.
- **50:16** Because **Adam** and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God cursed it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0120, G00760

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:13](#); [5:6](#); [8:17](#); [9:6](#); [9:7](#); [12:3](#); [16:29](#); [16:32](#); [18:15](#); [19:11](#); [19:13](#); [19:14](#); [19:16](#); [23:19](#); [31:11](#); [31:26](#); [31:28](#); [31:30](#); [31:35](#); [31:40](#); [31:46](#); [31:47](#))

adversary, enemy

Definition:

An “adversary” is a person (or group of people) who is opposed to someone else. The term “enemy” has a similar meaning.

- Your adversary can be a person who tries to oppose or harm another person.
- When two nations fight, each can be called an “adversary” of the other.
- In the Bible, the devil is referred to as an “adversary” and an “enemy.”
- The term “adversary” may be translated as “opponent” or “enemy,” but it suggests a stronger form of opposition.

(See also: Satan)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:14
- Isaiah 9:11
- Job 6:23
- Lamentations 4:12
- Luke 12:59
- Matthew 13:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0341, H6146, H6887, H6862, H6965, H7790, H7854, H8130, H8324, G04760, G04800, G21890, G21900, G52270

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:9](#); [10:35](#); [14:42](#); [23:11](#); [24:8](#); [24:10](#); [24:18](#); [25:17](#); [25:18](#); [32:21](#); [35:23](#))

advice, advise, advisor, counsel, counselor, counsels

Definition:

The terms “counsel” and “advice” have the same meaning and refer to helping someone decide wisely about what to do in a certain situation. A wise “counselor” or “advisor” is someone who gives advice or counsel that will help a person make right choices.

- Kings often have official advisors or counselors to help them decide important matters that affect the people they are ruling.
- Sometimes the advice or counsel that is given is not good. Evil advisors may urge a king to take action or make a decree that will harm him or his people.
- Depending on the context, “advice” or “counsel” could also be translated as “help in deciding” or “warnings” or “exhortations” or “guidance.”
- The action, to “counsel” could be translated as to “advise” or to “make suggestions” or to “exhort.”
- Note that “counsel” is a different word than “council,” which refers to a group of people.

(See also: exhort, Holy Spirit, wise)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1697, H1847, H1875, H1884, H1907, H3272, H3289, H3982, H4156, H4431, H5475, H5779, H6440, H6963, H6098, H7592, H8458, G10110, G10120, G11060, G48230, G48250

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:14](#))

afflict, affliction, distress

Definition:

The term “afflict” means to cause someone distress or suffering. An “affliction” is the disease, emotional grief, or other disaster that results from this.

- Sometimes God afflicted his people with sickness or other hardships with the intention for them to repent of their sins and turn back to him.
- God caused afflictions or plagues to come on the people of Egypt because their king refused to obey God.
- To “be afflicted with” means to suffer from some kind of distress, such as a disease, persecution, or emotional grief.
- In some Old Testament contexts, the idea of “afflicting oneself” or “afflicting one's soul” means to abstain from eating food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “afflict” someone could be translated as “cause someone to experience troubles” or “cause someone to suffer” or “cause suffering to come.”
- A phrase like “afflict someone with leprosy” could be translated as “cause someone to be sick with leprosy.”
- When a disease or disaster is sent to “afflict” people or animals, this could be translated as “cause suffering to.”
- Depending on the context, the term “affliction” could be translated as “calamity” or “sickness” or “suffering” or “great distress.”
- The phrase “afflicted with” could also be translated as “suffering from” or “sick with.”

(See also: leprosy, plague, suffer)

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 1:6
- Amos 5:12
- Colossians 1:24
- Exodus 22:22-24
- Genesis 12:17-20
- Genesis 15:12-13
- Genesis 29:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H3013, H3905, H3906, H6031, H6039, H6040, H6041, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7451, H7489, G23460, G23470, G38040

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:10](#); [11:11](#); [16:15](#); [22:34](#))

alarm, alarmed

Facts:

An alarm is something that warns people about something that could harm them. To “be alarmed” is to be very worried and frightened about something dangerous or threatening.

- King Jehoshapat was alarmed when he heard that the Moabites were planning to attack the kingdom of Judah.
- Jesus told his disciples not to be alarmed when they hear about disasters happening in the last days.
- The expression “sound an alarm” means to give a warning. In ancient times, a person could sound an alarm by making a noise.

Translation Suggestions

- To “alarm someone” means to “cause someone to worry” or to “worry someone.”
- To “be alarmed” could be translated as “be worried” or “be frightened” or “be very concerned.”
- The expression “sound an alarm” could be translated by “publicly warn” or “announce that danger is coming” or “blow a trumpet to warn about danger.”

(See also: Jehoshaphat, [Moab](#))

Bible References:

- Daniel 11:44-45
- Jeremiah 4:19-20
- Numbers 10:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7321, H8643

([Go back to: Numbers 10:9](#))

Almighty

Facts:

The term “Almighty” literally means “all-powerful.” In the Bible, this term always refers to God.

- The titles “the Almighty” or “the Almighty One” refer to God and reveal that he has complete power and authority over everything.
- This term is also used to describe God in the titles “Almighty God” and “God Almighty” and “Lord Almighty” and “Lord God Almighty.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could also be translated as “All-powerful” or “Completely Powerful One” or “God, who is completely powerful.”
- Ways to translate the phrase “Lord God Almighty” could include “God, the Powerful Ruler” or “Powerful Sovereign God” or “Mighty God who is Master over everything.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [lord](#), [power](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 6:2-5
- Genesis 17:1
- Genesis 35:11-13
- Job 8:3
- Numbers 24:15-16
- Revelation 1:7-8
- Ruth 1:19-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7706, G38410

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:4](#); [24:16](#))

altar

Definition:

An altar was a raised structure on which the Israelites burned animals and grains as offerings to God.

- During Bible times, simple altars were often made by forming a mound of packed-down dirt or by carefully placing large stones to form a stable pile.
- Some special box-shaped altars were made of wood overlaid with metals such as gold, brass, or bronze.
- Other people groups living near the Israelites also built altars to offer sacrifices to their gods.

(See also: altar of incense, [false god](#), [grain offering](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:9
- James 2:21
- Luke 11:49-51
- Matthew 5:23
- Matthew 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an **altar** and sacrificed some of each kind of animal which could be used for a sacrifice.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his son Isaac and laid him on an **altar**.
- **13:9** A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the **altar**.
- **16:6** He (Gideon) built a new altar dedicated to God near where the **altar** to the idol used to be and made a sacrifice to God on it.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0741, H2025, H4056, H4196, G10410, G23790

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:26; 3:31; 4:11; 4:13; 4:14; 4:26; 5:25; 5:26; 7:1; 7:10; 7:11; 7:84; 7:88; 16:38; 16:39; 16:46; 18:3; 18:5; 18:7; 18:17; 23:1; 23:2; 23:4; 23:14; 23:29; 23:30](#))

amen, truly

Definition:

The term “amen” is a word used to emphasize or call attention to what a person has said. It is often used at the end of a prayer. Sometimes it is translated as “truly.”

- When used at the end of a prayer, “amen” communicates agreement with the prayer or expresses a desire that the prayer be fulfilled.
- In his teaching, Jesus used “amen” to emphasize the truth of what he said. He often followed that by “and I say to you” to introduce another teaching that related to the previous teaching.
- When Jesus uses “amen” this way, some English versions (and the ULT) translate this as “verily” or “truly.”
- Another word meaning “truly” is sometimes translated as “surely” or “certainly” and is also used to emphasize what the speaker is saying.

Translation Suggestions:

- Consider whether the target language has a special word or phrase that is used to emphasize something that has been said.
- When used at the end of a prayer or to confirm something, “amen” could be translated as “let it be so” or “may this happen” or “that is true.”
- When Jesus says, “truly I tell you,” this could also be translated as “Yes, I tell you sincerely” or “That is true, and I also tell you.”
- The phrase “truly, truly I tell you” could be translated as “I tell you this very sincerely” or “I tell you this very earnestly” or “what I am telling you is true.”

(See also: fulfill, true)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 27:15
- John 5:19
- Jude 1:24-25
- Matthew 26:33-35
- Philemon 1:23-25
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0543, G02810

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:22](#))

Amorite

Facts:

The Amorites were a powerful group of people who inhabited the land of Canaan and lived on both sides of the Jordan River.

- Their name means “high one,” which may refer to the mountainous regions where they lived or to the fact that they were known to be very tall.
- The book of Genesis reports that the Amorites were descended from Canaan, the grandson of Noah.
- The city of Ai was inhabited by Amorites.
- God refers to the “sin of the Amorites,” which included their worship of false gods and the sinful practices associated.
- Joshua led the Israelites in destroying the Amorites, as God had commanded them to do.

Bible References:

- Amos 2:9
- Ezekiel 16:3
- Genesis 10:16
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Joshua 9:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:7** Sometime later, the kings of another people group in Canaan, the **Amorites**, heard that the Gibeonites had made a peace treaty with the Israelites, so they combined their armies into one large army and attacked Gibeon.
- **15:8** In the early morning they surprised the **Amorite** armies and attacked them.
- **15:9** God fought for Israel that day. He caused the **Amorites** to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the **Amorites**.
- **15:10** God also caused the sun to stay in one place in the sky so that Israel would have enough time to completely defeat the **Amorites**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0567,

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:29](#); [21:13](#); [21:21](#); [21:25](#); [21:26](#); [21:29](#); [21:31](#); [21:32](#); [21:34](#); [22:2](#); [32:33](#); [32:39](#))

ancestor, father, fathered, forefather, grandfather

Definition:

The term “father” refers to a person’s male parent.

- The terms “father” and “forefather” are often used to refer to a male ancestor(s) of a certain person or people group. This could also be translated a “ancestor” or “ancestral father.”
- The expression “the father of” can figuratively refer to a person who is the leader a group of related people or the source of something. For example, in Genesis 4 “the father of all who live in tents” could mean, “the first clan leader of the first people who ever lived in tents.”
- The apostle Paul figuratively called himself the “father” of those he had helped to become Christians through sharing the gospel with them.

Translation Suggestions

- When talking about a father and his literal son, this term should be translated using the usual term to refer to a father in the language.
- “God the Father” should also be translated using the usual, common word for “father.”
- When referring to forefathers, this term could be translated as “ancestors” or “ancestral fathers.”
- When Paul refers to himself figuratively as a father to believers in Christ, this could be translated as “spiritual father” or “father in Christ.”
- Sometimes the word “father” can be translated as “clan leader,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “father of all lies” could be translated as “source of all lies” or “the one from whom all lies come.”

(See also: God the Father, [son](#), Son of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:2
- Acts 7:32
- Acts 7:45
- Acts 22:3
- Genesis 31:30
- Genesis 31:42
- Genesis 31:53
- Hebrews 7:4-6
- John 4:12
- Joshua 24:3-4
- Malachi 3:7
- Mark 10:7-9
- Matthew 1:7
- Matthew 3:9
- Matthew 10:21
- Matthew 18:14
- Romans 4:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0002, H0025, H0369, H0539, H1121, H1730, H1733, H2524, H3205, H3490, H4940, H5971, H7223, G05400, G10800, G37370, G39620, G39640, G39660, G39670, G39700, G39710, G39950, G42450, G42690, G46130

(Go back to: Numbers 1:2; 1:4; 1:16; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:44; 1:45; 1:47; 2:2; 2:32; 2:34; 3:4; 3:15; 3:20; 3:24; 3:30; 3:35; 4:2; 4:22; 4:29; 4:34; 4:38; 4:40; 4:42; 4:46; 6:7; 7:2; 11:12; 12:14; 13:2; 14:18; 14:23; 17:2; 17:3; 17:6; 18:1; 18:2; 20:15; 25:14; 25:15; 26:2; 26:55; 27:3; 27:4; 27:7; 27:10; 27:11; 30:3; 30:4; 30:5; 30:16; 31:26; 32:8; 32:14; 32:28; 33:54; 34:14; 36:1; 36:3; 36:4; 36:6; 36:7; 36:8; 36:12)

anoint, anointed, anointing

Definition:

The term “anoint” means to rub or pour oil on a person or object. Sometimes the oil was mixed with spices, giving it a sweet, perfumed smell. In biblical times, there were several reasons for anointing someone with oil.

- In the Old Testament, priests, kings, and prophets were anointed with oil to set them apart for special service to God.
- Objects such as altars or the tabernacle were also anointed with oil to show that they were to be used to worship and glorify God.
- In the New Testament, sick people were anointed with oil for their healing.
- The New Testament records two times that Jesus was anointed with perfumed oil by a woman, as an act of worship. One time Jesus commented that in doing this she was preparing him for his future burial.
- After Jesus died, his friends prepared his body for burial by anointing it with oils and spices.
- The titles “Messiah” (Hebrew) and “Christ” (Greek) mean “the Anointed (One).”
- Jesus the Messiah is the one who was chosen and anointed as a Prophet, High Priest, and King.
- In biblical times, a woman might anoint herself with perfume to make herself more sexually attractive.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “anoint” could be translated as “pour oil on” or “put oil on” or “consecrate by pouring perfumed oil on.”
- To “be anointed” could be translated as “be consecrated with oil.” or “be appointed” or “be consecrated.”
- In some contexts the term “anoint” could be translated as “appoint.”
- A phrase like “the anointed priest,” could be translated as “the priest who was consecrated with oil” or “the priest who was set apart by the pouring on of oil.”

(See also: Christ, [consecrate](#), high priest, King of the Jews, [priest](#), [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:20
- 1 John 2:27
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- Acts 4:27-28
- Amos 6:5-6
- Exodus 29:5-7
- James 5:13-15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0430, H1101, H1878, H3323, H4397, H4398, H4473, H4886, H4888, H4899, H5480, H8136, G00320, G02180, G07430, G14720, G20250, G34620, G55450, G55480

(Go back to: [Numbers 16 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

appoint, appointed

Definition:

The terms “appoint” and “appointed” refer to choosing someone to fulfill a specific task or role.

- To “be appointed” can also refer to being “chosen” to receive something, as in “appointed to eternal life.” That people were “appointed to eternal life” means they were chosen to receive eternal life.
- The phrase “appointed time” refers to God’s “chosen time” or “planned time” for something to happen.
- The word “appoint” may also mean to “command” or “assign” someone to do something.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “appoint” could include “choose” or “assign” or “formally choose” or “designate.”
- The term “appointed” could be translated as “assigned” or “planned” or “specifically chose.”
- The phrase “be appointed” could also be translated as “be chosen.”

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 8:11
- Acts 3:20
- Acts 6:2
- Acts 13:48
- Genesis 41:33-34
- Numbers 3:9-10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0561, H0977, H2163, H2296, H2706, H2708, H2710, H3198, H3245, H3259, H3677, H3983, H4150, H4151, H4152, H4483, H4487, H4662, H5324, H5344, H5414, H5567, H5975, H6310, H6485, H6565, H6635, H6680, H6923, H6942, H6966, H7760, H7896, G03220, G06060, G12990, G13030, G19350, G25250, G27490, G42870, G42960, G43840, G49290, G50210, G50870

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:5](#); [1:19](#); [2:4](#); [2:6](#); [2:8](#); [2:11](#); [2:13](#); [2:15](#); [2:19](#); [2:21](#); [2:23](#); [2:26](#); [2:28](#); [2:30](#); [3:16](#); [3:34](#); [3:42](#); [4:6](#); [4:8](#); [4:11](#); [4:14](#); [4:19](#); [4:27](#); [4:34](#); [4:38](#); [4:42](#); [4:49](#); [6:26](#); [6:27](#); [9:8](#); [11:17](#); [14:14](#); [Notes](#); [16:7](#); [16:18](#); [16:46](#); [21:8](#); [21:9](#); [23:5](#); [23:16](#); [24:21](#); [26:34](#); [26:41](#); [26:50](#); [Notes](#); [27:21](#); [35:12](#))

ark of the covenant, ark of Yahweh

Definition:

These terms refer to a special wooden chest, overlaid with gold, that contained the two stone tablets on which the Ten Commandments were written. It also contained Aaron's staff and a jar of manna.

- The term "ark" here could be translated as "box" or "chest" or "container."
- The objects in this chest reminded the Israelites of God's covenant with them.
- The ark of the covenant was located in the "most holy place."
- God's presence was above the ark of the covenant in the most holy place of the tabernacle, where he spoke to Moses on behalf of the Israelites.
- During the time that the ark of the covenant was in the most holy place of the temple, the high priest was the only one who could approach the ark, once a year on the Day of Atonement.
- Many English versions translate the term "covenant decrees" literally as "testimony." This refers to the fact that the Ten Commandments were a testimony or witness to God's covenant with his people. It is also translated as "covenant law."

(See also: ark, [covenant](#), [atonement](#), holy place, [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 6:15
- Exodus 25:10-11
- Hebrews 9:5
- Judges 20:27
- Numbers 7:89
- Revelation 11:19

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0727, H1285, H3068

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:31](#); [4:5](#); [7:89](#); [10:33](#); [10:35](#); [14:44](#))

Asher

Facts:

Asher was Jacob's eighth son. He was Zilpah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Asher" or "Asher."
- His name sounds similar to a Hebrew word meaning "blessed, happy."
- The tribe of Asher settled in the northwest corner of Canaan, on the Mediterranean Sea. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Asher" refers to the land given to the tribe of Asher.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Zilpah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:13
- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 4:16
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0836

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:13](#); [1:40](#); [1:41](#); [2:27](#); [7:72](#); [10:26](#); [13:13](#); [26:44](#); [26:46](#); [26:47](#); [34:27](#))

assembly, assemble, congregation, meeting, gather, community

Definition:

The term “assembly” usually refers to a group of people who come together for some reason, often to discuss problems, give advice, or make decisions. An assembly can be a group that is organized in an official and somewhat permanent way, or it can be a group of people who come together temporarily for a specific purpose or occasion.

Old Testament

- In the Old Testament there was a special kind of assembly called a “sacred assembly” in which the people of Israel would gather to worship Yahweh.
- Sometimes the term “assembly” referred to the Israelites in general, as a group.

New Testament

- In the New Testament, an assembly of 70 Jewish leaders in major cities such as Jerusalem would meet to judge legal matters and to settle disputes between people. This assembly was known as the “Sanhedrin” or the “Council.”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “assembly” could also be translated as “special gathering” or “congregation” or “council” or “army” or “large group.”
- When the term “assembly” refers generally to the Israelites as a whole, it could also be translated as “community” or “people of Israel.”
- The phrase, “all the assembly” could be translated as “all the people” or “the whole group of Israelites” or “everyone.” (See: [hyperbole](#))
- A large gathering of enemy soldiers was sometimes also referred to as an “assembly.” This could be translated as “army.”

(See also: council)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:14
- Acts 7:38
- Ezra 10:12-13
- Hebrews 12:22-24
- Leviticus 4:20-21
- Nehemiah 8:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0622, H1481, H2199, H3259, H4150, H4186, H4744, H5475, H5712, H6116, H6908, H6950, H6951, H6952, G15770, G38310, G48630, G48640, G48710, G49050

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:18](#); [10:7](#); [10:25](#); [11:16](#); [11:22](#); [11:32](#); [12:14](#); [12:15](#); [14:5](#); [15:15](#); [16:3](#); [16:33](#); [16:47](#); [19:20](#); [20:4](#); [20:6](#); [20:10](#); [20:12](#); [20:24](#); [20:26](#); [21:16](#); [22:4](#); [27:13](#); [29:35](#); [31:2](#))

Assyria, Assyrian, Assyrian Empire

Facts:

Assyria was a powerful nation during the time the Israelites were living in the land of Canaan. The Assyrian Empire was a group of nations ruled by an Assyrian king.

- The nation of Assyria was located in a region that is now the northern part of Iraq.
- The Assyrians fought against Israel at different times in their history.
- In the year 722 BC, the Assyrians completely conquered the kingdom of Israel and forced many of the Israelites to move to Assyria.
- The remaining Israelites intermarried with foreigners that the Assyrians had brought into Israel from Samaria. The descendants of those people who intermarried were later called the Samaritans.

(See also: Samaria)

Bible References:

- Genesis 10:11
- Genesis 25:17-18
- Isaiah 7:16-17
- Jeremiah 50:17
- Micah 7:11-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **20:2** So God punished both kingdoms by allowing their enemies to destroy them. The kingdom of Israel was destroyed by the **Assyrian Empire**, a powerful, cruel nation. The **Assyrians** killed many people in the kingdom of Israel, took away everything of value, and burned much of the country.
- **20:3** The **Assyrians** gathered all the leaders, the rich people, and the people with skills and took them to **Assyria**.
- **20:4** Then the **Assyrians** brought foreigners to live in the land where the kingdom of Israel had been.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0804, H1121

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:22](#); [24:24](#))

atonement lid

Definition:

The “atonement lid” was a slab of gold that was used to cover the top of the ark of the covenant. In many English translations, it is also referred to as an “atonement cover.”

- The atonement lid was about 115 centimeters in length and 70 centimeters in width.
- Above the atonement lid were two gold cherubim with their wings touching.
- Yahweh said that he would meet with the Israelites above the atonement lid, under the outstretched wings of the cherubim. Only the high priest was permitted to meet with Yahweh in this way, as the representative of the people.
- Sometimes this atonement lid has been referred to as a “mercy seat” because it communicates God’s mercy in coming down to redeem sinful human beings.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “ark covering where God promises to redeem” or “place where God atones” or “lid of ark where God forgives and restores.”
- Can also mean “place of propitiation.”
- Compare this term with how you translated “atonement,” “propitiation,” and “redemption.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [atonement](#), [cherubim](#), [propitiation](#), [redeem](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:17
- Exodus 30:6
- Exodus 40:17-20
- Leviticus 16:1-2
- Numbers 7:89

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3727, G24350

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:89](#))

atonement, atone, atoned

Definition:

The terms “atone” and “atonement” refer to how God provided a sacrifice to pay for people’s sins and to appease his wrath for sin.

- In Old Testament times, God allowed temporary atonement to be made for the sins of the Israelites by the offering of a blood sacrifice, which involved killing an animal.
- As recorded in the New Testament, Christ’s death on the cross is the only true and permanent atonement for sin.
- When Jesus died, he took the punishment that people deserve because of their sin. He paid the atonement price with his sacrificial death.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “atone” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “pay for” or “provide payment for” or “cause someone’s sins to be forgiven” or “make amends for a crime.”
- Ways to translate “atonement” could include “payment” or “sacrifice to pay for sin” or “providing the means of forgiveness.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not refer to payment of money.

(See also: [atonement lid](#), forgive, propitiation, reconcile, [redeem](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 43:25-27
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Leviticus 4:20
- Numbers 5:8
- Numbers 28:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3722, H3725, G26430

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:12](#); [15:28](#); [28:22](#); [28:30](#); [29:5](#); [31:50](#))

avenge, avenger, revenge, vengeance

Definition:

To “avenge” or “take revenge” or “execute vengeance” is to punish someone in order to pay him back for the harm he did. The act of avenging or taking revenge is “vengeance.”

- Usually “avenge” implies an intent to see justice done or to right a wrong,
- When referring to people, the expression “take revenge” or “get revenge” usually involves wanting to get back at the person who did the harm.
- When God “takes vengeance” or “executes vengeance,” he is acting in righteousness because he is punishing sin and rebellion.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression to “avenge” could also be translated as to “right a wrong” or to “get justice for.”
- When referring to human beings, to “take revenge” could be translated as “pay back” or “hurt in order to punish” or “get back at.”
- Depending on the context, “vengeance” could be translated as “punishment” or “punishment of sin” or “payment for wrongs done.” If a word meaning “retaliation” is used, this would apply to human beings only.
- When God says, “take my vengeance,” this could be translated by “punish them for wrongs done against me” or “cause bad things to happen because they have sinned against me.”
- When referring to God’s vengeance, make sure it is clear that God is right in his punishment of sin.

(See also: punish, [just](#), righteous)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:12-13
- Ezekiel 25:15
- Isaiah 47:3-5
- Leviticus 19:17-18
- Psalms 18:47
- Romans 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H3467, H5358, H5359, H5360, H8199, G15560, G15570, G15580, G37090

(Go back to: [Numbers 5 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Baal

Facts:

“Baal” means “lord” or “master” and was the name of the primary false god that was worshiped by the Canaanites.

- There were also local false gods that had “Baal” as part of their names, such as “Baal of Peor.” Sometimes all these gods together are referred to as “the Baals.”
- Some people had names that included the word “Baal” in them.
- The worship of Baal included evil practices such as sacrificing children and using prostitutes.
- At different time periods throughout their history, the Israelites also became deeply involved in Baal worship, following the example of the pagan nations around them.
- During the reign of King Ahab, God’s prophet Elijah set up a test to prove to the people that Baal does not exist and that Yahweh is the only true God. As a result, the prophets of Baal were destroyed and the people started worshipping Yahweh again.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahab, Asherah, Elijah, [false god](#), [prostitute](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:31
- 1 Samuel 7:3-4
- Jeremiah 2:7-8
- Judges 2:11
- Numbers 22:41

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:2** Ahab was an evil man who encouraged people to worship a false god named **Baal**.
- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 prophets of **Baal**, came to Mount Carmel. Elijah said to the people, “How long will you keep changing your mind? If Yahweh is God, serve him! If **Baal** is God, serve him!”
- **19:7** Then Elijah said to the prophets of **Baal**, “Kill a bull and prepare it as a sacrifice, but do not light the fire.”
- **19:8** Then the prophets of **Baal** prayed to **Baal**, “Hear us, O **Baal**!”
- **19:12** So the people captured the prophets of **Baal**. Then Elijah took them away from there and killed them.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1120, G08960

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:19](#); [21:20](#); [22:41](#))

Balaam

Facts:

Balaam was a pagan prophet whom King Balaam hired to curse Israel while they were camped at the Jordan River in northern Moab, preparing to enter the land of Canaan.

- Balaam was from the city of Pethor, which was located in the region around the Euphrates River, about 400 miles away from the land of Moab.
- The Midianite king, Balaam, was afraid of the strength and numbers of the Israelites, so he hired Balaam to curse them.
- As Balaam was traveling toward Israel, an angel of God stood in his path so that Balaam's donkey stopped. God also gave the donkey the ability to speak to Balaam.
- God did not allow Balaam to curse the Israelites and commanded him to bless them instead.
- Later however, Balaam still brought evil on the Israelites when he influenced them to worship the false god Baal-peor.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [bless](#), [Canaan](#), [curse](#), [donkey](#), [Euphrates River](#), [Jordan River](#), [Midian](#), [Moab](#), [Peor](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:16
- Deuteronomy 23:3-4
- Joshua 13:22-23
- Numbers 22:5
- Revelation 2:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1109, G09030

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:5](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:16](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [22:21](#); [22:23](#); [22:25](#); [22:27](#); [22:28](#); [22:29](#); [22:30](#); [22:31](#); [22:34](#); [22:35](#); [22:36](#); [22:37](#); [22:38](#); [22:39](#); [22:40](#); [22:41](#); [23:1](#); [23:2](#); [23:3](#); [23:4](#); [23:5](#); [23:11](#); [23:16](#); [23:25](#); [23:26](#); [23:27](#); [23:28](#); [23:29](#); [23:30](#); [24:1](#); [24:2](#); [24:3](#); [24:10](#); [24:12](#); [24:15](#); [24:25](#); [31:8](#); [31:16](#))

barley

Definition:

The term “barley” refers to a kind of grain that is used to make bread.

- The barley plant has a long stalk with a head at the top where the seeds or grains grow.
- Barley does well in warmer weather so it is often harvested in spring or summer.
- When barley is threshed, the edible seeds are separated from the worthless chaff.
- Barley grain is ground up into flour, which is then mixed with water or oil to make bread.
- If barley is not known, this could be translated as “grain called barley” or “barley grain.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [grain](#), [thresh](#), wheat)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:12-14
- Job 31:40
- Judges 7:14
- Numbers 5:15
- Revelation 6:6

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H8184, G29150, G29160

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:15](#))

Bashan

Facts:

Bashan was a region of land east of the Sea of Galilee. It covered an area that is now part of Syria and the Golan Heights.

- An Old Testament city of refuge called “Golan” was located in the region of Bashan.
- Bashan was a very fertile region known for its oak trees and pasturing animals.
- Genesis 14 records that Bashan was the site of a war between several kings and their nations.
- During Israel’s wanderings in the desert after their escape from Egypt, they took possession of part of the region of Bashan.
- Years later, King Solomon obtained supplies from that region.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Egypt](#), oak, Sea of Galilee, Syria)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:13
- Amos 4:1
- Jeremiah 22:20-21
- Joshua 9:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1316

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:33](#); [32:33](#))

beast

Facts:

In the Bible, the term “beast” is often just another way of saying “animal.”

- A wild beast is a type of animal that lives freely in the forest or fields and has not been trained by people.
- A domestic beast is an animal that lives with people and is kept for food or for performing work, such as plowing fields. Often the term “livestock” is used to refer to this kind of animal.
- The Old Testament book of Daniel and the New Testament book of Revelation describe visions which have beasts that represent evil powers and authorities that oppose God. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Some of these beasts are described as having strange features, such as several heads and many horns. They often have power and authority, indicating that they may represent countries, nations, or other political powers.
- Ways to translate this could include “creature” or “created thing” or “animal” or “wild animal,” depending on the context.

(See also: authority, Daniel, [livestock](#), [nation](#), power, reveal, Beelzebul)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:32
- 1 Samuel 17:44
- 2 Chronicles 25:18
- Jeremiah 16:1-4
- Leviticus 7:21
- Psalms 49:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0338, H0929, H1165, H2123, H2416, H2423, H2874, H3753, H4806, H7409, G22260, G23410, G23420, G29340, G49680, G50740

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:13](#); [3:41](#); [3:45](#); [31:9](#); [32:26](#))

Benjamin, Benjaminite

Facts:

Benjamin was Jacob's twelfth son. He was Rachel's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Benjamin" or "Benjamin" or the "Benjaminites."
- In Hebrew, the name Benjamin means "son of my right hand."
- The tribe of Benjamin settled just northwest of the Dead Sea, north of Jerusalem.
- King Saul was from the tribe of Benjamin.
- The apostle Paul was from the tribe of Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Rachel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 2:8
- Acts 13:21-22
- Genesis 35:18
- Genesis 42:4
- Genesis 42:35-36
- Philippians 3:4-5

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1144, G09580

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:11](#); [1:36](#); [1:37](#); [2:22](#); [7:60](#); [10:24](#); [13:9](#); [26:38](#); [26:41](#); [34:21](#))

bind, bond, bound

Definition:

The term “bind” means to tie something or fasten it securely. Something that is tied or joined together is called a “bond.” The term “bound” is the past tense of this term.

- To be “bound” means to have something tied or wrapped around something else.
- In a figurative sense, a person can be “bound” to a vow, which means he is “required to fulfill” what he promised to do.
- The term “bonds” refers to anything that binds, confines, or imprisons someone. It usually refers to physical chains, fetters or ropes that keep a person from being free to move.
- In Bible times, bonds such as ropes or chains were used to attach prisoners to the wall or floor of a stone prison.
- The term “bind” can also be used to talk about wrapping cloth around a wound to help it heal.
- A dead person would be “bound” with cloth in preparation for burial.
- The term “bond” is used figuratively to refer to something, such as sin, that controls or enslaves someone.
- A bond can also be a close relationship between people in which they support each other emotionally, spiritually and physically. This applies to the bond of marriage.
- For example, a husband and wife are “bound” or tied to each other. It is a bond that God does not want broken.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “bind” could also be translated as “tie” or “tie up” or “wrap (around).”
- Figuratively, it could be translated as to “restrain” or to “prevent” or to “keep from (something).”
- A special use of “bind” in Matthew 16 and 18 means “forbid” or “not permit.”
- The term “bonds” could be translated as “chains” or “ropes” or “shackles.”
- Figuratively the term “bond” could be translated as “knot” or “connection” or “close relationship.”
- The phrase “bond of peace” means “being in harmony, which brings people in closer relationship to each other” or “the tying together that peace brings.”
- To “bind up” could be translated as “wrap around” or “put a bandage on.”
- To “bind” oneself with a vow could be translated as “promise to fulfill a vow” or “commit to fulfill a vow.”
- Depending on the context, the term “bound” could also be translated as “tied” or “tied up” or “chained” or “obligated (to fulfill)” or “required to do.”

(See also: fulfill, [peace](#), prison, [servant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Leviticus 8:7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0247, H0481, H0519, H0615, H0631, H0632, H0640, H1366, H1367, H1379, H2280, H2706, H3256, H3533, H3729, H4147, H4148, H4205, H4562, H5650, H5656, H5659, H6029, H6123, H6616, H6696, H6872, H6887, H7194, H7405, H7573, H7576, H8198, H8244, H8379, G02540, G03310, G03320, G11950, G11960, G11980, G11990, G12100, G13970, G13980, G14010, G14020, G26110, G26150, G37340, G37840, G38140, G40190, G40290, G43850, G48860, G48870, G52650

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:28](#))

bless, blessed, blessing

Definition:

To “bless” someone or something means to cause good and beneficial things to happen to the person or thing that is being blessed.

- Blessing someone also means expressing a desire for positive and beneficial things to happen to that person.
- In Bible times, a father would often pronounce a formal blessing on his children.
- When people “bless” God or express a desire that God be blessed, this means they are praising him.
- The term “bless” is sometimes used for consecrating food before it is eaten, or for thanking and praising God for the food.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “bless” could also be translated as to “provide abundantly for” or to “be very kind and favorable toward.”
- “God has brought great blessing to” could be translated as “God has given many good things to” or “God has provided abundantly for” or “God has caused many good things to happen to”.
- “He is blessed” could be translated as “he will greatly benefit” or “he will experience good things” or “God will cause him to flourish.”
- “Blessed is the person who” could be translated as “How good it is for the person who.”
- Expressions like “blessed be the Lord” could be translated as “May the Lord be praised” or “Praise the Lord” or “I praise the Lord.”
- In the context of blessing food, this could be translated as “thanked God for the food” or “praised God for giving them food” or “consecrated the food by praising God for it.”

(See also: praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 10:16
- Acts 13:34
- Ephesians 1:3
- Genesis 14:20
- Isaiah 44:3
- James 1:25
- Luke 6:20
- Matthew 26:26
- Nehemiah 9:5
- Romans 4:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:7** God saw that it was good and he **blessed** them.
- **1:15** God made Adam and Eve in his own image. He **blessed** them and told them, “Have many children and grandchildren and fill the earth.”
- **1:16** So God rested from all he had been doing. He **blessed** the seventh day and made it holy, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **4:4** “I will make your name great. I will **bless** those who **bless** you and curse those who curse you. All families on earth will be **blessed** because of you.”

- **4:7** Melchizedek **blessed** Abram and said, "May God Most High who owns heaven and earth **bless** Abram."
- **7:3** Isaac wanted to give his **blessing** to Esau.
- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained faithful to God, and God **blessed** him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0833, H0835, H1288, H1289, H1293, G17570, G21270, G21280, G21290, G31060, G31070, G31080, G60500

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:23](#); [6:24](#); [6:27](#); [22:6](#); [22:12](#); [23:11](#); [23:20](#); [23:25](#); [24:9](#); [24:10](#))

blood

Definition:

The term “blood” refers to the red liquid that comes out of a person’s skin when there is an injury or wound. Blood brings life-giving nutrients to a person’s entire body. In the Bible, the term “blood” is often used figuratively to mean “life” and/or several other concepts.

- When people made sacrifices to God, they killed an animal and poured its blood on the altar. This symbolized the sacrifice of the animal’s life to pay for people’s sins.
- The expression “flesh and blood” refers to human beings.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to people who are biologically related.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term should be translated with the term that is used for blood in the target language.
- The expression “flesh and blood” could be translated as “people” or “human beings.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “my own flesh and blood” could be translated as “my own family” or “my own relatives” or “my own people.”
- If there is an expression in the target language that is used with this meaning, that expression could be used to translate “flesh and blood.”

(See also: bloodshed; [flesh](#); [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 14:32
- Acts 2:20
- Acts 5:28
- Colossians 1:20
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 4:11
- Psalms 16:4
- Psalms 105:28-30

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:3** Before Joseph’s brothers returned home, they tore Joseph’s robe and dipped it in goat’s **blood**.
- **10:3** God turned the Nile River into **blood**, but Pharaoh still would not let the Israelites go.
- **11:5** All the houses of the Israelites had **blood** around the doors, so God passed over those houses and everyone inside was safe. They were saved because of the lamb’s **blood**.
- **13:9** The **blood** of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person’s sin and made that person clean in God’s sight.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, “Drink this. It is my **blood** of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins.”
- **48:10** When anyone believes in Jesus, the **blood** of Jesus takes away that person’s sin, and God’s punishment passes over him.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1818, H5332, G01290, G01300, G01310

(Go back to: [Numbers 18:17](#); [19:5](#); [35:27](#); [35:33](#))

bow, bow down, kneel, bend, bend the knee

Definition:

To bow means to bend over to humbly express respect and honor toward someone. To “bow down” means to bend over or kneel down very low, often with face and hands toward the ground.

- Other expressions include “bow the knee” (meaning to kneel) and “bow the head” (meaning to bend the head forward in humble respect or in sorrow).
- Bowing down can also be a sign of distress or mourning. Someone who is “bowed down” has been brought to a low position of humility.
- Often a person will bow in the presence of someone who is of higher status or greater importance, such as kings and other rulers.
- Bowing down before God is an expression of worship to him.
- In the Bible, people bowed down to Jesus when they realized from his miracles and teaching that he had come from God.
- The Bible says that when Jesus comes back someday, everyone will bow the knee to worship him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, this term could be translated with a word or phrase that means “bend forward” or “bend the head” or “kneel.”
- The term “bow down” could be translated as “kneel down” or “prostrate oneself.”
- Some languages will have more than one way of translating this term, depending on the context.

(See also: [humble](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:18
- Exodus 20:5
- Genesis 24:26
- Genesis 44:14
- Isaiah 44:19
- Luke 24:5
- Matthew 2:11
- Revelation 3:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0086, H3721, H3766, H5753, H5791, H6915, H7743, H7812, H7817, G11200, G25780, G28270, G40980

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:27](#); [14:5](#); [14:43](#); [16:4](#); [16:22](#); [16:45](#); [20:6](#); [22:31](#); [24:9](#); [35:23](#))

bread

Definition:

Bread is a food made from flour mixed with water and oil to form a dough. The dough is then shaped into a loaf and baked.

- When the term “loaf” occurs by itself, it means “loaf of bread.”
- Bread dough is usually made with something that makes it rise, such as yeast. However, bread can also be made without yeast so that it does not rise. This is called “unleavened bread” in the Bible. The ancient Israelites ate “unleavened bread” during the passover meal.
- Since bread was the main food for many people in biblical times, this term is also used in the Bible to refer to food in general. (See: [Synecdoche](#)) Many times the term “bread” can be translated more generally as “food.”
- The phrase “bread of the presence” refers to twelve loaves of bread that were placed on a golden table in the tabernacle or temple building as a sacrifice to God. These loaves represented the twelve tribes of Israel and were only for the priests to eat. This could be translated as “bread showing that God lived among them.”
- The term “bread from heaven” refers to the special white food called “manna” that God provided for the Israelites when they were wandering through the desert. Jesus also called himself the “bread that came down from heaven” and the “bread of life.”

(See also: [Passover](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), [unleavened bread](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:46
- Acts 27:35
- Exodus 16:15
- Luke 9:13
- Mark 6:38
- Matthew 4:4
- Matthew 11:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2557, H3899, H4635, H4682, G01060, G07400, G42860

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:7](#); [14:9](#); [21:5](#); [28:2](#); [28:24](#))

bronze

Definition:

The term “bronze” refers to a kind of metal that is made from melting together the metals, copper and tin. It has a dark brown color, slightly red.

- Bronze resists water corrosion and is a good conductor of heat.
- In ancient times, bronze was used for making tools, weapons, artwork, altars, cooking pots, and soldiers’ armor, among other things.
- Many building materials for the tabernacle and temple were made of bronze.
- Idols of false gods were also often made of bronze metal.
- Bronze objects were made by first melting the bronze metal into a liquid and then pouring it into molds. This process was called “casting.”

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: armor, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 7:16
- 1 Samuel 17:37-38
- Daniel 2:44-45
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Revelation 1:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5153, H5154, H5174, H5178, G54700, G54740, G54750

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:39](#); [21:9](#); [31:22](#))

brother

Definition:

The term “brother” refers to a male sibling who shares at least one biological parent.

- In the Old Testament, the term “brothers” is also used as a general reference to relatives or associates, such as members of the same tribe, clan, occupation, or people group. When used in this way, the term can refer to both men and women.
- In the New Testament, the apostles often use the term “brothers” to refer to fellow Christians, including both men and women.
- A few times in the New Testament, the apostles used the term “sister” when referring specifically to a fellow Christian who was a woman, or to emphasize that both men and women are being included. For example, James emphasizes that he is talking about all believers when he refers to “a brother or sister who is in need of food or clothing.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term with the literal word that is used in the target language to refer to a natural or biological brother, unless this would give wrong meaning.
- In the Old Testament especially, when “brothers” is used very generally to refer to members of the same family, clan, or people group, possible translations could include “relatives” or “clan members” or “fellow Israelites.”
- In the context of referring to a fellow believer in Christ, this term could be translated as “brother in Christ” or “spiritual brother.”
- If both males and females are being referred to and “brother” would give a wrong meaning, then a more general kinship term could be used that would include both males and females.
- Other ways to translate this term so that it refers to both male and female believers could be “fellow believers” or “Christian brothers and sisters.”
- Make sure to check the context to determine whether only men are being referred to, or whether both men and women are included.

(See also: [apostle](#), [God the Father](#), [sister](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:26
- Genesis 29:10
- Leviticus 19:17
- Nehemiah 3:1
- Philippians 4:21
- Revelation 1:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0251, H0252, H0264, H1730, H2992, H2993, H2994, H7453, G00800, G00810, G23850, G24550, G25000, G46130, G53600, G55690

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:7](#); [8:26](#); [14:4](#); [16:10](#); [18:2](#); [18:6](#); [20:3](#); [20:8](#); [20:14](#); [25:6](#); [27:4](#); [27:7](#); [27:9](#); [27:10](#); [27:11](#); [27:13](#); [36:2](#))

burden, load, heavy, hard work, hard labor, utterances

Definition:

A burden is a heavy load. It literally refers to a physical load such as a work animal would carry. The term “burden” also has several figurative meanings:

- A burden can refer to a difficult duty or important responsibility that a person has to do. He is said to be “bearing” or “carrying” a “heavy burden.”
- A cruel leader may put difficult burdens on the people he is ruling, for example by forcing them to pay large amounts of taxes.
- A person who does not want to be a burden to someone does not want to cause that other person any trouble.
- The guilt of a person’s sin is a burden to him.
- The “burden of the Lord” is a figurative way of referring to a “message from God” that a prophet must deliver to God’s people.
- The term “burden” can be translated by “responsibility” or “duty” or “heavy load” or “message,” depending on the context.

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 3:6-9
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Galatians 6:3
- Genesis 49:15
- Matthew 11:30
- Matthew 23:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2960, H3053, H4614, H4853, H4864, H5445, H5447, H5448, H5449, H5450, H6006, G00040, G09160, G09220, G23470, G25990, G26550, G54130

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:15](#); [4:19](#); [4:27](#); [4:31](#); [4:32](#); [4:47](#); [4:49](#); [11:11](#); [22:17](#); [22:37](#); [24:11](#))

burnt offering, offering by fire

Definition:

A “burnt offering” was a type of sacrifice to God that was burnt up by fire on an altar. It was offered to make atonement for the sins of the people. This was also called an “offering by fire.”

- Animals used for this offering were usually sheep or goats, but oxen and birds were also used.
- Except for the skin, the entire animal was burned up in this offering. The skin or hide was given to the priest.
- God commanded the Jewish people to offer burnt offerings two times every day.

(See also: [altar](#), [atonement](#), [ox](#), [priest](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 40:5-7
- Genesis 8:20
- Genesis 22:1-3
- Leviticus 3:5
- Mark 12:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H5930, H7133, H8548, G36460

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:16](#); [8:12](#); [10:10](#); [15:3](#); [15:8](#); [23:3](#); [23:6](#); [23:15](#); [23:17](#); [28:3](#); [28:6](#); [28:10](#); [28:11](#); [28:13](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:19](#); [28:23](#); [28:24](#); [28:27](#); [28:31](#); [29:2](#); [29:6](#); [29:8](#); [29:11](#); [29:13](#); [29:16](#); [29:19](#); [29:22](#); [29:25](#); [29:28](#); [29:31](#); [29:34](#); [29:36](#); [29:38](#))

bury, buried, burial

Definition:

The term “bury” refers to putting an object (usually a dead body) into a hole or other burial place and then covering it with dirt or stones, etc. The term “burial” is the act of burying something, or it can be used to describe a place where something has been buried.

- Often people bury a dead body by placing it into a deep hole in the ground and then covering it with dirt.
- Sometimes the dead body is placed in a box-like structure, such as a coffin, before burying it.
- In Bible times, dead people were often buried in a cave or similar place. After Jesus died, his body was wrapped in cloths and placed in a stone tomb that was sealed with a large boulder.
- The terms “burial place” or “burial room” or “burial chamber” or “burial cave” always refer to a place where a dead body is buried.
- Other things can also be buried, such as when Achan buried silver and other things that he had stolen from Jericho.
- The phrase “buried his face” usually means “covered his face with his hands.”
- Sometimes the word “hide” can mean “bury” as when Achan hid things in the ground that he had stolen from Jericho. This meant he buried them in the ground.

(See also: [Jericho](#), tomb)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 9:9-10
- Genesis 35:4-5
- Jeremiah 25:33
- Luke 16:22
- Matthew 27:7
- Psalm 79:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6900, H6912, H6913, G17790, G17800, G22900, G49160, G50270

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:34](#); [33:4](#))

Cain

Facts:

Cain and his younger brother Abel were the first sons of Adam and Eve mentioned in the Bible.

- Cain was a farmer who produced food crops while Abel was a sheep herder.
- Cain killed his brother Abel in a fit of jealousy because God had accepted Abel's sacrifice but had not accepted Cain's sacrifice.
- As punishment, God sent him away from Eden and told him that the land would no longer yield crops for him.
- God put a mark on Cain's forehead as a sign that God would protect him from being killed by other people as he wandered.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Adam](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:12
- Genesis 4:2
- Genesis 4:9
- Genesis 4:15
- Hebrews 11:4
- Jude 1:11

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7014, G25350

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:22](#))

call, call out

Definition:

The terms “call” and “call out” usually mean to speak loudly, but the term “call” can also mean to name or summon a person. There are also some other meanings.

- To “call out” to someone means to shout, to announce, or to proclaim. It can also mean to ask someone for help, especially God.
- Often in the Bible, “call” has a meaning of “summon” or “command to come” or “request to come.”
- God calls people to come to him and be his people. This is their “calling.”
- When God “calls” people, it means that God has appointed or chosen people to be his children, to be his servants and proclaimers of his message of salvation through Jesus.
- This term is also used in the context of naming someone. For example, “His name is called John,” means “He is named John” or “His name is John.”
- To be “called by the name of” means that someone is given the name of someone else. God says that he has called his people by his name.
- A different expression, “I have called you by name” means that God has specifically chosen that person.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “call” could be translated by a word that means “summon,” which includes the idea of being intentional or purposeful in calling.
- The expression “call out to you” could be translated as “ask you for help” or “pray to you urgently.”
- When the Bible says that God has “called” us to be his servants, this could be translated as “specially chose us” or “appointed us” to be his servants.
- “You must call his name” can also be translated as “you must name him.”
- “His name is called” could also be translated as “his name is” or “he is named.”
- To “call out” could be translated as “say loudly” or “shout” or “say with a loud voice.” Make sure the translation of this does not sound like the person is angry.
- The expression “your calling” could be translated as “your purpose” or “God’s purpose for you” or “God’s special work for you.”
- To “call on the name of the Lord” could be translated as “seek the Lord and depend on him” or “trust in the Lord and obey him.”
- To “call for” something could be translated by “demand” or “ask for” or “command.”
- The expression “you are called by my name” could be translated as “I have given you my name, showing that you belong to me.”
- When God says, “I have called you by name,” this could be translated as “I know you and have chosen you.”

(See also: [pray](#), cry)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:24
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 1:9
- Ephesians 4:1
- Galatians 1:15
- Matthew 2:15
- Philippians 3:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0559, H2199, H4744, H6817, H7121, H7123, H7769, H7773, G01540, G03630, G14580, G15280, G19410, G19510, G20280, G20460, G25640, G28210, G28220, G28400, G29190, G30040, G31060, G33330, G33430, G36030, G36860, G36870, G43160, G43410, G43770, G47790, G48670, G54550, G55370, G55810

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:24](#); [24:10](#); [26:9](#))

Canaan, Canaanite

Facts:

Canaan was the son of Ham, who was one of Noah's sons. The Canaanites were the descendants of Canaan.

- The term "Canaan" or the "land of Canaan" also referred to an area of land between the Jordan River and the Mediterranean Sea. It extended south to the border of Egypt and north to the border of Syria.
- This land was inhabited by the Canaanites, as well as several other people groups.
- God promised to give the land of Canaan to Abraham and his descendants, the Israelites.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ham, [Promised Land](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 13:19-20
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 9:18
- Genesis 10:19-20
- Genesis 13:7
- Genesis 47:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:5** He (Abram) took his wife, Sarai, together with all his servants and everything he owned and went to the land God showed him, the land of **Canaan**.
- **4:6** When Abram arrived in **Canaan** God said, "Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an inheritance."
- **4:9** "I give the land of **Canaan** to your descendants."
- **5:3** "I will give you and your descendants the land of **Canaan** as their possession and I will be their God forever."
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in **Canaan**, Jacob returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3667, H3669, G54780

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:2](#); [13:17](#); [21:1](#); [21:3](#); [26:19](#); [32:30](#); [32:32](#); [33:40](#); [33:51](#); [34:2](#); [34:29](#); [35:10](#); [35:14](#))

captive, captivate, captivity, catch

Definition:

The terms “captive” and “captivity” refer to people who have been captured and forced to live somewhere they do not want to live, such as in a foreign country.

- The Israelites from the kingdom of Judah were held captive in the kingdom of Babylonia for 70 years.
- Captives are often required to work for the people or nation that captured them.
- Daniel and Nehemiah were Israelite captives who worked for the Babylonian king.
- The expression to “take captive” is another way of talking about capturing someone.
- The expression, “carry you away captive” could also be translated as “force you to live as captives” or “take you away to another country as prisoners.”
- In a figurative sense, the apostle Paul tells Christians to “take captive” every thought and make it obedient to Christ.
- He also talks about how a person can be “taken captive” by sin, which means he is “controlled by” sin.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, to be “held captive” could also be translated by, “not allowed to be free” or “kept in prison” or “forced to live in a foreign country.”
- The expression, “led captive” or “taken captive” could be translated as “captured” or “imprisoned” or “forced to go to a foreign land.”
- The term “captives” could also be translated as “people who were captured” or “enslaved people.”
- Depending on the context, “captivity” could also be translated as “imprisonment” or “exile” or “forced stay in a foreign country.”

(See also: Babylon, exile, prison, seize)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 10:5
- Isaiah 20:4
- Jeremiah 43:3
- Luke 4:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1123, H1473, H1540, H1546, H1547, H7617, H7622, H7628, H7633, H7686, G01610, G01620, G01630, G01640, G22210

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:29](#); [24:22](#); [31:12](#); [31:26](#))

cedar, cedarwood

Definition:

The term “cedar” refers to a large fir tree which normally has reddish-brown wood. Like other firs, it has cones and needle-like leaves.

- The Old Testament often mentions cedar trees in connection with Lebanon, where they grew plentifully.
- Cedar wood was used in the construction of the Jerusalem temple.
- It was also used for sacrifices and purification offerings.

(See also: [fir](#), [pure](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:1-2
- 1 Kings 7:1-2
- Isaiah 2:13
- Zechariah 11:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0730

(Go back to: [Numbers 19:6](#))

census

Definition:

The term “census” refers to a formal counting of the number of people in a nation or empire.

- The Old Testament records different times when God ordered that the men of Israel be counted, such as when the Israelites first left Egypt and then again just before they entered Canaan.
- Often the purpose of a census was in order to know how many people should be paying taxes.
- For example, one time in Exodus the Israelite men were counted so that each one would pay a half shekel for taking care of the temple.
- When Jesus was a baby, the Roman government did a census to count all the people who lived throughout their empire, to require them to pay taxes.

Translation Suggestions

- Possible ways to translate this term could include, “name counting” or “list of names” or “enrollment.”
- The phrase “take a census” could be translated as “register people’s names” or “enroll people” or “write down people’s names.”

(See also: [nation](#), Rome)

Bible References:

- Acts 5:37
- Exodus 30:12
- Exodus 38:26
- Luke 2:3
- Numbers 4:1-4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3789, H5674, H5921, H6485, H7218, G05820, G05830

(Go back to: [Introduction to Numbers](#))

cherub

Definition:

The term “cherub,” and its plural form “cherubim,” refer to a special type of heavenly being that God created. The Bible describes cherubim as having wings and flames.

- The cherubim display the glory and power of God and seem to be guardians of sacred things.
- After Adam and Eve sinned, God placed cherubim with flaming swords at the east side of the Garden of Eden so that people could no longer get to the tree of life.
- God commanded the Israelites to carve two cherubim facing each other, with their wings touching, over the atonement lid of the ark of the covenant.
- He also told them to weave pictures of the cherubim into the curtains of the tabernacle.
- In some passages, these creatures are also described as having four faces: of a man, a lion, an ox, and an eagle.
- Cherubim are sometimes thought of as being angels, but the Bible does not clearly state that.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “cherubim” could be translated as “creatures with wings” or “guardians with wings” or “winged spiritual guardians” or “holy, winged guardians.”
- A “cherub” should be translated as the singular of cherubim, as in, “creature with wings” or “winged spiritual guardian,” for example.
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “angel.”
- Also consider how this term is translated or written in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [angel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:6
- 1 Kings 6:23-26
- Exodus 25:15-18
- Ezekiel 9:3
- Genesis 3:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3742, G55020

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:89](#))

chosen, choose, chosen people, Chosen One, elect

Definition:

The term “the elect” literally means “chosen ones” or “chosen people” and refers to those whom God has appointed or selected to be his people. “Chosen One” or “Chosen One of God” is a title that refers to Jesus, who is the chosen Messiah.

- The term “choose” means to select something or someone or to decide something. It is often used to refer to God appointing people to belong to him and to serve him.
- To be “chosen” means to be “selected” or “appointed” to be or do something.
- God chose people to be holy, to be set apart by him for the purpose of bearing good spiritual fruit. That is why they are called “the chosen (ones)” or “the elect.”
- The term “chosen one” is sometimes used in the Bible to refer to certain people such as Moses and King David whom God had appointed as leaders over his people. It is also used to refer to the nation of Israel as God’s chosen people.
- The phrase “the elect” is an older term that literally means “the chosen ones” or “the chosen people.” This phrase in the original language is plural when referring to believers in Christ.
- In older English Bible versions, the term “elect” is used in both the Old and New Testaments to translate the word for “chosen one(s).” More modern versions use “elect” only in the New Testament, to refer to people who have been saved by God through faith in Jesus. Elsewhere in the Bible text, they translate this word more literally as “chosen ones.”

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “elect” with a word or phrase that means “chosen ones” or “chosen people.” This could also be translated as “people whom God chose” or “the ones God appointed to be his people.”
- The phrase “who were chosen” could also be translated as “who were appointed” or “who were selected” or “whom God chose.”
- “I chose you” could be translated as “I appointed you” or “I selected you.”
- In reference to Jesus, “Chosen One” could also be translated as “God’s chosen One” or “God’s specially appointed Messiah” or “the One God appointed (to save people).”

(See also: [appoint](#), Christ)

Bible References:

- 2 John 1:1
- Colossians 3:12
- Ephesians 1:3-4
- Isaiah 65:22-23
- Luke 18:7
- Matthew 24:19-22
- Romans 8:33

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0970, H0972, H0977, H1262, H1305, H4005, H6901, G01380, G01400, G15860, G15880, G15890, G19510, G37240, G44000, G44010, G47580, G48990, G55000

(Go back to: [Numbers 17 General Notes](#))

clan

Definition:

The term “clan” refers to a group of extended family members who come from a common ancestor.

- In the Old Testament, the Israelites were counted according to their clans, or family groups.
- Clans were normally named after their most well-known ancestor.
- Individual people were sometimes referred to by the name of their clan. An example of this is when Moses’ father-in-law Jethro is sometimes called by his clan name, Reuel.
- The term “clan” might also be translated as “family group” or “extended family” or “relatives.”

(See also: [family](#), [Jethro](#), [tribe](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:33-35
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 36:15-16
- Genesis 36:29-30
- Genesis 36:40
- Joshua 15:20
- Numbers 3:38-39

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0441, H1004, H4940

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2](#); [1:20](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [1:30](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:36](#); [1:38](#); [1:40](#); [1:42](#); [2:34](#); [3:15](#); [3:18](#); [3:19](#); [3:20](#); [3:30](#); [3:35](#); [3:39](#); [4:2](#); [4:22](#); [4:29](#); [4:34](#); [4:36](#); [4:38](#); [4:40](#); [4:42](#); [4:44](#); [4:46](#); [11:10](#); [26:12](#); [26:15](#); [26:20](#); [26:23](#); [26:26](#); [26:28](#); [26:35](#); [26:37](#); [26:38](#); [26:41](#); [26:42](#); [26:44](#); [26:48](#); [26:50](#); [26:57](#); [27:1](#); [33:54](#); [36:1](#); [36:6](#))

clean, wash

Definition:

The term “clean” generally refers either to removing dirt or stains from someone/something or to not having any dirt or stain in the first place. The term “wash” refers specifically to action of removing dirt or stains from someone/something.

- “Cleanse” is the process of making something “clean.” It could also be translated as “wash” or “purify.”
- In the Old Testament, God told the Israelites which animals he had specified as ritually “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” Only the clean animals were permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice. In this context, the term “clean” means that the animal was acceptable to God for use as a sacrifice.
- A person who had certain skin diseases would be unclean until the skin was healed enough to no longer be contagious. Instructions for cleansing the skin had to be obeyed in order for that person to be declared “clean” again.
- Sometimes “clean” is used figuratively to refer to moral purity, meaning to be “clean” from sin.

In the Bible, the term “unclean” is used figuratively to refer to things that God declared to be unfit for his people to touch, eat, or sacrifice.

- God gave the Israelites instructions about which animals were “clean” and which ones were “unclean.” The unclean animals were not permitted to be used for eating or for sacrifice.
- People with certain skin diseases were said to be “unclean” until they were healed.
- If the Israelites touched something “unclean,” they themselves would be considered unclean for a certain period of time.
- Obeying God’s commands about not touching or eating unclean things kept the Israelites set apart for God’s service.
- This physical and ritual uncleanness was also symbolic of moral uncleanness.
- In another figurative sense, an “unclean spirit” refers to an evil spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated with the common word for “clean” or “pure” (in the sense of being not dirty).
- Other ways to translate this could include, “ritually clean” or “acceptable to God.”
- “Cleanse” could be translated by “wash” or “purify.”
- Make sure that the words used for “clean” and “cleanse” can also be understood in a figurative sense.
- The term “unclean” could also be translated as “not clean” or “unfit in God’s eyes” or “physically unclean” or “defiled.”
- When referring to a demon as an unclean spirit, “unclean” could be translated as “evil” or “defiled.”
- The translation of this term should allow for spiritual uncleanness. It should be able to refer to anything that God declared as unfit for touching, eating, or sacrifice.

(See also: defile, demon, [holy](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 7:2
- Genesis 7:8
- Deuteronomy 12:15
- Psalms 51:7
- Proverbs 20:30
- Ezekiel 24:13
- Matthew 23:27

- Luke 5:13
- Acts 8:7
- Acts 10:27-29
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- James 4:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1249, H1252, H1305, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2398, H2548, H2834, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2893, H2930, H2931, H2932, H3001, H3722, H5079, H5352, H5355, H5356, H6172, H6565, H6663, H6945, H7137, H8552, H8562, G01670, G01690, G25110, G25120, G25130, G28390, G28400, G33940, G36890

(Go back to: [Numbers 5 General Notes](#); [9:13](#); [18:11](#); [18:13](#); [Notes](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [19:9](#); [19:13](#); [19:18](#); [19:19](#); [19:20](#); [31:23](#))

column, pillar

Definition:

The term “pillar” usually refers to a large vertical structure that is used to hold up a roof or other part of a building. Another word for “pillar” is “column.”

- In Bible times, pillars used as support in buildings were normally carved from a single piece of stone.
- When Samson in the Old Testament was captured by the Philistines, he destroyed their pagan temple by pushing the supporting pillars and causing the temple to collapse.
- The word “pillar” sometimes refers to a large stone or boulder that is set up as a memorial to mark a grave or to mark the place where an important event happened.
- It can also refer to an idol that was made to worship a false god. It is another name for a “carved image” and could be translated as “statue.”
- The term “pillar” is used to refer to something that is shaped like a pillar, such as the “pillar of fire” that led the Israelites at night through the desert or the “pillar of salt” that Lot’s wife became after she looked back at the city.
- As a structure supporting a building, the term “pillar” or “column” could be translated as “upright stone support beam” or “supporting stone structure.”
- Other uses of “pillar” could be translated as “statue” or “pile” or “mound” or “monument” or “tall mass,” depending on the context.

(See also: foundation, [false god](#), image)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:4
- Exodus 13:21
- Exodus 33:9
- Genesis 31:45
- Proverbs 9:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H0547, H2106, H2553, H3730, H4552, H4676, H4678, H4690, H5324, H5333, H5982, H8490, G47690

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:36](#); [3:37](#); [4:31](#); [4:32](#); [12:5](#); [14:14](#))

command, commandment

Definition:

The term “command” means to order someone to do something. The term “commandment” refers to the thing that a person is commanded to do.

- The term “commandment” sometimes refers to certain commands of God which are more formal and permanent, such as the “Ten Commandments.”
- A command can be positive (“Honor your parents”) or negative (“Do not steal”).
- To “take command” means to “take control” or “take charge” of something or someone.

Translation Suggestions

- It is best to translate this term differently from the term, “law.” Also compare with the definitions of “decree” and “statute.”
- Some translators may prefer to translate “command” and “commandment” with the same word in their language.
- Others may prefer to use a special word for commandment that refers to lasting, formal commands that God has made.

(See decree, [statute](#), law, Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Luke 1:6
- Matthew 1:24
- Matthew 22:38
- Matthew 28:20
- Numbers 1:17-19
- Romans 7:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0560, H0565, H1296, H1696, H1697, H1881, H2706, H2708, H2710, H2941, H2942, H2951, H3027, H3982, H3983, H4406, H4662, H4687, H4929, H4931, H4941, H5057, H5713, H5749, H6213, H6310, H6346, H6490, H6673, H6680, H7101, H7218, H7227, H7262, H7761, H7970, H8269, G12630, G12910, G12960, G12970, G12990, G16900, G17780, G17810, G17850, G20030, G20040, G20080, G20360, G27530, G30560, G37260, G38520, G38530, G43670, G44830, G44870, G55060

(Go back to: Numbers 1:3; 1:19; 1:21; 1:22; 1:23; 1:25; 1:27; 1:29; 1:31; 1:33; 1:35; 1:37; 1:39; 1:41; 1:43; 1:44; 1:45; 1:47; 1:49; 1:50; 1:54; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 3:10; 3:15; 3:16; 3:22; 3:39; 3:40; 3:42; 3:51; 4:23; 4:29; 4:30; 4:32; 4:36; 4:37; 4:40; 4:41; 4:44; 4:45; 4:46; 4:48; 4:49; 5:2; 8:3; 8:20; 8:22; 9:5; 9:8; 11:24; 12:4; 12:5; 13:32; 14:18; 14:29; 15:22; 15:23; 15:31; 15:36; 15:39; 15:40; 16:29; 17:8; 17:9; 17:11; 19:2; 19:3; 20:8; 20:9; 20:11; 20:16; 20:20; 20:27; 21:23; 21:33; 22:36; 26:4; 26:7; 26:51; 26:54; 26:57; 26:62; 26:63; 26:64; 27:11; 27:16; 27:19; 27:22; 27:23; 28:2; 29:40; 30:1; 30:16; 31:7; 31:13; 31:14; 31:21; 31:31; 31:41; 31:47; 31:49; 32:25; 32:28; 34:2; 34:4; 34:9; 34:13; 34:29; 35:2; 36:2; 36:5; 36:6; 36:10; 36:13)

confess, confession

Definition:

To confess means to admit or assert that something is true. A “confession” is a statement or admission that something is true.

- The term “confess” can refer to boldly stating the truth about God. It can also refer to admitting that we have sinned.
- The Bible says that if people confess their sins to God, he will forgive them.
- James the apostle wrote in his letter that when believers confess their sins to each other, this brings spiritual healing.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Philippians that someday everyone will confess or declare that Jesus is Lord.
- Paul also said that if people confess that Jesus is Lord and believe that God raised him from the dead, they will be saved.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “confess” could include, “admit” or “testify” or “declare” or “acknowledge” or “affirm.”
- Different ways to translate “confession” could be, “declaration” or “testimony” or “statement about what we believe” or “admitting sin.”

(See also: [faith](#), [testimony](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:8-10
- 2 John 1:7-8
- James 5:16
- Leviticus 5:5-6
- Matthew 3:4-6
- Nehemiah 1:6-7
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 38:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3034, H8426, G18430, G36700, G36710

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:7](#))

confirm, confirmation, legal

Definition:

The term “confirm” refers to verifying that something is true or legally certifying that a transaction has occurred.

- When a king is “confirmed” it means that the decision to make him king has been agreed upon and supported by the people.
- To confirm what someone wrote means to verify that what was written is true.
- The “confirmation” of the gospel means teaching people about the good news of Jesus in such a way that it shows that it is true.
- To give an oath “as confirmation” means to solemnly state or swear that something is true or trustworthy.
- Ways to translate “confirm” could include, “state as true” or “prove to be trustworthy” or “agree with” or “assure” or “promise,” depending on the context.

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [trust](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:15-18
- 2 Corinthians 1:21
- 2 Kings 23:3
- Hebrews 6:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H1396, H3045, H3559, H4390, H4672, H5414, H5975, H6213, H6965, G09500, G09510, G33150, G49720

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:1](#))

consecrate, consecrated, consecration

Definition:

To consecrate means to dedicate something or someone to serve God. The person or object that is consecrated is considered holy and set apart for God.

- The meaning of this term is similar to “sanctify” or to “make holy,” but with the added meaning of formally setting apart someone for service to God.
- Things that were consecrated to God included animals to be sacrificed, the altar of burnt offering, and the tabernacle.
- People who were consecrated to God included the priests, the people of Israel, and the oldest male child.
- Sometimes the word “consecrate” has a meaning that is similar to “purify,” especially when it pertains to preparing people or things for God’s service so that they will be cleansed and acceptable to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “consecrate” could include, “set apart for God’s service” or “purify for service to God.”
- Also consider how the terms “holy” and “sanctify” are translated.

(See also: [holy](#), [pure](#), sanctify)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 4:3-5
- 2 Chronicles 13:8-9
- Ezekiel 44:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2763, H3027, H4390, H4394, H5144, H5145, H6942, H6944, G14570, G50480

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:13](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [8:17](#); [11:18](#); [16:37](#); [18:14](#))

consume, devour

Definition:

The term “consume” literally means to use up something. It has several figurative meanings.

- In the Bible, the word “consume” often refers to destroying things or people.
- A fire is said to consume things, which means it destroys them by burning them up.
- God is described as a “consuming fire,” which is a description of his anger against sin. His anger results in terrible punishment for sinners who do not repent.
- To consume food means to eat or drink something.
- The phrase, “consume the land” could be translated as “destroy the land.”

Translation Suggestions

- In the context of consuming the land or people, this term could be translated as “destroy.”
- When fire is referred to, “consume” could be translated as “burn up.”
- The burning bush that Moses saw “was not consumed” which could be translated as “did not get burned up” or “did not burn up.”
- When referring to eating, “consume” could be translated as “eat” or “devour.”
- If someone’s strength is “consumed,” it means his strength is “used up” or “gone.”
- The expression, “God is a consuming fire” could be translated as “God is like a fire that burns things up” or “God is angry against sin and will destroy sinners like a fire.”

(See also: [devour](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:38-40
- Deuteronomy 7:16
- Jeremiah 3:23-25
- Job 7:9
- Numbers 11:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0402, H1086, H1104, H1197, H2628, H3615, H3617, H3857, H4529, H5595, H8046, H8552, G03550, G26180, G26540, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:1; 25:11](#))

court, courtyard

Definition:

The terms “courtyard” and “court” refer to an enclosed area that is open to the sky and surrounded by walls. The term “court” also refers to a place where judges decide legal and criminal matters.

- The tabernacle was surrounded by one courtyard which was enclosed by walls made of thick, cloth curtains.
- The temple complex had three inner courtyards: one for the priests, one for Jewish men, and one for Jewish women.
- These inner courtyards were surrounded by a low stone wall that separated them from an outer courtyard where Gentiles were permitted to worship.
- The courtyard of a house was an open area in the middle of the house.
- The phrase “king’s court” can refer to his palace or to a place in his palace where he makes judgments.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” is a figurative way of referring to Yahweh’s dwelling place or to the place where people go to worship Yahweh.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “courtyard” could be translated as “enclosed space” or “walled-in land” or “temple grounds” or “temple enclosure.”
- Sometimes the term “temple” may need to be translated as “temple courtyards” or “temple complex” so that it is clear that the courtyards are being referred to, not the temple building.
- The expression, “courts of Yahweh” could be translated as “place where Yahweh lives” or “place where Yahweh is worshiped.”
- The term used for a king’s court could also be used to refer to Yahweh’s court.

(See also: [Gentile](#), [judge](#), [king](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 20:4-5
- Exodus 27:9
- Jeremiah 19:14-15
- Luke 22:55
- Matthew 26:69-70
- Numbers 3:26
- Psalms 65:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1508, H2691, H5835, H7339, H8651, G08330, G42590

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:26](#); [3:37](#); [4:26](#); [4:32](#))

covenant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “covenant” refers to a formal, binding agreement between two parties that one or both parties must fulfill.

- This agreement can be between individuals, between groups of people, or between God and people.
- When people make a covenant with each other, they promise that they will do something, and they must do it.
- Examples of human covenants include marriage covenants, business agreements, and treaties between countries.
- Throughout the Bible, God made several different covenants with his people.
- In some of the covenants, God promised to fulfill his part without conditions. For example, when God established his covenant with mankind promising to never destroy the earth again with a worldwide flood, this promise had no conditions for people to fulfill.
- In other covenants, God promised to fulfill his part only if the people obeyed him and fulfilled their part of the covenant.

The term “new covenant” refers to the commitment or agreement God made with his people through the sacrifice of his Son, Jesus.

- God’s “new covenant” was explained in the part of the Bible called the “New Testament.”
- This new covenant is in contrast to the “old” or “former” covenant that God had made with the Israelites in Old Testament times.
- The new covenant is better than the old one because it is based on the sacrifice of Jesus, which completely atoned for people’s sins forever. The sacrifices made under the old covenant did not do this.
- God writes the new covenant on the hearts those who become believers in Jesus. This causes them to want to obey God and to begin to live holy lives.
- The new covenant will be completely fulfilled in the end times when God establishes his reign on earth. Everything will once again be very good, as it was when God first created the world.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “binding agreement” or “formal commitment” or “pledge” or “contract.”
- Some languages may have different words for covenant depending on whether one party or both parties have made a promise they must keep. If the covenant is one-sided, it could be translated as “promise” or “pledge.”
- Make sure the translation of this term does not sound like people proposed the covenant. In all cases of covenants between God and people, it was God who initiated the covenant.
- The term “new covenant” could be translated as “new formal agreement” or “new pact” or “new contract.”
- The word “new” in these expressions has the meaning of “fresh” or “new kind of” or “another.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:12
- Genesis 17:7
- Genesis 31:44
- Exodus 34:10-11
- Joshua 24:24-26

- 2 Samuel 23:5
- 2 Kings 18:11-12
- Mark 14:24
- Luke 1:73
- Luke 22:20
- Acts 7:8
- 1 Corinthians 11:25-26
- 2 Corinthians 3:6
- Galatians 3:17-18
- Hebrews 12:24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:9** Then God made a **covenant** with Abram. A **covenant** is an agreement between two parties.
- **5:4** "I will make Ishmael a great nation, too, but my **covenant** will be with Isaac."
- **6:4** After a long time, Abraham died and all of the promises that God had made to him in the **covenant** were passed on to Isaac.
- **7:10** "The **covenant** promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to Jacob."
- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, "If you will obey my voice and keep my **covenant**, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a holy nation."
- **13:4** Then God gave them the **covenant** and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the **covenant** that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai.
- **21:5** Through the prophet Jeremiah, God promised that he would make a **New Covenant**, but not like the covenant God made with Israel at Sinai. In the **New Covenant**, God would write his law on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins. The Messiah would start the **New Covenant**.
- **21:14** Through the Messiah's death and resurrection, God would accomplish his plan to save sinners and start the **New Covenant**.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the **New Covenant** that is poured out for the forgiveness of sins. Do this to remember me every time you drink it."
- **48:11** But God has now made a **New Covenant** that is available to everyone. Because of this **New Covenant**, anyone from any people group can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1285, H2319, H3772, G08020, G12420, G49340

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:33](#); [14:44](#); [18:19](#); [25:12](#); [25:13](#))

covenant faithfulness, covenant loyalty, covenant love

Definition:

In biblical times, the term translated as “covenant faithfulness” was used to describe the kind of faithfulness, loyalty, kindness, and love that was both expected and demonstrated between people who were closely related to one another, either by marriage or by blood. This same term is used often in the Bible to describe the way God relates to his people, especially his commitment to fulfill the promises that he made to them.

- The way this term is translated can depend on how each of the individual terms “covenant” and “faithfulness” are translated.
- Other ways to translate this term might include: “faithful love;” “loyal, committed love;” or “loving dependability.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [faithful](#), [grace](#), [Israel](#), [people of God](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Ezra 3:11
- Numbers 14:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2617

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:18](#); [14:19](#))

cow, bull, calf, cattle, heifer, ox

Definition:

The terms “cow,” “bull,” “heifer,” “ox,” and “cattle” all refer to a kind of large, four-legged bovine animal that eats grass.

- The female of this kind of animal is called a “cow,” the male is a “bull,” and their offspring is a “calf.”
- In the Bible, cattle were among the “clean” animals that the people could eat and use for sacrifice. They were primarily raised for their meat and milk.

A “heifer” is an adult female cow that has not yet given birth to a calf.

An “ox” is a type of cattle that is specifically trained to do agricultural work. The plural of this term is “oxen.” Usually oxen are male and have been castrated.

- Throughout the Bible, oxen were depicted as animals tied together by a yoke to pull a cart or a plow.
- Having oxen work together under a yoke was such a common occurrence in the Bible that the phrase to “be under a yoke” became a metaphor for hard work and labor.
- A bull is also a male type of cattle, but it has not been castrated and has not been trained as a work animal.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: yoke)

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:9-11
- Exodus 24:5-6
- Numbers 19:1-2
- Deuteronomy 21:3-4
- 1 Samuel 1:24-25
- 1 Samuel 15:3
- 1 Samuel 16:2-3
- 1 Kings 1:9
- 2 Chronicles 11:15
- 2 Chronicles 15:10-11
- Matthew 22:4
- Luke 13:15
- Luke 14:5
- Hebrews 9:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0047, H0441, H0504, H0929, H1165, H1241, H4399, H4735, H4806, H5695, H5697, H6499, H6510, H6629, H7214, H7716, H7794, H7921, H8377, H8450, G10160, G11510, G23530, G29340, G34470, G34480, G41650, G50220

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:3; 7:15; 7:17; 7:21; 7:23; 7:27; 7:29; 7:33; 7:35; 7:39; 7:41; 7:45; 7:47; 7:51; 7:53; 7:57; 7:59; 7:63; 7:65; 7:69; 7:71; 7:75; 7:77; 7:81; 7:83; 7:87; 7:88; 8:8; 15:8; 15:24; 22:40; 23:1; 23:2; 23:4; 23:14; 23:29; 23:30; 28:11; 28:19; 28:27; 29:2; 29:8; 29:13; 29:14; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 29:36](#))

curse, cursed, cursing

Definition:

The term “curse” means to cause negative things to happen to the person or thing that is being cursed.

- A curse can be a statement that harm will happen to someone or something.
- To curse someone can also be an expression of desire that bad things will happen to them.
- It can also refer to the punishment or other negative things that someone causes to happen to someone.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term could be translated as “cause bad things to happen to” or “declare that something bad will happen to” or “swear to cause evil things to happen to.”
- In the context of God sending curses on his disobedient people, it could be translated as “punish by allowing bad things to happen.”
- The term “cursed” when used to describe people could be translated as “(this person) will experience much trouble.”
- The phrase “cursed be” could be translated as “May (this person) experience great difficulties.”
- The phrase, “Cursed is the ground” could be translated as “The soil will not be very fertile.”
- However, if the target language has the phrase “cursed be” and it has the same meaning, then it is good to keep the same phrase.

(See also: [bless](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 14:24-26
- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Galatians 3:10
- Galatians 3:14
- Genesis 3:14
- Genesis 3:17
- James 3:10
- Numbers 22:6
- Psalms 109:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** God said to the snake, “You are **cursed!**”
- **2:11** “Now the ground is **cursed**, and you will need to work hard to grow food.”
- **4:4** “I will bless those who bless you and **curse** those who **curse** you.”
- **39:7** Then Peter vowed, saying, “May God **curse** me if I know this man!”
- **50:16** Because Adam and Eve disobeyed God and brought sin into this world, God **cursed** it and decided to destroy it.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H0779, H1288, H2763, H2764, H3994, H5344, H6895, H7043, H7045, H7621, H8381, G03310, G03320, G06850, G19440, G25510, G26520, G26530, G26710, G26720, G60350

(Go back to: [Numbers 22 General Notes](#); [22:6](#); [22:12](#); [Notes](#); [23:7](#); [Notes](#); [24:9](#))

curtain

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “curtain” refers to a very thick, heavy piece of material used in the making of the tabernacle and the temple.

- The tabernacle was built using four layers of curtains for the top and sides. These curtain coverings were made of cloth or animal skins.
- Cloth curtains were also used to form a wall surrounding the tabernacle courtyard. These curtains were made out of “linen” which was a kind of cloth made out of the flax plant.
- In both the tabernacle and temple building, a thick cloth curtain hung between the holy place and the most holy place. It was this curtain that was miraculously torn into two parts when Jesus died.

Translation Suggestions:

- Since modern-day curtains are very different from the curtains used in the Bible, it may be more clear to use a different word or to add words that describe the curtains.
- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include, “curtain covering” or “covering” or “piece of thick cloth” or “animal skin covering” or “hanging piece of cloth.”

(See also: holy place, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Hebrews 10:20
- Leviticus 4:17
- Luke 23:45
- Matthew 27:51
- Numbers 4:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1852, H3407, H4539, H6532, H7050, G26650

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:25](#); [3:26](#); [3:31](#); [4:5](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [18:7](#))

cut off, cut down

Definition:

The expression “be cut off” is an expression that means to be excluded, banished or isolated from the main group. It can also refer to being killed as an act of divine judgment for sin.

- In the Old Testament, disobeying God’s commands resulted in being cut off, or separated, from God’s people and from his presence.
- God also said he would “cut off” or destroy the non-Israelite nations, because they did not worship or obey him and were enemies of Israel.
- The expression “cut off” is also used to refer to God causing a river to stop flowing.

Translation Suggestions:

- The expression “be cut off” could be translated as “be banished” or “be sent away” or “be separated from” or “be killed” or “be destroyed.”
- Depending on the context, to “cut off” could be translated as to “destroy” or to “send away” or to “separate from” or to “destroy.”
- In the context of flowing waters being cut off, this could be translated as “were stopped” or “were caused to stop flowing” or “were divided.”
- The literal meaning of cutting something with a knife should be distinguished from the figurative uses of this term.

Bible References:

- Genesis 17:14
- Judges 21:6
- Proverbs 23:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1214, H1219, H1438, H1494, H1504, H1629, H1820, H2686, H3582, H3772, H5243, H5352, H6789, H7088, H7096, H7112, H7113, G06090, G08510, G15810

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:18](#); [9:13](#); [11:33](#); [13:23](#); [13:24](#); [15:30](#); [15:31](#); [19:13](#); [19:20](#))

declare, proclaim, announce

Definition:

The terms “declare” and “declaration” refer to making a formal or public statement, often to emphasize something. Other terms with similar meaning include “proclaim,” “proclamation,” “announce,” and “announcement.”

- A “declaration” not only emphasizes the importance of what is being proclaimed, but it also calls attention to the one making the declaration.
- For example, in the Old Testament, a message from God is often preceded by “the declaration of Yahweh” or “this is what Yahweh declares.” This expression emphasizes that it is Yahweh himself who is saying this. The fact that the message comes from Yahweh shows how important that message is.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “declare” could also be translated as “proclaim” or “publicly state” or “strongly say” or “emphatically state.”
- The term “declaration” could also be translated as “statement” or “proclamation.”
- The phrase “this is Yahweh’s declaration” could be translated as “this is what Yahweh declares” or “this is what Yahweh says.”

(See also: [preach](#), decree)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 16:24
- 1 Corinthians 15:31-32
- 1 Samuel 24:17-18
- Amos 2:16
- Ezekiel 5:11-12
- Matthew 7:21-23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0262, H0559, H0816, H0874, H1696, H3045, H4853, H5002, H5042, H5046, H5608, H6567, H7121, H7561, H7878, H8085, G03120, G05180, G06690, G12290, G13440, G15550, G17180, G18340, G20970, G25110, G26050, G26070, G31400, G36700, G37240, G38220, G38700, G39550, G42960

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:3](#); [11:34](#); [12:5](#); [13:16](#); [21:3](#); [25:2](#); [32:38](#); [32:41](#); [32:42](#))

dedicate, dedication, established, devoted

Definition:

To dedicate is to set apart or commit something for a special purpose or function.

- David dedicated his gold and silver to the Lord.
- Often the word “dedication” refers to a formal event or ceremony to set apart something for a special purpose.
- The dedication of the altar included offering a sacrifice to God.
- Nehemiah led the Israelites in a dedication of Jerusalem’s repaired walls with a renewed promise to serve only Yahweh and to take care of his city. This event included giving thanks to God with musical instruments and singing.
- The term “dedicate” could also be translated as “specially assign a special purpose” or “commit something to be used for a specific use” or “commit someone to do a special task.”

(See also: commit)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 15:11-12
- 1 Corinthians 6:9-11
- 1 Kings 7:51
- 1 Timothy 4:5
- 2 Chronicles 2:4-5
- John 17:18-19
- Luke 2:22-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2596, H2597, H2598, H2764, H4394, H6942, H6944, G14560, G14570

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:10](#); [7:84](#); [7:88](#))

delight

Definition:

The term “delight” means great pleasure or great joy.

- To “delight in” something means to “to take pleasure in” or “take joy in” or “be happy about” it. If a person “delights in” something, it means that he enjoys it very much.
- When something is very agreeable or pleasing it is called “delightful.”
- The expression “my delight is in the law of Yahweh” could be translated as “the law of Yahweh gives me great joy” or “I love to obey the laws of Yahweh” or “I am happy when I obey Yahweh’s commands.”
- The phrases “take no delight in” and “have no delight in” could be translated as “not at all pleased by” or “not happy about.”
- The phrase “delight himself in” means “he enjoys doing” something or “he is very happy about” something or someone.
- The term “delights” refers to things that a person enjoys. This could be translated as “pleasures” or “things that give joy.”
- An expression such as “I delight to do your will” could also be translated as “I enjoy doing your will” or “I am very happy when I obey you.”

Bible References:

- Proverbs 8:30
- Psalm 1:2
- Psalms 119:69-70
- Song of Songs 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1523, H2530, H2531, H2532, H2654, H2655, H2656, H2836, H4574, H5276, H5727, H5730, H6026, H6027, H7306, H7381, H7521, H7522, H8057, H8173, H8191, H8588, H8597

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:8](#))

deliver, hand over, turn over, release, rescue

Definition:

To “deliver” someone means to rescue that person. The term “deliverer” refers to someone who rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers. The term “deliverance” refers to what happens when someone rescues or frees people from slavery, oppression, or other dangers.

- In the Old Testament, God appointed deliverers to protect the Israelites by leading them in battle against other people groups who came to attack them.
- These deliverers were also called “judges” and the Old Testament book of Judges records the time in history when these judges were governing Israel.
- God is also called a “deliverer.” Throughout the history of Israel, he delivered or rescued his people from their enemies.
- The term “deliver over to” or “deliver up to” has a very different meaning of handing or turning someone over to an enemy, such as when Judas delivered Jesus over to the Jewish leaders.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of helping people escape from their enemies, the term “deliver” can be translated as “rescue” or “liberate” or “save.”
- When it means to deliver someone over to the enemy, “deliver over” can be translated as “betray to” or “hand over” or “give over.”
- The word “deliverer” can also be translated as “rescuer” or “liberator.”
- When the term “deliverer” refers to the judges who led Israel, it could also be translated as “governor” or “judge” or “leader.”

(See also: [judge](#), save)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 1:10
- Acts 7:35
- Galatians 1:4
- Judges 10:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:3** Then God provided a **deliverer** who rescued them from their enemies and brought peace to the land.
- **16:16** They (Israel) finally asked God for help again, and God sent them another **deliverer**.
- **16:17** Over many years, God sent many **deliverers** who saved the Israelites from their enemies.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H2020, H2502, H3205, H3444, H3467, H4042, H4422, H4672, H5337, H5414, H5462, H6299, H6403, H6413, H6475, H6561, H7725, H7804, H8199, G03250, G05250, G06290, G10800, G13250, G15600, G16590, G18070, G19290, G26730, G30860, G38600, G45060, G49910, G50880, G54830

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:9](#); [35:25](#))

descend, descendant

Definition:

A “descendant” is someone who is a direct blood relative of someone else further back in history.

- For example, Abraham was a descendant of Noah.
- A person’s descendants are his children, grandchildren, great-great-grandchildren, and so on. Jacob’s descendants were the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The phrase “descended from” is another way of saying “a descendant of” as in “Abraham was descended from Noah.” This could also be translated as “from the family line of.”

(See also: Abraham, [ancestor](#), [Jacob](#), Noah, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:4-5
- Acts 13:23
- Deuteronomy 2:20-22
- Genesis 10:1
- Genesis 28:12-13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:9** “The woman’s **descendant** will crush your head, and you will wound his heel.”
- **4:9** “I give the land of Canaan to your **descendants**.”
- **5:10** “Your **descendants** will be more than the stars in the sky.”
- **17:7** “Someone from your family will always rule as king over Israel, and the Messiah will be one of your **descendants!**”
- **18:13** The kings of Judah were **descendants** of David.
- **21:4** God promised King David that the Messiah would be one of David’s own **descendants**.
- **48:13** God promised David that the Messiah would be one of his **descendants**. Jesus, the Messiah, was that special **descendant** of David.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0319, H1004, H1121, H1323, H1755, H2232, H2233, H3205, H3211, H3318, H3409, H4294, H5220, H6849, H7611, H8435, G10740, G10850, G46900

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:40](#))

desert, wilderness

Definition:

A desert, or wilderness, is a dry, barren place where very few plants and trees can grow.

- A desert is a land area with a dry climate and few plants or animals.
- Because of the harsh conditions, very few people can live in the desert, so it is also referred to as “wilderness.”
- “Wilderness” conveys the meaning of being remote, desolate and isolated from people.
- This word can also be translated as “deserted place” or “remote place” or “uninhabited place.”

Bible References:

- Acts 13:16-18
- Acts 21:38
- Exodus 4:27-28
- Genesis 37:21-22
- John 3:14
- Luke 1:80
- Luke 9:12-14
- Mark 1:3
- Matthew 4:1
- Matthew 11:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0776, H2723, H3293, H3452, H4057, H6160, H6723, H6728, H6921, H8047, H8414, G20470, G20480

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1](#); [1:19](#); [3:4](#); [3:14](#); [9:1](#); [9:5](#); [10:12](#); [10:31](#); [12:16](#); [14:2](#); [14:16](#); [14:29](#); [14:32](#); [14:33](#); [14:35](#); [15:32](#); [16:13](#); [21:5](#); [21:11](#); [21:13](#); [26:64](#); [26:65](#); [27:3](#); [27:14](#); [32:13](#); [32:15](#); [33:8](#); [33:11](#); [33:15](#); [33:36](#))

destroy, destruction, annihilate

Definition:

The term “destroy” means to completely make an end to something, so that it no longer exists.

- The term “destroyer” means “a person who destroys.”
- This term is often used in the Old Testament as a general reference to anyone who destroys other people, such as an invading army.
- When God sent the angel to kill all the firstborn males in Egypt, that angel was referred to as “the destroyer of the firstborn.” This could be translated as “the one (or angel) who killed the firstborn males.”
- In the book of Revelation about the end times, Satan or some other evil spirit is called “the Destroyer.” He is the “one who destroys” because his purpose is to destroy and ruin everything God created.

(See also: [angel](#), [Egypt](#), [firstborn](#), [Passover](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 12:23
- Hebrews 11:28
- Jeremiah 6:26
- Judges 16:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0622, H0398, H1104, H1197, H1820, H1826, H1942, H2000, H2015, H2026, H2040, H2254, H2255, H2717, H2718, H2763, H2764, H3238, H3341, H3381, H3423, H3582, H3615, H3617, H3772, H3807, H4191, H4229, H4591, H4658, H4889, H5218, H5221, H5307, H5362, H5420, H5422, H5428, H5595, H5642, H6365, H6789, H6979, H7665, H7667, H7703, H7722, H7760, H7843, H7921, H8045, H8074, H8077, H8316, H8552, G03550, G03960, G06220, G08530, G13110, G18420, G20490, G25060, G25070, G26470, G26730, G27040, G30890, G36450, G41990, G53510, G53560

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:33](#); [21:2](#); [21:3](#); [24:19](#); [33:52](#))

devour

Definition:

The term “devour” means to eat or consume in an aggressive manner.

- Using this word in a figurative sense, Paul warned believers to not devour one another, meaning to not attack or destroy each other with words or actions (Galatians 5:15).
- Also in a figurative sense, the term “devour” is often used with a meaning of “completely destroy” as when talking about nations devouring each other or a fire devouring buildings and people.
- This term could also be translated as “completely consume” or “totally destroy.”

(See also: [consume](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:8
- Amos 1:10
- Exodus 24:17
- Ezekiel 16:20
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 23:13-15
- Psalms 21:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H0399, H0400, H0402, H1104, H1105, H3216, H3615, H3857, H3898, H7462, H7602, G20680, G26660, G27190, G53150

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:3; 6:4; 9:11; 11:1; 11:4; 11:5; 11:13; 11:18; 11:19; 11:21; 12:12; 13:32; 16:35; 18:10; 18:11; 18:13; 18:31; 21:28; 23:24; 24:8; 25:2; 28:17](#))

die, dead, deadly, death

Definition:

The term “death” refers to being physically dead instead of alive.

1. Physical death

- To “die” means to stop living. Death is the end of physical life.
- The expression “put to death” refers to killing or murdering someone, especially when a king or other ruler gives an order for someone to be killed.

2. Eternal death

- Eternal death is the separation of a person from God.
- This is the kind of death that happened to Adam when he sinned and disobeyed God. His relationship with God was broken. He became ashamed and tried to hide from God.
- This same kind of death happens to every person, because we sin. But God gives us eternal life when we have faith in Jesus Christ.

Translation Suggestions:

- To translate this term, it is best to use the everyday, natural word or expression in the target language that refers to death.
- In some languages, to “die” may be expressed as to “not live.” The term “dead” may be translated as “not alive” or “not having any life” or “not living.”
- Many languages use figurative expressions to describe death, such as to “pass away” in English. However, in the Bible it is best to use the most direct term for death that is used in everyday language.
- In the Bible, eternal life and eternal death are often compared to physical life and physical death. It is important in a translation to use the same word or phrase for both physical death and eternal death.
- In some languages it may be more clear to say “eternal death” when the context requires that meaning. Some translators may also feel it is best to say “physical death” in contexts where it is being contrasted to spiritual death.
- The expression “the dead” is a nominal adjective that refers to people who have died. Some languages will translate this as “dead people” or “people who have died.” (See: nominal adjective)
- The expression “put to death” could also be translated as “kill” or “murder” or “execute.”

(See also: believe, [faith](#), [life](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 15:21
- 1 Thessalonians 4:17
- Acts 10:42
- Acts 14:19
- Colossians 2:15
- Colossians 2:20
- Genesis 2:15-17
- Genesis 34:27
- Matthew 16:28
- Romans 5:10

- Romans 5:12
- Romans 6:10

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:11** God told Adam that he could eat from any tree in the garden except from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If he ate from this tree, he would **die**.
- **2:11** "Then you will **die**, and your body will return to dirt."
- **7:10** Then Isaac **died**, and Jacob and Esau buried him.
- **37:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the Life. Whoever believes in me will live, even though he **dies**. Everyone who believes in me will never **die**."
- **40:8** Through his **death**, Jesus opened a way for people to come to God.
- **43:7** "Although Jesus **died**, God raised him from the dead."
- **48:2** Because they sinned, everyone on earth gets sick and everyone **dies**.
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, evil, pain, or **death**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0006, H1478, H1826, H1934, H2491, H4191, H4192, H4193, H4194, H4463, H5038, H5315, H6297, H6757, H7496, H7523, H8045, H8546, H8552, G03360, G03370, G05200, G05990, G06150, G06220, G16340, G19350, G20790, G22530, G22860, G22870, G22880, G22890, G23480, G28370, G29660, G34980, G34990, G35000, G44300, G48800, G48810, G50530, G50540

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:4](#); [4:15](#); [4:20](#); [11:15](#); [14:15](#); [14:37](#); [15:36](#); [16:13](#); [16:48](#); [16:49](#); [18:22](#); [20:1](#); [20:4](#); [20:26](#); [20:28](#); [21:5](#); [21:6](#); [22:29](#); [22:33](#); [25:5](#); [25:9](#); [26:19](#); [26:61](#); [31:8](#); [31:17](#); [31:19](#); [33:38](#); [35:16](#); [35:17](#); [35:18](#); [35:20](#); [35:21](#); [35:23](#); [35:30](#); [35:31](#))

dominion

Definition:

The term “dominion” refers to power, control, or authority over people, animals, or land.

- Jesus Christ is said to have dominion over all the earth, as prophet, priest, and king.
- Satan’s dominion has been defeated forever by Jesus Christ’s death on the cross.
- At creation, God said that man is to have dominion over fish, birds, and all creatures on the earth.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “authority” or “power” or “control.”
- The phrase “have dominion over” could be translated as “rule over” or “manage.”

(See also: authority, power)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:10-11
- Colossians 1:13
- Jude 1:25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1166, H4474, H4475, H4896, H4910, H4915, H7287, H7300, H7980, H7985, G26340, G29040, G29610, G29630

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:19](#))

donkey, mule

Definition:

A donkey is a four-legged work animal, similar to a horse, but smaller and with longer ears.

- A mule is the sterile offspring of a male donkey and a female horse.
- Mules are very strong animals and so they are valuable work animals.
- Both donkeys and mules are used for carrying burdens and people when traveling.
- In Bible times, kings would ride a donkey in times of peace, rather than a horse, which was used for times of war.
- Jesus rode into Jerusalem on a young donkey a week before he was crucified there.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:32-34
- 1 Samuel 9:4
- 2 Kings 4:21-22
- Deuteronomy 5:12-14
- Luke 13:15
- Matthew 21:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0860, H2543, H3222, H5895, H6167, H6501, H6505, H6506, G36780, G36880, G52680

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:15](#); [31:28](#); [31:30](#); [31:34](#); [31:39](#); [31:45](#))

drink offering

Definition:

A drink offering was a sacrifice to God that involved pouring wine on an altar. It was often offered together with a burnt offering and a grain offering.

- Paul refers to his life as being poured out like a drink offering. This means that he was totally dedicated to serving God and telling people about Jesus, even though he knew he would suffer and probably be killed because of that.
- Jesus' death on the cross was the ultimate drink offering, as his blood was poured out on the cross for our sins.

Translation Suggestions:

- Another way to translate this term could be "offering of grape wine."
- When Paul says he is being "poured out like an offering" this could also be translated as "I am completely committed to teaching God's message to people, just like an offering of wine is poured out completely on the altar."

(See also: [burnt offering](#), [grain offering](#))

Bible References:

- Exodus 25:29
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Genesis 35:14
- Jeremiah 7:16-18
- Numbers 5:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5257, H5261, H5262

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:15](#); [15:24](#); [28:7](#); [28:9](#); [28:10](#); [28:14](#); [28:15](#); [28:24](#); [28:31](#); [29:6](#); [29:11](#); [29:16](#); [29:18](#); [29:19](#); [29:21](#); [29:22](#); [29:24](#); [29:25](#); [29:27](#); [29:28](#); [29:30](#); [29:31](#); [29:33](#); [29:34](#); [29:37](#); [29:38](#))

earth, land

Definition:

The term “earth” refers to the world on which human beings and other living things live. In the Bible, this term is sometimes translated as “land” when used in a general way to refer to the ground or the soil, or when used in a specific way to refer to a particular geographical area, usually a country or nation.

- In the Bible, the term “earth” is often paired with the term “heaven” as a way of indicating the abode of humankind on the earth in contrast with the abode of God in heaven.
- This term is usually translated “land” when paired with the name of people group to denote the territory belonging to those people, such as “the land of Canaan.”
- The term “earthly” is sometimes used to refer to things that are physical and/or visible in contrast to things that are non-physical and/or invisible.
- This term can be used figuratively to refer to the people who live on the earth or what the earth contains, such as in “let the earth be glad” and “he will judge the earth.”

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated by the word or phrase that the local language or nearby national languages use to refer to the planet earth on which we live.
- Depending on the context, “earth” could also be translated as “world” or “land” or “dirt” or “soil.”
- When used figuratively, “earth” could be translated as “people on the earth” or “people living on earth” or “everything on earth.”
- Ways to translate “earthly” could include “physical” or “things of this earth” or “visible.”

(See also: world, heaven)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 1:38-40
- 2 Chronicles 2:11-12
- Daniel 4:35
- Luke 12:51
- Matthew 6:10
- Matthew 11:25
- Zechariah 6:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0127, H0772, H0776, H0778, H2789, H3007, H3335, H6083, H7494, G10930, G19190, G27090, G28860, G36250, G45780, G55170

(Go back to: Numbers 9:14; 10:30; 11:31; 13:2; 13:16; 13:17; 13:18; 13:19; 13:20; 13:21; 13:25; 13:26; 13:27; 13:32; 14:3; 14:6; 14:7; 14:8; 14:9; 14:14; 14:16; 14:21; 14:23; 14:24; 14:30; 14:31; 14:34; 14:36; 14:37; 14:38; 15:2; 15:18; 15:19; 16:14; 16:32; 16:33; 16:34; 20:12; 20:23; 20:24; 21:4; 21:24; 21:26; 21:34; 21:35; 22:5; 22:6; 22:11; 22:13; 26:10; 26:53; 26:55; 27:12; 32:1; 32:4; 32:5; 32:7; 32:8; 32:9; 32:17; 32:22; 32:29; 32:32; 32:33; 33:37; 33:51; 33:52; 33:53; 33:54; 33:55; 34:2; 34:12; 34:13; 34:17; 34:18; 35:10; 35:28; 35:33; 35:34; 36:2)

Egypt, Egyptian

Facts:

Egypt is a country in the northeast part of Africa, to the southwest of the land of Canaan. An Egyptian is a person who is from the country of Egypt.

- In ancient times, Egypt was a powerful and wealthy country.
- Ancient Egypt was divided into two parts, Lower Egypt (northern part where the Nile River flowed downward into the sea) and Upper Egypt (southern part). In the Old Testament, these parts are referred to as “Egypt” and “Pathros” in the original language text.
- Several times when there was little food in Canaan, Israel’s patriarchs traveled to Egypt to buy food for their families.
- For several hundred years, the Israelites were slaves in Egypt.
- Joseph and Mary went down to Egypt with the young child Jesus, to escape from Herod the Great.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Herod the Great, Joseph (NT), Nile River, patriarchs)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:7-9
- Acts 7:10
- Exodus 3:7
- Genesis 41:29
- Genesis 41:57
- Matthew 2:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:4** The slave traders took Joseph to **Egypt**. **Egypt** was a large, powerful country located along the Nile River.
- **8:8** Pharaoh was so impressed with Joseph that he appointed him to be the second most powerful man in all of **Egypt**!
- **8:11** So Jacob sent his older sons to *_Egypt_* to buy food.
- **8:14** Even though Jacob was an old man, he moved to **Egypt** with all of his family, and they all lived there.
- **9:1** After Joseph died, all of his relatives stayed in **Egypt**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4713, H4714, G01240, G01250

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1; 3:13; 8:17; 9:1; 11:5; 11:18; 11:20; 13:22; 14:2; 14:3; 14:4; 14:19; 14:22; 15:41; 20:5; 20:15; 20:16; 21:5; 22:5; 22:11; 23:22; 24:8; 26:4; 26:59; 32:11; 33:1; 33:38; 34:5](#))

elder, older, old

Definition:

The term “elder” or “older” refers to people (in the Bible, usually men) who have grown old enough to become mature adults and leaders within a community. For example, elders might have gray hair, have adult children, or perhaps even have grandchildren or great-grandchildren.

- The term “elder” came from the fact that elders were originally older men who, because of their age and experience, had greater wisdom.
- In the Old Testament, the elders helped lead the Israelites in matters of justice and the Law of Moses.
- In the New Testament, Jewish “elders” continued to be leaders in their communities and also were judges for the people.
- In the early Christian churches, Christian “elders” gave spiritual leadership to the local assemblies of believers. Elders in these churches sometimes included young men who were spiritually mature.
- This term could be translated as “older men” or “spiritually mature men leading the church.”

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:1-3
- 1 Timothy 3:1-3
- 1 Timothy 4:14
- Acts 5:19-21
- Acts 14:23
- Mark 11:28
- Matthew 21:23-24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1419, H2205, H7868, G10870, G31870, G42440, G42450, G48500

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:16](#); [11:25](#); [16:25](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#))

Eleazar

Facts:

Eleazar was the name of several men in the Bible.

Eleazar was the third son of Moses' brother Aaron. After Aaron died, Eleazar became the high priest in Israel.

Eleazar was also the name of one of David's "mighty men."

Another Eleazar was one of Jesus' ancestors.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aaron](#), high priest, David, [mighty](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 24:3
- Judges 20:27-28
- Numbers 26:1-2
- Numbers 34:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0499, G16480

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:2; 3:4; 3:32; 4:16; 16:37; 16:39; 19:3; 19:4; 20:25; 20:26; 20:28; 25:7; 25:11; 26:1; 26:3; 26:60; 26:63; 27:2; 27:19; 27:21; 27:22; 31:6; 31:12; 31:13; 31:21; 31:26; 31:29; 31:31; 31:41; 31:51; 31:54; 32:2; 32:28; 34:17](#))

Enoch

Facts:

Enoch was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One man named Enoch was descended from Seth. He was the great grandfather of Noah.
- This Enoch had a close relationship with God and when he was 365 years old, God took him to heaven while he was still alive.
- A different man named Enoch was a son of Cain.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Cain](#), [Seth](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:3
- Genesis 5:18-20
- Genesis 5:24
- Jude 1:14
- Luke 3:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2585, G18020

([Go back to: Numbers 26:5](#))

Ephraim, Ephraimite

Facts:

Ephraim was the younger son of Joseph. His descendants, the Ephraimites, formed one of the tribes of Israel.

- The name Ephraim sounds like the Hebrew word meaning “to make fruitful.”
- The tribe of Ephraim was one of the ten tribes located in the northern part of Israel.
- Sometimes the name Ephraim is used in the Bible to refer to the whole northern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel).

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Joseph](#), Manasseh, kingdom of Israel, twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:66-69
- 2 Chronicles 13:4-5
- Ezekiel 37:16
- Genesis 41:52
- Genesis 48:1-2
- John 11:54

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0669, H0673, G21870

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:32](#); [1:33](#); [2:18](#); [2:24](#); [7:48](#); [10:22](#); [13:8](#); [26:35](#); [26:37](#); [34:24](#))

evil, wicked, unpleasant

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “evil” can refer either to the concept of moral wickedness or emotional unpleasantness. The context will usually make it clear which meaning is intended in the specific instance of the term.

- While “evil” may describe a person’s character, “wicked” may refer more to a person’s behavior. However, both terms are very similar in meaning.
- The term “wickedness” refers to the state of being that exists when people do wicked things.
- The results of evil are clearly shown in how people mistreat others by killing, stealing, slandering and being cruel and unkind.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the terms “evil” and “wicked” can be translated as “bad” or “sinful” or “immoral.”
- Other ways to translate these could include “not good” or “not righteous” or “not moral.”
- Make sure the words or phrases that are used to translate these terms fit the context that is natural in the target language.

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), [good](#), righteous, demon)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 24:11
- 1 Timothy 6:10
- 3 John 1:10
- Genesis 2:17
- Genesis 6:5-6
- Job 1:1
- Job 8:20
- Judges 9:57
- Luke 6:22-23
- Matthew 7:11-12
- Proverbs 3:7
- Psalms 22:16-17

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand good and **evil** like he does.”
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were living in the world. They had become very **wicked** and violent.
- **3:2** But Noah found favor with God. He was a righteous man living among **wicked** people.
- **4:2** God saw that if they all kept working together to do **evil**, they could do many more sinful things.
- **8:12** “You tried to do **evil** when you sold me as a slave, but God used the **evil** for good!”
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false gods and did many **evil** things.
- **17:1** But then he (Saul) became a **wicked** man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **18:11** In the new kingdom of Israel, all the kings were **evil**.
- **29:8** The king was so angry that he threw the **wicked** servant into prison until he could pay back all of his debt.

- **45:2** They said, "We heard him (Stephen) speak **evil** things about Moses and God!"
- **50:17** He (Jesus) will wipe away every tear and there will be no more suffering, sadness, crying, **evil**, pain, or death.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0605, H1100, H1681, H1942, H2154, H2162, H2254, H2617, H3399, H3415, H4209, H4849, H5753, H5766, H5767, H5999, H6001, H6090, H7451, H7455, H7489, H7561, H7562, H7563, H7564, G00920, G01130, G04590, G09320, G09870, G09880, G14260, G25490, G25510, G25540, G25550, G25560, G25570, G25590, G25600, G26350, G26360, G41510, G41890, G41900, G41910, G53370

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:1](#); [11:15](#); [13:19](#); [14:27](#); [14:35](#); [14:37](#); [20:5](#); [24:13](#); [32:13](#); [35:23](#))

ewe, ram, sheep, sheepfold, sheepshearers, sheepskins

Definition:

A “sheep” is a medium-sized animal with four legs that has wool all over its body. A male sheep is called a “ram.” A female sheep is called a “ewe.” The plural of “sheep” is also “sheep.”

- A baby sheep is called a “lamb.”
- The Israelites often used sheep for sacrifices, especially male sheep and young sheep.
- People eat meat from sheep and use their wool to make clothing and other things.
- Sheep are very trusting, weak, and timid. They are easily influenced to wander away. They need a shepherd to lead them, protect them, and provide them with food, water, and shelter.
- In the Bible, people are compared to sheep who have God as their shepherd.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), [lamb](#), [sacrifice](#), [shepherd](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 8:32
- Genesis 30:32
- John 2:14
- Luke 15:5
- Mark 6:34
- Matthew 9:36
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 12:12
- Matthew 25:33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while Moses was taking care of his **sheep**, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **17:2** David was a shepherd from the town of Bethlehem. At different times while he was watching his father’s **sheep**, David had killed both a lion and a bear that had attacked the **sheep**.
- **30:3** To Jesus, these people were like **sheep** without a shepherd.
- **38:8** Jesus said, “All of you will all abandon me tonight. It is written, ‘I will strike the shepherd and all the **sheep** will be scattered.’”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0352, H1494, H1798, H2169, H3104, H3532, H3535, H3733, H3775, H5739, H5763, H6260, H6629, H6792, H7353, H7462, H7716, G41650, G42620, G42630

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:8; 7:15; 7:17; 7:21; 7:23; 7:27; 7:29; 7:33; 7:35; 7:39; 7:41; 7:45; 7:47; 7:51; 7:53; 7:57; 7:59; 7:63; 7:65; 7:69; 7:71; 7:75; 7:77; 7:81; 7:83; 7:87; 7:88; 15:3; 23:1; 23:29; 28:27; 29:2; 29:8; 29:13; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 29:36; 31:28; 31:30; 31:36; 31:37; 31:43](#))

exalt, exalted, exaltation

Definition:

To exalt is to highly praise and honor someone. It can also mean to put someone in a high position.

- In the Bible, the term “exalt” is most often used for exalting God.
- When a person exalts himself, it means he is thinking about himself in a proud or arrogant way.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “exalt” could include “highly praise” or “honor greatly” or “extol” or “speak highly of.”
- In some contexts it could be translated by a word or phrase that means “put in a higher position” or “give more honor to” or “talk about proudly.”
- “Do not exalt yourself” could also be translated as “Do not think of yourself too highly” or “Do not brag about yourself.”
- “Those that exalt themselves” could also be translated as “Those who think proudly about themselves” or “Those who boast about themselves.”

(See also: praise, [worship](#), [glory](#), boast, [proud](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 5:5-7
- 2 Samuel 22:47
- Acts 5:31
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Psalms 18:46

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1361, H4984, H5375, H5549, H5927, H7311, H7426, H7682, G18690, G52290, G52510, G53110, G53120

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:37](#); [18:26](#); [20:11](#); [24:7](#); [31:28](#))

face, facial

Definition:

The word “face” literally refers to the front part of a person’s head. This term also has several figurative meanings in the Bible.

- In the Bible, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean a person’s presence, the front of an object, or the surface of something.
- When referring to a person, the term “face” is often used figuratively to mean the action of seeing, which can represent that person’s knowledge, perception, notice, attention, or judgment.
- In a physical sense, to “face” someone or something means to look in the direction of that person or thing.
- To “face each other” means to “look directly at each other.”
- Being “face to face” means that two people are seeing each other in person, at a close distance.
- When Jesus “steadfastly set his face to go to Jerusalem,” it means that he very firmly decided to go.
- To “set one’s face against” people or a city means to firmly decide to no longer support, or to reject that city or person.
- The expression “face of the land” refers to the surface of the earth and often is a general reference to the whole earth. For example, a “famine covering the face of the earth” refers to a widespread famine affecting many people living on earth.
- The figurative expression “do not hide your face from your people” means “do not reject your people” or “do not desert your people” or “do not stop taking care of your people.”

Translation Suggestions:

- If possible, it is best to keep the expression or use an expression in the project language that has a similar meaning.
- The term to “face” could be translated as to “turn toward” or to “look at directly” or to “look at the face of.”
- The expression “face to face” could be translated as “up close” or “right in front of” or “in the presence of.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “before his face” could be translated as “ahead of him” or “in front of him” or “before him” or “in his presence.”
- The expression “set his face toward” could be translated as “began traveling toward” or “firmly made up his mind to go to.”
- The expression “hide his face from” could be translated as “turn away from” or “stop helping or protecting” or “reject.”
- To “set his face against” a city or people could be translated as “look at with anger and condemn” or “refuse to accept” or “decide to reject” or “condemn and reject” or “pass judgment on.”
- The expression “say it to their face” could be translated as “say it to them directly” or “say it to them in their presence” or “say it to them in person.”
- The expression “on the face of the land” could also be translated as “throughout the land” or “over the whole land” or “living throughout the land.”

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 5:4
- Genesis 33:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0600, H0639, H5869, H6440, H8389, G37990, G43830, G47500

(Go back to: Numbers 3:4; 6:25; 6:26; 8:2; 8:3; 11:31; 12:3; 14:5; 16:4; 16:22; 16:43; 16:45; 19:4; 19:16; 20:6; 20:10; 21:11; 21:20; 23:28; 24:1; 33:7)

faith

Definition:

In general, the term “faith” refers to a belief, trust or confidence in someone or something.

- To “have faith” in someone is to believe that what he says and does is true and trustworthy.
- To “have faith in Jesus” means to believe all of God’s teachings about Jesus. It especially means that people trust in Jesus and his sacrifice to cleanse them from their sin and to rescue them from the punishment they deserve because of their sin.
- True faith or belief in Jesus will cause a person to produce good spiritual fruits or behaviors because the Holy Spirit is living in him.
- Sometimes “faith” refers generally to all the teachings about Jesus, as in the expression “the truths of the faith.”
- In contexts such as “keep the faith” or “abandon the faith,” the term “faith” refers to the state or condition of believing all the teachings about Jesus.

Translation Suggestions:

- In some contexts, “faith” can be translated as “belief” or “conviction” or “confidence” or “trust.”
- For some languages these terms will be translated using forms of the verb “believe.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- The expression “keep the faith” could be translated by “keep believing in Jesus” or “continue to believe in Jesus.”
- The sentence “they must keep hold of the deep truths of the faith” could be translated by “they must keep believing all the true things about Jesus that they have been taught.”
- The expression “my true son in the faith” could be translated by something like “who is like a son to me because I taught him to believe in Jesus” or “my true spiritual son, who believes in Jesus.”

(See also: believe, [faithful](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:7
- Acts 6:7
- Galatians 2:20-21
- James 2:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:6** When Isaac was a young man, God tested Abraham’s **faith** by saying, “Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a sacrifice to me.”
- **31:7** Then he (Jesus) said to Peter, “You man of little **faith**, why did you doubt?”
- **32:16** Jesus said to her, “Your **faith** has healed you. Go in peace.”
- **38:9** Then Jesus said to Peter, “Satan wants to have all of you, but I have prayed for you, Peter, that your **faith** will not fail.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0529, H0530, G16800, G36400, G41020, G60660

(Go back to: [Numbers 13 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

faithful, faithfulness, trustworthy

Definition:

To be “faithful” to God means to consistently live according to God’s teachings. It means to be loyal to him by obeying him. The state or condition of being faithful is “faithfulness.”

- A person who is faithful can be trusted to always keep his promises and to always fulfill his responsibilities to other people.
- A faithful person perseveres in doing a task, even when it is long and difficult.
- Faithfulness to God is the consistent practice of doing what God wants us to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- In many contexts, “faithful” can be translated as “loyal” or “dedicated” or “dependable.”
- In other contexts, “faithful” can be translated by a word or phrase that means “continuing to believe” or “persevering in believing and obeying God.”
- Ways that “faithfulness” could be translated could include “persevering in believing” or “loyalty” or “trustworthiness” or “believing and obeying God.”

(See also: believe, [faith](#), believe)

Bible References:

- Genesis 24:49
- Leviticus 26:40
- Numbers 12:7
- Joshua 2:14
- Judges 2:16-17
- 1 Samuel 2:9
- Psalm 12:1
- Proverbs 11:12-13
- Isaiah 1:26
- Jeremiah 9:7-9
- Hosea 5:7
- Luke 12:46
- Luke 16:10
- Colossians 1:7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:24
- 3 John 1:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:5** Even in prison, Joseph remained **faithful** to God, and God blessed him.
- **14:12** Even so, God was still **faithful** to His promises to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.
- **15:13** The people promised to remain **faithful** to God and follow his laws.
- **17:9** David ruled with justice and **faithfulness** for many years, and God blessed him. However, toward the end of his life he sinned terribly against God.
- **35:12** “The older son said to his father, ‘All these years I have worked **faithfully** for you!’”
- **49:17** But God is **faithful** and says that if you confess your sins, he will forgive you.
- **50:4** “If you remain **faithful** to me to the end, then God will save you.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0529, H0530, H0539, H0540, H0571, H0898, H2181, H4603, H4604, H4820, G05690, G05710, G41030

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:7](#); [14:11](#); [20:12](#); [Notes](#))

family, household

Definition:

The term “family” refers to a group of people who are related by blood and usually includes a father, mother, and their children. In the Bible, this term sometimes includes other close relatives such as grandparents, grandchildren, uncles and aunts.

- In biblical times, usually the oldest man was the major authority of a family.
- Family could also include servants, concubines, and even foreigners.
- Some languages may have a broader word such as “clan” or “household” that would fit better in contexts where more than just parents and children are being referred to.
- The New Testament often uses terms related to the concept of “family” to refer to the Church, meaning people who believe in Jesus.

(See also: [clan](#), [ancestor](#), [house](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 18:18
- Exodus 1:21
- Joshua 2:12-13
- Luke 2:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0001, H0251, H0272, H0504, H1004, H1121, H2233, H2859, H2945, H3187, H4138, H4940, H5387, H5712, G10850, G36140, G36240, G39650

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:18; 3:20; 3:21; 3:23; 3:27; 3:29; 3:33; 4:18; 4:24; 4:28; 4:33; 4:37; 4:41; 4:42; 4:45; 26:5; 26:6; 26:7; 26:12; 26:13; 26:14; 26:15; 26:16; 26:17; 26:18; 26:20; 26:21; 26:22; 26:23; 26:24; 26:25; 26:26; 26:27; 26:29; 26:30; 26:31; 26:32; 26:34; 26:35; 26:36; 26:37; 26:38; 26:39; 26:40; 26:42; 26:43; 26:44; 26:45; 26:47; 26:48; 26:49; 26:50; 26:57; 26:58; 27:4; 27:11; 36:1; 36:8; 36:12](#))

favor, favorable, favoritism

Definition:

The term “favor” generally means approval. Someone who favors another person regards that person positively and approves of them.

- Jesus grew up “in favor with” God and men. This means that both God and others approved of his character and behavior.
- The expression “find favor” with someone means that someone is approved of by that person.
- When a king shows favor to someone, it often means that he approves of that person’s request and grants it.
- A “favor” can also be a gesture or action towards or for another person for their benefit.
- The term “favoritism” means an attitude of acting favorably toward some people but not others. It means the inclination to pick one person over another or one thing over another because the person or item is preferred. Generally, favoritism is considered unfair.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate the term “favor” could include “approval” or “blessing” or “benefit.”
- The “favorable year of Yahweh” could be translated as “the year (or time) when Yahweh will bring great blessing.”
- The term “favoritism” could be translated as “partiality” or “being prejudiced” or “unjust treatment.” This word is related to the word “favorite,” which means to prefer above all others.

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 2:25-26
- 2 Chronicles 19:7
- 2 Corinthians 1:11
- Acts 24:27
- Genesis 41:16
- Genesis 47:25
- Genesis 50:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0995, H1156, H1293, H1779, H1921, H2580, H2603, H2896, H5278, H5375, H5414, H5922, H6213, H6437, H6440, H7521, H7522, H7965, G11840, G36850, G43800, G43820, G54850, G54860

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:32](#); [11:11](#); [11:15](#); [32:5](#))

fear, afraid, frighten

Definition:

The terms “fear” refers to the unpleasant emotion a person feels when experiencing a potential threat to their safety or well-being. In the Bible, however, the term “fear” can also mean an attitude of worship, respect, awe, or obedience toward another person, usually someone powerful such as God or a king.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “fear” can be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “be afraid;” “deeply respect;” or “deep respect;” “revere;” or “reverence;” or perhaps “be in awe of.”
- The phrase “fear not” could also be translated as “do not be afraid” or “stop being afraid.”
- The sentence “The fear of God fell on all of them” might be translated in various ways. Some possibilities include: “Suddenly they all felt a deep awe and respect for God;” or “Immediately, they all felt very amazed and revered God deeply;” or “Right then, they all felt very afraid of God (because of his great power).”

(See also: awe, [Yahweh](#), [Lord](#), marvel, power)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:18
- Acts 2:43
- Acts 19:15-17
- Genesis 50:21
- Isaiah 11:3-5
- Job 6:14
- Jonah 1:9
- Luke 12:5
- Matthew 10:28
- Proverbs 10:24-25

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0367, H0926, H1204, H1481, H1672, H1674, H1763, H2119, H2296, H2727, H2729, H2730, H2731, H2844, H2849, H2865, H3016, H3025, H3068, H3372, H3373, H3374, H4032, H4034, H4035, H4116, H4172, H6206, H6342, H6343, H6345, H6427, H7264, H7267, H7297, H7374, H7461, H7493, H8175, G08700, G11670, G11680, G11690, G16300, G17190, G21240, G21250, G29620, G53980, G53990, G54000, G54010

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:8](#); [14:9](#); [21:34](#))

feast, feasting

Definition:

The term “feast” is a very general term that refers to an event where people gather to celebrate something by eating a large meal together. In biblical times, a feast sometimes lasted for several days or more.

- Often there are special kinds of food that are eaten at a certain feast.
- The religious festivals that God commanded the Jews to celebrate usually included having a feast together. For this reason the festivals are often called “feasts.”
- In biblical times, kings and other rich and powerful people often gave feasts to entertain their family or friends.
- In the story about the lost son, the father had a special feast prepared to celebrate the return of his son.
- The term to “feast” could also be translated as to “eat lavishly” or to “celebrate by eating lots of food” or to “eat a special, large meal.”
- Depending on the context, “feast” could be translated as “celebrating together with a large meal” or “a meal with a lot of food” or “a celebration meal.”

(See also: festival, banquet)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 2:12-14
- Genesis 26:30
- Genesis 29:22
- Genesis 40:20
- Jude 1:12-13
- Luke 2:43
- Luke 14:7-9
- Matthew 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0398, H2077, H2282, H3899, H3900, H4150, H4797, H4960, H7646, H8057, H8354, G00260, G10620, G11730, G18590, G21650, G49100

(Go back to: Numbers 1:1; 2:2; 2:17; 3:7; 3:8; 3:25; 3:38; 4:3; 4:4; 4:15; 4:23; 4:25; 4:28; 4:30; 4:31; 4:33; 4:35; 4:37; 4:39; 4:41; 4:43; 4:47; 6:10; 6:13; 6:18; 7:5; 7:89; 8:9; 8:15; 8:19; 8:22; 8:24; 8:26; 10:3; 11:16; 12:4; 14:10; 16:2; 16:18; 16:19; 16:42; 16:43; 16:50; 17:4; 18:4; 18:6; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:31; 19:4; 20:6; 25:6; 27:2; 28:17; 29:12; 31:54)

fig

Definition:

A fig is a small, soft, sweet fruit that grows on trees. When ripe, this fruit can be a variety of colors, including brown, yellow, or purple.

- Fig trees can grow 6 meters in height and their large leaves provide pleasant shade. The fruit is about 3-5 centimeters long.
- Adam and Eve used the leaves from fig trees to make clothing for themselves after they had sinned.
- Figs can be eaten raw, cooked, or dried. People also chop them into small pieces and press them into cakes to eat later.
- In Bible times, figs were important as a source of food and income.
- The presence of fruitful fig trees is frequently mentioned in the Bible as a sign of prosperity.
- Several times Jesus used fig trees as an illustration to teach his disciples spiritual truths.

Bible References:

- Habakkuk 3:17
- James 3:12
- Luke 13:7
- Mark 11:14
- Matthew 7:17
- Matthew 21:18

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H1690, H6291, H8384, G36530, G48080, G48100

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:5](#))

fire, firebrands, firepans, fireplace, firepot

Definition:

Fire is the heat, light, and flames that are produced when something is burned.

- Burning wood by fire turns the wood into ashes.
- Fire could also refer to lightning in the context of a storm or it being from heaven.
- The term “fire” is also used figuratively, usually referring to judgment or purification.
- The final judgment of unbelievers is in the fire of hell.
- Fire is used to refine gold and other metals. In the Bible, this process is used to explain how God refines people through difficult things that happen in their lives.
- The phrase “baptize with fire” could also be translated as “cause to experience suffering in order to be purified.”

(See also: [pure](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 16:18-20
- 2 Kings 1:10
- 2 Thessalonians 1:8
- Acts 7:29-30
- John 15:6
- Luke 3:16
- Matthew 3:12
- Nehemiah 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0215, H0217, H0398, H0784, H0800, H0801, H1197, H1200, H1513, H2734, H3341, H3857, H4071, H4168, H5135, H6315, H8316, G04390, G04400, G10670, G27410, G44420, G44430, G44470, G44480, G44510, G53940, G54570

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:4](#); [6:18](#); [9:15](#); [9:16](#); [11:1](#); [11:2](#); [11:3](#); [14:14](#); [16:7](#); [16:18](#); [16:35](#); [16:37](#); [16:46](#); [18:9](#); [21:28](#); [26:10](#); [26:61](#); [31:10](#); [31:23](#))

firstborn

Definition:

The term “firstborn” refers to an offspring of people or animals that is born first, before the other offspring are born.

- In the Bible, “firstborn” usually refers to the first male offspring that is born.
- In Bible times, the firstborn son was given a place of prominence and twice as much of his family inheritance as the other sons.
- Often it was the firstborn male of an animal that was sacrificed to God.
- This concept can also be used figuratively. For example, the nation of Israel is called God’s firstborn son because God gave it special privileges over other nations.
- Jesus, the Son of God is called God’s firstborn because of his importance and authority over everyone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- When “first-born” occurs in the text alone, it could also be translated as “firstborn male” or “firstborn son,” since that is what is implied. (See: [Assumed Knowledge and Implicit Information](#))
- Other ways to translate this term could include “the son who was born first” or “the eldest son” or “the number one son.”
- When used figuratively to refer to Jesus, this could be translated with a word or phrase that means “the son who has authority over everything” or “the Son who is first in honor.”
- Caution: Make sure the translation of this term in reference to Jesus does not imply that he was created.

(See also: [inherit](#), [sacrifice](#), [son](#))

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:15
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 29:26-27
- Genesis 43:33
- Luke 2:6-7
- Revelation 1:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1060, H1062, H1067, H1069, G44160, G52070

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:20](#); [3:12](#); [3:13](#); [3:40](#); [3:41](#); [3:42](#); [3:43](#); [3:45](#); [3:50](#); [8:16](#); [8:17](#); [8:18](#); [18:15](#); [18:17](#); [26:5](#); [33:4](#))

firstfruits

Definition:

The term “firstfruits” refers to a portion of the first crop of fruits and vegetables that was reaped during each harvest season.

- The Israelites offered these first fruits to God as a sacrificial offering.
- This term is also used figuratively in the Bible to refer to a firstborn son as being the first fruits of the family. That is, because he was the first son to be born into that family, he was the one who carried on the family name and honor.
- Because Jesus rose from the dead, he is called the “firstfruits” of all believers in him, believers who have died but who will some day come back to life.
- Believers in Jesus are also called the “firstfruits” of all creation, indicating the special privilege and position of those whom Jesus redeemed and called to be his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- The literal use of this term could be translated as “first portion (of crops)” or “first part of the harvest.”
- If possible, the figurative uses should be translated literally, to allow for different meanings in different contexts. This will also show the correlation between the literal meaning and the figurative uses.

(See also: [firstborn](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:4-5
- 2 Thessalonians 2:13
- Exodus 23:16-17
- James 1:18
- Jeremiah 2:3
- Psalms 105:36

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1061, H6529, H7225, G05360

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:20](#); [15:20](#); [18:12](#); [18:13](#); [24:20](#); [Notes](#))

flesh

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “flesh” literally refers to the soft tissue of the physical body of a human being or animal.

- The Bible also uses the term “flesh” in a figurative way to refer to all human beings or all living creatures.
- In the New Testament, the term “flesh” is used to refer to the sinful nature of human beings. This is often used in contrast to their spiritual nature.
- The expression “own flesh and blood” refers to someone who is biologically related to another person, such as a parent, sibling, child, or grandchild.
- The expression “flesh and blood” can also refer to a person’s ancestors or descendants.
- The expression “one flesh” refers to the physical uniting of a man and woman in marriage.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of an animal’s body, “flesh” could be translated as “body” or “skin” or “meat.”
- When it is used to refer generally to all living creatures, this term could be translated as “living beings” or “everything that is alive.”
- When referring in general to all people, this term could be translated as “people” or “human beings” or “everyone who lives.”
- The expression “flesh and blood” could also be translated as “relatives” or “family” or “kinfolk” or “family clan.” There may be contexts where it could be translated as “ancestors” or “descendants.”
- Some languages may have an expression that is similar in meaning to “flesh and blood.”
- The expression “become one flesh” could be translated as “unite sexually” or “become as one body” or “become like one person in body and spirit.” The translation of this expression should be checked to make sure it is acceptable in the project language and culture. (See: [euphemism](#)). It should also be understood that this is figurative, and does not mean that a man and a woman who “become one flesh” literally become one person.

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:16
- 2 John 1:7
- Ephesians 6:12
- Galatians 1:16
- Genesis 2:24
- John 1:14
- Matthew 16:17
- Romans 8:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0829, H1320, H1321, H2878, H3894, H4207, H7607, H7683, G29070, G45590, G45600, G45610

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:7](#); [11:4](#); [11:13](#); [11:18](#); [11:21](#); [12:12](#); [16:22](#); [18:15](#); [19:5](#); [19:7](#); [19:8](#); [27:16](#))

flock, herd

Definition:

In the Bible, “flock” refers to a group of sheep or goats and “herd” refers to a group of cattle or pigs.

- Different languages may have different ways of naming groups of animals or birds.

Translation Suggestions

- Consider what terms are used in your language to refer to different groups of animals, and use the appropriate term for each kind of animal.
- If your language uses the same word to refer to both groups of sheep and cattle, then you may need to say “groups of sheep” where the Bible says only “flocks,” and “groups of cattle” where the Bible says only “herds.” Alternatively, if the Biblical context does not demand differentiation (if the text simply says “flocks and herds,” meaning all their domesticated animals) you may just use the one word once.

(See also: [goat](#), [cow](#), [pig](#), [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 10:28-29
- 2 Chronicles 17:11
- Deuteronomy 14:22-23
- Luke 2:8-9
- Matthew 8:30
- Matthew 26:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0951, H1241, H2835, H4029, H4735, H4830, H5349, H5739, H6251, H6629, H7399, H7462, G00340, G41670, G41680

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:40](#); [31:32](#); [32:16](#); [32:36](#))

forsake, forsaken, leave

Definition:

The term “forsake” means to abandon someone or to give up something. Someone who has been “forsaken” has been deserted or abandoned by someone else.

- When people “forsake” God, they are being unfaithful to him by disobeying him.
- When God “forsakes” people, he has stopped helping them and allowed them to experience suffering in order to cause them to turn back to him.
- This term can also mean to forsake things, such as forsaking, or not following, God’s teachings.
- The term “forsaken” can be used in the past tense, as in “he has forsaken you” or as in referring to someone who has “been forsaken.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “abandon” or “neglect” or “give up” or “go away from” or “leave behind,” depending on the context.
- To “forsake” God’s law could be translated “disobey God’s law.” This could also be translated as “abandon” or “give up on” or “stop obeying” his teachings or his laws.
- The phrase “be forsaken” can be translated as “be abandoned” or “be deserted.”
- It more clearer to use different words to translate this term, depending on whether the text describes forsaking a thing or a person.

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:11-13
- Daniel 11:29-30
- Genesis 24:27
- Joshua 24:16-18
- Matthew 27:45-47
- Proverbs 27:9-10
- Psalms 71:18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0488, H2308, H5203, H5428, H5800, H5805, H7503, G06460, G06570, G08630, G14590, G26410

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:31](#))

fruit, fruitful, unfruitful

Definition:

The term “fruit” literally refers to the part of a plant that can be eaten. Something that is “fruitful” has a lot of fruit. These terms are also used figuratively in the Bible.

- The Bible often uses “fruit” to refer to a person’s actions. Just as fruit on a tree shows what kind of tree it is, in the same way a person’s words and actions reveal what his character is like.
- A person can produce good or bad spiritual fruit, but the term “fruitful” always has the positive meaning of producing much good fruit.
- The term “fruitful” is also used figuratively to mean “prosperous.” This often refers to having many children and descendants, as well as having plenty of food and other wealth.
- In general, the expression “fruit of” refers to anything that comes from or that is produced by something else. For example, the “fruit of wisdom” refers to the good things that come from being wise.
- The expression “fruit of the land” refers generally to everything that the land produces for people to eat. This includes not only fruits such as grapes or dates, but also vegetables, nuts, and grains.
- The figurative expression “fruit of the Spirit” refers to godly qualities that the Holy Spirit produces in the lives of people who obey him.
- The expression “fruit of the womb” refers to “what the womb produces”—that is children.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate this term using the general word for “fruit” that is commonly used in the project language to refer to the edible fruit of a fruit tree. In many languages it may be more natural to use the plural “fruits” whenever it refers to more than one fruit.
- Depending on the context, the term “fruitful” could be translated as “producing much spiritual fruit” or “having many children” or “prosperous.”
- The expression “fruit of the land” could also be translated as “food that the land produces” or “food crops that are growing in that region.”
- When God created animals and people, he commanded them to “be fruitful and multiply,” which refers to having many offspring. This could also be translated as “have many offspring” or “have many children and descendants” or “have many children so that you will have many descendants.”
- The expression “fruit of the womb” could be translated as “what the womb produces” or “children a woman gives birth to” or just “children.” When Elizabeth says to Mary “blessed is the fruit of your womb,” she means “blessed is the child you will give birth to.” The project language may also have a different expression for this.
- Another expression “fruit of the vine,” could be translated as “vine fruit” or “grapes.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “will be more fruitful” could also be translated as “will produce more fruit” or “will have more children” or “will be prosperous.”
- The apostle Paul’s expression “fruitful labor” could be translated as “work that brings very good results” or “efforts that result in many people believing in Jesus.”
- The “fruit of the Spirit” could also be translated as “works that the Holy Spirit produces” or “words and actions that show that the Holy Spirit is working in someone.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [grain](#), [grape](#), Holy Spirit, [vine](#), womb)

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:23
- Genesis 1:11
- Luke 8:15
- Matthew 3:8

- Matthew 7:17

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0004, H1061, H1063, H1069, H2233, H2981, H3581, H3759, H3899, H3978, H4022, H5108, H6509, H6529, H7019, H8393, H8570, G10810, G25900, G25920, G25930, G37030, G50520, G53520

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:26](#); [13:27](#))

Gad

Facts:

Gad was Jacob's seventh son. He was Zilpah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Gad" or "Gad" or "Gad."
- The name Gad is similar to the Hebrew word for "good fortune."
- The tribe of Gad settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River between the Sea of Galilee and the Dead Sea. This was to the north of Reuben and south of half of the tribe of Manasseh. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Gad" refers to the land given to the tribe of Gad.
- Another man in the Bible named Gad was a prophet who confronted King David for his sin of taking a census of the Israelite people.

(Translation suggestions:[How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Zilpah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 5:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Genesis 30:11
- Joshua 1:12
- Joshua 21:38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1410, H1425, G10450

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:24](#); [1:25](#); [2:14](#); [7:42](#); [10:20](#); [13:15](#); [26:15](#); [26:18](#); [32:1](#); [32:2](#); [32:6](#); [32:25](#); [32:29](#); [32:31](#); [32:33](#); [32:34](#); [33:45](#); [33:46](#))

gate, gate bars, gatekeeper, gateposts, gateway

Definition:

The term “gate” refers to an access point in a fence, wall, or other kind of barrier that surrounds a house, property, city, etc.

- A city gate could be opened to allow people, animals, and cargo to travel in and out of the city.
- To protect the city, its walls and gates were thick and strong. Gates were closed and locked with a metal or wooden bar to prevent enemy soldiers from entering the city.
- A “bar” for a gate refers to a wood or metal bar that can be moved into place so that the doors of the gate cannot be opened from the outside.
- In Bible times, a city gate was often the social center for that town or city. It was a place where news of current events was exchanged between people, where business transactions occurred, and where civil judgments were made.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “gate” could be “door” or “wall opening” or “barrier” or “entranceway.”
- The phrase “bars of the gate” could be translated as “gate bolts” or “wooden beams to lock the gate” or “metal locking rods of the gate.”

Bible References:

- Acts 9:24
- Acts 10:18
- Deuteronomy 21:18-19
- Genesis 19:1
- Genesis 24:60
- Matthew 7:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1817, H5592, H6607, H8179, G23740, G44390, G44400

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:26](#))

generation

Definition:

The term “generation” generally refers to a group of people who are all alive at the same time. They are all born in the same general time period and are therefore about the same age.

- A generation can also refer to a span of time. In Bible times, a generation was usually considered to be about 40 years.
- Parents and their children are from two different generations.
- In the Bible, the term “generation” is also used figuratively to refer generally to people who share common characteristics.

Translation Suggestions

- The phrase “this generation” or “people of this generation” could be translated as “the people living now” or “you people.”
- “This wicked generation” could also be translated as “these wicked people living now.”
- The expression “from generation to generation” or “from one generation to the next” could be translated as “people living now, as well as their children and grandchildren” or “people in every time period” or “people in this time period and future time periods” or “all people and their descendants.”
- “A generation to come will serve him; they will tell the next generation about Yahweh” could also be translated as “Many people in the future will serve Yahweh and will tell their children and grandchildren about him.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [evil](#), [ancestor](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:19-21
- Exodus 3:13-15
- Genesis 15:16
- Genesis 17:7
- Mark 8:12
- Matthew 11:16
- Matthew 23:34-36
- Matthew 24:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1755, H1859, H8435, G10740

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:20](#); [1:22](#); [1:24](#); [1:26](#); [1:28](#); [1:30](#); [1:32](#); [1:34](#); [1:36](#); [1:38](#); [1:40](#); [1:42](#); [3:1](#); [9:10](#); [10:8](#); [15:14](#); [15:15](#); [15:21](#); [15:23](#); [15:38](#); [18:23](#); [35:29](#))

Gilead, Gileadite

Definition:

Gilead was the name of a mountainous region east of the Jordan river where the Israelite tribes of Gad, Reuben, and Manasseh lived.

- This region was also referred to as the “hill country of Gilead” or “Mount Gilead.”
- “Gilead” was also the name of several men in the Old Testament. One of these men was the grandson of Manasseh. Another Gilead was the father of Jephthah.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Gad](#), Jephthah, Manasseh, [Reuben](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:22
- 1 Samuel 11:1
- Amos 1:3
- Deuteronomy 2:36-37
- Genesis 31:21
- Genesis 37:25-26

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1568, H1569

(Go back to: [Numbers 26:29](#); [32:26](#); [32:29](#); [32:40](#))

gird, girded, wrapped around, tied up, belt, tuck in belt, put belt around

Definition:

The term “gird” means to fasten something around something else. It often refers to using a belt or sash around the waist to keep a robe or tunic in place.

- The common biblical phrase, “gird up the loins” refers to tucking the bottom of a garment into a belt to allow a person to move more freely, usually to do work.
- This phrase can also mean “get ready to work” or to be prepared to do something difficult.
- The expression “gird up the loins” could be translated using an expression in the target language that has the same meaning. Or it could be translated figuratively as “prepare yourself for action” or “get yourself ready.”
- The term “girded with” could be translated as “encircled by” or “wrapped with” or “belted with.”

(See also: loins)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:13
- Job 38:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0640, H0247, H2290, H2296, H8151, G03280, G12410, G40240

(Go back to: [Numbers 30:4](#); [30:5](#); [30:6](#); [30:7](#); [30:8](#); [30:9](#); [30:10](#); [30:11](#))

glean, gleanings

Definition:

The term “glean” means to go through a field or orchard and pick up whatever grain or fruit the harvesters have left behind.

- God commanded the Israelites to let the widows, poor people, and foreigners glean the leftover grain in order to provide food for themselves.
- Sometimes the owner of the field would allow the gleaners to go directly behind the harvesters to glean, which enabled them to glean much more of the grain. A clear example of how this worked is in the story of Ruth, who was generously allowed to glean among the harvesters in the fields of her relative Boaz.
- Other ways to translate “glean” can be “pick up” or “gather” or “collect.”

(See also: Boaz, [grain](#), harvest, Ruth)

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 24:21-22
- Isaiah 17:4-5
- Job 24:6
- Ruth 2:2
- Ruth 2:15

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3950, H3951, H5953, H5955

(**Go back to:** [Numbers 11:8](#))

glory, glorious, glorify

Definition:

The term “glory” is a general term for a family of concepts including value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, or majesty. The term “glorify” means to ascribe glory to someone or something, or to show or tell how glorious something or someone is.

- In the Bible, the term “glory” is especially used to describe God, who is more valuable, more worthy, more important, more honorable, more splendid, and more majestic than anyone or anything in the universe. Everything about his character reveals his glory.
- People can glorify God by telling about the wonderful things he has done. They can also glorify God by living in accordance with God’s character, because doing so shows to others his value, worth, importance, honor, splendor, and majesty.
- The expression to “glory in” means to boast about or take pride in something.

Old Testament

- The specific phrase “the glory of Yahweh” in the Old Testament usually refers to some perceptible manifestation of Yahweh’s presence in a particular location.

New Testament

- God the Father will glorify God the Son by revealing to all people the full extent of how glorious Jesus is.
- Everyone who believes in Christ will be glorified with him. This use of the term “glorify” carries a unique meaning. It means that when people who believe in Christ are raised to life, they will be changed physically to be like Jesus as he appeared after his resurrection.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, different ways to translate “glory” could include “splendor” or “majesty” or “awesome greatness” or “extreme value.”
- The term “glorious” could be translated as “full of glory” or “extremely valuable” or “brightly shining” or “awesomely majestic.”
- The expression “give glory to God” could be translated as “honor God’s greatness” or “praise God because of his splendor” or “tell others how great God is.”
- The expression “glory in” could also be translated as “praise” or “take pride in” or “boast about” or “take pleasure in.”
- “Glorify” could also be translated as “give glory to” or “bring glory to” or “cause to appear great.”
- The phrase “glorify God” could also be translated as “praise God” or “talk about God’s greatness” or “show how great God is” or “honor God (by obeying him).”
- The term “be glorified” could also be translated as “be shown to be very great” or “be praised” or “be exalted.”

(See also: honor, majesty, [exalt](#), obey, praise)

Bible References:

- Exodus 24:17
- Numbers 14:9-10
- Isaiah 35:2

- Luke 18:43
- Luke 2:9
- John 12:28
- Acts 3:13-14
- Acts 7:1-3
- Romans 8:17
- 1 Corinthians 6:19-20
- Philippians 2:14-16
- Philippians 4:19
- Colossians 3:1-4
- 1 Thessalonians 2:5
- James 2:1-4
- 1 Peter 4:15-16
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **23:7** Suddenly, the skies were filled with angels praising God, saying, “**Glory** to God in heaven and peace on earth to the people he favors!”
- **25:6** Then Satan showed Jesus all the kingdoms of the world and all their **glory** and said, “I will give you all this if you bow down and worship me.”
- **37:1** When Jesus heard this news, he said, “This sickness will not end in death, but it is for the **glory** of God.”
- **37:8** Jesus responded, “Did I not tell you that you would see God’s **glory** if you believe in me?”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0117, H0142, H0155, H0215, H1342, H1921, H1926, H1935, H1984, H3367, H3513, H3519, H3520, H6286, H6643, H7623, H8597, G13910, G13920, G17400, G17410, G27440, G48880

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:21](#); [14:22](#); [16:19](#); [16:42](#); [20:6](#))

God

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “God” refers to the eternal being who created the universe out of nothing. God exists as Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. God’s personal name is “Yahweh.”

- God has always existed; he existed before anything else existed, and he will continue to exist forever.
- He is the only true God and has authority over everything in the universe.
- God is perfectly righteous, infinitely wise, holy, sinless, just, merciful, and loving.
- He is a covenant-keeping God, who always fulfills his promises.
- People were created to worship God and he is the only one they should worship.
- God revealed his name as “Yahweh,” which means “he is” or “I am” or “the One who (always) exists.”
- The Bible also teaches about false “gods,” which are nonliving idols that people wrongly worship.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “God” could include “Deity” or “Creator” or “Supreme Being” or “Supreme Creator” or “Infinite Sovereign Lord” or “Eternal Supreme Being.”
- Consider how God is referred to in a local or national language. There may also already be a word for “God” in the language being translated. If so, it is important to make sure that this word fits the characteristics of the one true God as described above.
- Many languages capitalize the first letter of the word for the one true God, to distinguish it from the word for a false god. Another way to make this distinction would be to use different terms for “God” and “god.”
NOTE: In the biblical text, when a person who does not worship Yahweh speaks about Yahweh and uses the word “god,” it is acceptable to render the term without a capital letter in reference to Yahweh (see Jonah 1:6, 3:9).
- The phrase “I will be their God and they will be my people” could also be translated as “I, God, will rule over these people and they will worship me.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: create, [false god](#), God the Father, Holy Spirit, [false god](#), Son of God, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Samuel 10:7-8
- 1 Timothy 4:10
- Colossians 1:16
- Deuteronomy 29:14-16
- Ezra 3:1-2
- Genesis 1:2
- Hosea 4:11-12
- Isaiah 36:6-7
- James 2:20
- Jeremiah 5:5
- John 1:3
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Lamentations 3:43
- Micah 4:5
- Philippians 2:6
- Proverbs 24:12

- Psalms 47:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:1 God** created the universe and everything in it in six days.
- **1:15 God** made man and woman in his own image.
- **5:3** "I am **God** Almighty. I will make a covenant with you."
- **9:14 God** said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am Yahweh, the **God** of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **10:2** Through these plagues, **God** showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's gods.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of Yahweh, the true **God**.
- **22:7** "You, my son, will be called the prophet of the **Most High God** who will prepare the people to receive the Messiah!"
- **24:9** There is only one **God**. But John heard **God** the Father speak, and saw Jesus the Son and the Holy Spirit when he baptized Jesus.
- **25:7** "Worship only the Lord your **God** and only serve him."
- **28:1** "There is only one who is good, and that is **God**."
- **49:9** But **God** loved everyone in the world so much that he gave his only Son so that whoever believes in Jesus will not be punished for his sins, but will live with **God** forever.
- **50:16** But some day **God** will create a new heaven and a new earth that will be perfect.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0136, H0305, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0433, H2486, H2623, H3068, H3069, H3863, H4136, H6697, G01120, G05160, G09320, G09350, G10960, G11400, G20980, G21240, G21280, G21500, G21520, G21530, G22990, G23040, G23050, G23120, G23130, G23140, G23150, G23160, G23170, G23180, G23190, G23200, G33610, G37850, G41510, G52070, G53770, G54630, G55370, G55380

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:7](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#); [15:40](#); [15:41](#); [16:9](#); [16:22](#); [21:5](#); [22:9](#); [22:10](#); [22:12](#); [22:18](#); [22:20](#); [22:22](#); [22:38](#); [23:4](#); [23:21](#); [23:27](#); [24:2](#); [25:2](#); [25:13](#); [27:16](#))

god, false god, goddess, idol, idolater, idolatrous, idolatry

Definition:

A false god is something that people worship instead of the one true God. The term “goddess” refers specifically to a female false god.

- These false gods or goddesses do not exist. Yahweh is the only God.
- People sometimes make objects into idols to worship as symbols of their false gods.
- In the Bible, God’s people frequently turned away from obeying him in order to worship false gods.
- Demons often deceive people into believing that the false gods and idols they worship have power.
- Baal, Dagon, and Molech were three of the many false gods that were worshiped by people in Bible times.
- Asherah and Artemis (Diana) were two of the goddesses that ancient peoples worshiped.

An idol is an object that people make so they can worship it. Something is described as “idolatrous” if it involves giving honor to something other than the one true God.

- People make idols to represent the false gods that they worship.
- These false gods do not exist; there is no God besides Yahweh.
- Sometimes demons work through an idol to make it seem like it has power, even though it does not.
- Idols are often made of valuable materials like gold, silver, bronze, or expensive wood.
- An “idolatrous kingdom” means a “kingdom of people who worship idols” or a “kingdom of people who worship earthly things.”
- The term “idolatrous figure” is another word for a “carved image” or an “idol.”

Translation Suggestions:

- There may already be a word for “god” or “false god” in the language or in a nearby language.
- The term “idol” could be used to refer to false gods.
- In English, a lower case “g” is used to refer to false gods, and upper case “G” is used to refer to the one true God. Other languages also do that.
- Another option would be to use a completely different word to refer to the false gods.
- Some languages may add a word to specify whether the false god is described as male or female.

(See also: [God](#), Asherah, [Baal](#), Molech, demon, image, [kingdom](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 35:2
- Exodus 32:1
- Psalms 31:6
- Psalms 81:8-10
- Isaiah 44:20
- Acts 7:41
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 15:20
- Acts 19:27
- Romans 2:22
- Galatians 4:8-9
- Galatians 5:19-21
- Colossians 3:5
- 1 Thessalonians 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **10:2** Through these plagues, God showed Pharaoh that he is more powerful than Pharaoh and all of Egypt's **gods**.
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other **gods**."
- **14:2** They (Canaanites) worshiped false **gods** and did many evil things.
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite **gods** instead of Yahweh, the true God.
- **18:13** But most of Judah's kings were evil, corrupt, and they worshiped idols. Some of the kings even sacrificed their children to false **gods**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H0367, H0410, H0426, H0430, H0457, H1322, H1544, H1892, H2553, H3649, H4656, H4906, H5236, H5566, H6089, H6090, H6091, H6456, H6459, H6673, H6736, H6754, H7723, H8163, H8251, H8267, H8441, H8655, G14930, G14940, G14950, G14960, G14970, G22990, G27120

(Go back to: [Numbers 15 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

gold, golden

Definition:

Gold is a yellow, high quality metal that was used for making jewelry and religious objects. It was the most valuable metal in ancient times.

- In Bible times, many different kinds of objects were made out of solid gold or were covered with a thin layer of gold.
- These objects included earrings and other jewelry, and idols, altars, and other objects used in the tabernacle or temple, such as the ark of the covenant.
- In Old Testament times, gold was used as a means of exchange in buying and selling. It was weighed on a scale to determine its value.
- Later on, gold and other metals such as silver were used to make coins to use in buying and selling
- When referring to something that is not solid gold, but only has a thin covering of gold, the term “golden” or “gold-covered” or “gold-overlaid” could also be used.
- Sometimes an object is described as “gold-colored,” which means it has the yellow color of gold, but may not actually be made of gold.

(See also: [altar](#), [ark of the covenant](#), [false god](#), [silver](#), [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:7
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- 2 Chronicles 1:15
- Acts 3:6
- Daniel 2:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1220, H1722, H2091, H2742, H3800, H5458, H6884, H6885, G55520, G55530, G55540, G55570

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:11](#); [7:14](#); [7:20](#); [7:26](#); [7:32](#); [7:38](#); [7:44](#); [7:50](#); [7:56](#); [7:62](#); [7:68](#); [7:74](#); [7:80](#); [7:84](#); [7:86](#); [8:4](#); [22:18](#); [24:13](#); [31:22](#); [31:50](#); [31:51](#); [31:52](#); [31:54](#))

good, right, pleasant, better, best

Definition:

The term “good” generally refers to a positive evaluation of the quality of something or someone, often in a moral or emotional sense. However, the term conveys various nuances throughout the Bible depending on the context.

- Something that is “good” could be emotionally pleasant, morally right, excellent, helpful, suitable, or profitable.
- In the Bible, the general meaning of “good” is often contrasted with “evil.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The general term for “good” in the target language should be used wherever this general meaning is accurate and natural, especially in contexts where it is contrasted to evil.
- Depending on the context, other ways to translate this term could include “kind” or “excellent” or “pleasing to God” or “righteous” or “morally upright” or “profitable.”
- “Good land” could be translated as “fertile land” or “productive land”; a “good crop” could be translated as a “plentiful harvest” or “large amount of crops.”
- The phrase “do good to” means to do something that benefits others and could be translated as “be kind to” or “help” or “benefit” someone or “cause someone to prosper.”
- To “do good on the Sabbath” means to “do things that help others on the Sabbath.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate the term “goodness” could include “blessing” or “kindness” or “moral perfection” or “righteousness” or “purity.”

(See also: righteous, [prosper](#), [evil](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 5:22-24
- Genesis 1:12
- Genesis 2:9
- Genesis 2:17
- James 3:13
- Romans 2:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:4** God saw that what he had created was **good**.
- **1:11** God planted the tree of the knowledge of **good** and evil.
- **1:12** Then God said, “It is not **good** for man to be alone.”
- **2:4** “God just knows that as soon as you eat it, you will be like God and will understand **good** and evil like he does.”
- **8:12** “You tried to do evil when you sold me as a slave, but God used the evil for **good!**”
- **14:15** Joshua was a **good** leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **18:13** Some of these kings were **good** men who ruled justly and worshiped God.
- **28:1** “**Good** teacher, what must I do to have eternal life?” Jesus said to him, “Why do you call me ‘**good**?’ There is only one who is **good**, and that is God.”

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0117, H0145, H0155, H0202, H0239, H0410, H1580, H1926, H1935, H2532, H2617, H2623, H2869, H2895, H2896, H2898, H3190, H3191, H3276, H3474, H3788, H3966, H4261, H4399, H5232, H5750, H6287, H6643, H6743, H7075, H7368, H7399, H7443, H7999, H8231, H8232, H8233, H8389, H8458, G00140, G00150, G00180, G00190, G05150, G07440, G08650, G09790, G13800, G20950, G20970, G21060, G21070, G21080, G21090, G21140, G21150, G21330, G21400, G21620, G21630, G21740, G22930, G25650, G25670, G25700, G25730, G28870, G29860, G31400, G36170, G37760, G41470, G46320, G46740, G48510, G52230, G52240, G53580, G55420, G55430, G55440

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:29](#); [14:3](#); [14:7](#); [24:13](#))

grace, gracious

Definition:

The word “grace” refers to help or blessing that is given to someone who has not earned it. The term “gracious” describes someone who shows grace to others.

- God’s grace toward sinful human beings is a gift that is freely given.
- The concept of grace also refers to being kind and forgiving to someone who has done wrong or hurtful things.
- The expression to “find grace” is an expression that means to receive help and mercy from God. Often it includes the meaning that God is pleased with someone and helps him.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways that “grace” could be translated include “divine kindness” or “God’s favor” or “God’s kindness and forgiveness for sinners” or “merciful kindness.”
- The term “gracious” could be translated as “full of grace” or “kind” or “merciful” or “mercifully kind.”
- The expression “he found grace in the eyes of God” could be translated as “he received mercy from God” or “God mercifully helped him” or “God showed his favor to him” or “God was pleased with him and helped him.”

Bible References:

- Acts 4:33
- Acts 6:8
- Acts 14:4
- Colossians 4:6
- Colossians 4:18
- Genesis 43:28-29
- James 4:7
- John 1:16
- Philippians 4:21-23
- Revelation 22:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2580, H2587, H2589, H2603, H8467, G21430, G54850, G55430

(Go back to: [Numbers 27 General Notes](#))

grain offering

Definition:

A grain offering was a gift of wheat or barley flour offered to God, often after a burnt offering.

- The grain used for the grain offering had to be finely ground up. Sometimes it was cooked before being offered, but other times it was left uncooked.
- Oil and salt were added to the grain flour, but no yeast or honey was permitted.
- Part of the grain offering was burned up and part of it was eaten by the priests.

(See also: [burnt offering](#), guilt offering, [sacrifice](#), sin offering)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:27-29
- Exodus 29:41-42
- Judges 13:19
- Leviticus 2:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4503, H8641

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:16; 5:15; 5:18; 5:25; 5:26; 6:15; 6:17; 7:87; 8:8; 15:4; 15:6; 15:9; 15:24; 16:15; 18:9; 28:9; 28:12; 28:13; 28:20; 28:26; 28:28; 28:31; 29:3; 29:6; 29:9; 29:11; 29:14; 29:16; 29:18; 29:19; 29:21; 29:22; 29:24; 29:25; 29:27; 29:28; 29:30; 29:31; 29:33; 29:34; 29:37; 29:38](#))

grain, grainfields

Definition:

The term “grain” usually refers to the seed of a food plant such as wheat, barley, corn, millet, or rice. It can also refer to the whole plant.

- In the Bible, the main grains that are referred to are wheat and barley.
- A head of grain is the part of the plant that holds the grain.
- Note that some older Bible versions use the word “corn” to refer to grain in general. In modern English however, “corn” only refers to one type of grain.

(See also: [head](#), wheat)

Bible References:

- Genesis 42:3
- Genesis 42:26-28
- Genesis 43:1-2
- Luke 6:2
- Mark 2:24
- Matthew 13:7-9
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1250, H1430, H1715, H2233, H2591, H3759, H3899, H7054, H7383, H7641, H7668, G02480, G25900, G34500, G46210, G47190

(Go back to: [Numbers 18:12](#))

grape, grapevine

Definition:

A grape is a small, round, smooth-skinned berry fruit that grows in clusters on vines. The juice of grapes is used in making wine.

- There are different colors of grapes, such as light green, purple, or red.
- Individual grapes can be around one to three centimeters in size.
- People grow grapes in gardens called vineyards. These normally consist of long rows of vines.
- Grapes were a very important food during Bible times and having vineyards was a sign of wealth.
- In order to keep grapes from rotting, people would often dry them. Dried grapes are called "raisins" and they were used to make raisin cakes.
- Jesus told a parable about a grape vineyard to teach his disciples about God's kingdom.

(See also: [vine](#), [vineyard](#), [wine](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 23:24
- Hosea 9:10
- Job 15:33
- Luke 6:43-44
- Matthew 7:15-17
- Matthew 21:33

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0811, H0891, H1154, H1155, H1210, H3196, H5955, H6025, H6528, G02880, G47180

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:3](#); [13:20](#); [13:23](#))

hand

Definition:

The word “hand” refers to the part of the body at the end of the arm. This term is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s power, control, or action, whether it be in reference to God or in reference to a human person.

Some of the various uses of the term “hand” include the following:

- The term “hand” can be used figuratively to refer to the position of being “beside” a person, an object, or a location.
- To “lay a hand on” means to “harm.” To “save from the hand of” means to prevent someone from being harmed by another person.
- The position of being “on the right hand” means “on the right side” or “to the right.”
- The expression “by the hand of” someone means “by” or “through” the action of that person. For example, the phrase “by the hand of the Lord” means that God caused something to happen.
- Expressions such as “hand over to” or “deliver into the hands of” refer to causing someone to be under the control or power of someone else.
- The term “laying on of hands” can refer to placing a hand on a person in order to dedicate that person to God’s service, to pray for healing, or to ask God to bless that person.
- When Paul says “written by my hand,” it means that he himself wrote that part of the letter rather than speaking it to someone else to write down.

Translation Suggestions

- These expressions and other figures of speech could be translated using other figurative expressions that have the same meaning. Or the meaning could be translated using direct, literal language (see examples above).
- The expression “handed him the scroll” could also be translated as “gave him the scroll” or “put the scroll in his hand.” It was not given to him permanently, but just for the purpose of using it at that time.
- An expression such as “delivered them into the hands of their enemies” or “handed them over to their enemies,” could be translated as “allowed their enemies to conquer them” or “caused them to be captured by their enemies” or “empowered their enemies to gain control over them.”
- To “die by the hand of” could be translated as “be killed by.”
- The expression “on the right hand of” could be translated as “on the right side of.”
- In regard to Jesus being “seated at the right hand of God,” if this does not communicate in the language that it refers to a position of high honor and equal authority, a different expression with that meaning could be used. Or a short explanation could be added: “on the right side of God, in the position of highest authority.”

(See also: power, right hand, honor, [bless](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:25
- Acts 8:17
- Acts 11:21
- Genesis 9:5
- Genesis 14:20
- John 3:35
- Mark 7:32
- Matthew 6:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2026, H2651, H2947, H2948, H3027, H3028, H3225, H3231, H3233, H3709, H7126, H7138, H8040, H8042, H8168, G07100, G11880, G14480, G14510, G21760, G29020, G40840, G44740, G54950, G54960, G54970

(Go back to: Numbers 2:17; 3:3; 4:28; 4:33; 4:37; 4:45; 4:49; 5:18; 5:25; 6:19; 6:21; 7:8; 7:14; 7:20; 7:26; 7:32; 7:38; 7:44; 7:50; 7:56; 7:62; 7:68; 7:74; 7:80; 7:84; 7:86; 8:10; 8:12; 9:23; 10:13; 13:29; 14:30; 15:23; 15:30; 16:40; 20:11; 20:20; 21:2; 21:26; 21:34; 22:7; 22:23; 22:29; 22:31; 24:10; 24:24; 25:7; 27:18; 27:23; 31:6; 31:49; 33:1; 33:3; 34:3; 35:17; 35:18; 35:21; 35:25; 36:13)

head

Definition:

The word “head” refers to the uppermost body part of a human body, above the neck. This term is often used figuratively to mean many different things, including “top,” “first,” “beginning,” “source,” and other concepts.

Some examples of various uses of the term “head” include:

- The expression “no razor will ever touch his head” means that he should never cut or shave his hair.
- The expression “let their blood be on his own head” means that the man is responsible for their deaths and will receive the punishment for that.
- The expression “heads of grain” refers to the top part of wheat or barley plants that contains the seeds. Similarly, the expression “head of a mountain” refers to the top part of the mountain.
- The term “head” can also refer to the beginning or source of something, or the first in a series of things (can be objects or people).
- Often the term “head” refers to the most important person in a group or to a person who is in authority over others. For example, the phrase “You have made me the head over nations” means “You have made me the ruler...” or “You have given me authority over....”

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “head” could be translated as “authority” or “ruler” or “the one who is responsible for.”
- The expression “will be on his own head” could be translated as “will be on him” or “he will be punished for” or “he will be held responsible for” or “he will be considered guilty for.”
- Depending on the context, some other ways to translate this term might include “top” or “beginning” or “source” or “leader.”

(See also: [chief](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:51-54
- 1 Kings 8:1-2
- 1 Samuel 9:22
- Colossians 2:10
- Colossians 2:19
- Numbers 1:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0441, H1270, H1538, H3852, H4425, H4761, H4763, H5110, H5324, H6285, H6287, H6797, H6915, H6936, H7139, H7144, H7146, H7217, H7226, H7218, H7541, H7636, H7641, H7872, G03460, G07550, G27750, G27760, G47190

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:4; 1:16; 1:49; 4:2; 4:22; 5:7; 5:18; 6:5; 6:7; 6:9; 6:11; 6:18; 7:2; 8:12; 10:4; 13:3; 14:4; 14:40; 14:44; 20:28; 21:20; 23:9; 23:14; 23:28; 25:4; 25:15; 26:2; 30:1; 31:26; 31:49; 32:28; 36:1](#))

heart

Definition:

The term “heart” refers to the internal bodily organ that pumps blood throughout the body in people and animals. However, in the Bible the term “heart” is often used figuratively to refer to a person’s thoughts, emotions, desires, or will.

- To have a “hard heart” is a common expression that means a person stubbornly refuses to obey God.
- The expressions “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” mean to do something with complete sincerity, commitment, or willingness, holding nothing back.
- The expression “take it to heart” means to treat something seriously and apply it to one’s life.
- The term “brokenhearted” describes a person who is very sad. That person has been deeply hurt emotionally.

Translation Suggestions

- Some languages use a different body part such as “stomach” or “liver” to refer to these ideas.
- Other languages may use one word to express some of these concepts and another word to express others.
- If “heart” or other body part does not have this meaning, some languages may need to express this literally with terms such as “thoughts” or “emotions” or “desires.”
- Depending on the context, “with all my heart” or “with my whole heart” could be translated as “with all my energy” or “with complete dedication” or “completely” or “with total commitment.”
- The expression “take it to heart” could be translated as “treat it seriously” or “carefully think about it.”
- The expression “hard-hearted” could also be translated as “stubbornly rebellious” or “refusing to obey” or “continually disobeying God.”
- Ways to translate “brokenhearted” could include “very sad” or “feeling deeply hurt.”

(See also: hard)

Bible References:

- 1 John 3:17
- 1 Thessalonians 2:4
- 2 Thessalonians 3:13-15
- Acts 8:22
- Acts 15:9
- Luke 8:15
- Mark 2:6
- Matthew 5:8
- Matthew 22:37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1079, H2436, H2504, H2910, H3519, H3629, H3820, H3821, H3823, H3824, H3825, H3826, H4578, H5315, H5640, H7130, H7307, H7356, H7907, G06740, G12820, G12710, G21330, G25880, G25890, G46410, G46980, G55900

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:39](#); [16:28](#); [16:38](#); [19:13](#); [24:13](#); [32:7](#); [32:9](#); [35:30](#))

Hittite

Definition:

The Hittites were descendants of Ham through his son Canaan. They became a large empire located in what is now Turkey and northern Palestine.

- Abraham bought a piece of property from Ephron the Hittite so that he could bury his deceased wife Sarah in a cave there. Eventually Abraham and several of his descendants were also buried in that cave.
- Esau's parents were grieved when he married two Hittite women.
- One of David's mighty men was named Uriah the Hittite.
- Some of the foreign women that Solomon married were Hittites. These foreign women turned Solomon's heart away from God because of the false gods they worshiped.
- The Hittites were often a threat to the Israelites, both physically and spiritually.

(See also: [descendant](#), Esau, foreigner, Ham, [mighty](#), Solomon, Uriah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 23:11
- Genesis 25:10
- Joshua 1:4-5
- Nehemiah 9:8
- Numbers 13:27-29

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2850

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:29](#))

holy, holiness, unholy, sacred

Definition:

The terms “holy” and “holiness” refer to the character of God that is totally set apart and separated from everything that is sinful and imperfect.

- Only God is absolutely holy. He makes people and things holy.
- A person who is holy belongs to God and has been set apart for the purpose of serving God and bringing him glory.
- An object that God has declared to be holy is one that he has set apart for his glory and use, such as an altar that is for the purpose of offering sacrifices to him.
- People cannot approach him unless he allows them to, because he is holy and they are merely human beings, sinful and imperfect.
- In the Old Testament, God set apart the priests as holy for special service to him. They had to be ceremonially cleansed from sin in order to approach God.
- God also set apart as holy certain places and things that belonged to him or in which he revealed himself, such as his temple.

Literally, the term “unholy” means “not holy.” It describes someone or something that does not honor God.

- This word is used to describe someone who dishonors God by rebelling against him.
- A thing that is called “unholy” could be described as being common, profane or unclean. It does not belong to God.

The term “sacred” describes something that relates to worshiping God or to the pagan worship of false gods.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sacred” was often used to describe the stone pillars and other objects used in the worship of false gods. This could also be translated as “religious.”
- “Sacred songs” and “sacred music” refer to music that was sung or played for God’s glory. This could be translated as “music for worshiping Yahweh” or “songs that praise God.”
- The phrase “sacred duties” referred to the “religious duties” or “rituals” that a priest performed to lead people in worshiping God. It could also refer to the rituals performed by a pagan priest to worship a false god

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “holy” might include “set apart for God” or “belonging to God” or “completely pure” or “perfectly sinless” or “separated from sin.”
- To “make holy” is often translated as “sanctify” in English. It could also be translated as “set apart (someone) for God’s glory.”
- Ways to translate “unholy” could include “not holy” or “not belonging to God” or “not honoring to God” or “not godly.”
- In some contexts, “unholy” could be translated as “unclean.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, [consecrate](#), sanctify, [set apart](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 28:22
- 2 Kings 3:2
- Lamentations 4:1
- Ezekiel 20:18-20
- Matthew 7:6

- Mark 8:38
- Acts 7:33
- Acts 11:8
- Romans 1:2
- 2 Corinthians 12:3-5
- Colossians 1:22
- 1 Thessalonians 3:13
- 1 Thessalonians 4:7
- 2 Timothy 3:15

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:16** He (God) blessed the seventh day and made it **holy**, because on this day he rested from his work.
- **9:12** "You are standing on **holy** ground."
- **13:1** "If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a kingdom of priests, and a **holy** nation."
- **13:5** "Always be sure to keep the Sabbath day **holy**."
- **22:5** "So the baby will be **holy**, the Son of God."
- **50:2** As we wait for Jesus to return, God wants us to live in a way that is **holy** and that honors him.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H2455, H2623, H4676, H4720, H6918, H6922, H6942, H6944, H6948, G00370, G00380, G00400, G00400, G00410, G00420, G04620, G18590, G21500, G24120, G24130, G28390, G37410, G37420

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:28; 3:31; 3:32; 3:47; 3:50; 4:4; 4:15; 4:19; 4:20; 5:9; 5:10; 5:17; 6:5; 6:8; 6:20; 7:9; 7:13; 7:19; 7:25; 7:31; 7:37; 7:43; 7:49; 7:55; 7:61; 7:67; 7:73; 7:79; 7:85; 7:86; 8:19; 15:40; 16:3; 18:3; 18:5; 18:8; 18:9; 18:10; 18:16; 18:17; 18:19; 18:32; 28:18; 28:25; 28:26; 29:1; 29:7; 29:12; 31:6; 35:25](#))

honey, honeycomb

Definition:

“Honey” is the sweet, sticky, edible substance that honeybees make out of flower nectar. Honeycomb is the waxy frame where the bees store honey.

- Depending on the kind, honey can be yellowish or brownish in color.
- Honey can be found in the wild, such as in the hollow of a tree, or wherever bees make a nest. People also raise bees in hives in order to produce honey to eat or sell, but probably the honey mentioned in the Bible was wild honey.
- Three people that the Bible specifically mentions as eating wild honey were Jonathan, Samson, and John the Baptist.
- This term is often used figuratively to describe something that is sweet or very pleasurable. For example, God’s words and decrees are said to be “sweeter than honey.” (See also: [Simile](#), [Metaphor](#))
- Sometimes a person’s words are described as seeming sweet like honey, but instead result in deceiving and harming others.

(See also: John (the Baptist), Jonathan, Philistines, Samson)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 14:1-3
- Deuteronomy 6:3
- Exodus 13:3-5
- Joshua 5:6
- Proverbs 5:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1706, H3293, H3295, H5317, H6688, G31920

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:27](#); [14:8](#); [16:13](#); [16:14](#))

Hoshea

Facts:

Hoshea was the name of a king of Israel and several other men in the Old Testament.

- Hoshea son of Alah was a king of Israel for nine years during part of the reigns of Ahaz and Hezekiah, kings of Judah.
- Joshua son of Nun was formerly named Hoshea. Moses changed Hoshea's name to Joshua before sending him and eleven other men to spy out the land of the Canaanites.
- After Moses died, Joshua led the people of Israel to take possession of the land of Canaan.
- A different man named Hoshea was a son of Azariah and was one of the leaders of the Ephraimites.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: Ahaz, [Canaan](#), [Ephraim](#), Hezekiah, [Joshua](#), [Moses](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:20
- 2 Kings 15:30
- 2 Kings 17:3
- 2 Kings 18:1
- 2 Kings 18:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1954

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:8](#); [13:16](#))

house, household

Definition:

The term “house” refers to a small building, shelter, or tent, usually the place where a family sleeps. The term is often used figuratively in the Bible to mean various concepts such as “household” or “descendants,” etc.

- Sometimes the term “house” means “household,” referring to all the people who live together in one house or multi-structure home compound (whether buildings or tents), including family members and all their servants.
- Sometimes the term “house” means “family” or “descendants,” referring to all the people related to or descended from a particular person. For example, the phrase “house of David” refers to all the descendants of King David.
- The terms “house of God” and “house of Yahweh” refer to the tabernacle or temple. These expressions can also refer generally to a central place where Yahweh was worshipped.
- The phrase “house of Israel” can refer generally to the entire nation of Israel or more specifically to the tribes of the northern kingdom of Israel.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, “house” could be translated as “household” or “people” or “family” or “descendants” or “temple” or “dwelling place.”
- The phrase “house of David” could be translated as “clan of David” or “family of David” or “descendants of David.” Related expressions could be translated in a similar way.
- Different ways to translate “house of Israel” could include “people of Israel” or “Israel’s descendants” or “Israelites.”
- The phrase “house of Yahweh” could be translated as “Yahweh’s temple” or “place where Yahweh is worshipped” or “place where Yahweh meets with his people” or “where Yahweh dwells.” The phrase “house of God” could be translated in a similar way.

(See also: [descendant](#), house of God, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#), house of David, kingdom of Israel)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:42
- Acts 7:49
- Genesis 39:4
- Genesis 41:40
- Luke 8:39
- Matthew 10:6
- Matthew 15:24

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1004, H1005, G36090, G36130, G36140, G36240

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:4; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:44; 1:45; 2:2; 2:32; 2:34; 3:15; 3:20; 3:24; 3:30; 3:35; 4:2; 4:22; 4:29; 4:40; 4:42; 7:2; 12:7; 16:32; 17:2; 17:3; 17:6; 17:8; 18:1; 18:31; 20:29; 22:18; 24:13; 25:14; 25:15; 26:2; 30:10; 30:16; 32:18; 34:14](#))

humble, humbled, humility

Definition:

The term “humble” describes a person who does not think of himself as better than others. He is not proud or arrogant. Humility is the quality of being humble.

- To be humble before God means to understand one’s weakness and imperfection in comparison with his greatness, wisdom and perfection.
- When a person humbles himself, he puts himself in a position of lower importance.
- Humility is caring about the needs of others more than one’s own needs.
- Humility also means serving with a modest attitude when using one’s gifts and abilities.
- The phrase “be humble” could be translated as “don’t be prideful.”
- “Humble yourself before God” could be translated as “Submit your will to God, recognizing his greatness.”

(See also: [proud](#))

Bible References:

- James 1:21
- James 3:13
- James 4:10
- Luke 14:11
- Luke 18:14
- Matthew 18:4
- Matthew 23:12

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:2** David was a **humble** and righteous man who trusted and obeyed God.
- **34:10** “God will **humble** everyone who is proud, and he will lift up whoever **humbles** himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1792, H3665, H6031, H6035, H6038, H6041, H6800, H6819, H7511, H7807, H7812, H8213, H8214, H8215, H8217, H8467, G08580, G42360, G42390, G42400, G50110, G50120, G50130, G53910

(Go back to: [Numbers 30:13](#))

inherit, inheritance, heir

Definition:

The term “inherit” refers to receiving something valuable from a parent after a parent dies. The term can also refer to receiving something valuable from some other person because of a special relationship with that person. An “inheritance” is the things that are received, and an “heir” is a person who receives an inheritance.

- A physical inheritance that is received may be money, land, or other kinds of property.
- God promised Abraham and his descendants that they would inherit the land of Canaan, that it would belong to them forever.

Translation Suggestions:

- As always, consider first whether there are already terms in the target language for the concept of an heir or an inheritance, and use those terms.
- Depending on the context, other ways that the term “inherit” could be translated might include “receive” or “possess” or “come into possession of.”
- Ways to translate “inheritance” could include “promised gift” or “secure possession.”
- The term “heir” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “privileged child who receives the father’s possessions.”
- The term “heritage” could be translated as “inherited blessings.”

(See also: heir, [Canaan](#), [Promised Land](#), [possess](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 6:9
- 1 Peter 1:4
- 2 Samuel 21:3
- Acts 7:4-5
- Deuteronomy 20:16
- Galatians 5:21
- Genesis 15:7
- Hebrews 9:15
- Jeremiah 2:7
- Luke 15:11
- Matthew 19:29
- Psalm 79:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:6** When Abram arrived in Canaan God said, “Look all around you. I will give to you and your descendants all the land that you can see as an **inheritance**.”
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, “Teacher, what must I do to **inherit** eternal life?”
- **35:3** “There was a man who had two sons. The younger son told his father, ‘Father, I want my **inheritance** now!’ So the father divided his property between the two sons.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2490, H2506, H3423, H3425, H4181, H5157, H5159, G28160, G28170, G28190, G28200

(Go back to: Numbers 13:30; 14:12; 16:14; 18:20; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 21:24; 21:32; 21:35; 26:53; 26:54; 26:55; 26:56; 26:62; 27:7; 27:8; 27:9; 27:10; 27:11; 32:18; 32:19; 32:32; 32:39; 33:52; 33:53; 33:54; Notes; 34:2; 34:13; 34:14; 34:15; 34:17; 35:8; Notes; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:7; 36:8; 36:9; 36:12)

iniquity

Definition:

The term “iniquity” is a word that is very similar in meaning to the term “sin,” but may more specifically refer to conscious acts of wrongdoing or great wickedness.

- The word “iniquity” literally means a twisting or distorting (of the law). It refers to major injustice.
- Iniquity could be described as deliberate, harmful actions against other people.
- Other definitions of iniquity include “perversity” and “depravity,” which are both words that describe conditions of terrible sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “iniquity” could be translated as “wickedness” or “perverse actions” or “harmful acts.”
- Often, “iniquity” occurs in the same text as the word “sin” and “transgression” so it is important to have different ways of translating these terms.

(See also: [sin](#), [transgress](#), trespass)

Bible References:

- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 34:5-7
- Genesis 15:14-16
- Genesis 44:16
- Habakkuk 2:12
- Matthew 13:41
- Matthew 23:27-28
- Micah 3:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H1942, H5753, H5758, H5766, H5771, H5932, H5999, H7562, G00920, G00930, G04580, G38920, G41890

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:15](#); [5:31](#); [14:18](#); [14:34](#); [15:31](#); [18:1](#); [18:23](#); [30:15](#))

innocent

Definition:

The term “innocent” means to not be guilty of a crime or other wrongdoing. It can also refer more generally to people who are not involved in evil things.

- A person accused of doing something wrong is innocent if he has not committed that wrong.
- Sometimes the term “innocent” is used to refer to people who have done nothing wrong to deserve the bad treatment they are receiving, as in an enemy army attacking “innocent people.”
- In the Bible, “blood” can represent “killing,” so “innocent blood” refers to “killing people who did not deserve to die.”

Translation Suggestions:

- In most contexts, the term “innocent” can be translated as “not guilty” or “not responsible” or “not to blame” for something.
- When referring in general to innocent people, this term could be translated as “who have done nothing wrong” or “who are not involved in evil.”
- “To shed innocent blood” can be translated as “to kill people who did not deserve to die.”

(See also: [guilt](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 4:4
- 1 Samuel 19:5
- Acts 20:26
- Exodus 23:7
- Jeremiah 22:17
- Job 9:23
- Romans 16:18

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** After two years, Joseph was still in prison, even though he was **innocent**.
- **40:4** One of them mocked Jesus, but the other said, “Do you have no fear of God? We are guilty, but this man is **innocent**.”
- **40:8** When the soldier guarding Jesus saw everything that happened, he said, “Certainly, this man was **innocent**. He was the Son of God.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2136, H2600, H2643, H5352, H5355, H5356, G01210

(Go back to: [Numbers 32:22](#))

Israel, Israelites

Facts:

The term "Israel" is the name that God gave to Jacob. Often it refers to the nation that is descended from him.

- The name Israel probably means "He struggles with God."
- The descendants of Jacob became known as the "sons of Israel" or the "people of Israel" or the "nation of Israel" or the "Israelites."
- God formed his covenant with the people of Israel. They were his chosen people.
- The nation of Israel consisted of twelve tribes.
- Soon after King Solomon died, Israel was divided into two kingdoms: the southern kingdom, called "Judah," and the northern kingdom, called "Israel."
- Often the term "Israel" can be translated as "the people of Israel" or "the nation of Israel," depending on the context.

(See also: [Jacob](#), kingdom of Israel, Judah, [nation](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1
- 1 Kings 8:2
- Acts 2:36
- Acts 7:24
- Acts 13:23
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 24:21
- Mark 12:29
- Matthew 2:6
- Matthew 27:9
- Philippians 3:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:15** The descendants of the twelve sons became the twelve tribes of **Israel**.
- **9:3** The Egyptians forced the **Israelites** to build many buildings and even whole cities.
- **9:5** A certain **Israelite** woman gave birth to a baby boy.
- **10:1** They said, "This is what the God of **Israel** says, 'Let my people go!'"
- **14:12** But despite all this, the people of *_Israel_* complained and grumbled against God and against Moses.
- **15:9** God fought for **Israel** that day. He caused the Amorites to be confused and he sent large hailstones that killed many of the Amorites.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of **Israel** *its own section of the Promised Land. Then God gave _Israel_ peace along all its borders.*
- **16:16** So God punished *_Israel_* again for worshipping idols.
- **43:6** "Men of **Israel**, Jesus was a man who did many mighty signs and wonders by the power of God, as you have seen and already know."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3478, H3479, H3481, H3482, G09350, G24740, G24750

(Go back to: Numbers 1:2; 1:3; 1:16; 1:20; 1:44; 1:45; 1:49; 1:52; 1:53; 1:54; 2:2; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 3:8; 3:9; 3:12; 3:13; 3:38; 3:40; 3:41; 3:42; 3:45; 3:46; 3:50; 4:46; 5:2; 5:4; 5:6; 5:9; 5:12; 6:2; 6:23; 6:27; 7:2; 7:84; 8:6; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 9:2; 9:4; 9:5; 9:7; 9:10; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:22; 10:4; 10:12; 10:28; 10:29; 10:36; 11:4; 11:16; 11:30; 13:2; 13:3; 13:24; 13:26; 13:32; 14:2; 14:5; 14:7; 14:10; 14:27; 14:39; 15:2; 15:18; 15:25; 15:26; 15:29; 15:32; 15:38; 16:2; 16:9; 16:25; 16:34; 16:38; 16:40; 16:41; 17:2; 17:5; 17:6; 17:9; 17:12; 18:5; 18:6; 18:8; 18:11; 18:14; 18:19; 18:20; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 18:28; 18:32; 19:2; 19:9; 19:10; 19:13; 20:1; 20:12; 20:13; 20:14; 20:19; 20:21; 20:22; 20:24; 20:29; 21:1; 21:2; 21:3; 21:6; 21:10; 21:17; 21:21; 21:23; 21:24; 21:25; 21:31; 22:1; 22:2; 22:3; 23:7; 23:10; 23:21; 23:23; 24:1; 24:2; 24:5; 24:17; 25:1; 25:3; 25:4; 25:5; 25:6; 25:8; 25:11; 25:13; 25:14; 26:2; 26:4; 26:5; 26:51; 26:62; 26:63; 26:64; 27:8; 27:11; 27:12; 27:20; 27:21; 28:2; 29:40; 30:1; 31:2; 31:4; 31:5; 31:9; 31:12; 31:16; 31:30; 31:42; 31:47; 31:54; 32:4; 32:7; 32:9; 32:13; 32:14; 32:17; 32:18; 32:22; 32:28; 33:1; 33:3; 33:5; 33:38; 33:40; 33:51; 34:2; 34:13; 34:29; 35:2; 35:8; 35:10; 35:15; 35:34; 36:1; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:5; 36:7; 36:8; 36:9; 36:13)

Issachar

Facts:

Issachar was Jacob's ninth son. He was Leah's fifth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Issachar" or "Issachar."
- The meaning of the name is unknown, but it is similar to a Hebrew word meaning "reward, hire."
- The tribe of Issachar settled in central Canaan, southwest of the Sea of Galilee. Issachar's land was bordered by the lands of Naphtali, Zebulun, Manasseh, and Gad.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:18
- Exodus 1:1-5
- Ezekiel 48:23-26
- Joshua 17:10

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3485, G24660

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:8](#); [1:28](#); [1:29](#); [2:5](#); [7:18](#); [10:15](#); [13:7](#); [26:23](#); [26:25](#); [34:26](#))

Jacob, Israel

Facts:

Jacob was the younger twin son of Isaac by Rebekah. God changed his name to "Israel." His descendants became the nation of Israel.

- Jacob is the last of the three patriarchs of the Israelite nation: Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. The descendants of Jacob's twelve sons became the twelve tribes of Israel.
- The name Jacob is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "heel." As Jacob was being born, he was holding onto the heel of his twin brother Esau. In the Old Testament times, the heel was a body part associated both with attack and with the rear part of a person's body. The Hebrew name Jacob was probably associated with the idea of attacking someone from behind.
- Many years later, God changed Jacob's name to "Israel," which probably means "He struggles with God."
- Jacob married Laban's two daughters, Leah and Rachel, as well as each of their servants, Zilpah and Bilhah. These four women mothered the twelve sons who became the ancestral fathers of the twelve tribes of Israel.
- In the New Testament, a different man named Jacob is listed as being Joseph's father in Matthew's genealogy.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Israel](#), twelve tribes of Israel, Leah, Rachel, Zilpah, Bilhah, deceive, Esau, Isaac, Rebekah, Laban)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:11
- Acts 7:46
- Genesis 25:26
- Genesis 29:1-3
- Genesis 32:1-2
- John 4:4-5
- Matthew 8:11-13
- Matthew 22:32

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **7:1** As the boys grew up, Rebekah loved **Jacob**, but Isaac loved Esau. **Jacob** loved to stay at home, but Esau loved to hunt.
- **7:7** **Jacob** lived there for many years, and during that time he married and had twelve sons and a daughter. God made him very wealthy.
- **7:8** After twenty years away from his home in Canaan, **Jacob** returned there with his family, his servants, and all his herds of animals.
- **7:10** The covenant promises God had promised to Abraham and then to Isaac now passed on to **Jacob**.
- **8:1** Many years later, when **Jacob** was an old man, he sent his favorite son, Joseph, to check on his brothers who were taking care of the herds.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3290, G23840

(Go back to: [Numbers 23:7](#); [23:10](#); [23:21](#); [23:23](#); [24:5](#); [24:17](#); [24:19](#); [32:11](#))

jealous, jealousy

Definition:

The terms “jealous” and “jealousy” refer to a strong desire to protect the purity of a relationship. They can also refer to a strong desire to keep possession of something or someone.

- These terms are often used to describe the angry feeling that a person has toward a spouse who has been unfaithful in their marriage.
- When used in the Bible, these terms often refer to God’s strong desire for his people to remain pure and unstained by sin.
- God is also “jealous” for his name, desiring that it be treated with honor and reverence.
- Another meaning of jealous involves being angry that someone else is successful or more popular. This is close in meaning to the word “envious.”

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “jealous” could include “strong protective desire” or “possessive desire.”
- The term “jealousy” could be translated as “strong protective feeling” or “possessive feeling.”
- When talking about God, make sure the translation of these terms does not give a negative meaning of being resentful of someone else.
- In the context of people’s wrong feelings of anger toward other people who are more successful, the terms “envious” and “envy” could be used. But these terms should not be used for God.

(See also: envy)

Bible References:

- 2 Corinthians 12:20
- Deuteronomy 5:9
- Exodus 20:5
- Ezekiel 36:5
- Joshua 24:19
- Nahum 1:2-3
- Romans 13:13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7067, H7068, H7072, G22050, G38630

(Go back to: [Numbers 5 General Notes](#))

Jebus, Jebusite

Facts:

The Jebusites were a people group living in the land of Canaan. They were descended from Ham's son Canaan.

- The Jebusites lived in the city of Jebus, and its name was later changed to Jerusalem when King David conquered it.
- Melchizedek, the king of Salem, was probably of Jebusite origin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), Ham, Jerusalem, Melchizedek)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:14
- 1 Kings 9:20-21
- Exodus 3:7-8
- Genesis 10:16
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Judges 1:20-21

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2982, H2983

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:29](#))

Jericho

Facts:

Jericho was a powerful city in the land of Canaan. It was located just west of the Jordan River and just north of the Salt Sea.

- As all Canaanites did, the people of Jericho worshiped false gods.
- Jericho was the first city in the land of Canaan that God told the Israelites to conquer.
- When Joshua led the Israelites against Jericho, God did a great miracle to help them defeat the city.

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Jordan River](#), [Joshua](#), [miracle](#), [Salt Sea](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:78
- Joshua 2:1-3
- Joshua 7:2-3
- Luke 18:35
- Mark 10:46-48
- Matthew 20:29-31
- Numbers 22:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:1** Joshua sent two spies to the Canaanite city of **Jericho**.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of **Jericho**.
- **15:5** Then the walls around **Jericho** fell down! The Israelites destroyed everything in the city as God had commanded.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3405, G24100

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:63](#); [31:12](#); [33:48](#); [33:50](#); [34:15](#); [35:1](#); [36:13](#))

Jordan River, Jordan

Facts:

The Jordan River is a river that flows from north to south, and forms the eastern boundary of the land that was called Canaan.

- Today, the Jordan River separates Israel on its west from Jordan on its east.
- The Jordan River flows through the Sea of Galilee and then empties into the Dead Sea.
- When Joshua led the Israelites into Canaan, they had to cross the Jordan River. It was too deep to cross normally, but God miraculously stopped the river from flowing so they could walk across the river bed.
- Often in the Bible the Jordan River is referred to as “the Jordan.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), Salt Sea, Sea of Galilee)

Bible References:

- Genesis 32:9-10
- John 1:26-28
- John 3:25-26
- Luke 3:3
- Matthew 3:6
- Matthew 3:13-15
- Matthew 4:14-16
- Matthew 19:1-2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the **Jordan River** to enter into the Promised Land.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the **Jordan River**, God told Joshua how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.
- **19:14** Elisha told him (Naaman) to dip himself seven times in the **Jordan River**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3383, G24460

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:29; 22:1; 26:3; 26:63; 31:12; 32:5; 32:19; 32:21; 32:29; 32:32; 33:48; 33:49; 33:50; 33:51; 34:12; 34:15; 35:1; 35:10; 35:14; 36:13](#))

Joseph (OT)

Facts:

Joseph was Jacob's eleventh son. He was Rachel's first son. The descendants of his two sons Ephraim and Manasseh became two of the tribes of Israel.

- The Hebrew name Joseph is similar to both the Hebrew word meaning "to add, increase" and the Hebrew word meaning "to gather, take away."
- A large portion of the book of Genesis is dedicated to the story of Joseph, how he remained faithful to God throughout his many difficulties and forgave his brothers who had sold him to be a slave in Egypt.
- Eventually God raised Joseph to the second highest place of power in Egypt and used him to save the people of Egypt and the surrounding nations in a time when there was little food. Joseph helped save his own family from starving and brought them to live with him in Egypt.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Ephraim](#), [Manasseh](#), [Jacob](#), [Rachel](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 30:22-24
- Genesis 33:1-3
- Genesis 37:1-2
- Genesis 37:23-24
- Genesis 41:55-57
- John 4:4-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:2 Joseph's** brothers hated him because their father loved him most and because Joseph had dreamed that he would be their ruler.
- **8:4** The slave traders took **Joseph** to Egypt.
- **8:5** Even in prison, **Joseph** remained faithful to God, and God blessed him.
- **8:7** God had given **Joseph** the ability to interpret dreams, so Pharaoh had Joseph brought to him from the prison.
- **8:9 Joseph** told the people to store up large amounts of food during the seven years of good harvests.
- **9:2** The Egyptians no longer remembered **Joseph** and all he had done to help them.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3084, H3130, G25000, G25010

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:10](#); [1:32](#); [13:7](#); [13:11](#); [26:28](#); [26:37](#); [27:1](#); [32:33](#); [34:23](#); [36:1](#); [36:5](#); [36:12](#))

Joshua

Facts:

There were several Israelite men named Joshua in the Bible. The most well-known is Joshua son of Nun who was Moses' helper and who later became an important leader of God's people.

- Joshua was one of the twelve spies whom Moses sent to explore the Promised Land.
- Along with Caleb, Joshua urged the Israelite people to obey God's command to enter the Promised Land and defeat the Canaanites.
- Many years later, after Moses died, God appointed Joshua to lead the people of Israel into the Promised Land.
- In the first and most famous battle against the Canaanites, Joshua led the Israelites to defeat the city of Jericho.
- The Old Testament book of Joshua tells how Joshua led the Israelites in taking control of the Promised Land and how he assigned each tribe of Israel a part of the land to live on.
- Joshua son of Jozadak is mentioned in the books of Haggai and Zechariah; he was a high priest who helped rebuild the walls of Jerusalem.
- There are several other men named Joshua mentioned in the genealogies and elsewhere in the Bible.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [Haggai](#), [Jericho](#), [Moses](#), [Promised Land](#), [Zechariah \(OT\)](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 7:25-27
- Deuteronomy 3:21
- Exodus 17:10
- Joshua 1:3
- Numbers 27:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:4** When the Israelites reached the edge of Canaan, Moses chose twelve men, one from each tribe of Israel. He gave the men instructions to go and spy on the land to see what it was like.
- **14:6** Immediately Caleb and **Joshua**, the other two spies, said, "It is true that the people of Canaan are tall and strong, but we can certainly defeat them!"
- **14:8** "Except for **Joshua** and Caleb, everyone who is twenty years old or older will die there and never enter the Promised Land."
- **14:14** Moses was now very old, so God chose **Joshua** to help him lead the people.
- **14:15** **Joshua** was a good leader because he trusted and obeyed God.
- **15:3** After the people crossed the Jordan River, God told **Joshua** how to attack the powerful city of Jericho.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3091, G24240

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:28](#); [13:16](#); [14:6](#); [14:30](#); [14:38](#); [26:65](#); [27:18](#); [27:22](#); [32:12](#); [32:28](#); [34:17](#))

joy, joyful, rejoice, glad

Definition:

joy

The term “joy” refers to a feeling of delight or deep satisfaction. The related term “joyful” describes a person who feels very glad and is full of deep happiness.

- A person feels joy when he has a deep sense that what he is experiencing is very good.
- God is the one who gives true joy to people.
- Having joy does not depend on pleasant circumstances. God can give people joy even when very difficult things are happening in their lives.
- Sometimes places are described as joyful, such as houses or cities. This means that the people who live there are joyful.

rejoice

The term “rejoice” means to be full of joy and gladness.

- This term often refers to being very happy about the good things that God has done.
- It could be translated as “be very happy” or “be very glad” or “be full of joy.”
- When Mary said “my soul rejoices in God my Savior,” she meant “God my Savior has made me very happy” or “I feel so joyful because of what God my Savior has done for me.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “joy” could also be translated as “gladness” or “delight” or “great happiness.”
- The phrase, “be joyful” could be translated as “rejoice” or “be very glad” or it could be translated “be very happy in God’s goodness.”
- A person who is joyful could be described as “very happy” or “delighted” or “deeply glad.”
- A phrase such as “make a joyful shout” could be translated as “shout in a way that shows you are very happy.”
- A “joyful city” or “joyful house” could be translated as “city where joyful people live” or “house full of joyful people” or “city whose people are very happy.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Bible References:

- Nehemiah 8:10
- Psalm 48:2
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Matthew 2:9-10
- Luke 15:7
- Luke 19:37-38
- John 3:29
- Acts 16:32-34
- Romans 5:1-2
- Romans 15:30-32
- Galatians 5:23
- Philippians 4:10-13

- 1 Thessalonians 1:6-7
- 1 Thessalonians 5:16
- Philemon 1:4-7
- James 1:2
- 3 John 1:1-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **33:7** "The rocky ground is a person who hears God's word and accepts it with **joy**."
- **34:4** "The kingdom of God is also like hidden treasure that someone hid in a field.. Another man found the treasure and then buried it again. He was so filled with **joy**, that he went and sold everything he had and used the money to buy that field."
- **41:7** The women were full of fear and great **joy**. They ran to tell the disciples the good news.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1523, H1524, H1525, H2302, H2304, H2305, H2654, H2898, H4885, H5937, H5947, H5965, H5970, H6342, H6670, H7440, H7442, H7444, H7445, H7797, H7832, H8055, H8056, H8057, H8342, H8643, G00200, G00210, G21650, G21670, G27440, G46400, G47960, G49130, G54630, G54790

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:10](#))

Judah

Facts:

Judah was Jacob's fourth son. He was Leah's fourth son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Judah" or "Judah."
- His name sounds similar to the Hebrew word meaning "praise."
- The tribe of Judah settled in the southern part of Canaan, including the mountainous area to the south of the city of Jerusalem. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Judah" refers to the land given to the tribe of Judah.
- In the Old Testament, the name Judah is sometimes used to refer to the whole southern kingdom of Israel (similar to how the name Ephraim is sometimes used to refer to the whole northern kingdom).
- King David, King Solomon, and all the kings of the southern kingdom were descendants of Judah. Jesus, too, was a descendant of Judah.
- The words "Jew" and "Judea" come from the name "Judah."

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, Judah (kingdom), Jew, [Judea](#), [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 1:9
- Genesis 29:35
- Genesis 38:2
- Luke 3:33
- Ruth 1:2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3063

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:7](#))

Judea, Judah

Facts:

The term “Judea” refers to an area of land in ancient Israel. It is sometimes used in a narrow sense and other times in a broad sense.

- Sometimes “Judea” is used in a narrow sense to refer only to the province located in the southern part of ancient Israel just west of the Dead Sea. Some translations call this province “Judah.”
- Other times “Judea” has a broad sense and refers to all the provinces of ancient Israel, including Galilee, Samaria, Perea, Idumea and Judea (Judah).
- If translators want to make the distinction clear, the broad sense of Judea could be translated as “Judea Country” and the narrow sense could be translated as “Judea Province,” or “Judah Province” since this is the part of ancient Israel where the tribe of Judah had originally lived.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Galilee, Edom, [Judah](#), Judah, Samaria)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14
- Acts 2:9
- Acts 9:32
- Acts 12:19
- John 3:22-24
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 4:44
- Luke 5:17
- Mark 10:1-4
- Matthew 2:1
- Matthew 2:5
- Matthew 2:22-23
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 19:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: G24530

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:26; 1:27; 2:3; 2:9; 7:12; 10:14; 13:6; 26:19; 26:20; 26:22; 34:19](#))

judge, judgment

Definition:

The terms “judge” and “judgment” often refer to making a decision about whether or not something is good, wise, or right. However, these terms can also refer to actions performed by a person as the result of a decision, usually in the context of deciding that something is bad, wrong, or evil.

- The terms “judge” and “judgment” can also mean “to cause harm to” (usually because God has decided a person or nation’s actions are wicked).
- The “judgment of God” often refers to his decision to condemn something or someone as sinful.
- God’s judgment usually includes punishing people for their sin.
- The term “judge” can also mean “condemn.” God instructs his people not to judge each other in this way.
- Another meaning is “arbitrate between” or “judge between,” as in deciding which person is right in a dispute between them.
- In some contexts, God’s “judgments” are what he has decided is right and just. They are similar to his decrees, laws, or precepts.
- “Judgment” can refer to wise decision-making ability. A person who lacks “judgment” does not have the wisdom to make wise decisions.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate to “judge” could include to “decide” or to “condemn” or to “punish” or to “decree.”
- The term “judgment” could be translated as “punishment” or “decision” or “verdict” or “decree” or “condemnation.”
- In some contexts, the phrase “in the judgment” could also be translated as “on judgment day” or “during the time when God judges people.”

(See also: decree, judge, judgment day, [just](#), law, [law](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:17
- 1 Kings 3:9
- Acts 10:42-43
- Isaiah 3:14
- James 2:4
- Luke 6:37
- Micah 3:9-11
- Psalm 54:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:16** The prophets warned the people that if they did not stop doing evil and start obeying God, then God would **judge** them as guilty, and he would punish them.
- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a kingdom and **judges** the people. The Messiah would come would be the perfect king who would sit on the throne of his ancestor David. He would reign over the whole world forever, and who would always **judge** honestly and make the right decisions.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted to the other religious leaders, “We do not need any more witnesses! You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your **judgment?**”

- **50:14** But God will **judge** everyone who does not believe in Jesus. He will throw them into hell, where they will weep and grind their teeth in anguish forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0148, H0430, H1777, H1778, H1779, H1780, H1781, H1782, H2940, H4055, H4941, H6414, H6415, H6416, H6417, H6419, H6485, H8196, H8199, H8201, G01440, G03500, G09680, G11060, G12520, G13410, G13450, G13480, G13490, G29170, G29190, G29200, G29220, G29230, G42320

(Go back to: [Numbers 9:3](#); [27:5](#); [27:11](#); [35:24](#); [35:29](#))

just, justice, unjust, injustice, justify, justification

Definition:

“Just” and “justice” refer to treating people fairly according to God’s laws. Human laws that reflect God’s standard of right behavior toward others are also just.

- To be “just” is to act in a fair and right way toward others. It also implies honesty and integrity to do what is morally right in God’s eyes.
- To act “justly” means to treat people in a way that is right, good, and proper according to God’s laws.
- To receive “justice” means to be treated fairly under the law, either being protected by the law or being punished for breaking the law.
- Sometimes the term “just” has the broader meaning of “righteous” or “following God’s laws.”

The terms “unjust” and “unjustly” refer to treating people in an unfair and often harmful manner.

- An “injustice” is something bad that is done to someone that the person did not deserve. It refers to treating people unfairly.
- Injustice also means that some people are treated badly while others are treated well.
- Someone who is acting in an unjust way is being “partial” or “prejudiced” because he is not treating people equally.

The terms “justify” and “justification” refer to causing a guilty person to be righteous. Only God can truly justify people.

- When God justifies people, he forgives their sins and makes it as though they have no sin. He justifies sinners who repent and trust in Jesus to save them from their sins.
- “Justification” refers to what God does when he forgives a person’s sins and declares that person to be righteous in his sight.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways to translate “just” could include “morally right” or “fair.”
- The term “justice” could be translated as “fair treatment” or “deserved consequences.”
- To “act justly” could be translated as “treat fairly” or “behave in a just way.”
- In some contexts, “just” could be translated as “righteous” or “upright.”
- Depending on the context, “unjust” could also be translated as “unfair” or “partial” or “unrighteous.”
- The phrase “the unjust” could be translated as “the unjust ones” or “unjust people” or “people who treat others unfairly” or “unrighteous people” or “people who disobey God.”
- The term “unjustly” could be translated as “in an unfair manner” or “wrongly” or “unfairly.”
- Ways to translate “injustice” could include, “wrong treatment” or “unfair treatment” or “acting unfairly.” (See: [abstractnouns](#))
- Other ways to translate “justify” could include “declare (someone) to be righteous” or “cause (someone) to be righteous.”
- The term “justification” could be translated as “being declared righteous” or “becoming righteous” or “causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “resulting in justification” could be translated as “so that God justified many people” or “which resulted in God causing people to be righteous.”
- The phrase “for our justification” could be translated as “in order that we could be made righteous by God.”

(See also: forgive, guilt, [judge](#), righteous, righteous)

Bible References:

- Genesis 44:16
- 1 Chronicles 18:14
- Isaiah 4:3-4
- Jeremiah 22:3
- Ezekiel 18:16-17
- Micah 3:8
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 11:19
- Matthew 23:23-24
- Luke 18:3
- Luke 18:8
- Luke 18:13-14
- Luke 21:20-22
- Luke 23:41
- Acts 13:38-39
- Acts 28:4
- Romans 4:1-3
- Galatians 3:6-9
- Galatians 3:11
- Galatians 5:3-4
- Titus 3:6-7
- Hebrews 6:10
- James 2:24
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:9** David ruled with **justice** and faithfulness for many years, and God blessed him.
- **18:13** Some of these kings (of Judah) were good men who ruled **justly** and worshiped God.
- **19:16** They (the prophets) all told the people to stop worshiping idols and to start showing **justice** and mercy to others.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with peace and **justice**, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0205, H2555, H3477, H4941, H5765, H5766, H5767, H6662, H6663, H6664, H6666, H8003, H8264, H8636, G00910, G00930, G00940, G13420, G13440, G13450, G13460, G13470, G17380

(Go back to: [Numbers 23:10](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

king, kingship

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “king” refers to a man who is the supreme ruler of a particular group of people or a particular region of land (or both).

- In biblical times, a king was usually chosen to rule on the basis of family relation to the previous king(s). When a king died, usually his oldest son became the next king.
- The Bible often refers to God as a king who rules over the entire universe (in a general sense) and over his people (in a specific sense).
- The New Testament refers to Jesus as a king in various ways, including: “king of the Jews;” “king of Israel;” and “king of kings.”
- Depending on the context, the term “king” might also be translated as “supreme chief” or “sovereign ruler.”
- The phrase “king of kings” might be translated as “king who rules over all other kings” or “supreme ruler who has authority over all other rulers.”

(See also: authority, Herod Antipas, [kingdom](#), kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 6:15-16
- 2 Kings 5:18
- 2 Samuel 5:3
- Acts 7:9-10
- Acts 13:22
- John 1:49-51
- Luke 1:5
- Luke 22:24-25
- Matthew 5:35
- Matthew 14:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **8:6** One night, the Pharaoh, which is what the Egyptians called their kings, had two dreams that disturbed him greatly.
- **16:1** The Israelites had no **king**, so everyone did what they thought was right for them.
- **16:18** Finally, the people asked God for a **king** like all the other nations had.
- **17:5** Eventually, Saul died in battle, and David became **king** of Israel. He was a good **king**, and the people loved him.
- **21:6** God’s prophets also said that the Messiah would be a prophet, a priest, and a **king**.
- **48:14** David was the **king** of Israel, but Jesus is the **king** of the entire universe!

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4427, H4428, H4430, G09350, G09360

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:14](#); [20:17](#); [21:1](#); [21:21](#); [21:22](#); [21:26](#); [21:29](#); [21:33](#); [21:34](#); [22:4](#); [22:10](#); [23:7](#); [23:21](#); [24:7](#); [31:8](#); [32:33](#); [33:40](#))

kingdom

Definition:

A kingdom is a group of people ruled by a king. It also refers to the realm or political regions over which a king or other ruler has control and authority.

- A kingdom can be of any geographical size. A king might govern a nation or country or only one city.
- The term “kingdom” can also refer to a spiritual reign or authority, as in the term “kingdom of God.”
- God is the ruler of all creation, but the term “kingdom of God” especially refers to his reign and authority over the people who have believed in Jesus and who have submitted to his authority.
- The Bible also talks about Satan having a “kingdom” in which he temporarily rules over many things on this earth. His kingdom is evil and is referred to as “darkness.”

Translation Suggestions:

- When referring to a physical region that is ruled over by a king, the term “kingdom” could be translated as “country (ruled by a king)” or “king’s territory” or “region ruled by a king.”
- In a spiritual sense, “kingdom” could be translated as “ruling” or “reigning” or “controlling” or “governing.”
- One way to translate “kingdom of priests” might be “spiritual priests who are ruled by God.”
- The phrase “kingdom of light” could be translated as “God’s reign that is good like light” or “when God, who is light, rules people” or “the light and goodness of God’s kingdom.” It is best to keep the word “light” in this expression since that is a very important term in the Bible.
- Note that the term “kingdom” is different from an empire, in which an emperor rules over several countries.

(See also: authority, [king](#), kingdom of God, kingdom of Israel, [Judah](#), Judah, [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:12
- 2 Timothy 4:17-18
- Colossians 1:13-14
- John 18:36
- Mark 3:24
- Matthew 4:7-9
- Matthew 13:19
- Matthew 16:28
- Revelation 1:9

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:2** God said to Moses and the people of Israel, “If you will obey me and keep my covenant, you will be my prized possession, a **kingdom** of priests, and a holy nation.”
- **18:4** God was angry with Solomon and, as a punishment for Solomon’s unfaithfulness, he promised to divide the nation of Israel in two **kingdoms** after Solomon’s death.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel rebelled against Rehoboam. Only two tribes remained faithful to him. These two tribes became the **kingdom** of Judah.
- **18:8** The other ten tribes of the nation of Israel that rebelled against Rehoboam appointed a man named Jeroboam to be their king. They set up their **kingdom** in the northern part of the land and were called the **kingdom** of Israel.

- **21:8** A king is someone who rules over a **kingdom** and judges the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4410, H4437, H4438, H4467, H4468, H4474, H4475, G09320

(Go back to: [Numbers 24:7](#); [32:33](#))

know, knowledge, unknown, distinguish

Definition:

The term “know” and “knowledge” means generally to understand something or someone. It can also mean to be aware of a fact or to be familiar with a person. The expression “to make known” means to tell information.

- The term “knowledge” refers to information that people know. It can apply to knowing physical concepts or abstract concepts.
- To “know about” God means to understand facts about him because of what he has revealed to us.
- To “know” God means to have a relationship with him. This also applies to knowing people.
- To know God’s will means to be aware of what he has commanded, or to understand what he wants a person to do.
- To “know the Law” means to be aware of what God has commanded or to understand what God has instructed in the laws he gave to Moses.
- Sometimes “knowledge” is used as a synonym for “wisdom,” which includes living in a way that is pleasing to God.
- The “knowledge of God” is sometimes used as a synonym for the “fear of Yahweh.”
- When used of a man and a woman to “know” is often an euphemism that refers to having sexual intercourse.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “know” could include “understand” or “be familiar with” or “be aware of” or “be acquainted with” or “be in relationship with.”
- In the context of understanding the difference between two things, the term is usually translated as “distinguish.” When used in this way, the term is often followed by the preposition “between.”
- Some languages have two different words for “know,” one for knowing facts and one for knowing a person and having a relationship with him.
- The term “make known” could be translated as “cause people to know” or “reveal” or “tell about” or “explain.”
- To “know about” something could be translated as “be aware of” or “be familiar with.”
- The expression “know how to” means to understand the process or method of getting something done. It could also be translated as “be able to” or “have the skill to.”
- The term “knowledge” could also be translated as “what is known” or “wisdom” or “understanding,” depending on the context.

(See also: [law](#), reveal, understand, wise)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 2:12-13
- 1 Samuel 17:46
- 2 Corinthians 2:15
- 2 Peter 1:3-4
- Deuteronomy 4:39-40
- Genesis 19:5
- Luke 1:77

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1843, H1844, H1847, H1875, H3045, H3046, H4093, H4486, H5046, H5234, H5475, H5869, G00500, G00560, G10970, G11070, G11080, G14920, G19210, G19220, G19870, G24670, G25890, G42670, G48940

(Go back to: Numbers 1:3; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:45; 10:31; 11:16; 11:20; 11:26; 12:4; 12:6; 14:31; 14:34; 14:37; 15:41; 16:5; 16:27; 16:28; 16:30; 16:35; 16:46; 20:10; 20:14; 20:18; 21:28; 22:5; 22:6; 22:19; 22:32; 22:34; 23:22; 24:8; 24:16; 26:2; 27:17; 27:21; 31:17; 31:18; 31:35; 32:23; 33:1; 33:3; 33:54; 35:26)

Korah, Korahite

Definition:

Korah was the name of three men in the Old Testament.

Korah was a descendant of Levi and so served in the tabernacle as a priest. He became jealous of Moses and Aaron and led a group of men to rebel against them.

One of the sons of Esau was named Korah. He became a leader in his community.

A third man named Korah is listed as a descendant of Judah.

(See also: [Aaron](#), authority, Caleb, [descendant](#), Esau, [Judah](#), [priest](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 1:34-37
- Numbers 16:1-3
- Numbers 16:25-27
- Psalm 42:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7141

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:1](#); [16:5](#); [16:6](#); [16:8](#); [16:16](#); [16:19](#); [16:24](#); [16:27](#); [16:32](#); [16:40](#); [16:49](#); [26:9](#); [26:10](#); [26:11](#); [27:3](#))

lamb, Lamb of God

Definition:

The term “lamb” refers to a young sheep. Sheep are four-legged animals with thick, woolly hair, used for sacrifices to God. Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” because he was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins.

- These animals are easily led astray and need protecting. God compares human beings to sheep.
- God instructed his people to sacrifice physically perfect sheep and lambs to him.
- Jesus is called the “Lamb of God” who was sacrificed to pay for people’s sins. He was a perfect, unblemished sacrifice because he was completely without sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- If sheep are known in the language area, the name for their young should be used to translate the terms “lamb” and “Lamb of God.”
- “Lamb of God” could be translated as “God’s (sacrificial) Lamb,” or “Lamb sacrificed to God” or “(sacrificial) Lamb from God.”
- If sheep are not known, this term could be translated as “a young sheep” with a footnote that describes what sheep are like. The note could also compare sheep and lambs to an animal from that area that lives in herds, that is timid and defenseless, and that often wanders away.
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation of a nearby local or national language.

(See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [sheep](#), shepherd)

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 12:3
- Ezra 8:35-36
- Isaiah 66:3
- Jeremiah 11:19
- John 1:29
- John 1:36
- Leviticus 14:21-23
- Leviticus 17:1-4
- Luke 10:3
- Revelation 15:3-4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **5:7** As Abraham and Isaac walked to the place of the sacrifice Isaac asked, “Father, we have wood for the sacrifice, but where is the **lamb**?”
- **11:2** God provided a way to save the firstborn son of anyone who believed in him. Each family had to choose a perfect **lamb** or goat and kill it.
- **24:6** The next day, Jesus came to be baptized by John. When John saw him, he said, “Look! There is the **Lamb of God** who will take away the sin of the world.”
- **45:8** He read, “They led him like a **lamb** to be killed, and as a **lamb** is silent, he did not say a word.”
- **48:8** When God told Abraham to offer his son, Isaac, as a sacrifice, God provided a **lamb** for the sacrifice instead of his son, Isaac. We all deserve to die for our sins! But God provided Jesus, the **Lamb** of God, as a sacrifice to die in our place.

- **48:9** When God sent the last plague on Egypt, he told each Israelite family to kill a perfect **lamb** and spread its blood around the tops and sides of their door frames.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7716, G07210, G23160

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:12](#); [6:14](#); [7:15](#); [7:17](#); [7:21](#); [7:23](#); [7:27](#); [7:29](#); [7:33](#); [7:35](#); [7:39](#); [7:41](#); [7:45](#); [7:47](#); [7:51](#); [7:53](#); [7:57](#); [7:59](#); [7:63](#); [7:65](#); [7:69](#); [7:71](#); [7:75](#); [7:77](#); [7:81](#); [7:83](#); [7:87](#); [7:88](#); [28:3](#); [28:9](#); [28:11](#); [28:19](#); [28:27](#); [29:2](#); [29:8](#); [29:13](#); [29:15](#); [29:17](#); [29:20](#); [29:23](#); [29:26](#); [29:29](#); [29:32](#); [29:36](#))

law, law of Moses, law of Yahweh, law of God

Definition:

Most simply, the term “law” refers to a rule or instruction that should be followed. In the Bible, the term “law” is often used generally to refer to anything and everything God wants his people to obey and do. The specific term “law of Moses” refers to the commandments and instructions that God gave Moses for the Israelites to obey.

- Depending on the context, the “law” can refer to:
 - the Ten Commandments that God wrote on stone tablets for the Israelites
 - all the laws given to Moses
 - the first five books of the Old Testament
 - the entire Old Testament (also referred to as “scriptures” in the New Testament).
 - all of God’s instructions and will
- The phrase “the Law and the Prophets” is used in the New Testament to refer to the Hebrew scriptures (or “Old Testament”)

Translation Suggestions:

- These terms could be translated using the plural, “laws,” since they refer to many instructions.
- The term “law of Moses” could be translated as “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Depending on the context, “the law of Moses” could also be translated as “the law that God told to Moses” or “God’s laws that Moses wrote down” or “the laws that God told Moses to give to the Israelites.”
- Ways to translate “the law” or “law of God” or “God’s laws” could include “laws from God” or “God’s commands” or “laws that God gave” or “everything that God commands” or “all of God’s instructions.”
- The phrase “law of Yahweh” could also be translated as “Yahweh’s laws” or “laws that Yahweh said to obey” or “laws from Yahweh” or “things Yahweh commanded.”

(See also: instruct, [Moses](#), Ten Commandments, lawful, [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 15:6
- Daniel 9:13
- Exodus 28:42-43
- Ezra 7:25-26
- Galatians 2:15
- Luke 24:44
- Matthew 5:18
- Nehemiah 10:29
- Romans 3:20

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:7** God also gave many other **laws** and rules to follow. If the people obeyed these **laws**, God promised that he would bless and protect them. If they disobeyed them, God would punish them.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed **God’s law** could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God.
- **15:13** Then Joshua reminded the people of their obligation to obey the covenant that God had made with the Israelites at Sinai. The people promised to remain faithful to God and follow **his laws**.
- **16:1** After Joshua died, the Israelites disobeyed God and did not drive out the rest of the Canaanites or obey **God’s laws**.

- **21:5** In the New Covenant, God would write **his law** on the people's hearts, the people would know God personally, they would be his people, and God would forgive their sins.
- **27:1** Jesus answered, "What is written in **God's law**?"
- **28:1** Jesus said to him, "Why do you call me 'good?' There is only one who is good, and that is God. But if you want to have eternal life, obey **God's laws**."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0430, H1881, H1882, H2706, H2710, H3068, H4687, H4872, H4941, H8451, G23160, G35510, G35650

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:29](#); [5:30](#); [6:13](#); [6:21](#); [15:16](#); [15:29](#); [19:2](#); [19:14](#); [31:21](#))

Levi, Levite

Definition:

Levi was Jacob's third son. He was Leah's third son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Levi" or the "Levites."
- The name Levi is similar to the Hebrew word for "join to."
- Unlike the other tribes, the tribe of Levi did not inherit a unified area of land in Canaan. Instead, they inherited various cities scattered throughout the regions belonging to the other tribes.
- The tribe of Levi was responsible for taking care of the tabernacle (and later, the temple) and conducting religious rituals, including offering sacrifices and prayers for the Israelite people.
- In the Old Testament, it is not always clear whether the term "Levite" refers generally to a descendant of Levi or specifically to a person who served in the temple helping the priests.
- The Old Testament law prescribed that all priests were to be chosen from the tribe of Levi. The Levite priests were set apart and dedicated for the special work of serving God in the temple.
- Two other men named "Levi" were ancestors of Jesus. Their names are listed in the genealogy in the gospel of Luke.
- Jesus' disciple Matthew was also called Levi.

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [priest](#), [sacrifice](#), [temple](#), [Jacob](#), Leah, Matthew)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 2:1-2
- 1 Kings 8:3-5
- Acts 4:36-37
- Genesis 29:34
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:32

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3878, H3879, H3881, G30170, G30180, G30190, G30200

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:47](#); [1:49](#); [1:50](#); [1:51](#); [1:53](#); [2:17](#); [2:33](#); [3:6](#); [3:9](#); [3:12](#); [3:15](#); [3:17](#); [3:20](#); [3:32](#); [3:39](#); [3:41](#); [3:45](#); [3:46](#); [3:49](#); [4:2](#); [4:18](#); [4:46](#); [7:5](#); [7:6](#); [8:6](#); [8:9](#); [8:10](#); [8:11](#); [8:12](#); [8:13](#); [8:14](#); [8:15](#); [8:18](#); [8:19](#); [8:20](#); [8:21](#); [8:22](#); [8:24](#); [8:26](#); [16:1](#); [16:7](#); [16:8](#); [16:10](#); [17:3](#); [17:8](#); [18:2](#); [18:6](#); [18:21](#); [18:23](#); [18:24](#); [18:26](#); [18:30](#); [26:57](#); [26:58](#); [26:59](#); [31:30](#); [31:47](#); [35:2](#); [35:4](#); [35:6](#); [35:7](#); [35:8](#))

life, live, living, alive

Definition:

The term “life” refers to being physically alive as opposed to being physically dead.

1. Physical life

- A “life” can also refer to an individual person as in “a life was saved”.
- Sometimes the word “life” refers to the experience of living as in, “his life was enjoyable.”
- It can also refer to a person’s lifespan, as in the expression, “the end of his life.”
- The term “living” may refer to being physically alive, as in “my mother is still living.” It may also refer to dwelling somewhere as in, “they were living in the city.”
- In the Bible, the concept of “life” is often contrasted with the concept of “death.”

2. Eternal life

- A person has eternal life when he believes in Jesus. God gives that person a transformed life with the Holy Spirit living in him.
- The opposite of eternal life is eternal death, which means being separated from God and experiencing eternal punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “life” can be translated as “existence” or “person” or “soul” or “being” or “experience.”
- The term “live” could be translated by “dwell” or “reside” or “exist.”
- The expression “end of his life” could be translated as “when he stopped living.”
- The expression “spared their lives” could be translated as “allowed them to live” or “did not kill them.”
- The expression “they risked their lives” could be translated as “they put themselves in danger” or “they did something that could have killed them.”
- When the Bible text talks about eternal life, the term “life” could be translated in the following ways: “eternal life” or “God making us alive in our spirits” or “new life by God’s Spirit” or “being made alive in our inner self.”
- Depending on the context, the expression “give life” could also be translated as “cause to live” or “give eternal life” or “cause to live eternally.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 2 Peter 1:3
- Acts 10:42
- Genesis 2:7
- Genesis 7:22
- Hebrews 10:20
- Jeremiah 44:2
- John 1:4
- Judges 2:18
- Luke 12:23
- Matthew 7:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **1:10** So God took some dirt, formed it into a man, and breathed **life** into him.
- **3:1** After a long time, many people were *_living_* in the world.
- **8:13** When Joseph's brothers returned home and told their father, Jacob, that Joseph was still **alive**, he was very happy.
- **17:9** However, toward the end of his [David's] **life** he sinned terribly before God.
- **27:1** One day, an expert in the Jewish law came to Jesus to test him, saying, "Teacher, what must I do to inherit eternal **life**?"
- **35:5** Jesus replied, "I am the Resurrection and the **Life**."
- **44:5** "You are the ones who told the Roman governor to kill Jesus. You killed the author of **life**, but God raised him from the dead."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1934, H2416, H2417, H2421, H2425, H5315, G01980, G02220, G02270, G08060, G05900

(Go back to: Numbers 4:19; 6:6; 11:6; 14:21; 14:28; 14:38; 15:27; 16:30; 16:33; 16:48; 19:11; 19:17; 21:4; 22:33; 23:10; 24:23; 29:7; 30:2; 30:4; 30:5; 30:6; 30:7; 30:8; 30:9; 30:10; 30:11; 30:12; 30:13; 31:18; 31:19; 31:28; 31:35; 31:40; 31:50; 35:11; 35:15; 35:30)

livestock, animals

Facts:

The term “livestock” refers to animals which are raised to provide food and other useful products. Some types of livestock are also trained as work animals.

- Kinds of livestock include sheep, cattle, goats, horses, and donkeys.
- In Biblical times, wealth was partly measured by how much livestock a person had.
- Livestock are used to produce items such as wool, milk, cheese, housing materials, and clothing.
- This term could also be translated as “farm animals.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [cow](#), [ox](#), [donkey](#), goat, horse, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 3:15-17
- Genesis 30:29
- Joshua 1:14-15
- Nehemiah 9:36-37
- Numbers 3:41

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0929, H4399, H4735

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:17](#); [18:15](#); [31:11](#); [31:26](#))

lord, Lord, master, sir

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “lord” generally refers to someone who has ownership or authority over other people. In the Bible, however, the term is used to address many different kinds of people, including God.

- This word is sometimes translated as “master” when addressing Jesus or when referring to someone who owns slaves.
- Some English versions translate this as “sir” in contexts where someone is politely addressing someone of higher status.

When “Lord” is capitalized, it is a title that refers to God. (Note, however, that when it is used as a form of addressing someone or it occurs at the beginning of a sentence it may be capitalized and have the meaning of “sir” or “master.”)

- In the Old Testament, this term is also used in expressions such as “Lord God Almighty” or “Lord Yahweh” or “Yahweh our Lord.”
- In the New Testament, the apostles used this term in expressions such as “Lord Jesus” and “Lord Jesus Christ,” which communicate that Jesus is God.
- The term “Lord” in the New Testament is also used alone as a direct reference to God, especially in quotations from the Old Testament. For example, the Old Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of Yahweh” and the New Testament text has “Blessed is he who comes in the name of the Lord.”
- In the ULT and UST, the title “Lord” is only used to translate the actual Hebrew and Greek words that mean “Lord.” It is never used as a translation of God’s name (Yahweh), as is done in many translations.
- Some languages translate “Lord” as “Master” or “Ruler” or some other term that communicates ownership or supreme rule.
- In the appropriate contexts, many translations capitalize the first letter of this term to make it clear to the reader that this is a title referring to God.
- For places in the New Testament where there is a quote from the Old Testament, the term “Lord God” could be used to make it clear that this is a reference to God.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term can be translated with the equivalent of “master” when it refers to a person who owns slaves. It can also be used by a servant to address the person he works for.
- When it refers to Jesus, if the context shows that the speaker sees him as a religious teacher, it can be translated with a respectful address for a religious teacher, such as “master.”
- If the person addressing Jesus does not know him, “lord” could be translated with a respectful form of address such as “sir.” This translation would also be used for other contexts in which a polite form of address to a man is called for.
- When referring to God the Father or to Jesus, this term is considered a title, written as “Lord” (capitalized) in English.

(See also: [God](#), [Jesus](#), [ruler](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 39:2
- Joshua 3:9-11
- Psalms 86:15-17
- Jeremiah 27:4
- Lamentations 2:2

- Ezekiel 18:29
- Daniel 9:9
- Daniel 9:17-19
- Malachi 3:1
- Matthew 7:21-23
- Luke 1:30-33
- Luke 16:13
- Romans 6:23
- Ephesians 6:9
- Philippians 2:9-11
- Colossians 3:23
- Hebrews 12:14
- James 2:1
- 1 Peter 1:3
- Jude 1:5
- Revelation 15:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **25:5** But Jesus replied to Satan by quoting from the Scriptures. He said, "In God's word, he commands his people, 'Do not test the **Lord** your God.'"
- **25:7** Jesus replied, "Get away from me, Satan! In God's word he commands his people, 'Worship only the **Lord** your God and only serve him.'"
- **26:3** This is the year of the **Lord's** favor.
- **27:2** The law expert replied that God's law says, "Love the **Lord** your God with all your heart, soul, strength, and mind."
- **31:5** Then Peter said to Jesus, "**Master**, if it is you, command me to come to you on the water"
- **43:9** "But know for certain that God has caused Jesus to become both **Lord** and Messiah!"
- **47:3** By means of this demon she predicted the future for people, she made a lot of money for her **masters** as a fortuneteller.
- **47:11** Paul answered, "Believe in Jesus, the **Master**, and you and your family will be saved."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0113, H0136, H1167, H1376, H4756, H7980, H8323, G02030, G06340, G09620, G12030, G29620

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:28](#); [12:11](#); [14:17](#); [16:13](#); [32:25](#); [32:27](#); [36:2](#))

lots, casting lots

Definition:

In the Bible, a “lot” is a marked object(s) used as a way of making a fair and/or random decision, usually for the purpose of selecting a specific person within a group. “Casting lots” refers to the process of using “lots” to make a fair and/or random decision.

- In modern times, some cultures “draw” or “pull out” lots using a bunch of straws. Someone holds the straws so that no one can see how long they are. Each person pulls out a straw and the one who picks the longest (or shortest) straw is the one who is chosen.
- In biblical times, the objects cast (the “lots”) were probably small marked stones. It is unknown how the “lots” actually indicated a decision, but it probably involved dropping or throwing marked stones on the ground.
- The phrase “casting lots” can be translated as “tossing lots” or “throwing lots” or “rolling lots.” The translation of “cast” should not sound like the lots were being thrown a long distance.
- If a decision is made “by lot,” this could be translated as “by casting lots” or “by throwing lots,” etc.

(See also: Elizabeth, [priest](#), Zechariah (OT), Zechariah (NT))

Bible References:

- Jonah 1:7
- Luke 1:8-10
- Luke 23:34
- Mark 15:22
- Matthew 27:35-37
- Psalms 22:18-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1486, H5307, G28190, G29750

(Go back to: [Numbers 26:56](#); [33:54](#))

manna

Definition:

Manna was a white, grain-like food that God provided for the Israelites to eat during the 40 years of living in the wilderness after they left Egypt.

- Manna looked like white flakes which appeared each morning on the ground under the dew. It tasted sweet, like honey.
- The Israelites gathered the manna flakes every day except on the Sabbath.
- On the day before the Sabbath, God told the Israelites to gather twice the amount of manna so they wouldn't have to gather it on their day of rest.
- The word "manna" means "what is it?"
- In the Bible, manna is also referred to as "bread from heaven" and "grain from heaven."

Translation Suggestions

- Other ways to translate this term could include "thin white flakes of food" or "food from heaven."
- Also consider how this term is translated in a Bible translation in a local or national language. (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [bread](#), [desert](#), [grain](#), heaven, [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:3
- Exodus 16:27
- Hebrews 9:3-5
- John 6:30-31
- Joshua 5:12

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4478, G31310

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:6](#); [11:9](#))

messenger

Facts:

The term “messenger” refers to someone who is given a message to tell others.

- In ancient times, a messenger would be sent from the battlefield to tell people back in the city what was happening.
- An angel is a special kind of messenger whom God sends to give people messages. Some translations translate “angel” as “messenger.”
- John the Baptist was called a messenger who came before Jesus to announce the Messiah’s coming and to prepare people to receive him.
- Jesus’ apostles were his messengers to go share with other people the good news about the kingdom of God.

(See also: angel, apostle, John (the Baptist))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 19:1-3
- 1 Samuel 6:21
- 2 Kings 1:1-2
- Luke 7:27
- Matthew 11:10

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1319, H4397, H4398, H5046, H5894, H6735, H6737, H7323, H7971, G00320, G06520

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:14](#); [20:16](#); [21:21](#); [22:5](#); [22:22](#); [22:23](#); [22:24](#); [22:25](#); [22:26](#); [22:27](#); [22:31](#); [22:32](#); [22:34](#); [22:35](#); [24:12](#))

Michael

Facts:

Michael is the chief of all God's holy, obedient angels. He is the only angel who is specifically referred to as the "archangel" of God.

- The term "archangel" literally means "chief angel" or "ruling angel."
- Michael is a warrior who fights against God's enemies and protects God's people.
- He led the Israelites in fighting against the Persian army. In the end times he will lead the armies of Israel in the final battle against the forces of evil, as foretold in Daniel.
- There are also several men in the Bible with the name Michael. Several men are identified as being the "son of Michael"

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: angel, Daniel, [messenger](#), Persia)

Bible References:

- Daniel 10:13
- Daniel 10:21
- Ezra 8:8
- Revelation 12:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4317, G34130

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:13](#))

might, mighty, mighty works

Definition:

The terms “mighty” and “might” refer to having great strength or power.

- Often the word “might” is another word for “strength.” When talking about God, it can mean “power.”
- The phrase “mighty men” often refers to men who are courageous and victorious in battle. David’s band of faithful men who helped protect and defend him were often called “mighty men.”
- God is also referred to as the “mighty one.”
- The phrase “mighty works” usually refers to the amazing things God does, especially miracles.
- This term is related to the term “almighty,” which is a common description for God, meaning that he has complete power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “mighty” could be translated as “powerful” or “amazing” or “very strong.”
- The phrase “his might” could be translated as “his strength” or “his power.”
- In Acts 7, Moses is described as a man who was “mighty in word and deed.” This could be translated as “Moses spoke powerful words from God and did miraculous things” or “Moses spoke God’s word powerfully and did many amazing things.”
- Depending on the context, “mighty works” could be translated as “amazing things that God does” or “miracles” or “God doing things with power.”
- The term “might” could also be translated as “power” or “great strength.”
- Do not confuse this term with the English word that is used to express a possibility, as in “It might rain.”

(See also: [Almighty](#), [miracle](#), [power](#), [strength](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 7:22
- Genesis 6:4
- Mark 9:38-39
- Matthew 11:23

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0046, H0047, H0117, H0202, H0386, H0410, H0430, H0533, H0650, H1219, H1368, H1369, H1396, H1397, H1419, H2220, H2389, H2428, H3201, H3524, H3581, H3966, H4101, H5794, H5797, H6099, H6105, H6108, H6184, H7227, H7580, H8623, H8624, G14110, G14150, G14980, G24780, G24790, G29000, G29040, G31670, G31730

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:18](#); [13:28](#); [21:24](#))

miracle, wonder, sign

Definition:

A “miracle” is something amazing that is not possible unless God causes it to happen.

- Examples of miracles that Jesus did include calming a storm and healing a blind man.
- Miracles are sometimes called “wonders” because they cause people to be filled with wonder or amazement.
- The term “wonder” can also refer more generally to amazing displays of God’s power, such as when he created the heavens and the earth.
- Miracles can also be called “signs” because they are used as indicators or evidence that God is the all-powerful one who has complete authority over the universe.
- Some miracles were God’s acts of redemption, such as when he rescued the Israelites from being slaves in Egypt and when he protected Daniel from being hurt by lions.
- Other wonders were God’s acts of judgment, such as when he sent a worldwide flood in Noah’s time and when he brought terrible plagues on the land of Egypt during the time of Moses.
- Many of God’s miracles were the physical healings of sick people or bringing dead people back to life.
- God’s power was shown in Jesus when he healed people, calmed storms, walked on water, and raised people from the dead. These were all miracles.
- God also enabled the prophets and the apostles to perform miracles of healing and other things that were only possible through God’s power.

Translation Suggestions:

- Possible translations of “miracles” or “wonders” could include “impossible things that God does” or “powerful works of God” or “amazing acts of God.”
- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Note that this meaning of a miraculous sign is different from a sign that gives proof or evidence for something. The two can be related.

(See also: power, [prophet](#), apostle, [sign](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Thessalonians 2:8-10
- Acts 4:17
- Acts 4:22
- Daniel 4:1-3
- Deuteronomy 13:1
- Exodus 3:19-22
- John 2:11
- Matthew 13:58

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **16:8** Gideon asked God for two **signs** so he could be sure that God would use him to save Israel.
- **19:14** God did many **miracles** through Elisha.
- **37:10** Many of the Jews believed in Jesus because of this **miracle**.
- **43:6** “Men of Israel, Jesus was a man who did many mighty **signs** and **wonders** by the power of God, as you have seen and already know.”

- **49:2** Jesus did many **miracles** that prove he is God. He walked on water, calmed storms, healed many sick people, drove out demons, raised the dead to life, and turned five loaves of bread and two small fish into enough food for over 5,000 people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H5953, H6381, H6382, H6383, H6395, H6725, H7560, H7583, H8047, H8074, H8539, H8540, G08800, G12130, G12290, G14110, G15690, G17180, G17700, G18390, G22850, G22960, G22970, G31670, G39020, G45910, G45920, G50590

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:2](#))

Miriam

Facts:

Miriam was the older sister of Aaron and Moses.

- When she was young, Miriam was instructed by her mother to watch over her baby brother Moses who was in a basket among the reeds of the Nile River. When the pharaoh's daughter found the baby and needed someone to take care of him for her, Miriam brought her mother to do it.
- Miriam led the Israelites in a dance of joy and thanksgiving after they had escaped from the Egyptians by crossing the Red Sea.
- Years later as the Israelites were wandering in the desert, Miriam and Aaron began speaking badly about Moses because he had married a Cushite woman.
- Because of her rebellion in speaking against Moses, God caused Miriam to become sick with leprosy. But later God healed her when Moses interceded for her.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Aaron](#), [Cush](#), [intercede](#), [Moses](#), [Nile River](#), [Pharaoh](#), [rebel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:1-3
- Deuteronomy 24:8-9
- Micah 6:4
- Numbers 12:2
- Numbers 20:1

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4813

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:1](#); [12:4](#); [12:5](#); [12:10](#); [12:15](#); [20:1](#); [26:59](#))

Moab, Moabite

Facts:

The term “Moab” refers to a people group that lived to the east of the Salt Sea. The book of Genesis describes this people group as the descendents of a man named “Moab,” who was the son of Lot’s elder daughter.

- In the book of Ruth, Elimelek and his family went to live in Moab because of the famine around Bethlehem.
- Ruth is called a “Moabite woman” because she was born in the country of Moab and was from that people group.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Bethlehem, [Judea](#), Lot, Ruth, Salt Sea)

Bible References:

- Genesis 19:37
- Genesis 36:34-36
- Ruth 1:1-2
- Ruth 1:22

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4124, H4125

(Go back to: [Numbers 21:11](#); [21:13](#); [21:15](#); [21:20](#); [21:26](#); [21:28](#); [21:29](#); [22:1](#); [22:3](#); [22:4](#); [22:7](#); [22:8](#); [22:10](#); [22:14](#); [22:21](#); [22:36](#); [23:6](#); [23:7](#); [23:17](#); [24:17](#); [25:1](#); [26:3](#); [26:63](#); [31:12](#); [33:44](#); [33:48](#); [33:49](#); [33:50](#); [35:1](#); [36:13](#))

Moses

Facts:

Moses was a prophet and leader of the Israelite people for over 40 years. He was the leader of the Israelite people when they came out of Egypt, as described in the book of Exodus.

- When Moses was a baby, Moses' parents put him in a basket in the reeds of the Nile River to hide him from the Egyptian Pharaoh. Moses' sister Miriam watched over him there. Moses' life was spared when the pharaoh's daughter found him and took him to the palace to raise him as her son.
- God chose Moses to free the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and to lead them to the Promised Land.
- After the Israelites' escape from Egypt and while they were wandering in the desert, God gave Moses two stone tablets with the Ten Commandments written on them.
- Near the end of his life, Moses saw the Promised Land, but didn't get to live in it because he disobeyed God.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Miriam](#), [Promised Land](#), Ten Commandments)

Bible References:

- Acts 7:21
- Acts 7:30
- Exodus 2:10
- Exodus 9:1
- Matthew 17:4
- Romans 5:14

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:12** One day while **Moses** was taking care of his sheep, he saw a bush that was on fire.
- **12:5** **Moses** told the Israelites, "Stop being afraid! God will fight for you today and save you."
- **12:7** God told **Moses** to raise his hand over the sea and divide the waters.
- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **13:7** Then God wrote these Ten Commandments on two stone tablets and gave them to **Moses**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H4872, H4873, G34750

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:1; 1:17; 1:19; 1:44; 1:48; 1:54; 2:1; 2:33; 2:34; 3:1; 3:5; 3:11; 3:14; 3:16; 3:38; 3:39; 3:40; 3:42; 3:44; 3:49; 3:51; 4:1; 4:17; 4:21; 4:34; 4:37; 4:41; 4:45; 4:46; 4:49; 5:1; 5:4; 5:5; 5:11; 6:1; 6:22; 7:1; 7:4; 7:6; 7:11; 7:89; 8:1; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:20; 8:22; 8:23; 9:1; 9:4; 9:5; 9:6; 9:8; 9:9; 9:23; 10:1; 10:13; 10:29; 10:35; 11:2; 11:10; 11:11; 11:16; 11:21; 11:23; 11:24; 11:27; 11:28; 11:29; 11:30; 12:1; 12:2; 12:3; 12:4; 12:7; 12:8; 12:11; 12:13; 12:14; 13:1; 13:3; 13:16; 13:17; 13:26; 13:30; 14:2; 14:5; 14:11; 14:13; 14:26; 14:36; 14:39; 14:41; 14:44; 15:1; 15:17; 15:22; 15:23; 15:33; 15:35; 15:36; 15:37; 16:2; 16:3; 16:4; 16:8; 16:12; 16:15; 16:16; 16:18; 16:20; 16:23; 16:25; 16:28; 16:36; 16:40; 16:41; 16:42; 16:43; 16:44; 16:46; 16:47; 16:50; 17:1; 17:6; 17:7; 17:8; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:12; 18:25; 19:1; 20:2; 20:3; 20:6; 20:7; 20:9; 20:10; 20:11; 20:12; 20:14; 20:23; 20:27; 20:28; 21:5; 21:7; 21:8; 21:9; 21:16; 21:32; 21:34; 25:4; 25:5; 25:6; 25:10; 25:16; 26:1; 26:3; 26:4; 26:9; 26:52; 26:59; 26:63; 26:64; 27:2; 27:5; 27:6; 27:11; 27:12; 27:15; 27:18; 27:22; 27:23; 28:1; 29:40; 30:1; 30:16; 31:1; 31:3; 31:6; 31:7; 31:12; 31:13; 31:14; 31:15; 31:21; 31:25; 31:31; 31:41; 31:42; 31:47; 31:48;](#)

31:49; 31:51; 31:54; 32:2; 32:6; 32:20; 32:25; 32:28; 32:29; 32:33; 32:40; 33:1; 33:2; 33:50; 34:1; 34:13; 34:16; 35:1; 35:9; 36:1; 36:5; 36:10; 36:13)

mourn, mourner, weeping

Facts:

The terms “mourn” and “mourning” refer to expressing deep grief, usually in response to the death of someone.

- In many cultures, mourning includes specific outward behaviors that show this sadness and grief.
- The Israelites and other people groups in ancient times expressed mourning through loud wailing and lamenting. They also wore rough clothing made of sackcloth and put ashes on themselves.
- Hired mourners, usually women, would loudly weep and wail from the time of death until well after the body was put in the tomb.
- The typical period of mourning was seven days, but could last as long as thirty days (as for Moses and Aaron) or seventy days (as for Jacob).
- The Bible also uses the term figuratively to talk about “mourning” because of sin. This refers to feeling deeply grieved because sin hurts God and people.

(See also: sackcloth, [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 15:34-35
- 2 Samuel 1:11
- Genesis 23:2
- Luke 7:31-32
- Matthew 11:17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0056, H0057, H0060, H0205, H0578, H0584, H0585, H1058, H1065, H1068, H1671, H1897, H1899, H4553, H4798, H5092, H5098, H5110, H5594, H6937, H6941, H8386, G23540, G28750, G36020, G39960, G39970

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:39](#))

Naaman

Facts:

In the Old Testament, Naaman was the commander of the army of the king of Aram.

- Naaman had a terrible skin disease called leprosy that could not be cured.
- A Jewish slave in Naaman's household told him to go ask the prophet Elisha to heal him.
- Elisha told Naaman to wash seven times in the Jordan River. When Naaman obeyed, God healed him of his disease.
- As a result, Naaman came to believe in the only true God, Yahweh.
- Two other men named Naaman were descendants of Jacob's son Benjamin.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Aram, [Jordan River](#), leprosy, [prophet](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 8:6-7
- 2 Kings 5:1
- Luke 4:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **19:14** One of the miracles happened to **Naaman**, an enemy commander, who had a horrible skin disease.
- **19:15** At first **Naaman** was angry and would not do it because it seemed foolish. But later he changed his mind and dipped himself seven times in the Jordan River.
- **26:6** "He (Elisha) only healed the skin disease of **Naaman**, a commander of Israel's enemies."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5283, G34970

(Go back to: [Numbers 26:40](#))

name

Definition:

The term “name” refers to the word by which a specific person or thing is called. In the Bible, however, the term “name” is used in several different ways to refer to several different concepts.

- In some contexts, “name” could refer to a person’s reputation, as in “let us make a name for ourselves.”
- The term “name” could also refer to the memory of something. For example, “cut off the names of the idols” means to destroy those idols so that they are no longer remembered or worshiped.
- Speaking “in the name of God” meant speaking with his power and authority, or as his representative.
- The “name” of someone could refer to the entire person, as in “there is no other name under heaven by which we must be saved.” (See: [metonymy](#))

Translation Suggestions:

- An expression like “his good name” could be translated as “his good reputation.”
- Doing something “in the name of” could be translated as “with the authority of” or “with the permission of” or “as the representative of” that person.
- The expression “make a name for ourselves” could be translated “cause many people to know about us” or “make people think we are very important.”
- The expression “call his name” could be translated as “name him” or “give him the name.”
- The expression “those who love your name” could be translated as “those who love you.”
- The expression “cut off the names of idols” could be translated as “get rid of pagan idols so that they are not even remembered” or “cause people to stop worshiping false gods” or “completely destroy all idols so that people no longer even think about them.”

(See also: [call](#))

Bible References:

- 1 John 2:12
- 2 Timothy 2:19
- Acts 4:7
- Acts 4:12
- Acts 9:27
- Genesis 12:2
- Genesis 35:10
- Matthew 18:5

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5344, H7121, H7761, H8034, H8036, G25640, G36860, G36870, G51220

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:2; 1:5; 1:17; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 3:2; 3:3; 3:17; 3:18; 3:40; 3:43; 6:27; 11:3; 11:26; 11:34; 13:4; 13:16; 16:2; 17:2; 17:3; 21:3; 26:53; 27:1; 27:4; 32:38; 32:42; 34:17; 34:19](#))

Naphtali

Facts:

Naphtali was Jacob's sixth son. He was Bilhah's second son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the "tribe of Naphtali" or "Naphtali" or "Naphtalites."
- The name Naphtali is similar to the Hebrew word meaning "to twist, wrestle."
- The tribe of Naphtali settled in the northern part of Canaan, between the tribes of Manassah and Asher. Its eastern border was on the western shoreline of the Sea of Chinnereth. When used as the name of a region of land, the term "Naphtali" refers to the land given to the tribe of Naphtali.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Bilhah)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 4:15
- Deuteronomy 27:13-14
- Ezekiel 48:1-3
- Genesis 30:8
- Judges 1:33
- Matthew 4:13

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5321, G35080

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:15](#); [1:42](#); [1:43](#); [2:29](#); [7:78](#); [10:27](#); [13:14](#); [26:48](#); [26:50](#); [34:28](#))

nation

Definition:

A nation is a large group of people ruled by some form of government. The people of a nation often have the same ancestors and share a common ethnicity.

- A “nation” usually has a well-defined culture and territorial boundaries.
- In the Bible, a “nation” could be a country (like Egypt or Ethiopia), but often it is more general and refers to a people group, especially when used in the plural. It is important to check the context.
- Nations in the Bible included the Israelites, the Philistines, the Assyrians, the Babylonians, the Canaanites, the Romans, and the Greeks, among many others.
- Sometimes the word “nation” was used figuratively to refer to the ancestor of a certain people group, as when Rebekah was told by God that her unborn sons were “nations” that would fight against each other. This could be translated as “the founders of two nations” or the “ancestors of two people groups.”
- The word translated as “nation” was also sometimes used to refer to “Gentiles” or to people who do not worship Yahweh. The context usually makes the meaning clear.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the word “nation” could also be translated as “people group” or “people” or “country.”
- If a language has a term for “nation” that is distinct from these other terms, then that term can be used wherever it occurs in the Bible text, as long as it is natural and accurate in each context.
- The plural term “nations” can often be translated as “people groups.”
- In certain contexts, this term could also be translated as “Gentiles” or “nonJews.”

(See also: [Assyria](#), [Babylon](#), [Canaan](#), [Gentile](#), [Greek](#), [people group](#), [Philistines](#), [Rome](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 14:15-17
- 2 Chronicles 15:6
- 2 Kings 17:11-12
- Acts 2:5
- Acts 13:19
- Acts 17:26
- Acts 26:4
- Daniel 3:4
- Genesis 10:2-5
- Genesis 27:29
- Genesis 35:11
- Genesis 49:10
- Luke 7:5
- Mark 13:7-8
- Matthew 21:43
- Romans 4:16-17

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0523, H0524, H0776, H1471, H3816, H4940, H5971, G02460, G10740, G10850, G14840

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:12](#); [14:15](#); [23:9](#); [24:8](#); [24:20](#))

Negev

Facts:

The Negev is a desert region in the southern part of Israel, southwest of the Salt Sea.

- The original word means “the South,” and some English versions translate it this way.
- It could be that the “South” is not located where the Negev Desert is today.
- When Abraham lived in the city of Kadesh, he was in the Negev or southern region.
- Isaac was living in the Negev when Rebekah traveled to meet him and become his wife.
- The Jewish tribes of Judah and Simeon lived in this southern region.
- The largest city in the Negev region was Beersheba.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abraham, Beersheba, [Israel](#), [Judah](#), Kadesh, Salt Sea, Simeon)

Bible References:

- Genesis 12:9
- Genesis 20:1-3
- Genesis 24:62
- Joshua 3:14-16
- Numbers 13:17-20

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5045, H6160

([Go back to: Numbers 13:29; 21:1](#))

new moon

Definition:

The term “new moon” refers to the moon when it looks like a small, crescent-shaped sliver of light. This is the beginning phase of the moon as it moves in its orbit around the planet Earth at sunset. It also refers to the first day a new moon should be visible after the moon has been dark for a few days.

- In ancient times, new moons marked the beginnings of certain time periods, such as months.
- The Israelites celebrated a new moon festival that was marked by the blowing of a ram’s horn.
- The Bible also refers to this time as the “beginning of the month.”

(See also: month, [earth](#), festival, horn, [sheep](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 23:31
- 1 Samuel 20:5
- 2 Kings 4:23-24
- Ezekiel 45:16-17
- Isaiah 1:12-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2320, G33760, G35610

(Go back to: [Numbers 29:6](#))

oath, swear, swearing, swear by

Definition:

The term “oath” in the Bible refers to a formal promise, usually made in a legal or religious context, in which the person making the oath accepts some kind of accountability or punishment if he does not fulfill his promise. In the Bible, the term “swear” means to make an oath.

- In a court of law, a witness often gives an oath to promise that whatever he says will be true and factual.
- In modern times, one meaning of the word “swear” is to use foul or vulgar language. This is never its meaning in the Bible.
- The term “swear by” means to use the name of something or someone as the basis or power on which the oath is made.
- Abraham and Abimelech swore an oath when they made a covenant together concerning the use of a well.
- Abraham told his servant to swear (formally promise) that he would find Isaac a wife from among Abraham’s relatives.
- God also made oaths in which he made promises to his people.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, “an oath” could also be translated as “a pledge” or “a solemn promise.”
- To “swear” could be translated as to “formally promise” or to “pledge” or to “commit to do something.”
- Other ways to translate “swear by my name” could include “make a promise using my name to confirm it.”
- To “swear by heaven and earth” could be translated as to, “promise to do something, stating that heaven and earth will confirm it.”
- Make sure the translation of “swear” or “oath” does not refer to cursing. In the Bible it does not have that meaning.

(See also: Abimelech, [covenant](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:23
- Genesis 24:3
- Genesis 31:51-53
- Genesis 47:31
- Luke 1:73
- Mark 6:26
- Matthew 5:36
- Matthew 14:6-7
- Matthew 26:72

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0422, H0423, H3027, H5375, H7621, H7650, G03320, G36600, G37270, G37280

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:19](#); [5:21](#); [11:12](#); [14:16](#); [14:23](#); [30:2](#); [30:13](#); [32:10](#); [32:11](#))

oil

Definition:

Oil is a thick, clear liquid that can be taken from certain plants. In Bible times, oil usually came from olives.

- Olive oil was used for cooking, anointing, sacrifice, lamps, and medicine.
- In ancient times, olive oil was highly prized, and the possession of oil was considered a measurement of wealth.
- Make sure the translation of this term refers to the kind of oil that can be used in cooking, not motor oil. Some languages have different words for these different kinds of oil.

(See also: [olive](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 1:21
- Exodus 29:2
- Leviticus 5:11
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Mark 6:12-13
- Matthew 25:7-9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2091, H3323, H4887, H6671, H7246, H8081, G16370, G34640

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:16](#); [18:12](#))

olive

Definition:

The olive is the small, oval fruit from an olive tree, which is mostly grown in the regions surrounding the Mediterranean Sea.

- Olive trees are a type of large evergreen shrub with tiny white flowers. They grow best in hot weather and can survive well with little water.
- The olive tree's fruit starts out green and changes to black as they ripen. Olives were useful for food and for the oil that could be extracted from them.
- Olive oil was used for cooking in lamps and for religious ceremonies.
- In the Bible, olive trees and branches are sometimes used figuratively to refer to people.

(See also: lamp, the sea, Mount of Olives)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 27:28-29
- Deuteronomy 6:10-12
- Exodus 23:10-11
- Genesis 8:11
- James 3:12
- Luke 16:6
- Psalms 52:8

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2132, H3323, H8081, G00650, G16360, G16370, G25650

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:9](#); [4:16](#); [5:15](#); [15:4](#))

ordinance, regulations, requirements, strict law, customs

Definition:

An ordinance is a public regulation or law that gives rules or instructions for people to follow. This term is related to the term “ordain.”

- Sometimes an ordinance is a custom that has become well established through years of practice.
- In the Bible, an ordinance was something that God commanded the Israelites to do. Sometimes he commanded them to do it forever.
- The term “ordinance” could be translated as “public decree” or “regulation” or “law,” depending on the context.

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordain](#), [statute](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 4:13-14
- Exodus 27:20-21
- Leviticus 8:31-33
- Malachi 3:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H4687, H4931, H4941

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:24](#); [29:6](#); [29:18](#); [29:21](#); [29:24](#); [29:27](#); [29:30](#); [29:33](#); [29:37](#); [35:24](#))

palm

Definition:

The term “palm” refers to a type of tall tree with long, flexible, leafy branches extending from the top in a fan-like pattern.

- The palm tree in the Bible usually refers to a type of palm tree that produces a fruit called a “date.” The leaves have a feather-like pattern.
- Palm trees typically grow in places that have a hot, humid climate. Their leaves stay green all year long.
- As Jesus was entering Jerusalem riding on a donkey, the people laid palm branches on the ground in front of him.
- Palm branches signified peace and the celebration of a victory.

(See also: [donkey](#), [Jerusalem](#), [peace](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 6:29-30
- Ezekiel 40:14-16
- John 12:12-13
- Numbers 33:9

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3712, H8558, H8560, H8561, G54040

(**Go back to:** [Numbers 33:9](#))

Passover

Facts:

The “Passover” is the name of a religious festival that the Jews celebrate every year, to remember how God rescued their ancestors, the Israelites, from slavery in Egypt.

- The name of this festival comes from the fact that God “passed over” the houses of the Israelites and did not kill their sons when he killed the firstborn sons of the Egyptians.
- The Passover celebration includes a special meal of a perfect lamb that they have killed and roasted, as well as bread made without yeast. These foods remind them of the meal that the Israelites ate the night before they escaped from Egypt.
- God told the Israelites to eat this meal every year in order to remember and celebrate how God “passed over” their houses and how he set them free from slavery in Egypt.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Passover” could be translated by combining the words “pass” and “over” or another combination of words that has this meaning.
- It is helpful if the name of this festival has a clear connection to the words used to explain what the angel of the Lord did in passing by the houses of the Israelites and sparing their sons.

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:7
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- 2 Kings 23:23
- Deuteronomy 16:2
- Exodus 12:26-28
- Ezra 6:21-22
- John 13:1
- Joshua 5:10-11
- Leviticus 23:4-6
- Numbers 9:3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:14** God commanded the Israelites to remember his victory over the Egyptians and their deliverance from slavery by celebrating the **Passover** every year.
- **38:1** Every year, the Jews celebrated the **Passover**. This was a celebration of how God had saved their ancestors from slavery in Egypt many centuries earlier.
- **38:4** Jesus celebrated the **Passover** with his disciples.
- **48:9** When God saw the blood, he passed over their houses and did not kill their firstborn sons. This event is called the **Passover**.
- **48:10** Jesus is our **Passover** Lamb. He was perfect and sinless and was killed at the time of the **Passover** celebration.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6453, G39570

(Go back to: [Numbers 9 General Notes](#); [9:2](#); [9:4](#); [9:5](#); [9:6](#); [9:12](#); [9:13](#); [9:14](#); [Notes](#); [33:3](#))

peace, peaceful, peacemakers

Definition:

The term “peace” refers to a state of being or a feeling of having no conflict, anxiety, or fearfulness. A person who is “peaceful” feels calm and assured of being safe and secure.

- In the Old Testament, the term “peace” often means a general sense of a person’s welfare, wellness, or wholeness.
- “Peace” can also refer to a time when people groups or countries are not at war with each other. These people are said to have “peaceful relations.”
- To “make peace” with a person or a group of people means to take actions to cause fighting to stop.
- A “peacemaker” is someone who does and says things to influence people to live at peace with each other.
- To be “at peace” with other people means being in a state of not fighting against those people.
- A good or right relationship between God and people happens when God saves people from their sin. This is called having “peace with God.”
- The greeting “grace and peace” was used by the apostles in their letters to their fellow believers as a blessing.
- The term “peace” can also refer to being in a good relationship with other people or with God.

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:1-3
- Acts 7:26
- Colossians 1:18-20
- Colossians 3:15
- Galatians 5:23
- Luke 7:50
- Luke 12:51
- Mark 4:39
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 10:13

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **15:6** God had commanded the Israelites not to make a **peace** treaty with any of the people groups in Canaan.
- **15:12** Then God gave Israel **peace** along all its borders.
- **16:3** Then God provided a deliverer who rescued them from their enemies and brought **peace** to the land.
- **21:13** He (Messiah) would die to receive the punishment for other people’s sin. His punishment would bring **peace** between God and people.
- **48:14** David was the king of Israel, but Jesus is the king of the entire universe! He will come again and rule his kingdom with justice and **peace**, forever.
- **50:17** Jesus will rule his kingdom with **peace** and justice, and he will be with his people forever.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5117, H7961, H7962, H7965, H7999, H8001, H8002, H8003, H8252, G02690, G15140, G15150, G15160, G15170, G15180, G22720

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:26](#); [25:12](#))

people of God

Definition:

The concept of the “people of God” in the Bible refers to people with whom God has established a covenant relationship.

- In the Old Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the nation of Israel. The nation of Israel was chosen by God and set apart from the other nations of the world in order to serve and obey him.
- In the New Testament, the phrase “people of God” refers to the “Church,” meaning everyone who believes in Jesus. This includes both Jews and Gentiles. In the New Testament, sometimes this group of people is called the “sons of God” or “children of God.”
- When God uses the phrase “my people,” he is referring to people who have a covenant relationship with him. God’s people are chosen by him, and he wants them to live in a way that is pleasing to him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people of God” could be translated as “God’s people” or “the people who worship God” or “people who serve God” or “people who belong to God.”
- When God says “my people” other ways to translate it could include “the people I have chosen” or “the people who worship me” or “the people who belong to me.”
- Similarly, “your people” could be translated as “the people who belong to you” or “the people you chose to belong to you.”
- Also “his people” could be translated as “the people who belong to him” or “the people God chose to belong to himself.”

(See also: [Israel](#), [people group](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 11:2
- Acts 7:34
- Acts 7:51-53
- Acts 10:36-38
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Isaiah 2:5-6
- Jeremiah 6:20-22
- Joel 3:16-17
- Micah 6:3-5
- Revelation 13:7-8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0430, H5971, G23160, G29920

(Go back to: [Numbers 23 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

people, people group

Definition:

The terms “people” and “people group” refer to some group of people that shares a common language and culture. The term “the people” often refers to a gathering of people in a certain place or at a specific event.

- In Bible times, the members of a people group usually had the same ancestors and lived together in a particular country or area of land.
- Depending on the context, the term “people” can refer to a “people group” or “family” or “relatives” or “army.”
- In plural form, the term “peoples” often refers to all people groups on the earth. Sometimes it refers more specifically to people who are not Israelites or who do not serve Yahweh. In some English Bible translations, the term “nations” is also used in this way.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “people group” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “large family group” or “clan” or “ethnic group.”
- A phrase such as “my people” could be translated as “my relatives” or “my fellow Israelites” or “my family” or “my people group,” depending on the context.
- The expression “scatter you among the peoples” could also be translated as “cause you to go live with many different people groups” or “cause you to separate from each other and go live in many different regions of the world.”
- The term “the peoples” or “the people” could also be translated as “the people in the world” or “people groups,” depending on the context.
- The phrase “the people of” could be translated as “the people living in” or “the people descended from” or “the family of,” depending on whether it is followed by the name of a place or a person.
- “All the peoples of the earth” could be translated as “everyone living on earth” or “every person in the world” or “all people.”
- The phrase “a people” could also be translated as “a group of people” or “certain people” or “a community of people” or “a family of people.”

(See also: [descendant](#), [nation](#), [tribe](#), [world](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 8:51-53
- 1 Samuel 8:7
- Deuteronomy 28:9
- Genesis 49:16
- Ruth 1:16

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the Promised Land to their descendants, but now there were many **people groups** living there.
- **21:2** God promised Abraham that through him all **people groups** of the world would receive a blessing. This blessing would be that the Messiah would come sometime in the future and provide the way of salvation for people from all the **people groups** of the world.

- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all **people groups** everywhere."
- **42:10** "So go, make disciples of all **people groups** by baptizing them in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit and by teaching them to obey everything I have commanded you."
- **48:11** Because of this New Covenant, anyone from any **people group** can become part of God's people by believing in Jesus.
- **50:3** He (Jesus) said, "Go and make disciples of all **people groups!**" and, "The fields are ripe for harvest!"

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0249, H0523, H0524, H0776, H1121, H1471, H3816, H5712, H5971, H5972, H6153, G10740, G10850, G12180, G14840, G25600, G29920, G37930

(Go back to: Numbers 5:21; 5:27; 11:1; 11:2; 11:8; 11:10; 11:11; 11:12; 11:13; 11:14; 11:16; 11:17; 11:18; 11:21; 11:24; 11:29; 11:32; 11:33; 11:34; 11:35; 12:15; 12:16; 13:18; 13:28; 13:30; 13:31; 13:32; 14:1; 14:9; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:15; 14:16; 14:19; 14:39; 15:26; 15:30; 16:41; 16:47; 20:1; 20:3; 20:20; 21:2; 21:4; 21:5; 21:6; 21:7; 21:16; 21:18; 21:23; 21:29; 21:33; 21:34; 21:35; 22:3; 22:5; 22:6; 22:11; 22:12; 22:17; 22:41; 23:9; 23:24; 24:14; 25:1; 25:2; 25:4; 31:3; 31:32; 32:15; 33:14)

perish

Definition:

The term “perish” means to die or be destroyed, usually as the result of violence or disaster. In the New Testament, it often has the spiritual meaning of being lost or separated from the people of God.

Spiritual Meaning of “Perish:”

- People who are “perishing” are those who have refused to trust in Jesus for their salvation.
- Those who “perish” will not live eternally with God in heaven. Instead, they will live eternally in hell under God’s punishment.
- Everyone will die physically, but only those who do not trust in Jesus for their salvation will perish eternally.
- When “perish” is used in a spiritual sense, make sure that your translation expresses this differently than dying physically.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate this term could include “be lost from God’s people,” “die eternally,” “be punished in hell,” or “be destroyed.”
- Try to use a term or expression that does not only mean “die physically” or “cease to exist.”

(See also: [death](#), everlasting)

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 1:23
- 2 Corinthians 2:16-17
- 2 Thessalonians 2:10
- Jeremiah 18:18
- Psalms 49:18-20
- Zechariah 9:5-7
- Zechariah 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0006, H0007, H0008, H1478, H1820, H1826, H5486, H5595, H6544, H8045, G05990, G06220, G06840, G08530, G13110, G27040, G48810, G53560

(Go back to: [Numbers 17:12](#); [21:29](#); [21:30](#); [33:52](#))

Phinehas

Facts:

Phineas was the name of two men in the Old Testament.

- One of Aaron's grandsons was a priest named Phinehas, who strongly opposed the worship of false gods in Israel.
- Phineas saved the Israelites from a plague that Yahweh had sent to punish them for marrying Midianite women and worshiping their false gods.
- On several occasions Phinehas went with the Israelite army to destroy the Midianites.
- The other Phinehas mentioned in the Old Testament was one of the evil sons of Eli the priest during the time of the prophet Samuel.
- Phinehas and his brother Hophni were both killed when the Philistines attacked Israel and stole the Ark of the Covenant.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [Jordan River](#), Midian, Philistines, [Samuel](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 4:4
- Ezra 8:2
- Joshua 22:13-14
- Numbers 25:6-7

Word Data:

- Strong's: H6372

(Go back to: [Numbers 25:7](#); [25:11](#); [31:6](#))

possess, possessed, possession, dispossess

Facts:

The terms “possess” and “possession” usually refer to owning something. They can also mean to gain control over something or occupy an area of land.

- In the Old Testament, this term is often used in the context of “possessing” or “taking possession of” an area of land.
- When Yahweh commanded the Israelites to “possess” the land of Canaan, it meant that they should go into the land and live there. This involved first conquering the Canaanite peoples who were living on that land.
- Yahweh told the Israelites that he had given them the land of Canaan as “their possession.” This could also be translated as “their rightful place to live.”
- The people of Israel were also called Yahweh’s “special possession.” This means that they belonged to him as his people whom he had specifically called to worship and serve him.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “possess” could also be translated as “own” or “have” or “have charge over.”
- The phrase “take possession of” could be translated as “take control of” or “occupy” or “live on,” depending on the context.
- When referring to things that people own, “possessions” could be translated as “belongings” or “property” or “owned things” or “things they owned.”
- When Yahweh calls the Israelites, “my special possession” this could also be translated as “my special people” or “people who belong to me” or “my people whom I love and rule.”
- The sentence, “they will become their possession” when referring to land, means “they will occupy the land” or “the land will belong to them.”
- The expression, “found in his possession” could be translated as “that he was holding” or “that he had with him.”
- The phrase “as your possession” could also be translated as “as something that belongs to you” or “as a place where your people will live.”
- The phrase, “in his possession” could be translated as “that he owned” or “which belonged to him.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [worship](#), [inherit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 6:70
- 1 Kings 9:17-19
- Acts 2:45
- Deuteronomy 4:5-6
- Genesis 31:36-37
- Matthew 13:44

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0270, H0272, H0834, H2505, H2631, H3027, H3423, H3424, H3425, H3426, H4180, H4181, H4672, H4735, H4736, H5157, H5159, H5459, H7069, G11390, G21920, G26970, G27220, G29320, G29330, G29350, G40470, G52240, G55640

(Go back to: [Numbers 33:53](#))

pray, prayer

Definition:

The terms “pray” and “prayer” refer to talking with God. These terms are also used to refer to people trying to talk to a false god.

- People can pray silently, talking to God with their thoughts, or they can pray aloud, speaking to God with their voice. Sometimes prayers are written down, such as when David wrote his prayers in the Book of Psalms.
- Prayer can include asking God for mercy, for help with a problem, and for wisdom in making decisions.
- Often people ask God to heal people who are sick or who need his help in other ways.
- People also thank and praise God when they are praying to him.
- Praying includes confessing our sins to God and asking him to forgive us.
- Talking to God is sometimes called “communing” with him as our spirit communicates with his spirit, sharing our emotions and enjoying his presence.
- This term could be translated as “talking to God” or “communicating with God.” The translation of this term should be able to include praying that is silent.

(See also: [false god](#), forgive, praise)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 3:9
- Acts 8:24
- Acts 14:26
- Colossians 4:4
- John 17:9
- Luke 11:1
- Matthew 5:43-45
- Matthew 14:22-24

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:5** Isaac **prayed** for Rebekah, and God allowed her to get pregnant with twins.
- **13:12** But Moses **prayed** for them, and God listened to his **prayer** and did not destroy them.
- **19:8** Then the prophets of Baal **prayed** to Baal, “Hear us, O Baal!”
- **21:7** Priests also **prayed** to God for the people.
- **38:11** Jesus told his disciples to **pray** that they would not enter into temptation.
- **43:13** The disciples continually listened to the teaching of the apostles, spent time together, ate together, and **prayed** with each other.
- **49:18** God tells you to **pray**, to study his word, to worship him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0577, H1156, H2470, H3863, H3908, H4994, H6279, H6293, H6419, H6739, H7592, H7878, H7879, H7881, H8034, H8605, G01540, G11620, G11890, G17830, G20650, G21710, G21720, G38700, G43350, G43360

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:2](#); [11:12](#); [11:14](#); [11:21](#); [21:7](#); [22:30](#); [22:32](#))

preach, preaching, preacher, proclaim, proclamation

Definition:

To “preach” means to speak to a group of people, teaching them about God and urging them to obey him. To “proclaim” means to announce or declare something publicly and boldly.

- Often preaching is done by one person to a large group of people. It is usually spoken, not written.
- “Preaching” and “teaching” are similar, but are not exactly the same.
- “Preaching” mainly refers to publicly proclaiming spiritual or moral truth, and urging the audience to respond. “Teaching” is a term that emphasizes instruction, that is, giving people information or teaching them how to do something.
- The term “preach” is usually used with the word “gospel.”
- What a person has preached to others can also be referred to in general as his “teachings.”
- Often in the Bible, “proclaim” means to announce publicly something that God has commanded, or to tell others about God and how great he is.
- In the New Testament, the apostles proclaimed the good news about Jesus to many people in many different cities and regions.
- The term “proclaim” can also be used for decrees made by kings or for denouncing evil in a public way.
- Other ways to translate “proclaim” could include “announce” or “openly preach” or “publicly declare.”
- The term “proclamation” could also be translated as “announcement” or “public preaching.”

(See also: [declare](#), good news, Jesus, kingdom of God)

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:1-2
- Acts 8:4-5
- Acts 10:42-43
- Acts 14:21-22
- Acts 20:25
- Luke 4:42
- Matthew 3:1-3
- Matthew 4:17
- Matthew 12:41
- Matthew 24:14
- Acts 9:20-22
- Acts 13:38-39
- Jonah 3:1-3
- Luke 4:18-19
- Mark 1:14-15
- Matthew 10:26

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **24:2** He (John) **preached** to them, saying, “Repent, for the Kingdom of God is near!”
- **30:1** Jesus sent his apostles to **preach** and to teach people in many different villages.
- **38:1** About three years after Jesus first began **preaching** and teaching publicly, Jesus told his disciples that he wanted to celebrate this Passover with them in Jerusalem, and that he would be killed there.
- **45:6** But in spite of this, they **preached** about Jesus everywhere they went.
- **45:7** He (Philip) went to Samaria where he preached about Jesus and many people were saved.
- **46:6** Right away, Saul began **preaching** to the Jews in Damascus, saying, “Jesus is the Son of God!”
- **46:10** Then they sent them off to **preach** the good news of Jesus in many other places.

- **47:14** Paul and other Christian leaders traveled to many cities, **preaching** and teaching people the good news about Jesus.
- **50:2** When Jesus was living on earth he said, "My disciples will **preach** the good news about the kingdom of God to people everywhere in the world, and then the end will come."

Word Data:

- Strong's:
 - preach: H1319, H7121, H7150, G1229, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2783, G2784, G2980, G4283
 - proclaim: H1319, H1696, H1697, H2199, H3045, H3745, H4161, H5046, H5608, H6963, H7121, H7440, H8085, G518, G591, G1229, G1861, G2097, G2605, G2782, G2784, G2980, G3142, G4135

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:14](#); [8:7](#); [27:7](#); [27:8](#); [32:21](#); [33:8](#); [34:4](#))

priest, priesthood

Definition:

In the Bible, a priest was someone who was chosen to offer sacrifices to God on behalf of God's people. The "priesthood" was the name for the office or condition of being a priest.

- In the Old Testament, God chose Aaron and his descendants to be his priests for the people of Israel.
- The "priesthood" was a right and a responsibility that was passed down from father to son in the Levite clan.
- The Israelite priests had the responsibility of offering the people's sacrifices to God, along with other duties in the temple.
- Priests also offered regular prayers to God on behalf of his people and performed other religious rites.
- The priests pronounced formal blessings on people and taught them God's laws.
- In Jesus' time, there were different levels of priests, including the chief priests and the high priest.
- Jesus is our "great high priest" who intercedes for us in God's presence. He offered himself as the ultimate sacrifice for sin. This means that the sacrifices made by human priests are no longer needed.
- In the New Testament, every believer in Jesus is called a "priest" who can come directly to God in prayer to intercede for himself and other people.
- In ancient times, there were also pagan priests who presented offerings to false gods such as Baal.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term "priest" could be translated as "sacrifice person" or "God's intermediary" or "sacrificial mediator" or "person God appoints to represent him."
- The translation of "priest" should be different from the translation of "mediator."
- Some translations may prefer to always say something like "Israelite priest" or "Jewish priest" or "Yahweh's priest" or "priest of Baal" to make it clear that this does not refer to a modern-day type of priest.
- The term used to translate "priest" should be different from the terms for "chief priest" and "high priest" and "Levite" and "prophet."

(See also: [Aaron](#), high priest, mediator, [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 14:17-18
- Genesis 47:22
- John 1:19-21
- Luke 10:31
- Mark 1:44
- Mark 2:25-26
- Matthew 8:4
- Matthew 12:4
- Micah 3:9-11
- Nehemiah 10:28-29
- Nehemiah 10:34-36
- Revelation 1:6

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:7** "Melchizedek, the **priest** of God Most High"

- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the altar in front of the Tent of Meeting as a sacrifice to God. A **priest** would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was sacrificed covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight. God chose Moses' brother, Aaron, and Aaron's descendants to be his **priests**.
- **19:7** So the **priests** of Baal prepared a sacrifice but did not light the fire.
- **21:7** An Israelite **priest** was someone who made sacrifices to God on behalf of the people as a substitute for the punishment of their sins. **Priests** also prayed to God for the people.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3547, H3548, H3549, H3550, G07480, G07490, G24050, G24060, G24070, G24090, G24200

(Go back to: Numbers 3 General Notes; 3:3; 3:4; 3:6; 3:32; 4:16; 4:28; 4:33; 5:8; 5:9; 5:10; 5:15; 5:16; 5:17; 5:18; 5:19; 5:21; 5:23; 5:25; 5:26; 5:30; 6:10; 6:11; 6:16; 6:17; 6:19; 6:20; 7:8; 10:8; 15:25; 15:28; Notes; 16:37; 16:39; Notes; Notes; 18:28; 19:3; 19:4; 19:6; 19:7; 25:7; 25:11; 26:1; 26:3; 26:63; 26:64; 27:2; 27:19; 27:21; 27:22; 31:6; 31:12; 31:13; 31:21; 31:26; 31:29; 31:31; 31:41; 31:51; 31:54; 32:2; 32:28; 33:38; 34:17; 35:25; 35:28; 35:32)

prince, princess, governors, provincial governors, officials, noblemen, nobility

Definition:

A "prince" is the son of a king. A "princess" is a daughter of a king.

- The term "prince" is often used figuratively to refer to a leader, ruler, or other powerful person.
- Because of Abraham's wealth and importance, he was referred to as a "prince" by the Hittites he was living among.
- In the book of Daniel, the term "prince" is used in the expressions "prince of Persia" and "prince of Greece," which in those contexts probably refer to powerful evil spirits who had authority over those regions.
- The archangel Michael is also referred to as a "prince" in the book of Daniel.
- Sometimes in the Bible Satan is referred to as "the prince of this world."
- Jesus is called the "Prince of Peace" and the "Prince of Life."
- In Acts 2:36, Jesus is referred to as "Lord and Christ" and in Acts 5:31 he is referred to as "Prince and Savior," showing the parallel meaning of "Lord" and "Prince."

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate "prince" could include, "king's son" or "ruler" or "leader" or "chieftain" or "captain."
- When referring to angels, this could also be translated as "spirit ruler" or "leading angel."
- When referring to Satan or other evil spirits, this term could also be translated as "evil spirit ruler" or "powerful spirit leader" or "ruling spirit," depending on the context.

(See also: angel, authority, Christ, demon, [lord](#), power, ruler, Satan, Savior, [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 5:29-32
- Genesis 12:15
- Genesis 49:26
- Luke 1:52

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0001, H0117, H0324, H2831, H3548, H4502, H5057, H5081, H5139, H5257, H5387, H5633, H5993, H6579, H7261, H7333, H7786, H8269, H8282, H8323, G07470, G07580, G14130, G31750

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:3](#); [7:10](#); [10:4](#); [21:18](#); [22:8](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:15](#); [22:21](#); [22:35](#); [23:6](#); [23:17](#); [27:2](#); [31:14](#); [31:48](#); [31:52](#); [31:54](#); [36:1](#))

profane, profaned

Definition:

To profane something means to act in a way that defiles, pollutes, or disrespects something that is holy.

- A profane person is one who acts in a way that is unholy and dishonoring of God.
- The verb to “profane” could be translated as to “treat as unholy” or to “be irreverent toward” or to “dishonor.”
- God told the Israelites that they “profaned” themselves with idols, meaning that the people were making themselves “unclean” or “dishonored” by this sin. They were also dishonoring God.
- Depending on the context, the adjective “profane” could be translated as “dishonoring” or “godless” or “unholy.”

(See also: defile, [holy](#), [clean](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 2:16-18
- Ezekiel 20:9
- Malachi 1:10-12
- Matthew 12:5
- Numbers 18:30-32

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2455, H2490, H2491, H5234, H8610, G09520, G09530

([Go back to: Numbers 25:1](#))

promise, promised

Definition:

When used as a verb, the term “promise” refers to the action of a person saying that he will do something in such way that he obligates himself to fulfill what he has said. When used as a noun, the term “promise” refers to the thing that a person obligates himself to do.

- The Bible records many promises that God has made for his people.
- Promises are an important part of formal agreements such as covenants.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “promise” could be translated as “commitment” or “assurance” or “guarantee.”
- To “promise to do something” could be translated as “assure someone that you will do something” or “commit to doing something.”

(See also: [covenant](#), [oath](#), [vow](#))

Bible References:

- Galatians 3:15-16
- Genesis 25:31-34
- Hebrews 11:9
- James 1:12
- Numbers 30:2

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, “I **promise** I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are sinful from the time they are children.”
- **3:16** God then made the first rainbow as a sign of his **promise**. Every time the rainbow appeared in the sky, God would remember what he **promised** and so would his people.
- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and **promised** again that he would have a son and as many descendants as the stars in the sky. Abram believed God’s **promise**.
- **5:4** “Your wife, Sarai, will have a son—he will be the son of **promise**.”
- **8:15** The covenant **promises** that God gave to Abraham were passed on to Isaac, then to Jacob, and then to Jacob’s twelve sons and their families.
- **17:14** Though David had been unfaithful to God, God was still faithful to his **promises**.
- **50:1** Jesus **promised** he would return at the end of the world. Though he has not yet come back, he will keep his **promise**.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0559, H0562, H1696, H8569, G18430, G18600, G18610, G18620, G36700, G42790

(Go back to: [Numbers 30 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

Promised Land

Facts:

The term “Promised Land” only occurs in the Bible stories, not the Bible text. It is an alternate way of referring to the land of Canaan which God had promised to give to Abraham and his descendants.

- When Abram was living in the city of Ur, God commanded him to go live in the land of Canaan. He and his descendants, the Israelites, lived there for many years.
- When a severe famine caused there to be no food in Canaan, the Israelites moved to Egypt.
- Four hundred years later, God rescued the Israelites from slavery in Egypt and brought them back to Canaan again, the land God had promised to give them.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “Promised Land” can be translated as the “land that God said he would give to Abraham” or “land that God promised to Abraham” or “land God promised to his people” or “land of Canaan.”
- In the Bible text, this term occurs as some form of “the land God promised.”

(See also: [Canaan](#), [promise](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 8:1-2
- Ezekiel 7:26-27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:1** They (Israelites) were no longer slaves, and they were going to the **Promised Land!**
- **14:1** After God had told the Israelites the laws he wanted them to obey as part of his covenant with them, God began leading them from Mount Sinai toward the **Promised Land**, which was also called Canaan.
- **14:2** God had promised Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob that he would give the **Promised Land** to their descendants, but now there were many people groups living there.
- **14:14** Then God led the people to the edge of the **Promised Land** again.
- **15:2** The Israelites had to cross the Jordan River to enter into the **Promised Land**.
- **15:12** After this battle, God gave each tribe of Israel its own section of the **Promised Land**.
- **20:9** This period of time when God’s people were forced to leave the **Promised Land** is called the Exile.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0776, H3068, H3423, H5159, H5414, H7650

(Go back to: [Introduction to Numbers](#); [Numbers 13 General Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#); [Notes](#))

prophet, prophecy, prophesy, seer, prophetess

Definition:

A “prophet” is a man who speaks God’s messages to people. A woman who does this is called a “prophetess.”

- Often prophets warned people to turn away from their sins and obey God.
- A “prophecy” is the message that the prophet speaks. To “prophesy” means to speak God’s messages.
- Often the message of a prophecy was about something that would happen in the future.
- Many prophecies in the Old Testament have already been fulfilled.
- In the Bible the collection of books written by prophets are sometimes referred to as “the prophets.”
- For example the phrase, “the law and the prophets” is a way of referring to all the Hebrew scriptures, which are also known as the “Old Testament.”
- An older term for a prophet was “seer” or “someone who sees.”
- Sometimes the term “seer” refers to a false prophet or to someone who practices divination.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “prophet” could be translated as “God’s spokesman” or “man who speaks for God” or “man who speaks God’s messages.”
- A “seer” could be translated as “person who sees visions” or “man who sees the future from God.”
- The term “prophetess” could be translated as “spokeswoman for God” or “woman who speaks for God” or “woman who speaks God’s messages.”
- Ways to translate “prophecy” could include, “message from God” or “prophet message.”
- The term “prophesy” could be translated as “speak words from God” or “tell God’s message.”
- The figurative expression, “law and the prophets” could also be translated as “the books of the law and of the prophets” or “everything written about God and his people, including God’s laws and what his prophets preached.” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- When referring to a prophet (or seer) of a false god, it may be necessary to translate this as “false prophet (seer)” or “prophet (seer) of a false god” or “prophet of Baal,” for example.

(See also: [Baal](#), divination, [false god](#), false prophet, fulfill, [law](#), vision)

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 2:14-16
- Acts 3:25
- John 1:43-45
- Malachi 4:4-6
- Matthew 1:23
- Matthew 2:18
- Matthew 5:17
- Psalm 51:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they trusted in God and believed that Moses was a **prophet** of God.
- **17:13** God was very angry about what David had done, so he sent the **prophet** Nathan to tell David how evil his sin was.
- **19:1** Throughout the history of the Israelites, God sent them **prophets**. The **prophets** heard messages from God and then told the people God’s messages.

- **19:6** All the people of the entire kingdom of Israel, including the 450 **prophets** of Baal, came to Mount Carmel.
- **19:17** Most of the time, the people did not obey God. They often mistreated the **prophets** and sometimes even killed them.
- **21:9** The **prophet** Isaiah **prophesied** that the Messiah would be born from a virgin.
- **43:5** "This fulfills the **prophecy** made by the **prophet** Joel in which God said, 'In the last days, I will pour out my Spirit.'"
- **43:7** "This fulfills the **prophecy** which says, 'You will not let your Holy One rot in the grave.'"
- **48:12** Moses was a great **prophet** who proclaimed the word of God. But Jesus is the greatest **prophet** of all. He is the Word of God.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H2372, H2374, H4853, H5012, H5013, H5016, H5017, H5029, H5030, H5031, H5197, G24950, G43940, G43950, G43960, G43970, G43980, G55780

(Go back to: [Numbers 11 General Notes](#); [11:25](#); [11:26](#); [11:29](#); [Notes](#); [12:6](#); [Notes](#))

prosper, prosperity, prosperous

Definition:

The term “prosper” generally refers to living well, whether it be physically, morally, emotionally, etc. This term often expresses the idea of being wealthy or successful in life.

- The term “prosperous” often refers to success in owning money and property or in producing everything needed for people to live well.
- In the Bible, the term “prosperous” also includes good health and being blessed with children.
- A “prosperous” city or country is one that has many people, good production of food, and businesses that bring in plenty of money.
- The Bible teaches that a person will prosper spiritually when he obeys God’s teachings. He will also experience the blessings of joy and peace. God does not always give people a lot of material wealth, but he will always prosper them spiritually as they follow his ways.
- Depending on the context, the term “prosper” could also be translated as “succeed spiritually” or “be blessed by God” or “experience good things” or “live well.”
- The term “prosperous” could also be translated as “successful” or “wealthy” or “spiritually fruitful.”
- “Prosperity” could also be translated as “well-being” or “wealth” or “success” or “abundant blessings.”

(See also: [bless](#), [good](#), [fruit](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 29:22-23
- Deuteronomy 23:6
- Job 36:11
- Leviticus 25:26-28
- Psalms 1:3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1129, H1767, H1878, H1879, H2428, H2896, H2898, H3027, H3190, H3444, H3498, H3787, H4195, H5381, H6500, H6509, H6555, H6743, H6744, H7230, H7487, H7919, H7951, H7961, H7963, H7965

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:41](#); [24:18](#); [31:9](#))

prostitute, harlot, whored

Definition:

The terms “prostitute” and “harlot” both refer to a person who performs sexual acts for money or for religious rites. Prostitutes or harlots were usually female, but some were male.

- In the Bible, the word “prostitute” is sometimes used figuratively to refer to a person who worships false gods or who practices witchcraft.
- The expression “play the harlot” means to act like a harlot by being sexually immoral. This expression is also used in the Bible to refer to a person who worships idols.
- To “prostitute oneself” to something means to be sexually immoral or when used figuratively, to be unfaithful to God by worshiping false gods.
- In ancient times, some pagan temples used male and female prostitutes as part of their rituals.
- This term could be translated by the word or phrase that is used in the project language to refer to a prostitute. Some languages may have a euphemistic term that is used for this. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: adultery, [false god](#), sexual immorality, [false god](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 34:31
- Genesis 38:21
- Luke 15:30
- Matthew 21:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2154, H2181, H2183, H2185, H6945, H6948, H8457, G42040

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:39](#))

prostrate, bow down, worship

Definition:

To “prostrate” oneself means to lie flat on the ground, usually in submission to a person of authority such as a king or some other powerful person. This same term can also mean to “worship,” referring to the actions of honoring, praising, and obeying God.

- This term often means literally “bow down” or “prostrate oneself” to humbly honor someone.
- We worship God when we serve and honor him, by praising him and obeying him.
- When the Israelites worshiped God, it often included sacrificing an animal on an altar.
- This term can be used both of people who worship Yahweh as the One True God and others who worship false gods.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “worship” could be translated as “bow down to” or “honor and serve” or “honor and obey.”
- In some contexts, it could also be translated as “humbly praise” or “give honor and praise.”

(See also: [bow](#), [fear](#), [sacrifice](#), praise, honor)

Bible References:

- Colossians 2:18-19
- Deuteronomy 29:18
- Exodus 3:11-12
- Luke 4:7
- Matthew 2:2
- Matthew 2:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, “I am Yahweh, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not **worship** other gods.”
- **14:2** The Canaanites did not **worship** or obey God. They **worshiped** false gods and did many evil things.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could **worship** God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:12** All of the kings and most of the people of the kingdom of Israel **worshiped** idols.
- **25:7** Jesus replied, “Get away from me, Satan! In God’s word he commands his people, ‘**Worship** only the Lord your God and only serve him.’”
- **26:2** On the Sabbath, he (Jesus) went to the place of **worship**.
- **47:1** There they met a woman named Lydia who was a merchant. She loved and **worshiped** God.
- **49:18** God tells you to pray, to study his word, to **worship** him with other Christians, and to tell others what he has done for you.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5457, H5647, H6087, H7812, G13910, G14790, G21510, G23180, G23230, G23560, G30000, G35110, G43520, G43530, G45730, G45740, G45760

(Go back to: [Numbers 22:31; 25:2](#))

proud, pride, prideful

Definition:

The terms “proud” and “prideful” refer to a person thinking too highly of himself, and especially, thinking that he is better than other people.

- A proud person often does not admit his own faults. He is not humble.
- Pride can lead to disobeying God in other ways.
- The terms “proud” and “pride” can also be used in a positive sense, such as being “proud of” what someone else has achieved and being “proud of” your children. The expression “take pride in your work” means to find joy in doing your work well.
- Someone can be proud of what he has done without being prideful about it. Some languages have different words for these two different meanings of “pride.”
- The term “prideful” is always negative, with the meaning of being “arrogant” or “conceited” or “self-important.”

Translation Suggestions:

- The noun “pride” could be translated as “arrogance” or “conceit” or “self-importance.”
- In other contexts, “pride” could be translated as “joy” or “satisfaction” or “pleasure.”
- To be “proud of” could also be translated as “happy with” or “satisfied with” or “joyful about (the accomplishments of).”
- The phrase “take pride in your work” could be translated as “find satisfaction in doing your work well.”
- The expression “take pride in Yahweh” could also be translated as “be delighted about all the wonderful things Yahweh has done” or “be happy about how amazing Yahweh is.”

(See also: arrogant, [humble](#), [joy](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 3:6-7
- 2 Corinthians 1:12
- Galatians 6:3-5
- Isaiah 13:19
- Luke 1:51

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:2** They were very **proud**, and they did not care about what God said.
- **34:10** Then Jesus said, “I tell you the truth, God heard the tax collector’s prayer and declared him to be righteous. But he did not like the prayer of the religious leader. God will humble everyone who is **proud**, and he will lift up whoever humbles himself.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1341, H1343, H1344, H1346, H1347, H1348, H1349, H1361, H1362, H1363, H1364, H1396, H1466, H1467, H1984, H2086, H2087, H3093, H3238, H3513, H4062, H1431, H4791, H5965, H7295, H7312, H7342, H7311, H7830, H8597, G13910, G13920, G27440, G27450, G27460, G31730, G51870, G52290, G52430, G52440, G53080, G53090, G54260

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:5; 14:17](#))

pure, purify, purification

Definition:

To be “pure” means to have no flaw or to have nothing mixed in that is not supposed to be there. To purify something is to cleanse it and remove anything that contaminates or pollutes it.

- In regard to Old Testament laws, “purify” and “purification” refer mainly to the cleansing from things that make an object or a person ritually unclean, such as disease, body fluids, or childbirth.
- The Old Testament also had laws telling people how to be purified from sin, usually by the sacrifice of an animal. This was only temporary and the sacrifices had to be repeated over and over again.
- In the New Testament, to be purified often refers to being cleansed from sin.
- The only way that people can be completely and permanently purified from sin is through repenting and receiving God’s forgiveness, through trusting in Jesus and his sacrifice.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “purify” could be translated as “make pure” or “cleanse” or “cleanse from all contamination” or “get rid of all sin.”
- A phrase such as “when the time for their purification was over” could be translated as “when they had purified themselves by waiting the required number of days.”
- The phrase “provided purification for sins” could be translated as “provided a way for people to be completely cleansed from their sin.”
- Other ways to translate “purification” could include “cleansing” or “spiritual washing” or “becoming ritually clean.”

(See also: [atonement](#), [clean](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 1:5
- Exodus 31:6-9
- Hebrews 9:13-15
- James 4:8
- Luke 2:22
- Revelation 14:4

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1249, H1252, H1253, H1305, H1865, H2134, H2135, H2141, H2212, H2398, H2403, H2561, H2889, H2890, H2891, H2892, H2893, H3795, H3800, H4795, H5343, H5462, H6337, H6884, H6942, H8562, G00480, G00490, G00530, G00540, G15060, G25110, G25120, G25130, G25140

(Go back to: [Numbers 8:6](#); [8:7](#); [8:15](#); [Notes](#); [19:12](#); [19:19](#); [31:23](#); [31:24](#))

purple

Facts:

The term “purple” is the name of a color that is a mixture of blue and red.

- In ancient times, purple was a rare and highly valuable color of dye that was used to dye the clothing of kings and other high officials.
- Because it was costly and time-consuming to produce this dye, purple clothing was considered a sign of wealth, distinction, and royalty.
- Purple was also one of the colors used for the curtains in the tabernacle and temple, and for the ephod worn by the priests.
- Purple dye was extracted from a kind of sea snail by either crushing or boiling the snails or by causing them to release the dye while still alive. This was an expensive process.
- Roman soldiers put a purple royal robe on Jesus before his crucifixion, to mock him for his claim to be King of the Jews.
- Lydia from the town of Philippi was a woman who made her living by selling purple cloth.

(Translation suggestions: [Translate Names](#))

(See also: ephod, Philippi, royal, [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 2:13-14
- Daniel 5:7
- Daniel 5:29-31
- Proverbs 31:22-23

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0710, H0711, H0713, G42090, G42100, G42110

(Go back to: [Numbers 4:13](#))

rebel, rebellion, rebellious, rebelliousness

Definition:

The term “rebel” means to refuse to submit to someone’s authority. A “rebellious” person often disobeys and does evil things. This kind of person is called “a rebel.”

- A person is rebelling when he does something the authorities over him have told him not to do.
- A person can also rebel by refusing to do what the authorities have commanded him to do.
- Sometimes people rebel against their government or leader who is ruling over them.
- The term to “rebel” could also be translated as to “disobey” or to “revolt,” depending on the context.
- “Rebellious” could also be translated as “continually disobedient” or “refusing to obey.”
- The term “rebellion” means “refusal to obey” or “disobedience” or “law-breaking.”
- The phrase “the rebellion” or “a rebellion” can also refer to an organized group of people who publicly rebel against ruling authorities by breaking the law and attacking leaders and other people. Often they try to get other people to join them in rebelling.

(See also: authority, governor)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 12:18-19
- 1 Samuel 12:14
- 1 Timothy 1:9-11
- 2 Chronicles 10:17-19
- Acts 21:38
- Luke 23:19

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **14:14** After the Israelites had wandered in the wilderness for forty years, all of them who had **rebelled** against God were dead.
- **18:7** Ten of the tribes of the nation of Israel **rebelled** against Rehoboam.
- **18:9** Jeroboam **rebelled** against God and caused the people to sin.
- **18:13** Most of the people of Judah also **rebelled** against God and worshiped other gods.
- **20:7** But after a few years, the king of Judah **rebelled** against Babylon.
- **45:3** Then he (Stephen) said, “You stubborn and **rebellious** people always reject the Holy Spirit, just as your ancestors always rejected God and killed his prophets.”

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4775, H4776, H4777, H4779, H4780, H4784, H4805, H5327, H5627, H5637, H6586, H6588, H7846, G38930, G49550

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:9](#); [20:24](#); [27:14](#))

rebuke, reprove

Definition:

The term “rebuke” refers to correcting someone verbally, usually with sternness or force.

- The New Testament commands Christians to rebuke other believers when they are clearly disobeying God.
- The book of Proverbs instructs parents to rebuke their children when they are disobedient.
- A rebuke is typically given to prevent those who committed a wrong from further involving themselves in sin.
- This could be translated by “sternly correct” or “admonish.”
- The phrase “a rebuke” could be translated by “a stern correction” or “a strong criticism.”
- “Without rebuke” could be translated as “without admonishing” or “without criticism.”

(See also admonish, disobey)

Bible References:

- Genesis 21:25
- Mark 1:23-26
- Mark 16:14
- Matthew 8:26-27
- Matthew 17:17-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1605, H1606, H2778, H2781, H3198, H4045, H4148, H8156, H8433, G16490, G16510, G19690, G20080, G36790

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:3](#))

redeem, redeemer, redemption

Definition:

The term “redeem” refers to buying back something or someone that has been previously owned or held captive. A “redeemer” is someone who redeems something or someone.

- God gave laws to the Israelites about how to redeem people or things. For example, someone could redeem a person who was in slavery by paying the price so that the slave could go free. The word “ransom” also refers to this practice.
- If someone’s land had been sold, a relative of that person could “redeem” or “buy back” that land so that it would stay in the family.
- These practices show how God redeems people who are in slavery to sin. When he died on the cross, Jesus paid the full price for people’s sins and redeemed all those who trust in him for salvation. People who have been redeemed by God are set free from sin and its punishment.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, the term “redeem” could also be translated as “buy back” or “pay to free (someone)” or “ransom.”
- The term “redemption” could be translated as “ransom” or “freedom payment” or “buying back.”
- The words “ransom” and “redeem” have basically the same meaning, so some languages may have only one term to translate both these words. The word “ransom,” however, can also mean the payment necessary to “redeem” something or someone. The term “redeem” never refers to the actual payment itself.

(See also: free, ransom)

Bible References:

- Colossians 1:13-14
- Ephesians 1:7-8
- Ephesians 5:16
- Galatians 3:13-14
- Galatians 4:5
- Luke 2:38
- Ruth 2:20

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1350, H1353, H6299, H6302, H6304, H6306, H6561, H7069, G00590, G06290, G18050, G30840, G30850

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:8](#); [18:15](#); [18:16](#); [18:17](#); [35:12](#); [35:19](#); [35:21](#); [35:24](#); [35:25](#); [35:27](#))

rest, rested, restless

Definition:

The term “rest” generally means to stop working in order to relax or regain strength. However, the term can refer to various kinds of rest besides only rest from working. For example, a person might rest from fighting, rest from speaking, or rest from moving, etc.

- An object can be said to be “resting” somewhere, which means it is “standing” or “sitting” there.
- Something that “comes to rest” somewhere has “stopped” there.
- When a person or animals rest, they are sitting or lying down in order to refresh themselves.
- God commanded the Israelites to rest on the seventh day of the week. This day of not working was called the “Sabbath” day.
- To rest an object on something means to “place” or “put” it there.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, to “rest (oneself)” could also be translated as to “stop working” or to “refresh himself” or to “stop carrying burdens.”
- To “rest” an object on something could be translated as to “place” or “put” or “set” that object on something.
- When Jesus said, “I will give you rest,” this could also be translated as “I will cause you to stop carrying your burden” or “I will help you be at peace” or “I will empower you to relax and trust in me.”
- God said, “they will not enter my rest,” and this statement could be translated as “they will not experience my blessings of rest” or “they will not experience the joy and peace that comes from trusting in me.”
- The term “the rest” could be translated as “those that remain” or “all the other people” or “everything that is left.”

(See also: remnant, [Sabbath](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 6:41
- Genesis 2:3
- Jeremiah 6:16-19
- Matthew 11:29
- Revelation 14:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0014, H1824, H1826, H2308, H3498, H3499, H4494, H4496, H4771, H5117, H5118, H5183, H5564, H6314, H7258, H7280, H7599, H7604, H7605, H7606, H7611, H7673, H7677, H7901, H7931, H7954, H8058, H8172, H8252, H8300, G03720, G03730, G04250, G15150, G18790, G19540, G19810, G22700, G26630, G26640, G26810, G28380, G30620, G45200

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:33](#); [11:26](#))

restore, restoration

Definition:

The terms “restore” and “restoration” refer to causing something to return to its original place or condition.

- When a diseased body part is restored, this means it has been “healed.”
- A broken relationship that is restored has been “reconciled.” God restores sinful people and brings them back to himself.
- If people have been restored to their home country, they have been “brought back” or “returned” to that country.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, ways to translate “restore” could include “renew” or “repay” or “return” or “heal” or “bring back.”
- Other expressions for this term could be “make new” or “make like new again.”
- When property is “restored,” it has been “repaired” or “replaced” or “given back” to its owner.
- Depending on the context, “restoration” could be translated as “renewal” or “healing” or “reconciliation.”

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 5:10
- Acts 3:21
- Acts 15:15-18
- Isaiah 49:5-6
- Jeremiah 15:19-21
- Lamentations 5:22
- Leviticus 6:5-7
- Luke 19:8
- Matthew 12:13
- Psalm 80:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7725, H7999, H8421, G06000, G26750

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:8](#); [8:25](#); [10:36](#); [14:3](#); [14:43](#); [17:10](#); [18:9](#); [22:34](#); [23:5](#); [23:16](#); [23:20](#); [25:11](#); [32:15](#); [32:18](#); [32:22](#); [35:28](#); [35:32](#))

return, turn back

Definition:

The term “return” means to go back or to give something back.

- To “return to” something means to start doing that activity again. To “return to” a place or person means to go back to that place or person again.
- When the Israelites returned to their worship of idols, they were starting to worship them again.
- When they returned to Yahweh, they repented and were worshiping Yahweh again.
- To return land or things that were taken or received from someone else means to give that property back to the person it belongs to.

(See also: turn)

Bible References:

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5437, H7725, H7729, H8421, H8666, G03440, G03600, G03900, G18770, G18800, G19940, G52900

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:7](#); [11:4](#); [13:25](#); [13:26](#); [14:4](#); [14:36](#); [16:50](#); [22:8](#); [23:6](#); [24:25](#); [25:4](#); [33:7](#); [35:25](#))

Reuben

Facts:

Reuben was Jacob's first son. He was Leah's first son. His descendants became one of the tribes of Israel.

- The tribe descended from him was known as the tribe of Reuben or the Reubenites.
- In Hebrew, the name Reuben means "Look, a son!"
- The tribe of Reuben settled on the eastern side of the Jordan River along with the tribe of Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: twelve tribes of Israel, [Jacob](#), Leah)

Bible References:

- Genesis 29:32
- Genesis 35:21-22
- Genesis 42:22
- Genesis 42:37

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7205, H7206, G45020

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:20](#); [1:21](#); [2:10](#); [2:16](#); [7:30](#); [10:18](#); [13:4](#); [16:1](#); [26:5](#); [32:1](#); [32:2](#); [32:6](#); [32:25](#); [32:29](#); [32:31](#); [32:33](#); [32:37](#))

Sabbath

Definition:

The term “Sabbath” refers to the seventh day of the week, which God commanded the Israelites to set apart as a day of rest and doing no work.

- After God finished creating the world in six days, he rested on the seventh day. In the same way, God commanded the Israelites to set aside the seventh day as a special day to rest and worship him.
- The command to “keep the Sabbath holy” is one of the ten commandments that God wrote on the stone tablets that he gave Moses for the Israelites.
- Following the Jewish system of counting days, the Sabbath begins on Friday at sundown and lasts until Saturday at sundown.
- Sometimes in the Bible the Sabbath is called “Sabbath day” rather than only the Sabbath.

Translation Suggestions:

- This could also be translated as “resting day” or “day for resting” or “day of not working” or “God’s day of rest.”
- Some translations capitalize this term to show that it is a special day, as in “Sabbath Day” or “Resting Day.”
- Consider how this term is translated in a local or national language.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [rest](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 31:2-3
- Acts 13:26-27
- Exodus 31:14
- Isaiah 56:6-7
- Lamentations 2:6
- Leviticus 19:3
- Luke 13:14
- Mark 2:27
- Matthew 12:2
- Nehemiah 10:32-33

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:5** “Always be sure to keep the **Sabbath day** holy. That is, do all your work in six days, for the seventh day is a day for you to rest and to honor me.”
- **26:2** Jesus went to the town of Nazareth where he had lived during his childhood. On the **Sabbath**, he went to the place of worship.
- **41:3** The day after Jesus was buried was a **Sabbath** day, and the Jews were not permitted to go to the tomb on that day.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4868, H7676, H7677, G43150, G45210

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:32](#); [Notes](#); [28:9](#); [28:10](#))

sacrifice, sacrifices, offering

Definition:

In the Bible, the terms “sacrifice” and “offering” refer to special gifts given to God as an act of worshiping him. People also offered sacrifices to false gods.

sacrifice

- Sacrifices to God often involved the killing of an animal.
- Only the sacrifice of Jesus, God’s perfect sinless Son, can completely cleanse people from sin; animal sacrifices could never do that.

offering

- The word “offering” generally refers to anything that is offered or given. The term “sacrifice” refers to something that is given or done at great cost to the giver.
- Offerings to God were specific things that he commanded the Israelites to give in order to express devotion and obedience to him.
- The names of the different offerings, such as “burnt offering” and “peace offering,” indicated what kind of offering was being given.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “offering” could also be translated as “a gift to God” or “something given to God” or “something valuable that is presented to God.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sacrifice” could also be translated as “something valuable given in worship” or “a special animal killed and presented to God.”
- The action to “sacrifice” could be translated as to “give up something valuable” or to “kill an animal and give it to God.”
- Another way to translate “present yourself as a living sacrifice” could be “as you live your life, offer yourself to God as completely as an animal is offered on an altar.”

(See also: [altar](#), [burnt offering](#), [drink offering](#), [false god](#), [fellowship offering](#), [freewill offering](#) [peace offering](#), [priest](#), [sin offering](#), [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Timothy 4:6
- Acts 7:42
- Acts 21:25
- Genesis 4:3-5
- James 2:21-24
- Mark 1:43-44
- Mark 14:12
- Matthew 5:23

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:14** After Noah got off the boat, he built an altar and **sacrificed** some of each kind of animal which could be used for a **sacrifice**. God was happy with the **sacrifice** and blessed Noah and his family.
- **5:6** "Take Isaac, your only son, and kill him as a **sacrifice** to me." Again Abraham obeyed God and prepared to **sacrifice** his son.
- **5:9** God had provided the ram to be the **sacrifice** instead of Isaac.
- **13:9** Anyone who disobeyed God's law could bring an animal to the Tent of Meeting as a **sacrifice** to God. A priest would kill the animal and burn it on the altar. The blood of the animal that was **sacrificed** covered the person's sin and made that person clean in God's sight.
- **17:6** David wanted to build a temple where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him **sacrifices**.
- **48:6** Jesus is the Great High Priest. Unlike other priests, he offered himself as the only **sacrifice** that could to take away the sin of all the people in the world.
- **48:8** But God provided Jesus, the Lamb of God, as a **sacrifice** to die in our place.
- **49:11** Because Jesus **sacrificed** himself, God can forgive any sin, even terrible sins.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0801, H0817, H0819, H1685, H1890, H1974, H2076, H2077, H2281, H2282, H2398, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2409, H3632, H4394, H4503, H4504, H5066, H5068, H5071, H5257, H5258, H5261, H5262, H5927, H5928, H5930, H6453, H6944, H6999, H7133, H7311, H8002, H8426, H8548, H8573, H8641, G02660, G03340, G10490, G14350, G14940, G23780, G23800, G36460, G43760, G54850

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:9](#); [6:17](#); [6:18](#); [7:13](#); [7:19](#); [7:25](#); [7:31](#); [7:37](#); [7:43](#); [7:49](#); [7:55](#); [7:61](#); [7:67](#); [7:73](#); [7:79](#); [7:88](#); [10:10](#); [15:3](#); [15:8](#); [15:19](#); [15:20](#); [15:21](#); [18:8](#); [18:11](#); [18:19](#); [18:24](#); [18:26](#); [18:27](#); [18:28](#); [18:29](#); [28:5](#); [31:29](#); [31:41](#))

Samuel

Facts:

Samuel was a prophet and the last judge of Israel. He anointed both Saul and David as kings over Israel.

- Samuel was born to Elkanah and Hannah in the town of Ramah.
- Hannah had been barren, so she had prayed earnestly that God would give her a son. Samuel was the answer to that prayer.
- Hannah promised that if, in answer to her desperate prayer that God would give her a male child, her request was granted, she would dedicate her son to Yahweh.
- To fulfill her promise to God, when Samuel was a young boy, Hannah sent him to live with and help Eli the priest in the temple.
- God raised up Samuel to be a great prophet.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Hannah, [judge](#), [prophet](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 1:19
- 1 Samuel 9:24
- 1 Samuel 12:17
- Acts 3:24
- Acts 13:20
- Hebrews 11:32-34

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8050, G45450

([Go back to: Numbers 34:20](#))

sanctuary

Definition:

The term “sanctuary” literally means “holy place” and refers to a place that God has made sacred and holy. It also can refer to a place that provides protection and safety.

- In the Old Testament, the term “sanctuary” was often used to refer to the tabernacle or temple building where the “holy place” and “most holy place” were located.
- God referred to the sanctuary as the place where he lived among his people, the Israelites.
- He also called himself a “sanctuary” or safe place for his people where they can find protection.

Translation Suggestions:

- This term has a basic meaning of “holy place” or “place that is set apart.”
- Depending on the context, the term “sanctuary” could be translated as “holy place” or “sacred building” or “God’s holy dwelling place” or “holy place of protection” or “sacred place of safety.”
- The phrase “shekel of the sanctuary” could be translated as “kind of shekel given for the tabernacle” or “shekel used in paying the tax to take care of the temple.”
- Note: Be careful that the translation of this term does not refer to a worship room in a modern-day church.

(See also: [holy](#), Holy Spirit, [holy](#), [set apart](#), [tabernacle](#), tax, [temple](#))

Bible References:

- Amos 7:13
- Exodus 25:3-7
- Ezekiel 25:3
- Hebrews 8:1-2
- Luke 11:49-51
- Numbers 18:1
- Psalms 78:69

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4720, H6944, G00400

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:38](#); [10:21](#); [18:1](#); [18:29](#); [19:20](#))

Saul (OT)

Facts:

Saul was an Israelite man whom God chose to become the first king of Israel.

- Saul was tall and handsome, and a powerful soldier. He was the kind of man that the Israelites wanted to be their king.
- Although he served God at first, Saul later became proud and disobeyed God. As a result, God appointed David to take Saul's place as king and allowed Saul to be killed in battle.
- In the New Testament, there was a Jew named Saul who was also known as Paul and who became an apostle of Jesus Christ.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [king](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:1-3
- 1 Samuel 9:1
- 2 Samuel 1:1-2
- Acts 13:22
- Psalm 18:1

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:1 Saul** was the first king of Israel. He was tall and handsome, just like the people wanted. **Saul** was a good king for the first few years that he ruled over Israel. But then he became a wicked man who did not obey God, so God chose a different man who would one day be king in his place.
- **17:4 Saul** became jealous of the people's love for David. **Saul** tried many times to kill him, so David hid from **Saul**.
- **17:5** Eventually, **Saul** died in battle, and David became king of Israel.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H7586, G45490

(Go back to: [Numbers 26:13](#))

seed, semen

Definition:

A “seed” is the part of a plant that gets planted in the ground to reproduce more of the same kind of plant. However, in the Bible the term “seed” is used figuratively to mean several different things.

- The term “seed” is used figuratively and euphemistically to refer to the tiny cells inside a man that combine with cells of a woman to cause a baby to grow inside her. A collection of these cells is called “semen.”
- Related to this, “seed” is also used to refer to a person’s offspring or descendants.
- This word often has a plural meaning, referring to more than one seed grain or more than one descendant.
- In the parable of the farmer planting seeds, Jesus compared his seeds to the Word of God, which is planted in people’s hearts in order to produce good spiritual fruit.
- The apostle Paul also uses the term “seed” to refer to the Word of God.

Translation Suggestions:

- For a literal seed, it is best to use the literal term for “seed” that is used in the target language for what a farmer plants in his field.
- The literal term should also be used in contexts where it refers figuratively to God’s Word.
- For the figurative use that refers to people who are of the same family line, it may be more clear to use the word “descendant” or “descendants” instead of “seed.” Some languages may have a word that means “children and grandchildren.”
- For a man or woman’s “seed,” consider how the target expresses this in a way that will not offend or embarrass people. (See: [euphemism](#))

(See also: children, [descendant](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:32
- Genesis 1:11
- Jeremiah 2:21
- Matthew 13:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2232, H2233, H3610, H6507, G46150, G46870, G46900, G47010, G47030

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:13](#); [5:28](#); [20:5](#))

seek, search, look for

Definition:

The term “seek” means to look for something or someone. In the past tense, the verb is “sought.” This term is sometimes used figuratively, meaning to “attempt” or “make an effort” to do something or to ask for something.

- To “seek” or “look for” an opportunity to do something can mean to “try to find a time” to do it.
- To “seek Yahweh” means to “spend time and energy getting to know Yahweh and learning to obey him.”
- To “seek protection” means to “try to find a person or place that will protect you from danger.”
- To “seek justice” means to “make an effort to see that people are treated justly or fairly.”
- To “seek the truth” means to “make an effort to find out what the truth is.”
- To “seek favor” means to “urgently ask for favor” or to “do things to cause someone to help you.”

(See also: [just](#), true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 10:14
- Acts 17:26-27
- Hebrews 11:6
- Luke 11:9
- Psalms 27:8

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0579, H1156, H1239, H1243, H1245, H1556, H1875, H2470, H2603, H2658, H2664, H3289, H7125, H7592, H7836, H8446, G03270, G15670, G19340, G20520, G22120

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:10](#); [35:23](#))

servant, serve, slave, young man, young women

Definition:

A “servant” or “slave” refers to a person who works for (or obeys) another person, either by choice or by force. A servant was under his master's control. In the Bible, “servant” and “slave” are mostly interchangeable terms. The term “serve” generally means to do work for someone, and the concept can be applied in a wide variety of contexts.

- A slave was a kind of servant who was the property of the person he worked for. The person who bought a slave was called his “owner” or “master.” Some masters treated their slaves cruelly. Other masters treated their slaves well, like a valued member of the household. The term “slavery” means the state of being a slave.
- A person could be a slave temporarily, for instance while working to repay a debt to his owner.
- The words “young man” or “young woman” often mean “servant” or “slave.” This meaning will be discerned from context. One indicator of this situation is if the possessive is used, eg. “her young women” could be translated as “her servants” or “her slaves.”
- The term “enslave” means “to cause to be a slave” (usually by force).
- The New Testament speaks of human beings as “slaves of sin” until Jesus frees them from its control and power. When a person receives new life in Christ, he stops being a slave to sin and becomes a slave to righteousness.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “serve” can also be translated as “minister to” or “work for” or “take care of” or “obey,” depending on the context.
- The term “enslave” could be translated as “cause to not be free” or “force to serve others” or “put under the control of others.”
- The phrase “enslaved to” or “in bondage to” could be translated as “forced to be a slave of” or “forced to serve” or “under the control of.”
- To “serve God” can be translated as to “worship and obey God” or to “do the work that God has commanded.”
- In the Old Testament, God’s prophets and other people who worshiped God were often called his “servants.”
- In the New Testament, people who obeyed God through faith in Christ were often called his “servants.”
- To “serve tables” means to bring food to people who are sitting at tables, or more generally, to “distribute food.”
- In the context of a person serving guests, this term means “care for” or “serve food to” or “provide food for.” When Jesus told the disciples to “serve” the fish to the people, this could be translated as, “distribute” or “hand out” or “give.”
- People who teach others about God are said to serve both God and the ones they are teaching.
- The apostle Paul wrote to the Corinthian Christians about how they used to “serve” the old covenant. This refers to obeying the laws of Moses. Now they “serve” the new covenant. That is, because of Jesus’ sacrifice on the cross, believers in Jesus are enabled by the Holy Spirit to please God and live holy lives.
- Paul talks about their actions in terms of their “service” to either the old or new covenant. This could be translated as “serving” or “obeying” or “devotion to.”
- Often, when a person referred to himself as “your servant” he was showing respect to the person addressed. That person may have had higher social status, or the speaker may be showing humility. It did not mean that the person speaking was an actual servant.

(See also: [bondage](#), works, obey, [house](#), [lord](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 15:13
- Genesis 21:10-11
- Genesis 25:23
- Deuteronomy 24:7
- Jeremiah 30:8-9
- Matthew 4:10-11
- Matthew 6:24
- Matthew 10:24-25
- Matthew 13:27-28
- Mark 8:7-10
- Mark 9:33-35
- Luke 4:8
- Luke 12:37-38
- Luke 12:47-48
- Luke 22:26-27
- Acts 4:29-31
- Acts 6:2-4
- Acts 10:7-8
- Galatians 4:3
- Galatians 4:24-25
- Colossians 1:7-8
- Colossians 3:22-25
- 2 Timothy 2:3-5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **6:1** When Abraham was very old and his son, Isaac, had grown to be a man, Abraham sent one of his **servants** back to the land where his relatives lived to find a wife for his son, Isaac.
- **8:4** The **slave** traders sold Joseph as a **slave** to a wealthy government official.
- **9:13** "I (God) will send you (Moses) to Pharaoh so that you can bring the Israelites out of their **slavery** in Egypt."
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O Yahweh, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your **servant**."
- **29:3** "Since the **servant** could not pay the debt, the king said, 'Sell this man and his family as **slaves** to make payment on his debt.'"
- **35:6** "All my father's **servants** have plenty to eat, and yet here I am starving."
- **47:4** The **slave** girl kept yelling as they walked, "These men are servants of the Most High God."
- **50:4** Jesus also said, "A **servant** is not greater than his master."

Word Data:

Servant

- Strong's: H0519, H5288, H5647, H5649, H5650, H5657, H7916, H8198, H8334, G12490, G14010, G14020, G23240, G34070, G34110, G36100, G38160, G49830, G52570
- (Serve) H0327, H3547, H4929, H4931, H5647, H5656, H5673, H5975, H6213, H6399, H6402, H6440, H6633, H6635, H7272, H8104, H8120, H8199, H8278, H8334, G1247, G1248, G1398, G1402, G1438, G1983, G2064, G2212, G2323, G2999, G3000, G3009, G4337, G4342, G4754, G5087, G5256

Enslave

- Strong's: H3533, G26150

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:50](#); [3:31](#); [4:9](#); [4:12](#); [4:14](#); [4:35](#); [4:39](#); [4:43](#); [8:25](#); [8:26](#); [11:11](#); [11:27](#); [11:28](#); [12:7](#); [14:24](#); [18:21](#); [22:18](#); [22:22](#); [31:49](#); [32:5](#); [32:25](#); [32:27](#); [32:31](#))

set apart

Definition:

The term “set apart” means separated from something to fulfill a certain purpose. Also, to “set apart” some person or thing means to make it “set apart.”

- The Israelites were set apart for service to God.
- The Holy Spirit commanded the Christians at Antioch to set apart Paul and Barnabas for the work God wanted them to do.
- A believer who is “set apart” for service to God is “dedicated to” fulfilling God’s will.
- One meaning of the term “holy” is to be set apart as belonging to God and being separated from the sinful ways of the world.
- To “sanctify” someone means to set apart that person for God’s service.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate to “set apart” could include to “specially select” or to “separate from among you” or to “take aside to do a special task.”
- To “be set apart” could be translated as “be separated (from)” or “be specially appointed (for).”

(See also: [holy](#), sanctify, [appoint](#))

Bible References:

- Ephesians 3:17-19
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Judges 17:12
- Numbers 3:11-13
- Philippians 1:1-2
- Romans 1:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2764, H4390, H5674, H6918, H6942, H6944, G00370, G00380, G00400, G08730

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:11](#); [7:1](#); [8:14](#); [16:38](#); [20:12](#); [20:13](#); [27:14](#))

shame, ashamed, disgrace, humiliate, reproach

Definition:

The term “shame” refers to the painful feeling of being disgraced or humiliated that a person feels when they do something that others consider dishonorable or improper.

- Something that is “shameful” is “improper” or “dishonorable.”
- The term “ashamed” describes how a person feels when he has done something improper or dishonorable.
- The term “humiliate” means to cause someone to feel shamed or disgraced, usually publicly. The act of shaming someone is called “humiliation.”
- To “reproach” someone means to criticize or disapprove of that person’s character or behavior.
- The phrase “put to shame” means to defeat people or expose their actions so that they feel ashamed of themselves. The prophet Isaiah said that those who make and worship idols will be put to shame.
- The term “disgraceful” can be used to describe a sinful act or the person who did it. When a person does something sinful, it can cause him to be in a state of disgrace or dishonor.
- Sometimes a person who is doing good things is treated in a way that causes him disgrace or shame. For example, when Jesus was killed on a cross, this was a disgraceful way to die. Jesus had done nothing wrong to deserve this disgrace.
- When God humbles someone, it means that he is causing a prideful person to experience failure to help him overcome his pride. This is different from humiliating someone, which is often done in order to hurt that person.
- Saying that a person is “above reproach” or “beyond reproach” or “without reproach” means that this person behaves in a God-honoring way and there is little or nothing that could be said in criticism of him.

Translation Suggestions

- Ways to translate “disgrace” could include “shame” or “dishonor.”
- Ways to translate “disgraceful” could include “shameful” or “dishonoring.”
- To “humiliate” could also be translated as to “shame” or to “cause to feel shame” or to “embarrass.”
- Depending on the context, ways to translate “humiliation” could include “shame” or “degrading” or “disgrace.”
- The word “reproach” could also be translated as “accusation” or “shame” or “disgrace.”
- To “reproach” could also be translated as to “rebuke” or to “accuse” or to “criticize,” depending on the context.

(See also: dishonor, accuse, [rebuke](#), [false god](#), [humble](#), Isaiah, [worship](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Peter 3:15-17
- 2 Kings 2:17
- 2 Samuel 13:13
- Luke 20:11
- Mark 8:38
- Mark 12:4-5
- 1 Timothy 3:7
- Genesis 34:7
- Hebrews 11:26
- Lamentations 2:1-2
- Psalms 22:6
- Deuteronomy 21:14
- Ezra 9:5

- Proverbs 25:7-8
- Psalms 6:8-10
- Psalms 123:3
- 1 Timothy 5:7-8
- 1 Timothy 6:13-14
- Jeremiah 15:15-16
- Job 16:9-10
- Proverbs 18:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0937, H0954, H0955, H1317, H1322, H1421, H1442, H1984, H2490, H2616, H2617, H2659, H2778, H2781, H2865, H3001, H3637, H3639, H3640, H3971, H5007, H5034, H5039, H6030, H6031, H6172, H6256, H7022, H7034, H7036, H7043, H7511, H7817, H8103, H8213, H8216, H8217, H8589, G01520, G01530, G04100, G04220, G04230, G08080, G08180, G08190, G08210, G17880, G17910, G18700, G26170, G30590, G36790, G36800, G36810, G38560, G50140, G51950, G51960, G54840

(Go back to: [Numbers 12:14](#))

sign, proof, reminder

Definition:

The term “sign” usually refers an object, event, or action that communicates a special meaning.

- In the Bible, signs are sometimes given in connection to a promise or covenant that God has made:
 - The book of Genesis describes the rainbow God created in the sky as a sign (or reminder) to himself that he has promised he will never again destroy all life with a worldwide flood.
 - In the book of Genesis, God commanded the Israelites to circumcise their sons as a sign (or indicator) of the fact that he had made his covenant with them.
- Signs can reveal or point to something:
 - The book of Luke describes that an angel gave shepherds a sign that would help them know which baby in Bethlehem was the newborn Messiah.
 - Judas kissed Jesus as a sign to the religious leaders that Jesus was the one they should arrest.
- Signs can prove that something is true:
 - The book of Exodus describes the plagues that destroyed Egypt as signs that showed who Yahweh was and proved that he was greater than Pharaoh and the Egyptian gods.
 - The book of Acts describes the miracles performed by the prophets and apostles as signs that proved they were speaking God’s message.
 - The book of John describes the miracles that Jesus performed as signs that proved he was truly the Messiah.

Translation Suggestions:

- The frequent expression “signs and wonders” could be translated as “proofs and miracles” or “miraculous works that prove God’s power” or “amazing miracles that show how great God is.”
- Depending on its context, “sign” could also be translated as “signal” or “symbol” or “mark” or “evidence” or “proof” or “gesture.”
- To “make signs with the hands” could also be translated as “motion with the hands” or “gesture with the hands” or “make gestures.”
- In some languages, there may be one word for a “sign” that proves something and a different word for a “sign” that is a miracle.

(See also: [miracle](#), [apostle](#), [Christ](#), [covenant](#), [circumcise](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 2:18-19
- Exodus 4:8-9
- Exodus 31:12-15
- Genesis 1:14
- Genesis 9:12
- John 2:18
- Luke 2:12
- Mark 8:12
- Psalms 89:5-6

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0226, H0852, H2368, H2858, H4150, H4159, H4864, H5251, H5824, H6161, H6725, H6734, H7560, G03640, G08800, G12130, G12290, G17180, G17300, G17320, G17700, G39020, G41020, G45910, G45920, G49530, G49730, G52800

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:22](#))

silver

Definition:

Silver is a shiny, gray precious metal used to make coins, jewelry, containers, and ornaments.

- The various containers that are made include silver cups and bowls, and other things used for cooking, eating, or serving.
- Silver and gold were used in the building of the tabernacle and the temple. The temple in Jerusalem had containers made of silver.
- In Bible times, a shekel was a unit of weight, and a purchase was often priced at a certain number of shekels of silver. By New Testament times there were silver coins of various weights that were measured in shekels.
- Joseph's brothers sold him as a slave for twenty shekels of silver.
- Judas was paid thirty silver coins for betraying Jesus.

(See also: [tabernacle](#), [temple](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:9-11
- 1 Samuel 2:36
- 2 Kings 25:13-15
- Acts 3:6
- Matthew 26:15

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3701, H3702, H7192, G06930, G06940, G06950, G06960, G14060

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:48](#); [3:49](#); [3:50](#); [3:51](#); [7:13](#); [7:19](#); [7:25](#); [7:31](#); [7:37](#); [7:43](#); [7:49](#); [7:55](#); [7:61](#); [7:67](#); [7:73](#); [7:79](#); [7:84](#); [7:85](#); [10:2](#); [18:16](#); [22:18](#); [24:13](#); [31:22](#))

sin, sinful, sinner, sinning

Definition:

The term “sin” refers to actions, thoughts, and words that are against God’s will and laws. Sin can also refer to not doing something that God wants us to do.

- Sin includes anything we do that does not obey or please God, even things that other people don’t know about.
- Thoughts and actions that disobey God’s will are called “sinful.”
- Because Adam sinned, all human beings are born with a “sinful nature,” a nature that that controls them and causes them to sin.
- A “sinner” is someone who sins, so every human being is a sinner.
- Sometimes the word “sinners” was used by religious people like the Pharisees to refer to people who didn’t keep the law as well as the Pharisees thought they should.
- The term “sinner” was also used for people who were considered to be worse sinners than other people. For example, this label was given to tax collectors and prostitutes.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “sin” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “disobedience to God” or “going against God’s will” or “evil behavior and thoughts” or “wrongdoing.”
- To “sin” could also be translated as to “disobey God” or to “do wrong.”
- Depending on the context “sinful” could be translated as “full of wrongdoing” or “wicked” or “immoral” or “evil” or “rebellious against God.”
- Depending on the context the term “sinner” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person who sins” or “person who does wrong things” or “person who disobeys God” or “person who disobeys the law.”
- The term “sinners” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “very sinful people” or “people considered to be very sinful” or “immoral people.”
- Ways to translate “tax collectors and sinners” could include “people who collect money for the government, and other very sinful people” or “very sinful people, including (even) tax collectors.”
- Make sure the translation of this term can include sinful behavior and thoughts, even those that other people don’t see or know about.
- The term “sin” should be general, and different from the terms for “wickedness” and “evil.”

(See also: [disobey](#), [evil](#), [flesh](#), [tax collector](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:1-3
- 1 John 1:10
- 1 John 2:2
- 2 Samuel 7:12-14
- Acts 3:19
- Daniel 9:24
- Genesis 4:7
- Hebrews 12:2
- Isaiah 53:11
- Jeremiah 18:23
- Leviticus 4:14
- Luke 15:18
- Matthew 12:31

- Romans 6:23
- Romans 8:4

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **3:15** God said, "I promise I will never again curse the ground because of the evil things people do, or destroy the world by causing a flood, even though people are **sinful** from the time they are children."
- **13:12** God was very angry with them because of their **sin** and planned to destroy them.
- **20:1** The kingdoms of Israel and Judah both **sinned** against God. They broke the covenant that God made with them at Sinai.
- **21:13** The prophets also said that the Messiah would be perfect, having no **sin**. He would die to receive the punishment for other people's **sin**.
- **35:1** One day, Jesus was teaching many tax collectors and other **sinner**s who had gathered to hear him.
- **38:5** Then Jesus took a cup and said, "Drink this. It is my blood of the New Covenant that is poured out for the forgiveness of **sins**."
- **43:11** Peter answered them, "Every one of you should repent and be baptized in the name of Jesus Christ so that God will forgive your **sins**."
- **48:8** We all deserve to die for our **sins**!
- **49:17** Even though you are a Christian, you will still be tempted to **sin**. But God is faithful and says that if you confess your **sins**, he will forgive you. He will give you strength to fight against **sin**.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0817, H0819, H2398, H2399, H2400, H2401, H2402, H2403, H2408, H2409, H5771, H6588, H7683, H7686, G02640, G02650, G02660, G02680, G03610, G37810, G39000, G42580

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:6; 5:7; 6:11; 6:16; 8:7; 8:12; 8:21; 12:11; 14:40; 15:25; 15:27; 16:22; 16:26; 18:9; 19:9; 19:12; 19:13; 19:19; 19:20; Notes; 21:7; 22:34; 28:22; 29:5; 29:11; 29:16; 29:19; 29:22; 29:25; 29:28; 29:31; 29:34; 29:38; 31:19; 31:20; 31:23; Notes; 32:23](#))

slaughter, slaughtered

Definition:

The term “slaughter” refers to killing a large number of animals or people, or to killing in a violent way. It can also refer to killing an animal for the purpose of eating it. The act of slaughtering is also called “slaughter.”

- When Abraham received three visitors at his tent in the desert, he ordered his servants to slaughter and cook a calf for his guests.
- The prophet Ezekiel prophesied that God would send his angel to slaughter all those who would not follow His word.
- 1 Samuel records a great slaughter in which 30,000 Israelites were killed by their enemies because of disobedience to God.
- “Weapons of slaughter” could be translated as “weapons for killing.”
- The expression “the slaughter was very great” could be translated as “a large number were killed” or “the number of deaths was very great” or “a terribly high number of people died.”
- Other ways to translate “slaughter” could include “kill” or “slay” or “killing.”

(See also: [angel](#), [cow](#), [disobey](#), [Ezekiel](#), [servant](#), [slay](#))

Bible References:

- Ezekiel 21:10-11
- Hebrews 7:1
- Isaiah 34:2
- Jeremiah 25:34

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2026, H2027, H2028, H2076, H2491, H2873, H2874, H2878, H4046, H4293, H4347, H4660, H5221, H6993, H7524, H7819, H7821, G28710, G49670, G49690

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:16](#); [19:3](#))

son

Definition:

The male offspring of a man and a woman is called their “son” for his entire life. He is also called a son of that man and a son of that woman. An “adopted son” is a male who has been legally placed into the position of being a son.

- The phrase “son of” can be used to identify a person’s father, mother, or an ancestor from some previous generation. This phrase is used in genealogies and many other places.
- The “sons of Israel” are usually the Israelite nation (after Genesis).
- Using “son of” to give the name of the father frequently helps distinguish people who have the same name. For example, “Azariah son of Zadok” and “Azariah son of Nathan” in 1 Kings 4, and “Azariah son of Amaziah” in 2 Kings 15 are three different men.
- The phrase “son of” can be used to associate the person with whatever person or concept comes next. The meaning is then greatly determined by context. It can be positive (eg. 2 Kings 2:16: “sons of ability”), negative (eg. 2 Samuel 7:10: “sons of wickedness”), denote membership in a group, express contempt by not naming the person (eg. “you sons of Zeruiah”), etc.

Translation Suggestions:

- In most occurrences of this term, it is best to translate “son” by the literal term in the language that is used to refer to a son.
- When translating the term “Son of God,” the project language’s common term for “son” should be used.
- Sometimes “sons” can be translated as “children,” when both males and females are being referred to. For example, “sons of God” could be translated as “children of God” since this expression also includes girls and women.

(See also: [descendant](#), [ancestor](#), Son of God, sons of God)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 18:15
- 1 Kings 13:2
- 1 Thessalonians 5:5
- Galatians 4:7
- Hosea 11:1
- Isaiah 9:6
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 5:9
- Matthew 8:12
- Nehemiah 10:28

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **4:8** God spoke to Abram and promised again that he would have a **son** and as many descendants as the stars in the sky.
- **4:9** God said, “I will give you a **son** from your own body.”
- **5:5** About a year later, when Abraham was 100 years old and Sarah was 90, Sarah gave birth to Abraham’s **son**.
- **5:8** When they reached the place of sacrifice, Abraham tied up his **son** Isaac and laid him on an altar. He was about to kill his **son** when God said, “Stop! Do not hurt the boy! Now I know that you fear me because you did not keep your only **son** from me.”

- **9:7** When she saw the baby, she took him as her own **son**.
- **11:6** God killed every one of the Egyptians' firstborn **sons**.
- **18:1** After many years, David died, and his **son** Solomon began to rule.
- **26:4** "Is this the **son** of Joseph?" they said.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1060, H1121, H1123, H1248, H3173, H3206, H3211, H4497, H5209, H5220, G38160, G50430, G52070

(Go back to: Numbers 1:2; 1:3; 1:5; 1:6; 1:7; 1:8; 1:9; 1:10; 1:11; 1:12; 1:13; 1:14; 1:15; 1:18; 1:20; 1:22; 1:24; 1:26; 1:28; 1:30; 1:32; 1:34; 1:36; 1:38; 1:40; 1:42; 1:45; 1:49; 1:52; 1:53; 1:54; 2:2; 2:3; 2:5; 2:7; 2:10; 2:12; 2:14; 2:18; 2:20; 2:22; 2:25; 2:27; 2:29; 2:32; 2:33; 2:34; 3:2; 3:3; 3:4; 3:8; 3:9; 3:10; 3:12; 3:15; 3:17; 3:18; 3:19; 3:20; 3:22; 3:24; 3:25; 3:28; 3:29; 3:30; 3:32; 3:34; 3:35; 3:36; 3:38; 3:39; 3:40; 3:41; 3:42; 3:43; 3:45; 3:46; 3:48; 3:50; 3:51; 4:2; 4:3; 4:4; 4:5; 4:15; 4:16; 4:19; 4:22; 4:23; 4:27; 4:28; 4:29; 4:30; 4:33; 4:34; 4:35; 4:38; 4:39; 4:41; 4:42; 4:43; 4:45; 4:47; 5:2; 5:4; 5:6; 5:9; 5:12; 6:2; 6:10; 6:12; 6:14; 6:23; 6:27; 7:7; 7:8; 7:9; 7:12; 7:15; 7:17; 7:18; 7:21; 7:23; 7:24; 7:27; 7:29; 7:30; 7:33; 7:35; 7:36; 7:39; 7:41; 7:42; 7:45; 7:47; 7:48; 7:51; 7:53; 7:54; 7:57; 7:59; 7:60; 7:63; 7:65; 7:66; 7:69; 7:71; 7:72; 7:75; 7:77; 7:78; 7:81; 7:83; 7:87; 7:88; 8:6; 8:8; 8:9; 8:10; 8:11; 8:13; 8:14; 8:16; 8:17; 8:18; 8:19; 8:20; 8:22; 8:24; 8:25; 9:2; 9:4; 9:5; 9:7; 9:10; 9:17; 9:18; 9:19; 9:22; 10:8; 10:12; 10:14; 10:15; 10:16; 10:17; 10:18; 10:19; 10:20; 10:22; 10:23; 10:24; 10:25; 10:26; 10:27; 10:28; 10:29; 11:4; 11:28; 13:2; 13:3; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 13:16; 13:24; 13:26; 13:32; 13:33; 14:2; 14:5; 14:6; 14:7; 14:10; 14:18; 14:27; 14:29; 14:30; 14:33; 14:38; 14:39; 15:2; 15:8; 15:9; 15:18; 15:24; 15:25; 15:26; 15:29; 15:32; 15:38; 16:1; 16:2; 16:7; 16:8; 16:10; 16:12; 16:27; 16:37; 16:38; 16:40; 16:41; 17:2; 17:5; 17:6; 17:9; 17:10; 17:12; 18:1; 18:2; 18:5; 18:6; 18:7; 18:8; 18:9; 18:11; 18:16; 18:19; 18:20; 18:21; 18:22; 18:23; 18:24; 18:26; 18:28; 18:32; 19:2; 19:9; 19:10; 20:1; 20:12; 20:13; 20:19; 20:22; 20:24; 20:25; 20:26; 20:28; 21:10; 21:24; 21:29; 21:35; 22:1; 22:2; 22:3; 22:4; 22:5; 22:10; 22:16; 23:18; 23:19; 24:3; 24:15; 24:17; 25:6; 25:7; 25:8; 25:11; 25:13; 25:14; 26:1; 26:2; 26:4; 26:5; 26:8; 26:9; 26:11; 26:12; 26:15; 26:18; 26:19; 26:20; 26:21; 26:23; 26:26; 26:28; 26:29; 26:30; 26:33; 26:35; 26:36; 26:37; 26:38; 26:40; 26:41; 26:42; 26:44; 26:45; 26:47; 26:48; 26:51; 26:62; 26:63; 26:64; 26:65; 27:1; 27:3; 27:4; 27:8; 27:11; 27:12; 27:18; 27:20; 27:21; 28:2; 28:3; 28:9; 28:11; 28:19; 28:27; 29:2; 29:8; 29:13; 29:17; 29:20; 29:23; 29:26; 29:29; 29:32; 29:36; 29:40; 30:1; 31:2; 31:6; 31:8; 31:9; 31:12; 31:16; 31:30; 31:42; 31:47; 31:54; 32:1; 32:2; 32:6; 32:7; 32:9; 32:11; 32:12; 32:17; 32:18; 32:25; 32:28; 32:29; 32:31; 32:33; 32:34; 32:37; 32:39; 32:40; 32:41; 33:1; 33:3; 33:5; 33:38; 33:39; 33:40; 33:51; 34:2; 34:13; 34:14; 34:17; 34:19; 34:20; 34:21; 34:22; 34:23; 34:24; 34:25; 34:26; 34:27; 34:28; 34:29; 35:2; 35:8; 35:10; 35:15; 35:34; 36:1; 36:2; 36:3; 36:4; 36:5; 36:7; 36:8; 36:9; 36:11; 36:12; 36:13)

spear, spearmen

Definition:

A spear is a weapon with a long wooden handle and sharp metal blade on one end that is thrown a long distance.

- Spears were commonly used for war in biblical times. They are sometimes still used in present-day conflicts between certain people groups.
- A spear was used by a Roman soldier to pierce the side of Jesus while he hung on the cross.
- Sometimes people throw spears to catch fish or other prey to eat.
- Similar weapons are the "javelin" or "lance."
- Make sure that the translation of "spear" is different from the translation of "sword," which is a weapon that is used for thrusting or stabbing, not throwing. Also, a sword has a long blade with a handle, while a spear has a small blade on the end of a long shaft.

(See also: prey, Rome, [sword](#), warrior)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 13:19-21
- 2 Samuel 21:19
- Nehemiah 4:12-14
- Psalm 35:3

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1265, H2595, H3591, H6767, H7013, H7420, G30570

(Go back to: [Numbers 25:7](#))

spirit, wind, breath

Definition:

The term “spirit” refers to the non-physical part of a person which cannot be seen. In biblical times, the concept of a person’s spirit was closely related to the concept of a person’s breath. The term can also refer to wind, that is, the movement of air in the natural world.

- The term “spirit” can refer to a being that does not have a physical body, such as an evil spirit.
- In general, the term “spiritual” describes things in the non-physical world.
- The term “spirit of” can also mean “having the characteristics of,” such as in “spirit of wisdom” or “in the spirit of Elijah.” Sometimes the Bible applies this term in the context of a person’s attitude or emotional state, such as “spirit of fear” and “spirit of jealousy.”
- Jesus said that God is a spirit.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, some ways to translate “spirit” might include “non-physical being” or “inside part” or “inner being.”
- In some contexts, the term “spirit” could be translated as “evil spirit” or “evil spirit being.”
- Sometimes the term “spirit” is used to express the feelings of a person, as in “my spirit was grieved in my inmost being.” This could also be translated as “I felt grieved in my spirit” or “I felt deeply grieved.”
- The phrase “spirit of” could be translated as “character of” or “influence of” or “attitude of” or “thinking (that is) characterized by.”
- Depending on the context, “spiritual” could be translated as “non-physical” or “from the Holy Spirit” or “God’s” or “part of the non-physical world.”
- The phrase “spiritual maturity” could be translated as “godly behavior that shows obedience to the Holy Spirit.”
- The term “spiritual gift” could be translated as “special ability that the Holy Spirit gives.”
- Sometimes this term can be translated as “wind” when referring to the simple movement of air or “breath” when referring to air movement caused by living beings.

(See also: soul, Holy Spirit, demon, breath)

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:5
- 1 John 4:3
- 1 Thessalonians 5:23
- Acts 5:9
- Colossians 1:9
- Ephesians 4:23
- Genesis 7:21-22
- Genesis 8:1
- Isaiah 4:4
- Mark 1:23-26
- Matthew 26:41
- Philippians 1:27

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **13:3** Three days later, after the people had prepared themselves **spiritually**, God came down on top of Mount Sinai with thunder, lightning, smoke, and a loud trumpet blast.
- **40:7** Then Jesus cried out, "It is finished! Father, I give my **spirit** into your hands." Then he bowed his head and gave up his **spirit**.
- **45:5** As Stephen was dying, he cried out, "Jesus, receive my **spirit**."
- **48:7** All the people groups are blessed through him, because everyone who believes in Jesus is saved from sin, and becomes a **spiritual** descendant of Abraham.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0178, H1172, H5397, H7307, H7308, G41510, G41520, G41530, G53260, G54270

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:14](#); [5:30](#); [Notes](#); [11:29](#); [11:31](#); [14:24](#); [24:2](#); [27:18](#))

statute

Definition:

A statute is a specific written law that provides guidance for people to live by.

- The term “statute” is similar in meaning to “ordinance” and “command” and “law” and “decree.” All these terms involve instructions and requirements that God gives to his people or rulers give to their people.
- King David said that he delighted himself in Yahweh’s statutes.
- The term “statute” could also be translated as “specific command” or “special decree.”

(See also: [command](#), [decree](#), [law](#), [ordinance](#), [Yahweh](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 11:11-13
- Deuteronomy 6:20-23
- Ezekiel 33:15
- Numbers 19:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2706, H2708, H7010, G13450

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:16](#); [30:16](#))

strength, strengthen, strong

Facts:

The term “strength” refers to physical, emotional, or spiritual power. To “strengthen” someone or something means to make that person or object stronger.

- “Strength” can also refer to the power to withstand some kind of opposing force.
- A person has “strength of will” if he is able to avoid sinning when tempted.
- One writer of the Psalms called Yahweh his “strength” because God helped him to be strong.
- If a physical structure like a wall or building is being “strengthened,” people are rebuilding the structure, reinforcing it with more stones or brick so that it can withstand an attack.

Translation Suggestions

- In general, the term “strengthen” can be translated as “cause to be strong” or “make more powerful.”
- In a spiritual sense, the phrase “strengthen your brothers” could also be translated as “encourage your brothers” or “help your brothers to persevere.”
- The following examples show the meaning of these terms, and therefore how they can be translated, when they are included in longer expressions.
 - “puts strength on me like a belt” means “causes me to be completely strong, like a belt that completely surrounds my waist.”
 - “in quietness and trust will be your strength” means “acting calmly and trusting in God will make you spiritually strong.”
 - “will renew their strength” means “will become stronger again.”
 - “by my strength and by my wisdom I acted” means “I have done all this because I am so strong and wise.”
 - “strengthen the wall” means “reinforce the wall” or “rebuild the wall.”
 - “I will strengthen you” means “I will cause you to be strong”
 - “in Yahweh alone are salvation and strength” means “Yahweh is the only one who saves us and strengthens us.”
 - “the rock of your strength” means “the faithful one who makes you strong”
 - “with the saving strength of his right hand” means “he strongly rescues you from trouble like someone who holds you safely with his strong hand.”
 - “of little strength” means “not very strong” or “weak.”
 - “with all my strength” means “using my best efforts” or “strongly and completely.”

(See also: [faithful](#), persevere, right hand, save)

Bible References:

- 2 Kings 18:19-21
- 2 Peter 2:11
- Luke 10:27
- Psalm 21:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0193, H0202, H0353, H0360, H0386, H0410, H0553, H0556, H1369, H1396, H2220, H2388, H2391, H2392, H2393, H2428, H3027, H3028, H3559, H3581, H3811, H3955, H4581, H5326, H5331, H5582, H5797, H5807, H5810, H5934, H5975, H6106, H6109, H6697, H6965, H7292, H7307, H8003, H8443, H8632, H8633,

G04610, G09500, G14110, G14120, G17430, G17650, G18400, G19910, G24790, G24800, G29010, G29040,
G36190, G37560, G45990, G47320, G47330, G47410

(Go back to: [Numbers 13:31](#); [14:13](#); [14:17](#); [20:20](#))

sword, swordsmen

Definition:

A sword is a flat-bladed metal weapon used to cut or stab. It has a handle and a long, pointed blade with a very sharp cutting edge.

- In ancient times the length of a sword's blade was about 60 to 91 centimeters.
- Some swords have two sharp edges and are called "double-edged" or "two-edged" swords.
- Jesus' disciples had swords for self defense. With his sword, Peter cut off the ear of the high priest's servant.
- Both John the Baptist and the apostle James were beheaded with swords.

Translation Suggestions

- A sword is used as a metaphor for God's word. God's teachings in the Bible exposed people's innermost thoughts and convicted them of their sin. In a similar way, a sword cuts deeply, causing pain. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- One way to translate this figurative use would be, "God's word is like a sword, which cuts deeply and exposes sin."
- Another figurative use of this term occurred in the book of Psalms, where the tongue or speech of a person was compared to a sword, which can injure people. This could be translated as "the tongue is like a sword that can badly injure someone."
- If swords are not known in your culture, this word could be translated with the name of another long-bladed weapon that is used to cut or stab.
- A sword could also be described as a "sharp weapon" or "long knife." Some translations could include a picture of a sword.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: James (brother of Jesus), John (the Baptist), [tongue](#), word of God)

Bible References:

- Acts 12:2
- Genesis 27:40
- Genesis 34:25
- Luke 2:33-35
- Luke 21:24
- Matthew 10:34
- Matthew 26:55
- Revelation 1:16

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0019, H1300, H2719, H4380, H6609, H7524, H7973, G31620, G45010

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:3](#); [14:43](#); [19:16](#); [20:18](#); [21:24](#); [22:23](#); [22:29](#); [22:31](#); [31:8](#))

tabernacle

Definition:

The tabernacle was a special tent-like structure where the Israelites worshiped God during the 40 years they traveled around in the desert.

- God had given the Israelites detailed instructions for building this large tent, which had two rooms and was surrounded by an enclosed courtyard.
- Each time the Israelites moved to a different place in the desert to live, the priests would take the tabernacle apart and carry it to their next campsite. Then they would set it up again in the center of their new camp.
- The tabernacle was constructed of wood frames hung with curtains made of cloth, goat hair, and animal skins. The courtyard surrounding it was enclosed with more curtains.
- The two sections of the tabernacle were the Holy Place (where the altar for burning incense was located) and the Most Holy Place (where the ark of the covenant was kept).
- The courtyard of the tabernacle had an altar for burning animal sacrifices and a special washbasin for ritual cleansing.
- The Israelites stopped using the tabernacle when the temple was built in Jerusalem by Solomon.

Translation Suggestions:

- The word “tabernacle” means “dwelling place.” Other ways to translate it could include, “sacred tent” or “tent where God was” or “God’s tent.”
- Make sure that the translation of this term is different from the translation of “temple.”

(See also: [altar](#), altar of incense, [ark of the covenant](#), [temple](#), tent of meeting)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 21:30
- 2 Chronicles 1:2-5
- Acts 7:43
- Acts 7:45
- Exodus 38:21
- Joshua 22:19-20
- Leviticus 10:16-18

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0168, H4908, H5520, H5521, H5522, H7900, G46330, G46340, G46360, G46380

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:50](#); [1:51](#); [1:53](#); [3:7](#); [3:8](#); [3:23](#); [3:25](#); [3:26](#); [3:29](#); [3:35](#); [3:36](#); [3:38](#); [Notes](#); [4:16](#); [4:25](#); [4:26](#); [4:31](#); [5:17](#); [Notes](#); [7:1](#); [7:3](#); [Notes](#); [9:15](#); [9:18](#); [9:19](#); [9:20](#); [9:22](#); [Notes](#); [10:11](#); [10:17](#); [10:21](#); [16:9](#); [16:24](#); [16:27](#); [17:13](#); [19:13](#); [24:5](#); [31:30](#); [31:47](#))

temple, house, house of God

Facts:

The temple was a building surrounded by walled courtyards where the Israelites came to pray and to offer sacrifices to God. It was located on Mount Moriah in the city of Jerusalem.

- Often the term “temple” referred to the whole temple complex, including the courtyards that surrounded the main building. Sometimes it referred only to the building.
- The temple building had two rooms, the Holy Place and the Most Holy Place.
- God referred to the temple as his dwelling place.
- King Solomon built the Temple during his reign. It was supposed to be the permanent place of worship in Jerusalem.
- In the New Testament, the term “temple of the Holy Spirit” is used to refer to believers in Jesus as a group, because the Holy Spirit lives in them.

Translation Suggestions:

- Usually when the text says that people were “in the temple,” it is referring to the courtyards outside the building. This could be translated as “in the temple courtyards” or “in the temple complex.”
- Where it refers specifically to the building itself, some translations translate “temple” as “temple building,” to make it the reference clear.
- Ways to translate “temple” could include, “God’s holy house” or “sacred worship place.”
- Often in the Bible, the temple is referred to as “the house of Yahweh” or “the house of God.”

(See also: [sacrifice](#), Solomon, Babylon, Holy Spirit, [tabernacle](#), [courtyard](#), Zion, [house](#))

Bible References:

- Acts 3:2
- Acts 3:8
- Ezekiel 45:18-20
- Luke 19:46
- Nehemiah 10:28
- Psalm 79:1-3

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **17:6** David wanted to build a **temple** where all the Israelites could worship God and offer him sacrifices.
- **18:2** In Jerusalem, Solomon built the **Temple** for which his father David had planned and gathered materials. Instead of at the Tent of Meeting, people now worshiped God and offered sacrifices to him at the **Temple**. God came and was present in the **Temple**, and he lived there with his people.
- **20:7** They (Babylonians) captured the city of Jerusalem, destroyed the **Temple**, and took away all the treasures.
- **20:13** When the people arrived in Jerusalem, they rebuilt the **Temple** and the wall around the city of the city and the **Temple**.
- **25:4** Then Satan took Jesus to the highest point on the **Temple** and said, “If you are the Son of God, throw yourself down, for it is written, ‘God will command his angels to carry you so your foot does not hit a stone.’”
- **40:7** When he died, there was an earthquake and the large curtain that separated the people from the presence of God in the **Temple** was torn in two, from the top to the bottom.

Word Data:

- Strong's: H1004, H1964, H1965, G14930, G24110, G34850

(Go back to: [Numbers 18:11](#); [18:13](#); [30:3](#))

Terah

Facts:

Terah was a descendant of Noah's son Shem. He was the father of Abram, Nahor and Haran.

- Terah left his home in Ur in order to go to the land of Canaan with his son Abram, his nephew Lot, and Abram's wife Sarai.
- On the way to Canaan, Terah and his family lived for years in the city of Haran in Mesopotamia. Terah died in Haran at the age of 205.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: Abraham, [Canaan](#), Haran, Lot, Mesopotamia, Nahor, Sarah, Shem, Ur)

Bible References:

Genesis 11:31-32

- 1 Chronicles 1:24-27
- Luke 3:33-35

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8646, G22910

(Go back to: [Numbers 33:27](#); [33:28](#))

test, tested, testing, testing in the fire

Definition:

The term “test” refers to a difficult or painful experience that reveals a person’s strengths and weaknesses.

- God tests people, but he does not tempt them to sin. Satan, however, tempts people to sin.
- God sometimes uses tests to expose people’s sin. A test helps a person to turn away from sin and to draw closer to God.
- Gold and other metals are tested with fire to find out how pure and strong they are. This is a picture of how God uses painful circumstances to test his people.
- To “put to the test” can mean, “challenge something or someone to prove its value.”
- In the context of putting God to the test, it means to try to make him do a miracle for us, taking advantage of his mercy.
- Jesus told Satan that it is wrong to put God to the test. He is the almighty, holy God who is above everything and everyone.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term to “test” could also be translated as, to “challenge” or to “cause to experience difficulties” or to “prove.”
- Ways to translate “a test” could be, “a challenge” or “a difficult experience.”
- To “put to the test” could be translated as to “test” or to “set up a challenge” or to “force to prove oneself.”
- In the context of testing God, this could be translated as “trying to force God to prove his love.”
- In some contexts, when God is not the subject, the term “test” can mean “tempt.”

(See also: tempt)

Bible References:

- 1 John 4:1
- 1 Thessalonians 5:21
- Acts 15:10
- Genesis 22:1
- Isaiah 7:13
- James 1:12
- Lamentations 3:40-43
- Malachi 3:10
- Philippians 1:10
- Psalm 26:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5254, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G12420, G12630, G13030, G13820, G19570, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G39840, G43030, G44510, G48280, G60200

(Go back to: [Numbers 13 General Notes](#))

testimony, testify, witness, eyewitness, evidence

Definition:

When a person gives “testimony” he makes a statement about something he knows, claiming that the statement is true. To “testify” is to give “testimony.”

- Often a person “testifies” about something he has experienced directly.
- A witness who gives “false testimony” does not tell the truth about what happened.
- Sometimes the term “testimony” refers to a prophecy that a prophet has stated.
- In the New Testament, this term was often used to refer to how Jesus’ followers testified about the events of Jesus’ life, death, and resurrection.

The term “witness” refers to a person who has personally experienced something that happened. Usually a witness is also someone who testifies about what they know is true. The term “eyewitness” emphasizes that the person was actually there and saw what happened.

- To “witness” something means to see it happen.
- At a trial, a witness “gives witness” or “bears witness.” This has the same meaning as “testify.”
- Witnesses are expected to tell the truth about what they have seen or heard.
- A witness who does not tell the truth about what happened is called a “false witness.” He is said to “give false witness” or to “bear false witness.”
- The expression “be a witness between” means that something or someone will be evidence that a contract has been made. The witness will make sure each person does what he has promised to do.

Translation Suggestions:

- The term “testify” or “give testimony” could also be translated as “tell the facts” or “tell what was seen or heard” or “tell from personal experience” or “give evidence” or “tell what happened.”
- Ways to translate “testimony” could include, “report of what happened” or “statement of what is true” or “evidence” or “what has been said” or “prophecy.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony to them” could be translated as to “show them what is true” or to “prove to them what is true.”
- The phrase, “as a testimony against them” could be translated as “which will show them their sin” or “exposing their hypocrisy” or “which will prove that they are wrong.”
- To “give false testimony” could be translated as “say false things about” or “state things that are not true.”
- The term “witness” or “eyewitness” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “person seeing it” or “the one who saw it happen” or “those who saw and heard (those things).”
- Something that is “a witness” could be translated as “guarantee” or “sign of our promise” or “something that testifies that this is true.”
- The phrase “you will be my witnesses” could also be translated as “you will tell other people about me” or “you will teach people the truth that I taught you” or “you will tell people what you have seen me do and heard me teach.”
- To “witness to” could be translated as to “tell what was seen” or to “testify” or to “state what happened.”
- To “witness” something could be translated as to “see something” or to “experience something happen.”

(See also: [ark of the covenant](#), [guilt](#), [judge](#), [prophet](#), [testimony](#), [true](#))

Bible References:

- Deuteronomy 31:28
- Micah 6:3
- Matthew 26:60

- Mark 1:44
- John 1:7
- John 3:33
- Acts 4:32-33
- Acts 7:44
- Acts 13:31
- Romans 1:9
- 1 Thessalonians 2:10-12
- 1 Timothy 5:19-20
- 2 Timothy 1:8
- 2 Peter 1:16-18
- 1 John 5:6-8
- 3 John 1:12
- Revelation 12:11

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **39:2** Inside the house, the Jewish leaders put Jesus on trial. They brought many **false witnesses** who lied about him.
- **39:4** The high priest tore his clothes in anger and shouted, "We do not need any more **witnesses**. You have heard him say that he is the Son of God. What is your judgment?"
- **42:8** "It was also written in the scriptures that my disciples will proclaim that everyone should repent in order to receive forgiveness for their sins. They will do this starting in Jerusalem, and then go to all people groups everywhere. You are **witnesses** of these things."
- **43:7** "We are **witnesses** to the fact that God raised Jesus to life again."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5707, H5713, H5715, H5749, H6030, H8584, G02670, G12630, G19570, G26490, G31400, G31410, G31420, G31430, G31440, G43030, G48280, G49010, G55750, G55760, G55770, G60200

(Go back to: [Numbers 35:30](#))

thresh

Definition:

The terms “thresh” and “threshing” refer to the first part of the process of separating grain from the rest of the plant.

- Threshing a crop loosens the grain from the stalk. Afterwards the grain is “winnowed” to completely separate the seed from all unwanted materials, leaving only the part the grain that can be eaten.
- In Bible times, a “threshing floor” was a large flat rock or an area of packed-down dirt, giving a hard, level surface to crush the grain stalks and remove the grain.
- A “threshing cart” or “threshing wheel” was sometimes used to crush the grain and help separate it from the straw and chaff.
- A “threshing sledge” or “threshing board” was also used for separating grain. It was made of wooden boards that had sharp metal spikes on the end.

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#), [winnow](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Chronicles 3:1-3
- 2 Kings 13:7
- 2 Samuel 24:16
- Daniel 2:35
- Luke 3:17
- Matthew 3:12
- Ruth 3:1-2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0212, H4173, H1637, H1758, H1786, H1869, H2251, G02480

(Go back to: [Numbers 15:20](#); [18:27](#); [18:30](#))

Tirzah

Facts:

Tirzah was an important Canaanite city that was conquered by the Israelites. It was also the name of a daughter of Gilead, a descendant of Manasseh.

- The city Tirzah was located in the region occupied by the tribe of Manasseh. It is thought that the city was about 10 miles north of the city of Shechem.
- Years later, Tirzah became a temporary capital city of the northern kingdom of Israel, during the reigns of four kings of Israel.
- Tirzah was also the name of one of Manasseh's granddaughters. They asked to be given a portion of the land since their father had died and he had no sons to inherit it as would normally be the custom.

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [Canaan](#), [inherit](#), kingdom of Israel, Manasseh, Shechem)

Bible References:

- Numbers 27:1
- Numbers 36:11
- Song of Songs 6:4

Word Data:

- Strong's: H8656

(Go back to: [Numbers 26:33](#); [27:1](#); [36:11](#))

to minister, ministry

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “ministry” refers to serving others by teaching them about God and caring for their spiritual needs.

- In the Old Testament, the priests would “minister” to God in the temple by offering sacrifices to him.
- Their “ministry” also included taking care of the temple and offering prayers to God on behalf of the people.
- The job of “ministering” to people can include serving them spiritually by teaching them about God.
- It can also refer to serving people in physical ways, such as caring for the sick and providing food for the poor.

Translation Suggestions:

- In the context of ministering to people, to “minister” could also be translated as to “serve” or to “care for” or to “meet the needs of.”
- When referring to ministering in the temple, the term “minister” could be translated as “serve God in the temple” or “offer sacrifices to God for the people.”
- In the context of ministering to God, this could be translated as to “serve” or to “work for God.”
- The phrase “ministered to” could also be translated as “took care of” or “provided for” or “helped.”

(See also: [serve](#), [sacrifice](#))

Bible References:

- 2 Samuel 20:23-26
- Acts 6:4
- Acts 21:17-19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6399, H8120, H8334, H8335, G12470, G12480, G12490, G20230, G20380, G24180, G30080, G30090, G30100, G30110, G39300, G52560, G52570, G55240

(Go back to: [Numbers 7:2](#))

tongue, language

Definition:

The term “tongue” refers to the organ inside a person’s mouth that is used to speak. The term is often used figuratively to mean “language” or “speaking.” There also several other figurative meanings as well.

- In the Bible, the most common figurative meaning for this term is “language” or “speech.”
- Sometimes “tongue” may refer to a human language spoken by a certain people group.
- Other times it refers to a supernatural language that the Holy Spirit gives believers in Christ as one of the “gifts of the Spirit.”
- In the book of Acts, the expression “tongues” of fire refers to “flames” of fire, presumably shaped like tongues.

Translation Suggestions

- Depending on the context, the term “tongue” can be translated as “language” or “supernatural language.” If it is not clear which one it is referring to, it is better to translate it as “language.”
- When referring to fire, this term could be translated as “flames.”
- The expression “my tongue rejoices” could be translated as “I rejoice and praise God” or “I am joyfully praising God.”
- The phrase, “tongue that lies” could be translated as “person who tell lies” or “people who lie.”
- Phrases such as “with their tongues” could be translated as “with what they say” or “by their words.”

(See also: gift, Holy Spirit, [joy](#), praise, [rejoice](#), [spirit](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:10
- 1 John 3:18
- 2 Samuel 23:2
- Acts 2:26
- Ezekiel 36:3
- Philippians 2:11

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H3956, G11000, G12580, G20840

(Go back to: [Numbers 30:14](#))

transgress, transgression

Definition:

The term “transgress” means to cross a line or to violate a boundary. The term is often used figuratively, meaning to break a command, rule, or moral code.

- This term is very similar to the word “trespass,” but is generally used more often to describe violations against God than against other people.
- To “transgress” can also be described as to “cross a line,” that is, to go beyond a limit or boundary that has been set for the good of the person and others.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “transgress” could be translated as to “sin” or to “disobey” or to “rebel.”
- If a verse or passage uses two terms that mean “sin” or “transgress” or “trespass,” it is important, if possible, to use different ways to translate these terms. When the Bible uses two or more terms with similar meanings in the same context, usually its purpose is to emphasize what is being said or to show its importance.

(See: [parallelism](#))

(See also: disobey, [sin](#), trespass, [iniquity](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 4:6
- Daniel 9:24-25
- Galatians 3:19-20
- Galatians 6:1-2
- Numbers 14:17-19
- Psalm 32:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0898, H4603, H4604, H6586, H6588, G04580, G04590, G38450, G38470, G38480, G39280

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:6](#); [5:12](#); [5:27](#); [31:16](#))

tribe, tribal, tribesmen

Definition:

A tribe is a group of people who are descended from a common ancestor.

- People from the same tribe usually also share a common language and culture.
- In the Old Testament, God divided the people of Israel into twelve tribes. Each tribe was descended from a son or grandson of Jacob.
- A tribe is smaller than a nation, but larger than a clan.

(See also: [clan](#), [nation](#), [people group](#), twelve tribes of Israel)

Bible References:

- 1 Samuel 10:19
- 2 Kings 17:16-18
- Genesis 25:16
- Genesis 49:17
- Luke 2:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0523, H4294, H7625, H7626, G14290, G54430

(Go back to: [Numbers 1:4; 1:21; 1:23; 1:25; 1:27; 1:29; 1:31; 1:33; 1:35; 1:37; 1:39; 1:41; 1:43; 1:47; 4:18; 7:12; 13:2; 13:4; 13:5; 13:6; 13:7; 13:8; 13:9; 13:10; 13:11; 13:12; 13:13; 13:14; 13:15; 18:2; 24:2; 24:17; 31:4; 31:5; 31:6; 32:33; 33:54; 34:19; 34:21; 34:23; 36:3; 36:9](#))

trouble, disturb, stir up, distress, hardship, calamity

Definition:

A “trouble” is an experience in life that is very difficult and distressing. To “trouble” someone means to “bother” that person or to cause him distress. To be “troubled” means to feel upset or distressed about something.

- Troubles can be physical, emotional, or spiritual things that hurt a person.
- In the Bible, often troubles are times of testing that God uses to help believers mature and grow in their faith.
- The Old Testament use of “trouble” also referred to judgment that came on people groups who were immoral and rejected God.

Translation Suggestions

- The term “trouble” or “troubles” could also be translated as “danger” or “painful things that happen” or “persecution” or “difficult experiences” or “distress.”
- The term “troubled” could be translated with a word or phrase that means “undergoing distress” or “feeling terrible distress” or “worried” or “anxious” or “distressed” or “terrified” or “disturbed.”
- “Don’t trouble her” could also be translated as “don’t bother her” or “don’t criticize her.”
- The phrase “day of trouble” or “times of trouble” could also be translated as “when you experience distress” or “when difficult things happen to you” or “when God causes distressing things to happen.”
- Ways to translate “make trouble” or “bring trouble” could include “cause distressing things to happen” or “cause difficulties” or “make them experience very difficult things.”

(See also: [afflict](#), persecute)

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 18:18-19
- 2 Chronicles 25:19
- Luke 24:38
- Matthew 24:6
- Matthew 26:36-38

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0205, H0926, H0927, H1204, H1607, H1644, H1804, H2000, H4103, H5916, H5999, H6031, H6040, H6470, H6696, H6862, H6869, H6887, H7264, H7267, H7451, H7489, H8513, G03870, G16130, G17760, G23460, G23470, G23500, G23600, G28730, G36360, G39260, G39300, G39860, G44230, G46600, G50150, G51820

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:14](#))

trumpet, trumpeters

Definition:

The term “trumpet” refers to an instrument for producing music or for calling people to gather together for an announcement or meeting.

- A trumpet was commonly made from either metal, seashell, or an animal horn.
- Trumpets were most commonly blown to call people to come together for battle, and for Israel’s public assemblies.
- The book of Revelation describes a scene in the end times in which angels blow their trumpets to signal the outpouring of the wrath of God on the earth.

(See also: [angel](#), [assembly](#), [earth](#), horn, [Israel](#), [wrath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 13:7-8
- 2 Kings 9:13
- Exodus 19:12-13
- Hebrews 12:19
- Matthew 6:2
- Matthew 24:31

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2689, H2690, H3104, H7782, H8619, H8643, G45360, G45370, G45380

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:8](#); [10:9](#); [10:10](#))

trust, trusted, trustworthy, trustworthiness

Definition:

To “trust” something or someone is to believe that the thing or person is true or dependable. That belief is also called “trust.” A “trustworthy” person is one you can trust to do and say what is right and true, and therefore one who has the quality of “trustworthiness.”

- Trust is closely related to faith. If we trust someone, we have faith in that person to do what they promised to do.
- Having trust in someone also means depending on that person.
- To “trust in” Jesus means to believe that he is God, to believe that he died on the cross to pay for our sins, and to rely on him to save us.
- A “trustworthy saying” refers to something that is said that can be counted on to be true.

Translation Suggestions:

- Ways to translate “trust” could include “believe” or “have faith” or “have confidence” or “depend on.”
- The phrase “put your trust in” is very similar in meaning to “trust in.”
- The term “trustworthy” could be translated as “dependable” or “reliable” or “can always be trusted.”

(See also: believe, confidence, [faith](#), [faithful](#), true)

Bible References:

- 1 Chronicles 9:22-24
- 1 Timothy 4:9
- Hosea 10:12-13
- Isaiah 31:1-2
- Nehemiah 13:13
- Psalm 31:5
- Titus 3:8

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **12:12** When the Israelites saw that the Egyptians were dead, they **trusted** in God and believed that Moses was a prophet of God.
- **14:15** Joshua was a good leader because he **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **17:2** David was a humble and righteous man who **trusted** and obeyed God.
- **34:6** Then Jesus told a story about people who **trusted** in their own good deeds and despised other people.

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0539, H0982, H1556, H2620, H2622, H3176, H4009, H4268, H7365, G16790, G38720, G39820, G40060, G41000, G42760

(Go back to: [Numbers 21 General Notes](#))

unleavened bread

Definition:

The term “unleavened bread” refers to bread that is made without yeast or other leavening. This kind of bread is flat because it has no leaven to make it rise.

- When God freed the Israelites from slavery in Egypt, he told them to flee Egypt quickly without waiting for their bread to rise. So they ate unleavened bread with their meal. Since then unleavened bread is used in their yearly Passover celebrations to remind them of that time.
- Since leaven sometimes is used as a picture of sin, “unleavened bread” represents the removal of sin from a person’s life in order to live in a way that honors God.

Translation Suggestions:

- Other ways to translate this term could include “bread with no yeast” or “flat bread that did not rise.”
- Make sure the translation of this term is consistent with how you translate the term “yeast, leaven.”
- In some contexts, the term “unleavened bread” refers to the “Feast of Unleavened Bread” and can be translated that way.

(See also: [bread](#), [Egypt](#), [feast](#), [Passover](#), [servant](#), [sin](#), [yeast](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 5:6-8
- 2 Chronicles 30:13-15
- Acts 12:3
- Exodus 23:14-15
- Ezra 6:21-22
- Genesis 19:1-3
- Judges 6:21
- Leviticus 8:1-3
- Luke 22:1

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H4682, G01060

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:15](#); [6:19](#); [9:11](#); [28:17](#))

vine

Definition:

The term “vine” refers to a plant that grows by trailing along the ground or by climbing trees and other structures. The word “vine” in the Bible is used only of fruit-bearing vines and usually refers to grape vines.

- In the Bible, the word “vine” almost always means “grapevine.”
- The branches of the grapevine are attached to the main stem which gives them water and other nutrients so that they can grow.
- Jesus called himself the “vine” and called his people the “branches.” In this context, the word “vine” could also be translated as “grapevine stem” or “grape plant stem.” (See: [Metaphor](#))

(See also: [grape](#), [vineyard](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 40:9
- Genesis 49:11
- John 15:1
- Luke 22:18
- Mark 12:3
- Matthew 21:35-37

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H5139, H1612, H8321, G02880, G02900, G10090, G10920

(Go back to: [Numbers 20:5](#))

vineyard

Definition:

A vineyard is a large garden area where grapevines are grown and grapes are cultivated.

- A vineyard often has a wall around it to protect the fruit from thieves and animals.
- God compared the people of Israel to a vineyard that did not bear good fruit. (See: [Metaphor](#))
- Vineyard could be also translated as “grapevine garden” or “grape plantation.”

(See also: [grape](#), [Israel](#), [vine](#))

Bible References:

- Genesis 9:20-21
- Luke 13:6
- Luke 20:15
- Matthew 20:2
- Matthew 21:40-41

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1612, H3754, H3755, H8284, G02900

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:14](#))

voice

Definition:

The term “voice” refers to audible sound that a person makes when speaking or communicating. In the Bible, the term can be used figuratively to refer to the concepts of sound, communication, and/or obedience.

Translation Suggestions

- The expression “to hear someone’s voice” can mean either “to hear someone speaking” or “to heed what someone says.”
- The Bible describes God as “speaking” and having a “voice,” even though God doesn’t have a physical body in the same way a human being does.
- The term “voice” sometimes implies the presence of a person, as in this statement: “A voice is heard in the desert saying, ‘Prepare the way of the Lord.’” This could be translated as “A person is heard calling out in the desert....” (See: [synecdoche](#))
- However, sometimes the word “voice” is used for objects that cannot literally speak, such as when David exclaims in the psalms that the heavens have a “voice” that reaches the whole earth. This means that the objects in the sky communicate something to human beings about God the Creator. (See: [metaphor](#))

(See also: [call](#), [proclaim](#), [splendor](#).)

Bible References:

- John 5:36-38
- Luke 1:42
- Luke 9:35
- Matthew 3:17
- Matthew 12:19

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H6963, H7032, H7445, H8193, G29060, G54560

(Go back to: [Numbers 14:22](#); [21:3](#))

VOW

Definition:

A “vow” is a solemn promise or oath that a person makes to God.

- If a person in ancient Israel made a vow to God, that person was obligated to fulfill the vow. The ancient Israelites believed that God might punish a person who did not fulfill a vow that he made.
- In ancient Israel, sometimes a person would ask God to protect him or provide for him in exchange for making the vow. However, the ancient Israelites did not believe that God was obligated to fulfill these requests.
- Depending on the context, the term “vow” can be translated as “solemn promise” or “solemn oath” or “promise made to God.”

(See also: [promise](#), [oath](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 7:27-28
- Acts 21:23
- Genesis 28:21
- Genesis 31:12-13
- Jonah 1:14-16
- Jonah 2:9-10
- Proverbs 7:14

Word Data:

- Strong's: H5087, H5088, G21710

(Go back to: [Numbers 6 General Notes](#); [Notes](#))

walk, walked

Definition:

The term “walk” is often used in a figurative sense to mean “live.”

- “Enoch walked with God” means that Enoch lived in a close relationship with God.
- To “walk by the Spirit” means to be guided by the Holy Spirit so that we do things that please and honor God.
- To “walk in” God’s commands or God’s ways means to “live in obedience to” his commands, that is, to “obey his commands” or “do his will.”
- When God says he will “walk among” his people, it means that he is living among them or closely interacting with them.
- To “walk contrary to” means to live or behave in a way that is against something or someone.
- To “walk after” means to seek or pursue someone or something. It can also mean to act in the same way as someone else.

Translation Suggestions:

- It is best to translate “walk” literally, as long as the correct meaning will be understood.
- Otherwise, figurative uses of “walk” could also be translated by “live” or “act” or “behave.”
- The phrase “walk by the Spirit” could be translated by, “live in obedience to the Holy Spirit” or “behave in a way that is pleasing to the Holy Spirit” or “do things that are pleasing to God as the Holy Spirit guides you.”
- To “walk in God’s commands” could be translated by “live by God’s commands” or “obey God’s commands.”
- The phrase “walked with God” could be translated as “lived in close relationship with God by obeying and honoring him.”

(See also: Holy Spirit, honor)

Bible References:

- 1 John 1:7
- 1 Kings 2:4
- Colossians 2:7
- Galatians 5:25
- Genesis 17:1
- Isaiah 2:5
- Jeremiah 13:10
- Micah 4:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H1869, H1980, H1981, H3212, H4108, G17040, G40430, G41980, G47480

(Go back to: [Numbers 10:29](#); [10:30](#); [10:32](#); [14:14](#); [20:17](#); [21:22](#); [22:6](#); [22:11](#); [22:12](#); [22:13](#); [22:14](#); [22:20](#); [22:22](#); [22:35](#); [22:37](#); [23:7](#); [23:13](#); [23:27](#); [24:1](#); [24:14](#); [24:25](#); [32:41](#); [32:42](#))

watch, guard, keep, take heed, beware

Definition:

The term “watch” means to look at something very closely and carefully. It also has several figurative meanings. A “watchman” was someone whose job was to guard a city by looking carefully all around him for any danger or threat to the people in the city.

- The command to “watch your life and doctrine closely” means to be careful to live wisely and to not believe false teachings.
- To “watch out” is a warning to be careful to avoid a danger or harmful influence.
- To “watch” or “keep watch” means to always be alert and on guard against sin and evil. It can also mean to “be ready.”
- To “keep watch over” or “keep close watch” can mean to guard, protect or take care of someone or something.
- Other ways of translating “watch” could include “pay close attention to” or “be diligent” or “be very careful” or “be on guard.”
- Other words for “watchman” are “sentry” or “guard.”

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 5:6
- Hebrews 13:17
- Jeremiah 31:4-6
- Mark 8:15
- Mark 13:33-34
- Matthew 25:10-13

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H0821, H2370, H4929, H4931, H5027, H5341, H6486, H6822, H6836, H6974, H7462, H7789, H7919, H8104, H8108, H8245, G00690, G09910, G11270, G14920, G23340, G28920, G35250, G37080, G39060, G43370, G46480, G50830, G54380

(Go back to: [Numbers 3:28](#); [3:32](#); [3:38](#); [9:23](#); [18:7](#); [23:12](#); [28:2](#); [31:30](#); [31:47](#))

wine, wineskin, new wine

Definition:

In the Bible, the term “wine” refers to a kind of fermented drink made from the juice of a fruit called grapes. Wine was stored in “wineskins,” which were containers made out of animal skin.

- The term “new wine” referred to grape juice that had just been taken from the grape and was not fermented yet. Sometimes the term “wine” also referred to unfermented grape juice.
- To make wine, grapes are crushed in a winepress so that the juice comes out. The juice eventually ferments and alcohol forms in it.
- In Bible times, wine was the normal drink with meals. It did not have as much alcohol as present-day wine has.
- Before wine was served for a meal, it was often mixed with water.
- A wineskin that was old and brittle would get cracks in it, which allowed the wine to leak out. New wineskins were soft and flexible, which meant they did not tear easily and could store the wine safely.
- If wine is unknown in your culture, it could be translated as “fermented grape juice” or “fermented drink made from a fruit called grapes” or “fermented fruit juice.” (See: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))
- Ways to translate “wineskin” could include “bag for wine” or “animal skin wine bag” or “animal skin container for wine.”

(See also: [grape](#), [vine](#), [vineyard](#), winepress)

Bible References:

- 1 Timothy 5:23
- Genesis 9:21
- Genesis 49:12
- John 2:3-5
- John 2:10
- Matthew 9:17
- Matthew 11:18

smashed

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2561, H2562, H3196, H4469, H4997, H5435, H6025, H6071, H8492, G10980, G36310, G38200, G39430

(Go back to: [Numbers 6:3](#); [6:4](#); [6:20](#); [15:5](#); [15:7](#); [15:10](#); [18:12](#); [28:14](#))

winnow, sift

Definition:

The terms “winnow” and “sift” mean to separate grain from unwanted materials. In the Bible, both words can also be used to refer to separating or dividing people.

- To “winnow” means to separate grain from the unwanted parts of the plant by tossing both the grain and chaff into the air, allowing the wind to blow the chaff away.
- The word “sift” refers to shaking the winnowed grain in a sieve to get rid of any remaining unwanted materials, such as dirt or stones.
- In the Old Testament, “winnow” and “sift” are used figuratively to describe hardship that separates the righteous people from the unrighteous people.
- Jesus also used the term “sift” in this figurative way when he was telling Simon Peter about how he and the other disciples would be tested in their faith.
- To translate these terms, use the words or phrases in the project language that refer to these activities; possible translations might be “shaking” or “fanning.” If winnowing or sifting are not known, then these terms could be translated by a term that refers to a different method of separating grain from chaff or dirt, or by describing this process.

(See also: [How to Translate Unknowns](#))

(See also: [chaff](#), [grain](#))

Bible References:

- Isaiah 21:10
- Luke 22:31
- Matthew 3:12
- Proverbs 20:8
- Ruth 3:2

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H2219, H5128, H5130, G44250, G46170

(Go back to: [Numbers 16:37](#))

wrath, fury

Definition:

Wrath is an intense anger that is sometimes long-lasting. The Bible describes both people and God as experiencing intense anger. When speaking about God's "wrath," make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful fit of rage (which might be true of a human person).

- In the Bible, "wrath" often refers to God's righteous judgment of sin and punishment of people who rebel against him.
- The "wrath of God" can also refer to his judgment and punishment for sin.
- God's wrath is the righteous penalty for those who do not repent of their sin.

Translation Suggestions:

- Depending on the context, other ways this term could be translated include "intense anger" or "righteous judgment" or "anger."
- God's wrath is just and holy. When talking about God's wrath, make sure the word or phrase used to translate this term does not refer to a sinful human rage.

(See also: [judge](#), [sin](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Thessalonians 1:8-10
- 1 Timothy 2:8-10
- Luke 3:7
- Luke 21:23
- Matthew 3:7
- Revelation 14:10
- Romans 1:18
- Romans 5:9

Word Data:

- Strong's: H0639, H2197, H2528, H2534, H2740, H3707, H3708, H5678, H7107, H7109, H7110, H7265, H7267, G23720, G37090, G39490, G39500

(Go back to: [Numbers 11:33](#); [25:11](#))

Yahweh

Facts:

The term “Yahweh” is God’s personal name in the Old Testament. The specific origin of this name is unknown, but it is probably derived from the Hebrew verb meaning, “to be.”

- Following tradition, many Bible versions use the term “LORD” or “the LORD” to represent “Yahweh.” This tradition resulted from the fact that historically, the Jewish people became afraid of mispronouncing Yahweh’s name and started saying “Lord” every time the term “Yahweh” appeared in the text. Modern Bibles write “LORD” with all capital letters to show respect for God’s personal name and to distinguish it from “Lord” which is a different Hebrew word.
- The ULT and UST texts always translate this term as, “Yahweh,” in agreement with the Hebrew text of the Old Testament.
- The term “Yahweh” never occurs in the original text of the New Testament; only the Greek term for “Lord” is used, even when quoting the Old Testament.
- In the Old Testament, when God spoke about himself, he would often use his name instead of a pronoun.

Translation Suggestions:

- “Yahweh” could be translated by a word or phrase that means “I am” or “living one” or “the one who is” or “he who is alive.”
- This term could also be written in a way that is similar to how “Yahweh” is spelled.
- Some church denominations prefer not to use the term “Yahweh” and instead use the traditional rendering, “LORD.” An important consideration is that this may be confusing when read aloud because it will sound the same as the title “Lord.” Some languages may have an affix or other grammatical marker that could be added to distinguish “LORD” as a name (Yahweh) from “Lord” as a title.
- It is best if possible to keep the name Yahweh where it literally occurs in the text, but some translations may decide to use only a pronoun in some places, to make the text more natural and clear.
- Introduce the quote with something like, “This is what Yahweh says.”

(Translation suggestions: [How to Translate Names](#))

(See also: [God](#), [Lord](#))

Bible References:

- 1 Kings 21:20
- 1 Samuel 16:7
- Daniel 9:3
- Ezekiel 17:24
- Genesis 2:4
- Genesis 4:3-5
- Genesis 28:13
- Hosea 11:12
- Isaiah 10:4
- Isaiah 38:8
- Job 12:10
- Joshua 1:9
- Lamentations 1:5
- Leviticus 25:35
- Malachi 3:4
- Micah 2:5

- Micah 6:5
- Numbers 8:11
- Psalm 124:3
- Ruth 1:21
- Zechariah 14:5

Examples from the Bible stories:

- **9:14** God said, "I AM WHO I AM. Tell them, 'I AM has sent me to you.' Also tell them, 'I am **Yahweh**, the God of your ancestors Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob. This is my name forever.'"
- **13:4** Then God gave them the covenant and said, "I am **Yahweh**, your God, who saved you from slavery in Egypt. Do not worship other gods."
- **13:5** "Do not make idols or worship them, for I, **Yahweh**, am a jealous God."
- **16:1** The Israelites began to worship the Canaanite gods instead of **Yahweh**, the true God.
- **19:10** Then Elijah prayed, "O **Yahweh**, God of Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, show us today that you are the God of Israel and that I am your servant."

Word Data:

- Strong's: H3050, H3068, H3069

(Go back to: Numbers 1:1; 1:19; 1:48; 1:54; 2:1; 2:33; 2:34; 3:1; 3:4; 3:5; 3:11; 3:13; 3:14; 3:16; 3:39; 3:40; 3:41; 3:42; 3:44; 3:45; 3:51; 4:1; 4:17; 4:21; 4:37; 4:41; 4:45; 4:49; 5:1; 5:4; 5:5; 5:6; 5:8; 5:11; 5:16; 5:18; 5:21; 5:25; 5:30; 6:1; 6:2; 6:5; 6:6; 6:8; 6:12; 6:14; 6:16; 6:17; 6:20; 6:21; 6:22; 6:24; 6:25; 6:26; 7:3; 7:4; 7:11; 8:1; 8:3; 8:4; 8:5; 8:10; 8:11; 8:12; 8:13; 8:20; 8:21; 8:22; 8:23; 9:1; 9:5; 9:7; 9:8; 9:9; 9:10; 9:13; 9:14; 9:18; 9:19; 9:20; 9:23; 10:1; 10:9; 10:10; 10:13; 10:29; 10:32; 10:33; 10:34; 10:35; 10:36; 11:1; 11:2; 11:3; 11:10; 11:11; 11:16; 11:18; 11:20; 11:23; 11:24; 11:25; 11:29; 11:31; 11:33; 12:2; 12:4; 12:5; 12:6; 12:8; 12:9; 12:13; 12:14; 13:1; 13:3; 14:3; 14:8; 14:9; 14:10; 14:11; 14:13; 14:14; 14:16; 14:18; 14:20; 14:21; 14:26; 14:28; 14:35; 14:37; 14:40; 14:41; 14:42; 14:43; 14:44; 15:1; 15:3; 15:4; 15:7; 15:8; 15:10; 15:13; 15:14; 15:15; 15:17; 15:19; 15:21; 15:22; 15:23; 15:24; 15:25; 15:28; 15:30; 15:31; 15:35; 15:36; 15:37; 15:39; 15:41; 16:3; 16:5; 16:7; 16:9; 16:11; 16:15; 16:16; 16:17; 16:19; 16:20; 16:23; 16:28; 16:29; 16:30; 16:35; 16:36; 16:38; 16:40; 16:41; 16:42; 16:44; 16:46; 17:1; 17:7; 17:9; 17:10; 17:11; 17:13; 18:1; 18:6; 18:8; 18:12; 18:13; 18:15; 18:17; 18:19; 18:20; 18:24; 18:25; 18:26; 18:28; 18:29; 19:1; 19:2; 19:13; 19:20; 20:3; 20:4; 20:6; 20:7; 20:9; 20:12; 20:13; 20:16; 20:23; 20:27; 21:2; 21:3; 21:6; 21:7; 21:8; 21:14; 21:16; 21:34; 22:8; 22:13; 22:18; 22:19; 22:22; 22:23; 22:24; 22:25; 22:26; 22:27; 22:28; 22:31; 22:32; 22:34; 22:35; 23:3; 23:5; 23:8; 23:12; 23:16; 23:17; 23:21; 23:26; 24:1; 24:6; 24:11; 24:13; 25:3; 25:4; 25:10; 25:16; 26:1; 26:4; 26:9; 26:52; 26:61; 26:65; 27:3; 27:5; 27:6; 27:11; 27:12; 27:15; 27:16; 27:17; 27:18; 27:21; 27:22; 27:23; 28:1; 28:3; 28:6; 28:7; 28:8; 28:11; 28:13; 28:15; 28:16; 28:19; 28:24; 28:26; 28:27; 29:2; 29:6; 29:8; 29:12; 29:13; 29:36; 29:39; 29:40; 30:1; 30:2; 30:3; 30:5; 30:8; 30:12; 30:16; 31:1; 31:3; 31:7; 31:16; 31:21; 31:25; 31:28; 31:29; 31:30; 31:31; 31:37; 31:38; 31:39; 31:40; 31:41; 31:47; 31:50; 31:52; 31:54; 32:4; 32:7; 32:9; 32:10; 32:12; 32:13; 32:14; 32:20; 32:21; 32:22; 32:23; 32:27; 32:29; 32:31; 32:32; 33:2; 33:4; 33:38; 33:50; 34:1; 34:13; 34:16; 34:29; 35:1; 35:9; 35:34; 36:2; 36:5; 36:6; 36:10; 36:13)

zeal, zealous

Definition:

The terms “zeal” and “zealous” refer to being strongly devoted to supporting a person or idea.

- Zeal includes having strong desire and actions that promote a good cause. It is often used to describe someone who faithfully obeys God and teaches others to do that too.
- Being zealous includes putting intense effort into doing something and continuing to persevere in that effort.
- The “zeal of the Lord” or the “zeal of Yahweh” refers to God’s strong, persistent actions to bless his people or to see justice done.

Translation Suggestions:

- To “be zealous” could also be translated by, “be strongly diligent” or “make an intense effort.”
- The term “zeal” could also be translated as “energetic devotion” or “eager determination” or “righteous enthusiasm.”
- The phrase, “zeal for your house” could be translated, “strongly honoring your temple” or “fervent desire to take care of your house.”

Bible References:

- 1 Corinthians 12:31
- 1 Kings 19:9-10
- Acts 22:3
- Galatians 4:17
- Isaiah 63:15
- John 2:17-19
- Philippians 3:6
- Romans 10:1-3

Word Data:

- Strong’s: H7065, H7068, G22050, G22060, G22070, G60410

(Go back to: [Numbers 5:14](#); [5:30](#))

Contributors

unfoldingWord® Translation Notes Contributors

Door43 World Missions Community

Aaron Fenlason

Abner Bauman

Adam Van Goor

Alan Bird

Alan Borkenhagen

Alfred Van Dellen

Alice Wright

Allen Bair

Allyson Presswood Nance

Amanda Adams

Andrew Belcher

Andrew Johnson

Andrew Rice

Angelo Palo

Anita Moreau

April Linton

Aurora Lee

Barbara Summers

Barbara White

Becky Hancock

Beryl Carpenter

Bethany Fenlason

Betty Forbes

Bianca Elliott

Bill Cleveland

Bill Pruett

Bob Britting

Bram van den Heuvel

Brian Metzger

Bruce Bridges

Bruce Collier

Bruce Smith

Caleb Worgess

Carlyle Kilmore

Carol Pace

Carol Heim

Caroline Crawford

Caroline Fleming

Caroline S Wong

Carol Lee

Carol Moyer

Carolyn Lafferty

Catherine C Newton

Charese Jackson

Charlotte Gibson

Charlotte Hobbs

Cheryl A Chojnacki
Cheryl Stieben
Cheryl Warren
Christian Berry
Christine Harrison
Clairmene Pascal
Connie Bryan
Connie Goss
Craig Balden
Craig Lins
Craig Scott
Cynthia J Puckett
Dale Hahs
Dale Masser
Daniel Lauk
Daniel Summers
Darlene M Hopkins
Darlene Silas
David Boerschlein
David F Withee
David Glover
David J Forbes
David Mullen
David N Hanley
David Sandlin
David Shortess
David Smith
David Whisler
Debbie Nispel
Debbie Piper
Deborah Bartow
Deborah Bush
Deborah Miniard
Dennis Jackson
Dianne Forrest
Donna Borkenhagen
Donna Mullis
Douglas Hayes
Drew Curley
Ed Davis
Edgar Navera
Edward Kosky
Edward Quigley
Elaine VanRegenmorter
Elizabeth Nataly Silvestre Herbas
Ellen Lee
Emeline Thermidor
Emily Lee
Esther Roman
Esther Trew
Esther Zirk
Ethel Lynn Baker
Evangeline Puen
Evelyn Wildgust
Fletcher Coleman

Freda Dibble
Gail Spell
Gary Greer
Gary Shogren
Gay Ellen Stulp
Gene Gossman
George Arlyn Briggs
Gerald L. Naughton
Glen Tallent
Grace Balwit
Grace Bird
Greg Stoffregen
Gretchen Stencil
Hallie Miller
Harry Harriss
Heather Hicks
Helen Morse
Hendrik deVries
Henry Bult
Henry Whitney
Hilary O'Sullivan
Ibrahim Audu
Ines Gipson
Irene J Dodson
Jackie Jones
Jacqueline Bartley
James Giddens
James Pedersen
James Pohlig
James Roe
Janet O'Herron
Janice Connor
Jaqueline Rotruck
Jeanette Friesen
Jeff Graf
Jeff Kennedy
Jeff Martin
Jennifer Cunneen
Jenny Thomas
Jerry Lund
Jessica Lauk
Jim Frederick
Jim Lee
Jimmy Warren
Jim Rotruck
Jim Swartzentruber
Jody Garcia
Joe Chater
Joel Bryan
Joey Howell
John Anderson
John Geddis
John D Rogers
John Hutchins
John Luton

John Pace
John P Tornifolio
Jolene Valeu
Jon Haahr
Joseph Fithian
Joseph Greene
Joseph Wharton
Joshua Berkowitz
Joshua Calhoun
Joshua Rister
Josh Wondra
Joy Anderson
Joyce Jacobs
Joyce Pedersen
JT Crowder
Judi Brodeen
Judith Cline
Judith C Yon
Julia N Bult
Patty Li
Julie Susanto
Kahar Barat
Kannah Sellers
Kara Anderson
Karen Davie
Karen Dreesen
Karen Fabean
Karen Riecks
Karen Smith
Karen Turner
Kathleen Glover
Kathryn Hendrix
Kathy Mentink
Katrina Geurink
Kay Myers
Kelly Strong
Ken Haugh
Kim Puterbaugh
Kristin Butts Page
Kristin Rinne
Kwesi Opoku-debrah
Langston Spell
Larry Sallee
Lawrence Lipe
Lee Sipe
Leonard Smith
Lester Harper
Lia Hadley
Linda Buckman
Linda Dale Barton
Linda Havemeier
Linda Homer
Linda Lee Sebastien
Linn Peterson
Liz Dakota

Lloyd Box
Luis Keelin
Madeline Kilmore
Maggie D Paul
Marc Nelson
Mardi Welo
Margo Hoffman
Marilyn Cook
Marjean Swann
Marjorie Francis
Mark Albertini
Mark Chapman
Mark Thomas
Marselene Norton
Mary Jane Davis
Mary Jean Stout
Mary Landon
Mary Scarborough
Megan Kidwell
Melissa Roe
Merton Dibble
Meseret Abraham-Zemedede
Michael Bush
Michael Connor
Michael Francis
Michael Geurink
Mike Tisdell
Mickey White
Miel Horrilleno
Monique Greer
Morgan Mellette
Morris Anderson
Nancy C. Naughton
Nancy Neu
Nancy VanCott
Neal Snook
Nicholas Scovil
Nick Dettman
Nils Friberg
Noah Crabtree
Pamela B Johnston
Pamela Nungesser
Pamela Roberts
Pam Gullifer
Pat Ankney
Pat Giddens
Patricia Brougher
Patricia Carson
Patricia Cleveland
Patricia Foster
Patricia Middlebrooks
Paul Mellema
Paula Carlson
Paula Oestreich
Paul Holloway

Paul Nungesser
Peggy Anderson
Peggyrose Swartzentruber
Peter Polloni
Phillip Harms
Phyllis Mortensen
Priscilla Enggren
Rachel Agheyisi
Rachel Ropp
Raif Turner
Ray Puen
Reina Y Mora
Rene Bahrenfuss
Renee Triplett
Rhonda Bartels
Richard Beatty
Richard Moreau
Richard Rutter
Richard Stevens
Rick Keaton
Robby Little
Robert W Johnson
Rochelle Hook
Rodney White
Rolaine Franz
Ronald D Hook
Rosario Baria
Roxann Carey
Roxanne Pittard
Ruben Michael Garay
Russell Isham
Russ Perry
Ruth Calo
Ruth E Withee
Ruth Montgomery
Ryan Blizek
Sam Todd
Samuel Njuguna
Sandy Anderson
Sandy Blanes
Sara Giesmann
Sara Van Cott (Barnes)
Sharon Johnson
Sharon Peterson
Sharon Shortess
Shelly Harms
Sherie Nelson
Sherman Sebastien
Sherry Mosher
Stacey Swanson
Steve Gibbs
Steve Mercier
Susan Langohr
Susan Quigley
Susan Snook

Suzanne Richards
Sylvia Thomas
Sze Suze Lau
Tabitha Price
Tammy L Enns
Tammy White
Teresa Everett-Leone
Teresa Linn
Terri Collins
Theresa Baker
Thomas Jopling
Thomas Nickell
Thomas Warren
Tim Coleman
Tim Ingram
Tim Linn
Tim Lovestrand
Tim Mentink
Tom Penry
Tom William Warren
Toni Shuma
Tracie Pogue
Tricia Coffman
Vicki Ivester
Victoria G DeKraker
Victor M Prieto
Vivian Kamph
Vivian Richardson
Ward Pyles
Warren Blaisdell
Wayne Homer
Wendy Coleman
Wendy Colon
Wilbur Zirk
Wil Gipson
William Carson
William Cline
William Dickerson
William Smitherman
William Wilder
Yvonne Tallent

unfoldingWord® Literal Text Contributors

Nicholas Alsop
Scott Bayer
Larry T Brooks, M.Div., Assemblies of God Theological Seminary
Matt Carlton
George "Drew" Curley, M.Div., PhD, Professor of Biblical Languages
Dan Dennison
Jamie Duguid
Paul M Fahnestock, M.Div. Reformed Theological Seminary, D.Min. Pittsburgh Theological Seminary
Michael Francis
Laura Glassel, MA in Bible Translation
Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Jesse Harris
C. Harry Harriss, M.Div.
Alrick G. Headley, M.Div., Th.M.
Bram van den Heuvel, M.A.
John Huffman
D. Allen Hutchison, MA in Old Testament, MA in New Testament
Jack Messarra
Gene Mullen
Adam W. Nagelvoort, M.Div. Academic Ministries, Columbia International University
Timothy Neu, Ph.D. Biblical Studies
Kristy Nickell
Tom Nickell
Elizabeth Oakes, BA in Religious Studies, Linguistics
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ward Pyles, M.Div., Western Baptist Theological Seminary
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Dean Ropp
Joel D. Ruark, M.A.Th., Th.M., Ph.D. in Old Testament, University of Stellenbosch
Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary
Peter Smircich, BA Philosophy
Doug Smith, M.T.S., M.Div., Th.M., Midwestern Baptist Theological Seminary
Leonard Smith
Suzanna Smith
Tim Span
Dave Statezni, BA Orig langs., M.Div. Fuller Theological Seminary
Maria Tijerina
David Trombold, M. Div.
Aaron Valdizan, M.Div., Th.M. in Old Testament, The Masters Seminary
James Vigen
Hendrik "Henry" de Vries
Thomas Warren, M.Div., Trinity Evangelical Divinity School, D.Min, Reformed Theological Seminary
Angela Westmoreland, M.A. in Theological Studies (Biblical Language track)
Henry Whitney, BA Linguistics
Benjamin Wright, MA Applied Linguistics, Dallas International University
Grant Ailie, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Academy Contributors

Jesse Griffin, BA in Biblical Studies, MA in Biblical Languages
Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics, MA in Theology, BA in Biblical Studies
Susan Quigley, MA in Linguistics
Henry Whitney, BA in Linguistics
James N. Pohlig, M.Div., MA in Linguistics, D. Litt. in Biblical Languages
Ben Jore, BA Biblical Studies, M.Div.
Joel D. Ruark, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Theology
Todd L. Price, PhD in New Testament/Linguistics
Bev Staley
Carol Brinneman
Jody Garcia
Kara Anderson
Kim Puterbaugh
Lizz Carlton
Door43 World Missions Community

unfoldingWord® Translation Words Contributors

Andrew Belcher

David Book

Jesse Griffin, BA Biblical Studies, MA Biblical Languages

Henry Whitney, Bible translator, Papua New Guinea, 1982–2000

Larry Sallee, Th.M Dallas Theological Seminary, D.Min. Columbia Biblical Seminary

Lizz Carlton

Jan Zanutto

Matthew Latham

Perry Oakes, PhD in Old Testament, MA in Linguistics

Richard Joki

Door43 World Missions Community